Google

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

A

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY I. N. MADVIG,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN LITERATURE, COPENHAGEN.

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL GERMAN, WITH THE SANCTION AND COÖPERATION OF THE AUTHOR,

BY THE

REV. GEORGE WOODS, M.A.,

OF UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, OXFORD; RECTOR OF SULLY, GLAMORGANSHIRE.

The First American from the Fifth English Edition, carefully revised and compared with the German Editions of 1857 *and* 1867, *with retranslations of portions of the work,*

BY THOMAS A. THACHER,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE COLLEGE.

BOSTON:

GINN BROTHERS AND COMPANY,

13, BEACON STREET.

1870.

PREFACE TO THE AMERICAN EDITION.

THE translation of Madvig's "Latin Grammar," by the Rev. George Woods, has been before the public more than twenty years, and has passed through five editions in England. The work has been steadily advancing in public favor; and the reputation of Madvig himself, as a learned and philosophical classical scholar, suffers no change, except as it is more and more confirmed and established by time.

This edition is issued to meet the increasing demand for the Grammar, which is springing up in all parts of this country. It is substantially the translation of the Rev. Mr. Woods; but in the revision of the translation, great freedom has been used, especially in making such verbal changes as seemed to promote perspicuity and help the learner to an instant understanding of the author's meaning. A translator who is not perfectly familiar with both the languages with which he has to do, is in danger of occasionally transferring a word from his dictionary to his page, without first submitting it to the scrutiny of his own thoughts; and where infelicities of expression arise from such a cause, they are more likely to catch the eye of a stranger than of the translator himself.

reds of changes which have here been made
he English edition, some are accounted for by
been said; a few by the fact that the phrase-
ner's German edition, published under the
advig himself, has been preferred to that of
rk; and others still have been made because
ed new forms of expression in the edition
elf, to take the place of Tischer's, in the year

cular this edition has ventured to depart both
or and the English translator, in that the
given to the *subjunctive* mood by English
s here retained. The German grammarians
with Madvig in calling this the *conjunctive*.
of usage appears among the old Latin gram-
while there is nothing in the original signifi-
ords which seems to decide the choice between
is, to be sure, calls the mood *conjunctivus*
agitur aliquid, ut locutio plena sit" (I., 8, 4).
nes the moods "*pronunciativus, id est, indica-
vus, optativus, adjunctivus, infinitivus*" (I.,
6, 7); and Asper Junior, under the name
them *finita, imperativa, optativa, adjunctiva*,
., 1).
ctorinus says, "*Modi autem sunt decem: in-
issivus, imperativus, optativus, conjunctivus,
ersonalis, gerundi, hortandi, modus. Addunt
ctativum modum*" (*Ars Grammatica*, 20).
s, there are seven moods, "*ut multi existimant:
i et pronunciativus dicitur, imperativus, pro-
hunc nos modum non accipimus; optativus,*

conjunctivus, infinitivus, impersonalis" (II., XII., 1). Phocas names the "*indicativus*," "*imperativus*," "*promissivus*," and "*infinitivus*."

The above references do not yet give us the name *subjunctive*, but they show that the classification of the forms of the verb was not a settled thing among the ancient Latin grammarians, and that they were far from agreement in respect to the names to be given to the moods.

Charisius, however, whom critics agree in placing high as an authority among the ancient Latin grammarians, uses the name *subjunctive*. Cyminius, the editor of the *editio princeps* of his work, which was published in the year 1532, speaks of him as "*Romanæ linguæ accuratissimus observator*," and as "*grammaticorum omnium facile princeps*." (See Lindemann's *Corpus Grammaticorum Latinorum veterum*, Tomus IV., Fasciculus I., *Præfationes*. Lipsiæ, 1840.)

In his *Institutiones Grammaticæ*, Charisius treats very fully of the verb; and his testimony is of especial value on such a point as the one under consideration, because he professes to give his son, for whose benefit he wrote and compiled his work, the teachings of the earlier grammarians, as well as his own. He gives the names of the moods, which he calls *modi verborum sive qualitates*, as follows: *pronunciativus, seu finitivus, imperativus, optativus, subjunctivus seu conjunctivus, infinitivus*. This list, to be sure, leaves us to our choice between the two names in question; but our author himself uses only the name *subjunctive* in the pages of his work which contain the conjugations of the verbs, as well as in countless other places. (See Lindemann *ut supra*, pp. 97, 98, 99, 100, 135, 136, and elsewhere.)

e further proof of the disagree-
s, both ancient and modern, on
ant point; nor, in view of this
urther for using in this edition
that name for the subjunctive
niliar to the reader.

be used by beginners, it is not
te the differences between the
nethods of pronouncing Latin.
es pronounced their language
ver be known. Scholars may
cting the extent of this igno-
in itself very limited, pertain-
he sound of a single letter, it
an objection to any attempt to
iation of the language; for the
is so small in such a language
at every one of them runs like
e, and constitutes an important
ties which attend this subject,
uch, that there is no nation in
rs of which agree in claiming
e pronunciation of the Roman
do so. On the other hand, the
ronounce Latin, in the main,
their own language. There is
rly be called "continental."
ak English are not to enjoy the
live on the Continent, whom
lo not themselves know enough

about the pronunciation of the ancient Romans to save their attempts to imitate that from being a caricature in the ears of a Roman, if a Roman could be summoned to hear them. It can hardly be urged that they should imitate the Germans, for they are confessedly in error in their practice, — and the same is true of the scholars of other nations. Or if only the continental pronunciation of the vowels is to be imitated, must it not still be a matter of doubt how the frequently recurring diphthongs, *æ* and *œ*, are to be pronounced?

The English method of pronouncing Latin is unquestionably at a wider remove from the ancient and genuine than the German or the French or the Italian method is. But the explanation of that fact is to be found in this, that the pronunciation of the English language itself has taken a freer and wider range than that of any continental nation. But to give up a method of pronouncing Latin which is generally received by two great nations, and is inwrought also into a large constituent part of their own language, — a method easily learned and easily retained, — and to adopt in its stead a method which is full either of obvious or of probable errors, and which comes into constant conflict with English words of Latin parts, is, to say the least, of doubtful expediency.

The opinion of Madvig on the question of pronouncing Latin according to quantity, as the ancients did, is given in the note on page 467 of the "Grammar;" and the second observation on page 468 has a bearing on the same subject.

CONTENTS.

CHAP.		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION	1

ETYMOLOGY.

I. *Pronunciation.*

I.	The Letters	3
II.	The Measure of the Syllables and Accentuation (Prosody)	11

II. *The Inflection of Words.*

I.	The Classes of Words. Inflection, Stem, and Ending	18
II.	Of Gender and Inflection by Cases in general	20
III.	First Declension	25
IV.	Second Declension	28
V.	Third Declension	32
VI.	Peculiarities of the several Cases and of the Greek forms in the third Declension	46
VII.	Fourth Declension	51
VIII.	Fifth Declension	53
IX.	Of some peculiarities in the use of the Numbers of Substantives, and of some Irregularities in their Inflection	54
X.	The Inflection of Adjectives	63
XI.	The Numerals	73
XII.	The Pronouns	80
XIII.	The Inflection of Verbs in general	89
XIV.	The Verb **sum**, and examples of the four Conjugations	96
XV.	Verbs with a Passive Form and Active Signification (Deponent Verbs)	105
XVI.	Some peculiarities in the Conjugation of Verbs	108
XVII.	Irregular Perfects and Supines in general, and especially those of the first Conjugation	111

PAGE
Irregular Perfects and Supines of the second Conjugation 114
Perfects and Supines of the third Conjugation 117
rregular Perfects and Supines of the fourth Conjugation . 129
rregular Supines (Participles) of Deponent Verbs, and some other Irregularities of these Verbs 130
rregular Verbs 133
Defective Verbs 139
mpersonal Verbs 142
The Adverbs and Prepositions 145

III. *Rules for the Formation of Words.*

Formation of Words in general. Derivation of Substantives 150
Derivation of Adjectives 160
Derivation of Verbs 160
Derivation of Adverbs 166
The Formation of new Words by Composition 173

SYNTAX.

es for the Construction of Words 179

Part First.

Of the Combinations of Words in a Proposition.

The Parts of a Proposition. The Agreement of the Subject and Predicate, the Substantive and Adjective . . . 180
The Relations of Substantives in a Proposition, and the Cases; the Nominative and Accusative 191
The Dative 209
The Ablative 221
The Genitive 242
The Vocative 263
The Use of Adjectives (Adverbs), and particularly of their Degrees of Comparison 264
Peculiarities in the Construction of the Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns 276

Part Second.

On the Mode of distinguishing the Character of the Assertion, and the Time of the Fact asserted.

CHAP. PAGE

I. The Kinds of Propositions, and the Moods in general . . 285
II. The Indicative and its Tenses 288
III. The Subjunctive 300
III. (Appendix.) Object-clauses in the Subjunctive, and the Particles used with them 325
IV. The Tenses of the Subjunctive 336
V. The Imperative 343
VI. The Infinitive and its Tenses 345
VII. The Supine, Gerund, and Gerundive 368
VIII. The Participles 378
IX. Combination of Coördinate and Subordinate Propositions, and the use of Conjunctions for this purpose. Interrogative and Negative Particles 388

Part Third.

Order and Position of Words and Propositions.

I. Order of Words in a Proposition 425
II. Arrangement of Propositions 435

First Appendix to the Syntax.

Some Special Irregularities in the Construction of Words . 440

Second Appendix to the Syntax.

Signification and Use of the Pronouns 448
The most important Rules of Latin Metre (Versification) . 466

Supplements to the Grammar.

I. The Roman way of expressing the Date 479
II. Computation of Roman Money and Fractions 480
III. Abbreviations 483

INDEX 485

LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. LATIN GRAMMAR teaches the Form of Latin Words, and their Combination in sentences. It is divided into ETYMOLOGY and SYNTAX. Latin METRE, or the rules for the structure of Latin Verse, will be treated as supplementary to the Grammar.

§ 2. The Latin language was formerly spoken by the Romans, first in a part of Central Italy, and subsequently in the whole of Italy, and in other countries which the Romans had subjugated; at present it is known only from books and other written monuments of this nation.

The oldest Latin writings which have come down to us were composed about 200 years before the birth of Christ. In the sixth century of the Christian era the language became entirely extinct, having been thoroughly corrupted and mixed with their own tongues by foreign nations which had migrated into the Roman territories. By these means, various new languages (the Romance languages, as Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese) were gradually formed. The numerous authors, who have written in Latin in later times, learned it as a dead language.

During the long period above specified, the language underwent many changes, not only in the number of words, and in their significations, forms, and combinations, but partially also in the pronunciation. In this Grammar it is for the most part represented as it was spoken and written during the most brilliant period of Roman literature; and, where this is not the case, the usage of the most approved writers of that age is designated as the best. This period, extending from about the time of Cæsar and Cicero till

shortly after the birth of Christ, is commonly termed the *golden age* of the language. The next, to about 120 years after the birth of Christ, is called the *silver age*.

Obs. The Latin language is originally most nearly related to the Greek, and from this it also borrowed many terms at a later period, when the Romans became acquainted with the arts, the sciences, and the institutions of the Greeks. Both languages, moreover, belong to the same stem, from which the German and Northern tongues, with many others, have sprung; as the ancient Sanscrit, now totally extinct, in India, and the Zend in Persia. All these languages are designated by the common name of Indo-Germanic, or Japhetic.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 3. Etymology treats 1, — Of the Sounds, of which words consist, and their pronunciation; 2. Of the Inflection of words; and 3. Of their Derivation and Composition.

I. — OF PRONUNCIATION.

CHAPTER I.

THE LETTERS.

§ 4. The Latin language is written with twenty-three Letters, **a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, (j), k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, (v), x, y, z (zeta).** The consonants which have an affinity with the vowels **i** and **u**, — viz., **j (i consonans)** and **v (u consonans)**, — were written by the Romans like those vowels (**v** for **u** as well as for **v**). These vowels and consonants are now usually distinguished in writing. The letters **y** and **z** do not belong to the original Roman characters, and are employed only in Greek words, which were adopted by the Latins at a later period.

Obs. 1. The Romans made no distinction between large and small letters. According to the present usage, large initial letters are usually employed only at the commencement of a sentence, and in proper names, with the adjectives and adverbs derived from them.

Obs. 2. The Latin characters, as well as the Greek, were borrowed from the Hebrew and Phœnician.

§ 5 *a*. The Vowels (**litterae vocales**) were pronounced sometimes short (with a sharp utterance, broken off by a movement of the organs of speech), sometimes long (the voice dwelling on the lengthened sound); but this difference of pronunciation is not discriminated in writing.

Obs. 1. In elementary books (as, for example, in this Grammar) the long vowels are sometimes distinguished by ¯, and the short by ˘, placed over them. The sign ˘̄ denotes that the vowel over which it is placed was pronounced sometimes long and sometimes short. In the earliest period a long vowel was sometimes distinguished by reduplica-

; **i** was also expressed by **ei** (**heio** for **hīc**, as it was ›ed; **eidus, arteis**).

a consonant (**j**) at the beginning of Latin words before el, except in the partitiple **iens**. So also in the middle en two vowels (**major, Pompejus**, but **Gai**), except in r, **assiduior** (in the Greek names **Achaja, Grajus,** roja, but **Troĭus**). Before a vowel at the beginning of is a vowel (**i-ambus**).[1]

a consonant (**v**) at the beginning of words before a nd in the middle of words between two vowels (**avidus**), , and **r**, when **u** does not belong to the inflectional , **solvo, arvum**, but **colui**), and in some words after **vadeo, svavis, svesco, Svetonius**). In compound the same rule as in the simple; e.g. **e-ruo**. After **v** it ıge to pronounce and write **o** in the place of **u**; e.g. **us, divom** for **divum**: and in some words **o** for **e**; e.g. , for **vester, vertex**.[1]

the sake of the verse, the poets sometimes make **i** and **u** r a consonant; e.g. **abjes, consiljum, genva, tenvia,** lium, **genua, tenuia**. Conversely, they resolve **v** into instead of **svemus**, and frequently after **l** (**silu-a, dis-endus**. This is called **diaerĕsis** (resolution).[2]

me cases the pronunciation wavered between two cog- varied at different periods, which also led to a variation phy: e.g. in **classes** and **classis** (accus. plur.), **heri** *day;* **faciendus** and **faciundus**. In some few words e **i** was both spoken and written at a later period, the formerly predominant (even down to the time of Cicero g. **lubet** for **libet, optumus** for **optimus**.

mpound vowel sounds (Diphthongs), those commonly **e, oe**, and **au**; **eu** occurs only in a few words (**heus,** , **seu, neu, neuter, neutiqvam**); **ei** only in the .; **ui** in **huic** and **cui**, and in the interjection **hui**.

originated in **ai**, as it was also written in the earliest i. In pronunciation, **oe** had some resemblance to **u**). These Diphthongs correspond to the Greek *αι* and *οι* **hiletaerus, Oeta**).

---

[1] the sound of these consonants as we utter them does not affect the rule. it in **Troja, Achaja, abjes, consiljum**, &c., although scholars who y give it the ordinary English sound in **Troja**, and the ordinary German other words. (T.)

[2] resis is Greek, as well as the names **synaloepho, synaeresis, syni-** , and **syncope**, which occur in the ensuing paragraphs.

Obs. 2. In words adopted by the Latins from the Greek, *ει* is expressed before consonants by **ī**, before vowels by **ī** or **ē** (**Heraclītus, Euclīdes, Aristogīton, Eclīpsis**; **Darēus** and **Darīus, Alexandrēa** and **Alexandrīa, Aristotelīus** and **Aristotelēus**).

Obs. 3. In some words the pronunciation and orthography waver between **ae** and **e** (**saeculum, saepire, taeter**, are better than **seculum**, &c., **heres** better than **haeres**); in others between **oe** and **e** (**fecundus, femina, fenus, fetus**); in others again between **ae** and **oe** (**caelum, caeruleus, maereo**); in **obscoenus**, between all three forms. **Au** and **ō** were also interchanged in some words (**plaudo, plōdo, Claudius, Clōdius**). A preference should be given to such forms as are most sanctioned by ancient inscriptions.

c. The following remarks apply to the permutation of the vowels as resulting from the inflection, derivation, and composition of words.

If the radical vowel be lengthened in the inflection, **ă** is generally changed into **ē** (**ăgo-ēgi**). If the radical vowel be weakened by a prefix, **ae** is often changed into **ī** (**laedo, illīdo**), **ă** into **ĭ**, if the syllable be open (i.e. ending in **a** vowel), and into **ĕ**, if it be close (i.e. ending in **a** consonant); e.g. **facio, perfĭ-cio, perfec-tus**: **ĕ** in an open syllable is often changed into **ĭ** (**teneo, contineo**, but **conten-tus**; **nomen, nomi-nis**; **semen**, but **seminarium**; before **r** it remains unchanged, e.g. **affero, congero**, from **fero, gero**); conversely, **ĭ** is changed into **ĕ** in a close syllable, e.g. **judex** from the theme **judĭc**: **ŏ** in an open syllable often becomes **ŭ** in a close one; e.g. in **adolesco, adultus**; **colo, cultus**; **ebur, eboris**; **corpus, corporis**: **ŭ** often takes the place of other vowels before **l** (**pello, pepuli**; **scalpo, exsculpo**; **familia, famulus**).

§ 6. When two consecutive vowels are to be separated and pronounced distinctly, a kind of hesitation (**hiatus**, *gap*) is produced in the utterance, especially if one vowel concludes a word and the other commences one; e.g. **contra audentior.** Hence in reading verse, the former vowel is regularly omitted without regard to the quantity, which is termed **elisio** (striking out), or **synaloephe** (blending); e.g. **saper' aude** for **saperĕ aude, qvoqv' et** for **qvoqvĕ et, Dardanid' e muris** for **Dardanidae e muris, ultr' Asiam** for **ultrō Asiam.** The same takes place if the second word begins with **h**, or the first ends in **m**; e.g. **toller' humo** for **tollere humo, mult' ille** for **multum ille.** See § 8 and 9. (For the exceptions

§ 502 *b*.) Without doubt something like this occurred ry pronunciation.

. It often happens also, that in the formation and inflection of hat were originally two vowels are contracted into a long diphthong, especially when **a** or **o** is followed by another the same vowel is repeated; e.g. **cōgo** from **cŏăgo**, **tibīcen** ſicen, **mensae** from **mensai**. Sometimes only *one* vowel ɔunced, though two were written (**deest**, **deerunt**). In some ıtrary to the prose usage, the poets allow themselves to com- vowels into one sound (by *synaeresis* or *synizesis*, sinking , as **dein**, **deinde**, **proinde**, **quoad**, particularly **e** with **i**, **a**, and **o**, the nominative of which ends in **eus**, **ea**, or **eum**; e.g. **alvei**, **reo**, as well as **anteis**, **anteit**, from the verb **anteeo**. The c writers (Plautus and Terence) go much further in this ɔ.).

. In the interrogative enclitic **nĕ**, the vowel was sometimes left dinary pronunciation, even before a consonant (e.g. **nostin'**, in this case, the final **s** is also omitted in the second person . of some verbs, and in **satis** (**viden'** for **videsne**, **audin'** for **satin'** for **satisne**).

Of the Consonants, some are mutes; **b**, **c** (**k**, **q**), **d**, **f**, **g**, **p**, **t**, ve an abrupt sound: some, liquids; **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, which (par- **l** and **r**) may be easily attached to a preceding consonant. may also be added the sibilant **s**. **x** is a double letter for eek) for **sd**.[1]

e mute consonants, **c** (**k**, **q**) and **g** are palatals, **p** and **b** and **d** dentals. Some have a harder and more abrupt ation (**c**, **p**, **t**, **tenues**), some a softer and with somewhat piration (**b**, **g**, **d**, which are called **mediae**, as compared **ph**, **th**, which have the strongest aspiration). **f** approaches the labials, but has at the same time somewhat of a dental

With reference to the pronunciation of the particular con- t may be observed, that **c** was always pronounced by the ike **k**, or with only a slight modification of that sound (in in **doctus**, in **accipis** as in **capis**). At a very late period, language was on the verge of extinction, that pronun- ame into vogue which is now usual in Germany; viz., of

---

sen, "über Aussprache, Vocalismus und Betonung d. Latein. Sprache," I. 122,

giving **c** before **e, i, y, ae, oe, eu,** the sound of **ts** (compare **ti**). A peculiar variety of the sound **c** was **qv (qu)**, which is reckoned as *one* consonant, as **inqvilinus** from **incolo.** The subordinate sound was occasionally dropped in some words (**qvotidie** and **cotidie,** as it was often pronounced and written **coqvus** and **cocus**). Before a consonant, **qv** is either changed simply into **c,** as in **relictus, coxi** (**coc-si**), from **relinqvo, coqvo,** or in some cases into **cu,** as in **secutus** from **seqvor.** If in the inflection of a word **u** would have to stand after **qv,** the Latins pronounced and wrote either **cu,** or **qvo** (according to § **5,** *a, Obs.* 3), as **secuntur** or **seqvontur**; at a later period, however, they wrote **qvum,** and, according to the present usage, **seqvuntur, relinqvuntur. (Concutio,** from **qvatio.)**

K was only used in a few words as an initial letter before **a,** especially in abbreviations: **K.** = **Kaeso** (a prænomen), **K.** or **Kal.** = **Kalendae.**

Ti is now pronounced before vowels like **tsi,**[1] except after **s** and **t** (**justior, mixtio, Attius**), in the lengthened passive infinitive (**patier**), and in Greek words (**Isocratīus** = **Isocratēus, Boeotia**); but this pronunciation dates from a very recent period. Thus, in the later pronunciation, **ti** before a vowel, and **ci,** came to have the same sound, and were occasionally interchanged in writing; e.g. in the derivative ending **cius** (**patricius, suppositicius**).

M as a final consonant, when followed by a vowel, had an obscure and scarcely audible sound, on which account it is dropped in reading verse (by *ecthlipsis*, squeezing out), together with the vowel which precedes it, precisely as if that terminated the word (**ventur' excidio** for **venturum excidio, necd' etiam** for **necdum etiam**). See § 6.

M and **n** are related in such a way (as nasal sounds) that **m** is heard before **m, b,** and **p,** but **n** before the remaining consonants (**comburo**; but **concipio, condo**; **tum,** but **tunc**). Before the enclitic particles **ne** and **que, m** is retained (**deorumne, hominumqve**). Before **c** (**q**) and **g, n** had the same sound as in the English word *long.*

R now stands in many Latin words where there was formerly an **s,** since the Romans, with the exception of a few words (such as **qvaeso, vasis,** &c., from **vas, asinus, miser**), have changed **s** be-

---

[1] By German scholars; but not by those of the English race, nor even by the Italian descendants of the Romans. (T.)

tween two vowels into **r** (**Papirius, Veturius**, for **Papisius, Vetusius**; **arborem** for **arbosem**; **gero** for **geso**, whence **gessi**; **oris** for **osis**, from **os**). **S**, however, always remains unchanged, when another consonant has been dropped before it (**divisi** for **dividsi**, from **divido**), or when it begins the last part of a compound word (**desilio**).

§ 9. **H** is not a consonant, but the sign of a guttural aspiration of the vowel, so that two vowels with an **h** between them are considered as immediately following each other, and the elision of a final vowel is not prevented by **h** (§ 6). Hence some words with **h** between two vowels are occasionally contracted (**nihil** and **nil, prehendo** and **prendo, vehemens** and **vemens**). At the beginning of some words, **h** was sometimes prefixed, and at other times omitted (**arundo, harundo**; **ave, have**; **hedera, edera**; **herus, erus**).

In the earliest times the consonants were scarcely ever aspirated (pronounced with **h**): afterwards this was done in Greek words (**thesaurus, elephantus, delphinus**), and in those of barbarous origin (**rheda**), but only in very few genuine Latin words; as **brachium, pulcher, triumphus** (**sepulchrum** is incorrect), and in some proper names, as **Cethēgus, Gracchus.**

§ 10. A regard for Euphony and convenience of pronunciation has often much influence on the consonants in words, and leads to alterations in them.

At the end of words (as a final consonant), no consonant is doubled (we have therefore **mel, fel**, although the gen. is **mellis, fellis**): no consonant is doubled before another in the middle of a word, except a mute before a liquid (**effluo**; but **falsum** from **fallo, cursum** from **curro**). Yet among the words compounded with the prepositions **trans** and **ex** (**ecs**), we sometimes find **transscribo**, and frequently **exspecto, exstinguo** (**ecsspecto**), for **expecto, extinguo.** A consonant has sometimes been dropped from the end of a word which has no inflectional ending (**sermo, sermonis**; **cor, cordis**; **lac, lactis**).

Changes take place more especially when consonants of a different character are brought together, either by the composition of words, or by the addition of an inflectional ending or of a suffix used in the formation of derivative words.

Before a liquid, a **tenuis** (**c, p, t**) is often changed into the corresponding **media** (**b, g, d**) (**negligens** from **nec**); and a **media** before a **tenuis** or **s** into the corresponding **tenuis**, in the pronuncia-

tion, though not always in writing. **G** before **t** and **s** always becomes **c**, as **actus** from **ago, unxi** (**unc-si**) from **ungo**; and **b** before **t** and **s** generally becomes **p, scriptus, scripsi**; yet we find both **obtineo** and **optineo, absens, obsideo, urbs.**

Sometimes (by *assimilation*) a consonant was completely changed into that which succeeded it, — **d, t,** and **b** into **s** in **cessi, fossum, passus, fassus, jussi,** from **cedo, fodio, patior, fateor, jubeo, d** into **c** in **qvicqvam, qvicqvid, n** and **r** into **l** in **corolla, agellus,** from **corona, ager,** — especially the final consonant of the prepositions (**attingo** from **ad** and **tango**), in which case, however, the change was often not distinguished in writing (compare § **173** and **204**, *Obs.* 1). Sometimes one consonant disappeared entirely before another, particularly **d** and **t** before **s**: e.g. **divisi** for **divid-si,** from **divido**; **mons** for **monts, nox** for **nocts** (genitive **noct-is**), **flexi** for **flectsi.**

§ 11. In order to facilitate the pronunciation, a vowel is sometimes inserted between two consonants (**e** in **ager,** gen. **agri**; **u** in **vinculum,** which was also pronounced **vinclum**). On the other hand, a vowel was sometimes left out in familiar discourse, and here and there in writing (by *syncope*, abbreviation); e.g. **dextra** for **dextera, consumpse** (instead of **consumpssse,** § **10**) for **consumpsisse.** Abbreviations of this kind are frequent in the Comic writers.

Obs. The oldest pronunciation of all nations shows itself inclined to certain combinations of sound, and averse to others; and particular sounds are somewhat modified by different nations of kindred origin. Pronunciation is also subject to very frequent changes, so long as the language remains unwritten. These are the causes of certain differences of pronunciation between the Greek and Latin languages; e.g. in the sounds **v** and **f,** in final **m** and **n,** in the aspirate (which is the first sound of several words in Greek which in Latin begin with **s**: e.g. ὑπέρ, **super**; ὑπό, **sub**; ὕλη, **silva**; ὗς, **sus**). Hence also arise other differences in several particular words which were originally identical: e.g. an initial consonant has been dropped in Latin in **uro** (πῦρ, **comburo**) and **fallo** (σφάλλω), and in Greek in τρίζω (**stridо**). Such variations in the pronunciation and form of words show themselves also in the inflection, which has sometimes preserved traces of an older form of the word; e.g. **fluxi, struxi,** from **fluo, struo.**

§ 12. The orthography of the Romans was somewhat unsettled, even at one and the same given period, since some writers invariably followed the pronunciation, although even this, in some

, was not quite definite and distinct (as in the acc.
; while others, on the contrary, in compound or
looked more to their origin (e.g. **tamqvam, num-**
hey were pronounced as **tanqvam** or **nunqvam**),
orthography which had been once adopted, though
eed with the pronunciation then in vogue. Far
diversity in the orthography of different periods,
pronunciation also underwent many changes.
is now best and safest to follow the orthography
an grammarians, which corresponds to the pronun-
times, or to a gradually established usage. In
e shall often find what is right by considering the
rds, and what may from thence be probably in-
r pronunciation (e.g. **condicio** from **condicere**).
of the works of the older writers, e.g. Cicero and
ated orthography is retained in many words; e.g.
a, *Obs.* 3).

anuscripts of the ancients, the words at the end of
divided accurately according to the syllables (**syl-**
nant between two vowels belongs to the last vowel,
so combined in the pronunciation; of two or more
st — or, if they can begin a Latin word, the last two
lowing vowel, the other or others with the preceding
ef-fluo, perfec-tus, emp-tus). The double letter
partly to the preceding, partly to the following
nected with the preceding. In words compounded
the final consonant of the preposition is not sepa-
eo, ad-eo, praeter-eo, so **prod-eo, red-eo**).

words cannot begin with any other combinations of con-
mute followed by l or r or **s**, with a tenuis (**sc, sp, st**),
d r or l (**splendor, scribo, spretus, stratus**). Yet
l (rarely) **gnavus, gnatus.**

books, however, according to a very prevalent tradi-
ords are so divided, that all those consonants likewise,
word in Greek, and all mutes with liquids (even if they
ek word, e.g. **gm**), and, finally, similar combinations
. **gd** and **ct**), are attached to the syllable following
-ptus, Ca-dmus, i-pse, scri-psi, Le-sbos, a-gmen,
us, smara-gdus).

CHAPTER II.

THE MEASURE OF THE SYLLABLES AND ACCENTUATION (PROSODY).[1]

§ 14. The pronunciation of the syllables varies according to the duration of the sound (the quantity of the syllables) and the accentuation. In the pronunciation of the Romans themselves, the distinction of quantity, which also controls the place of the accent in Latin, was the most marked and perceptible; and euphony depends on this, both in prose and verse. But in the modern pronunciation of Latin (as in our own and in modern languages generally), the difference of accent only is commonly heard with distinctness, — and indeed with more stress than was the case with the ancients; while the difference of quantity is only observable in particular cases, and not in all the successive syllables which the speaker utters.

§ 15. Some syllables are long, some short; to the first is given twice the duration (**mora**) of the last; a very few only are doubtful (**ancipites**), so that they may be pronounced either way. A syllable is long either *by nature*, when its vowel has of itself the long, continued pronunciation; e.g. **sōl, trādo** (§ **5**, *a*), or by *the position* of its vowel, when the vowel-sound, which is in itself short, must be sustained for a longer time, on account of two or more consonants following it, as in the first syllable in **ossis.**

Obs. In the old pronunciation, it was distinctly perceived by the ear whether a vowel before two or more consonants was long in itself, without any reference to position (as in **mōns, gēntis**; **pāx**, gen. **pācis**; **ēst**, for **edit**), or whether the vowel itself was short, and the syllable consequently only long by position (as in **făx**, gen. **făcis**; **ĕst** from **sum**); but we are often unacquainted with this distinction, since we generally ascertain the quantity of syllables only from the usage of the poets, where, if a vowel is long by position, its nature is of no importance.

§ 16, *a*. All diphthongs are long.

Obs. The diphthong **ae** in **prae** is shortened before a vowel in compound words; e.g. **praeacutus**: but in all other (Greek) words, it is always long, even before a vowel; e.g. **Aeolides, Aeetes.**

---

[1] The Greek word *προσῳδία* (properly an accompanying song, a tone accompanying the pronunciation) signifies at first the accentuation; but at a later period it was used also to denote the quantity (length or shortness) of the syllables, and the rules relating to it.

before another vowel in the same word (even if
d, § 9) is pronounced short (**dĕus, contrăho, ad-**

are excepted, —

ɜr a vowel in the genitive and dative of the fifth de-
fidĕi).
ved genitive in aï in the first declension (**mensāï**).
itives in **ius** (**alīus**, &c., for **alterius**. See § **37**,

ɜ i in the vocative of proper names in **jus** in the sec-
ĭ, **Pompēī**).
l in the interjections **ēheu** and **ōhe** (but also **ŏhe**), in
sometimes in the proper name **Dīāna** (more frequently
the forms from **fīō**, except **fierem** (**fieres**, &c.) and

n which the vowel retains the quantity which it has in
erōus, **Menelāus**. In such words, therefore, **e** and **i**
ther vowel, when *η* or *ει* occur in the Greek (**Brisēis,**
Alexandrēa or **Alexandrīa, Epicurēus, Spondēus**;
metimes **chorēa**); on the other hand, they are short
s *ε* or *ῐ* (**īdĕa, philosophĭa**). But we find **academĭa**

ıd of a word, a long vowel or **ae** may sometimes be
before a vowel following, instead of being elided.

ɔrmed by contraction and syncope in the middle of
cōgo from **cŏăgo, mālo** from **măgĕvŏlo, tibīcen**
nior from **jŭvĕnior**).
ıtity of the radical syllables of words which are not
ınot be determined by rules; but the radical sylla-
wels retain the same quantity in all inflections of
all its derivatives and compounds, even if the vowel
another cognate vowel: e.g. **māter, māternus**;
; **scrībo, scrībere, scrība, conscrībere**; **ămo,**
micitia, **inĭmicitiae**; **cădo, incĭdo**; **caedo, in-**
ne way, the vowel of a particular form of inflec-
same quantity in the further modifications of this
words derived from it: e.g. **docēbam, docēbamus,**
ātus, **amāturus**; **monĭtum, admonĭtio.**
ı are excepted, —

ɜ. *a*. Perfects in **ī**, formed without reduplication, which

lengthen the first syllable, unless one vowel stands before another (see § 103, *b*); *b*. Perfects and supines (with the forms derived from them), in which the last radical consonant of the verb has been dropped before **si, sum, tum** (**divĭdo, divīsi, divīsum**; **vĭdeo, vīsum**; **mŏveo, mōtum**; **cădo, cāsum**); *c*. **Pŏsui, pŏsitum**, from **pōno**; *d*. Some monosyllable nominatives of words of the third declension, in which the vowel is long, though the radical syllable in the other cases is short (see § **21**, 2, *b*).

2. Derivatives. *a*. **hūmanus (hŏmo)**; **sēcius (sĕcus)**; **rex, rēgis, rēgula (rĕgo)**; **lex, lēgis (lĕgo)**; **tēgula (tĕgo)**; **suspīcio (suspĭcor)**; **vox, vōcis (vŏco)**; **sēdes (sĕdeo)**; **persōna (sŏno)**: *b*. **ambĭtus, ambĭtio (ambītum** from **ambire)**; **condĭcio (condīco)**; **dĭcax**, and the words in **dĭcus (maledĭcus**, &c.) from **dīco**; **dux, dŭcis (dūco)**; **fĭdes, perfĭdus (fīdo, fīdus, infīdus)**; **nŏta, nŏtare (nōtus)**; **păciscor (pax, pācis)**; **sŏpor (sōpire)**; **lăbo (lābor, lābi)**; **lŭcerna (lūceo)**; **mŏlestus (mōles)**. From **stāre** come both **stāturus** and **stătio, stăbilis**.

3. Compounds. **dejĕro, pejĕro (jūro)**; **cognĭtus, agnĭtus (nōtus)**; **pronŭbus, innŭbus (nūbo)**. For **connūbium**, we have also **connŭbium** (or **connūbjum**, according to § **5**, *a*, *Obs*. 4).

Obs. If a word with a particular grammatical termination becomes the first part of a compound, or has an additional syllable appended to it, the quantity of the termination remains unchanged: e.g. **qvāpropter, qvātenus (qvā)**; **mēcum, mēmet (mē)**; **qvīlibet (qvī)**; **aliōqvi (aliō)**; **intrōduco (intrō)**; **agrīcultura (agrī)**. (Yet we find **sĭqvidem** from **sī, qvandŏqvidem** from **qvandō**.)

§ 19. The quantity of those syllables by which derivative words are formed, and of the penults of inflectional endings, is noticed in its proper place among the rules for the formation and inflection of words. We now give the rules by which the quantity of the *final syllable* may be determined, both in monosyllables and words of more than one syllable.

In the termination of words of more than one syllable, which end in a vowel, —

1. **a** is short in nouns (**mensă**, nom. and voc., **lignă, animaliă, Palladiă**), except in the abl. sing. of the first declension (**mensā**), and in the voc. of nouns in **as** (**Aeneā**; **Pallā**, from **Pallas, Pallantis**); but long in verbs in the imperative (**amā**); and in indeclinable words (**intrā, extrā, ergā, anteā, quadragintā**), except **ită, quiă, ejă**, and **pută**, signifying *for example*.

2. **e** is short (**patrĕ, currĕ, nempĕ, propĕ, facilĕ, legerĕ, hoscĕ, reapsĕ, suoptĕ**) except in the ablative of the fifth declension (**spe-**

ve of the second conjugation (**monē**), in the
from adjectives in **us** (**doctē**), together with
iē, and in Greek words in η (**crambē, Tempē**).
nĕ, malĕ, infernĕ, and **supernĕ,** have the **e**

also some dissyllable imperatives of the second
llable of which is short, with a short final syllable;
vĭdĕ, tăcĕ. The ablative of **fames** (third de-
g, **famē.**

gen. and nom., **patrī, fructui, vidī, viderī**);
. of Greek words in ις (**Parī**), and in **nisī,**
considered as a dissyllable); either long or
ibī, ibī, ubī. From **ubī** are formed **necubī,**
m, ubīqve, ubicunqve.)
ıtly long in the nominative case of nouns, and
verbs, but occasionally short (in the later poets
k words in ω, it is always long (**Iō, Echō**);
of the second declension; in **ambō,** and in
quō, falsō, qvandō, idcircō, vulgō, omninō,
ption of **modŏ** (with its compounds, **tantum-**
modo), **citŏ, immŏ**; it is short in **duŏ, octŏ,**
ndŏ (for **in**).

he silver age also use the adverbs **ergo** (there-
postremo, sero, and the ablative of the gerund
rt **o** (always **qvandŏqvidem**).

(**cornū, diū**); **y,** occurring in a very few Greek
).
ıbles of words of more than one syllable, which
consonant except **s,** are short (**donĕc, illŭd,**
ĕn, forsităn, amĕr, amaretŭr, agĕr, patĕr,
alēc, liēn, compounds of **pār** (**dispār**), cases
sc.) and adverbs from **illic** and **istic** (**illōc,**
reek words with a Greek form, which retain
y (**aēr,** accus. **aĕra, aethēr**; **cratēr,** accus.
ıēān, Calliŏpēn, Epigrammatōn). But the
ned into **ŏr** (**Hectŏr, rhetŏr,** from Ἕκτωρ,

es in **s,** —
nsās, aetās, amās), except in **anăs** (**anătis**),

in Greek nominatives in **as**, gen. **ădis** (**Iliăs**), and in the Greek accus. plur. of the third declension (**heroăs**).

2. **es** is long (**cladēs, aedēs,** nom. sing. **regēs, seriēs, amēs, dicēs, qvotiēs**), except, — *a.* The nominatives sing. of the third declension, which have in the gen. **ĕtis, ĭtis, ĭdis** (**segĕs, milĕs, obsĕs**); the following, however, with **ĕtis** in the gen., have **es** long: **abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.** *b.* Compounds of **ĕs** (from **sum**), **adĕs, abĕs, potĕs.** *c.* The preposition **penĕs.** *d.* Greek nominatives plur. of the third declension in *ες* (**cratērĕs, Arcădĕs**). *e.* Greek neuters in *ες* (**Cynosargĕs, Hippomanĕs**).

3. **is** is short (**ignĭs, regĭs, facilĭs, dicĭs**), excepting, *a.* in the dat. and abl. plur. (**mensīs, puerīs, nobīs, vobīs**), and in the accus. plur. of the third declension (**omnīs** for **omnēs**); *b.* in **gratīs** (**gratiis**), **forīs**; *c.* in the second pers. sing. pres. of the fourth conjugation (**audīs**), and in the verbs **vīs, sīs** (**adsīs, possīs,** &c.), **fīs, velīs, nolīs, malīs,** and often in the second person of the future perfect and perfect subjunctive (**amaverĭs**); *d.* in the nominatives **Qvirīs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Eleusīs, Simoīs.**

4. **os** is long (**honōs, multōs, illōs**), except in **compŏs, impŏs,** and in the Greek termination of cases in *ος* (**Delŏs,** nom. **Erinnyŏs,** gen.).

5. **us** is short (**annŭs, tempŭs, vetŭs, fontibŭs, legimŭs, tenŭs, funditŭs**) except, *a.* in the gen. sing. and nom. and acc. plur. of the fourth declension (**senatūs,** but in the nom. sing. **senatŭs**); *b.* in the nominatives of the third declension, which have long **u** in the genitive (**virtūs, virtūtis; palūs, palūdis; tellūs, tellūris**); *c.* in the Greek gen. *ους* in the third declension (**Sapphūs**), and in some Greek proper names with *ους* in the nom. (**Panthūs, Melampūs**), but (**Oedipŭs, Oedipi**).

6. **ys,** in Greek words, is short; e.g. **Cotўs.**

§ 21. 1. All words of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (**ā, ē, nē,** *that not;* **dā**); only those particles which are attached to the end of other words are short (**qvĕ, vĕ,** and the interrogative **nĕ**).

2. Of words of one syllable which end in a consonant, it is to be observed, —

a. Those which are declined or conjugated follow the general rules for final syllables (**dās, flēs, scīs, dăt, stăt, flĕt, qvĭs** nom. **ĭs, ĭd, hīs, qvīs** dat. and abl., **qvī, qvōs, qvās, hōc, hāc**); **es** from **sum** is short, from **ĕdo** long.

ntives and adjectives are long (ōs,
, plūs), even if the radical vowel
săl, pēs, mās, bōs, vās, gen. vădis,
os, gen. ossis, are short. The pro-
; hoc is long.
short (ăb, ŏb, pĕr, ăt, qvŏt, nĕc);
nōn, qvīn, sīn, crās, cūr, and the

făc, and fĕr, retain the quantity of

vowel is long by *position*, when it
or a double consonant (amabūnt,
ends in a consonant, while the next,
r word, begins with a consonant
); or when the next syllable of the
onants which are not a mute and
): j, when standing between two
pronunciation. But it does not
nds of jugum (bĭjugus, qvadrĭju-

me word begins with a mute and
io debilis) results, i.e. the syllable
ort; e.g. pătris, tenĕbrae, mediŏ-
cla, as in this verse of Ovid (Met.
is volŭcri, mox vera volūcris;
n. II. 663): Natum ante ora pă-
aras. (We always have ōb-rēpo,
nd the liquid belong severally to
the vowel be long by nature, the
without any reference to the posi-
ambulācrum, delūbrum.)

er, every-day use, as well as the prac-
hed a certain custom, so that in some
d, as in the inflected cases of nĭger and
r, as in arbĭtror. In prose, that sylla-
positio debilis is always pronounced

position is also formed by a mute with
ne).
hort vowel, and the following begins

with two consonants or a double consonant, no lengthening by position takes place (**praemĭa scribae, ilicĕ glandis, nemorosă Zacynthos**).

Obs. 4. The oldest poets (before Virgil and Horace) often allow **s** as a final consonant (on account of a certain weakness in the pronunciation) to form no position with the following initial consonant; e.g. **certissimŭs nuntiŭs mortis**, or **certissimu' nuntiu' mortis**.

Obs. 5. Since the lengthening of syllables by position is quite distinct from the proper length of the vowels, the older Comic poets have often thought themselves justified in disregarding it.

Obs. 6. The poets allow themselves, in certain defined cases, to supply the place of a long syllable in a verse with a short one; but this is founded on the structure of the verse, not on the nature of the syllable. (See § **502.** *a*.)

§ 23. In every word, the accent falls on a particular syllable, and is either acute or circumflex, but is not distinguished in writing. (In books of instruction, the acute accent is designated by **ĺ**, the circumflex by **l̂**).

Monosyllables have the circumflex accent, if the vowel is long by nature; otherwise, the acute accent.

In words of more than one syllable, the last (**ultima**) is never accentuated. In dissyllables, therefore, the accent falls on the first. In words of three or more syllables, it falls on the penult, if this be long; but if this be short, on the antepenult. The accent on the penult is a circumflex, if the vowel be long by nature (not the syllable only by position) and the last syllable short; otherwise, an acute; on the antepenult it is never a circumflex (**Rômă, Rómā, hŏ́mo, léctus; Românus, Románās, Metéllus, mŏ́ribus, carmĭ́nibus, hŏ́minēs**).

Obs. 1. In compounds of **facio** with other words than prepositions (**palamfacio, calefacio**), the accent always remains on **facio** (**calefăcit**).

Obs. 2. If a new word is formed by the addition of **qve**, the accent follows the general rule (**ítaqve, utérqve**); but if **qve, ne, ve**, are attached to a word as enclitics, the accent is thrown on the last syllable of the word (**ităqve** = **et ita, Musâqve** in the abl., **Musăqve** in the nom.).

OF THE INFLECTION OF WORDS.

CHAPTER I.

S OF WORDS. INFLECTION, STEM, AND ENDING.

s (**verba** or **voces**) are divided according to their in speech into certain *Classes* (**partes orationis**, *ls = parts of speech*).

l by which a thing (a conception) is expressed inde- alled a NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, **nomen substantivum**, tia, *existence*): e.g. **vir**, *the man*; **domus**, *the house*; *m.* It either denotes a thing with reference to its eneral idea, which may comprise a number of indi- (an APPELLATIVE or common noun, **nomen appella-** **orpus, ovis, flos**; or a single defined object without kind or the general idea (a PROPER NAME, **nomen** . **Lucius, Sempronius, Roma.**

l by which a thing is named and defined according y or attribute appertaining to it, is called a NOUN **men adjectivum**; e.g. **magnus**, *great.* When joined ive, it forms a descriptive appellation; e.g. **vir mag-** rty itself is expressed by **magnitudo**).

and Adjectives are comprised in the class of NOUNS. ch denotes a number, is called a NUMERAL, **nomen** l is usually an adjective, inasmuch as it serves to g by its number; e.g. **tres homines.** The number, be conceived and described as a thing by itself, and n a substantive; e.g. **millia**, *thousands.*

aming an object, we may designate it by pointing to n which it stands. An indicative word of this kind NOUN: e.g. **hic**, *this here*; **ille**, *that there*; **ego**, *I*; **tu**, un may either be employed alone, to denote the idea, ands as a substantive, e.g. **ego, tu, hic**; or it may be a substantive to define it more precisely, and then it , e.g. **hic, vir, illa, domus.**

nerals and pronouns are not distinct classes of words in as the rest, since their use in the sentence is not different other **nomina**; they belong, therefore, to the class of r inflection, they have some peculiarities.

Obs. 2. The Latin language does not distinguish, like the English and many other languages, by the addition of a word (the article), whether a substantive is intended to denote a definite person or thing, or an indefinite one amongst several of the same kind: e.g. **vir**, *the man*, and *a man*; **viri**, *the men*, and simply *men*, — as the context may determine.

3. A VERB is that word which expresses the idea of an action, or condition of a thing, and thus forms an assertion, or proposition: e.g. **vir sedet**, *the man sits*; **puer currit**, *the boy runs*. (The action or condition in itself is called **sessio, cursus**.)

From the verb are derived certain forms, which are used as nouns, either to denote the action or condition more independently, e.g. **legendo**, *by reading*; or to specify and describe some object, to which the action or condition appertains as a quality: e.g. **liber lectus**, *the book read*; **vir legens**, *the man reading*. The substantive forms are called the Supine and Gerund; the adjective form is termed the Participle.

4. An ADVERB is a word which serves only for a stricter definition of a description (with an adjective), or of an assertion (with a verb): e.g. **vir valde magnus**, *a very great man*; **eqvus celeriter currit**, *the horse goes swiftly*.

5. Words which only denote a relation to a thing are called PREPOSITIONS (from **praeponere**, *to put before*): e.g. **in**, *in*; **apud**, *with*; or *at the house of*; as, **in urbe**, *in the town*.

6. CONJUNCTIONS mark the combination of individual words or whole sentences, and their connection in discourse: e.g. **et**, *and*; as, **vir et femina**, *the man and the woman*; **vir sedet et puer currit**.

Obs. Prepositions, conjunctions, and the adverbs derived from pronouns, are also called Particles. The same word may at one and the same time show the connection of two propositions, and by this connection define the assertion more exactly (e.g. **tum venit, qvum ego absum**), so that certain adverbs and conjunctions are intimately connected with each other.

7. The INTERJECTIONS are mere sounds, which are called forth by certain feelings, but represent no idea; as, *ah!* They are therefore only improperly called words.

§ 25. Nouns and verbs are inflected (**flectuntur, declinantur**); i.e. altered in their form, in order to denote the various connections and relations of words in a proposition, and the various kinds of propositions. The change generally takes place only in the last part of the word; the remaining part is more rarely varied either

ation (**vēni** from **vĕnio**), or by a prefix (**tetigi** from

bs, only a few have a certain inflection (that of com- remaining adverbs, with the prepositions, conjunc- jections, are indeclinable.

n sprung in part from the custom of subjoining certain pronunciation gradually became incorporated with those they were appended, and could no longer be distin- the personal endings of the verbs originated from pro- art from the pronunciation alone, which varied according ich an idea was conceived or combined with other ideas: ated the lengthening of the radical vowel (**vēni**), or the tigi) in the perfect.

hich remains of a word capable of inflection, after minations or affixes are removed, is called the STEM, gnification of the word properly belongs: e g. **ama-** **-i, amator-es**; **leg** in **leg-o, leg-is, leg-unt**. In rds, the stem does not appear alone, but only as ne termination. The stem and termination are fre- porated that one or both undergo some modification.

e *stem*, we must distinguish the *root*; i.e. the original, ord, which has received no accession of any kind. For only have terminations of inflection, but are previously r words by derivation and composition.

CHAPTER II.

AND INFLECTION BY CASES (declinatio) IN GENERAL.[1]

atin substantives are considered as being either of gender or the Feminine, or neither of the two: the nprised under the appellation Neuter gender. The articiples have generally different forms, according of the substantive to which they belong: e.g. masc. *great man*; fem. **femina magna**, *a great woman*;

---

rly signifies any grammatical inflection, but is now more particularly l sense.

neutr. **folium magnum**, *a great leaf*. In some words, the gender may be determined from the signification, but in by far the greater number it must be inferred from the termination.

Obs. 1. The names of things, which have not, like living creatures, any actual sex, are often referred to the masculine or feminine gender, because in certain relations of things the imagination discovered a resemblance with male or female qualities. But this comparison was very fortuitous, so that no fixed rule can be founded on it; and one often fails to perceive the ground for the determination, especially as in many instances words have changed their signification. From the termination, on the other hand, we can draw an inference as to the gender; because many derivative and some inflectional endings (especially in the nom. and accus.) have been applied according to the gender of the words.

Obs. 2. The gender of some words may be explained from the consideration, that they are properly adjectives, in which case regard is had to an omitted substantive; so, for instance, **annalis** is masc. because **liber** is masc. Greek words generally retain the same gender which they have in Greek.

§ 28, *a*. The following are Masculine, without reference to the ending. All general and particular appellations of men and beings of the male sex (**vir**, *the man*; **scriba**, *the clerk*; **consul**, *the consul*; **poeta**, *the poet*; **Deus**, *God*; **genius**, *the genius*); the male of animals (**aries**, *the ram*; **verres**, *the boar*; **taurus**, *the bull*); and the names of rivers and winds (**Tiberis**, **Albis**, **Sequăna**, **Garumna**, **Creměra**, **Etesiae**). Of rivers, some few in **a** are excepted, particularly **Allia** (**Matrŏna**, **Albula**) and the imaginary rivers **Lethe** and **Styx** in the lower world, which are feminine; with some of barbarous origin (i.e. neither Latin nor Greek) in **r**, (e.g. **Elaver**), which are neuter.

Obs. 1. Words which are only improperly used of a man, and strictly denote an impersonal object, are regulated by their termination and proper meaning: as, **mancipium**, *a slave* (strictly, *property*); **acroāma**, *a flute-player* or *jester* (strictly, *entertainment for the ear*). So also words which are used in an improper sense of men taken collectively: e.g. **vigiliae**, *sentinels*; **auxilia**, *auxiliary troops*.

Obs. 2. The names of the months are masculine, as adjectives belonging to the word **mensis** understood, which is masculine; e.g. **Aprīlis** (frequently **mensis Aprilis**).

b. The following are Feminine. All appellations of women and female beings: **uxor**, *the wife*; **soror**, *the sister*; **socrus**, *the mother-in-law*; **Dea**, *the goddess*; **nympha**, *the nymph*. The only excep-

tions are the terms of reproach **scortum** and **prostibulum**, which originally did not signify a person.

Obs. The names of trees and towns with certain endings are also fem- ough these endings do not otherwise imply this gender. (See nd *c*, and § 47.)

General names of persons, in which the distinction of sex ought of, are masculine; e.g. **hostis**, *enemy:* but some nay be used as feminines, if a woman be expressly referred hese are therefore called Common; e.g. **civis Gaditanus, ditana.** Such words are **adolescens**, *a young man* or **affinis**, *a male* or *female relative;* **antistes**, *a priest* or (though the latter is commonly expressed by **antistita**); *rtist;* **civis**, *citizen;* **comes**, *attendant;* **conjux**, *husband* (generally the latter); **dux**, *leader* (male or female); *ir* or *heiress;* **hostis**, *enemy;* **infans**, *infant;* **interpres**, *r;* **municeps**, *citizen* (of the same municipal town); *ostage;* **parens**, *father or mother;* **patruēlis**, *cousin;* *priest* or *priestess;* **satelles**, *body-guard;* **vates**, *seer.*

. The poets use also as common, — **auctor**, *author;* **augur**, ; **custos**, *guardian;* **hospes**, *host* or *guest* (the feminine is **spita**); **judex**, *judge;* **juvenis**, *youth;* **miles**, *soldier;* **par**, **testis**, *witness.*

. Some other words, though used sometimes of persons of the ., and in apposition to feminine substantives, are never them- nd as feminine substantives with an adjective; e.g. **index, vin- la (vox index stultitiae).**

. The names of the different classes and species of ani- e usually a particular gender, either masculine or fem- nich is known by the termination, without reference to l sex of the animal named: e.g. the masculines, **cancer,** rvus, *raven;* **passer**, *sparrow;* **piscis**, *fish;* and the , **avis**, *bird;* **anas**, *duck;* **aqvila**, *eagle;* **feles**, *cat;* ox. These are called epicene (**epicoena**[1]). The actual he particular animal is denoted by the addition of le), or **femina** (female): e.g. **anas mas**, *drake* (also with ctive **masculus, anas mascula**); **vulpes femina**, *fox*

1 Ἐπίκοινα, common to both genders.

b. Several names of classes of animals, usually masculine, are also (as nouns of common gender) used as feminine, if it be intended specially to designate a female, particularly **bos**, *ox;* in the fem. *cow;* and, occasionally, **lepus, mus, elephantus, anser;** e.g. **mures praegnantes repertae sunt** (Plin. Maj.).

c. The names of some species of animals are used (without reference to the individual) both in the masculine and the feminine (of uncertain gender), as **angvis**, *snake;* **canis**, *dog;* **camēlus**, *camel;* **dama**, *deer;* **grus** (almost always feminine), *crane;* **serpens**, *serpent;* **sus** (usually feminine), *boar*, or *sow;* **talpa** (generally masculine), *mole;* **tigris**, *tiger.* They are always used as feminines when a female is expressly spoken of.

Obs. From the name of some species of animals, a proper feminine form is derived to denote the female: e.g. **agnus**, *lamb*, **agna**; **cervus**, *stag*, **cerva**, *hind;* **eqvus**, *horse*, *stallion*, **eqva**, *mare;* **gallus**, *cock;* **gallina**, *hen.* On the other hand, from the feminines **simia**, *ape;* **colŭbra**, *snake;* **lacerta**, *lizard;* **luscinia**, *nightingale*, — which are generally used as epicenes of the whole class, — a masculine form, **simius, coluber, lacertus, luscinius**, is sometime given. (**Columba** and **columbus**, *dove*, as a class; **columbus**, the male; **columba**, the female.)

§ 31. The following are Neuter. All indeclinable substantives: e.g. **fas**, *right;* **nefas**, *wrong;* **gummi**, *gum;* and all words which are used as substantives, without being actually such; e.g. **scire tuum**, *your knowledge;* also every word quoted with a view to its form merely: e.g. **hoc ipsum diu**, *this very word* DIU; **arx est monosyllabum**, ARX *is a monosyllable.* For this reason, also, the names of the letters are neuter; though they are sometimes used as feminine, with a reference to **littera** understood.

Obs. So likewise the names of ships and dramatic compositions, even though they be not feminine, take feminine adjectives; **navis**, *the ship;* or **fabula**, *the play*, being understood (**per synesim**, according to the signification); e.g. **Eunuchus acta est** (Svet.), *the play entitled Eunuchus;* **Centauro invehitur magna** (Virg.), *the great ship Centaur.* (The same occurs, though more rarely, and only in some particular writers, with the names of plants, **herba** being understood.)

§ 32. The Latin language distinguishes between the Singular and the Plural.

In order to express the connection and relations of ideas, nouns

ASES (**casus**; strictly, *falls*); **casus nominati-**
thing is named); **accusativus** (which denotes
ion; e.g. **pater castigat filium**, *the father chas-*
tivus (by which a person is called to); **geni-**
es a connection or possession; e.g. **domus patris,**
dativus (which denotes the person to whom
e.g. **pater dat filio librum**, *the father gives his*
vus (which denotes means, place, circumstances,
h the spear).

do not, however, have different forms for all numbers. In the plural, the dative and ablative In all neuter words, the nominative and accusa- ie same. The vocative is distinguished from only a very few genuine Latin words (in the never in the plural, or in words of the neuter

tive and vocative are termed **casus recti**, the others
usative, both in its form and application, is more
nominative than to the other cases.

ndings are not the same in all words.
nds of inflection or DECLENSIONS, of which the

	SINGULAR		
II.	III.	IV.	V.
us, er	s, (or	ūs	es
ı. um	undetermined).	N. u	
) —	—	—	—
um	em (im)	um, u	em
	N. like the nom.		
	is	ūs	ei
)	i	ui, u	ei
)	e (i)	u	e
	PLURAL.		
N. a	es, N. a (ia)	ūs, N. ua	es
N. a	es, N. a (ia)	ūs, N. ua	es
s, N. a	—	—	—
rum	um (ium)	uum	ērum
s	ibus	ibus (ubus)	ēbus
s	ibus	ibus (ubus)	ēbus

Obs. 1. There are properly but two series of endings; but they are connected in different ways with the stem, and also occasionally intermixed. In the first and second declension, the endings, which were originally alike, have become united with the last vowel of the stem (in the first declension **a**, in the second **u**, according to the older pronunciation **ŏ**), or have expelled it. The third and fourth declensions have the same endings: but in the third declension, the stem ends in a consonant; in the fourth, in **u**. In the fifth declension, the stem ends in **e**; and the endings are partly those of the first and second, partly those of the third declension.

Obs. 2. It cannot always be known by the nominative alone to which declension a word belongs, because this case may have the same ending in different declensions; e.g. **us** in the second, third, and fourth.

Obs. 3. Of the Greek substantives which have been adopted into the Latin language, those which were most frequently used, and were introduced at the earliest period, acquired a completely Latin form, occasionally with some change in the stem. From the Greek word *ποιητής* is formed, for example, the Latin **poēta**; from *χάρτης* (masc.) the Latin **charta** (fem.). Other Greek words, on the contrary, retained their Greek form and ending: e.g. *δυνάστης*, **dynastes**; *Ἀγχίσης*, **Anchīses**. In some of the cases, these words have partially Greek inflections. Writers vary from each other in this respect, sometimes keeping nearer to the Latin, sometimes to the Greek form. Where both are in use, it is better to adhere to the former in writing Latin.

Obs. 4. For the peculiarities in the declension of the numerals and pronouns, see chapters xi. and xii.

CHAPTER III.

FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 34. All originally Latin words of the first declension end in the nominative in **a**, and are declined as follows: —

(**mensa**, *table*; **scriba**, *clerk*.)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	**mens ă**	**mens ae**	**scrib ă**	**scrib ae**
Voc.	**mens ă**	**mens ae**	**scrib ă**	**scrib ae**
Acc.	**mens am**	**mens ās**	**scrib am**	**scrib ās**
Gen.	**mens ae**	**mens ārum**	**scrib ae**	**scrib ārum**
Dat.	**mens ae**	**mens īs**	**scrib ae**	**scrib īs**
Abl.	**mens ā**	**mens īs**	**scrib ā**	**scrib īs**

In this way are declined also the adjectives and participles in **a** (fem.); as, **magna**, *great;* **picta**, *painted;* **mensa rotunda**, *a round table.*

In the older poets, **as** of the gen. sing. is sometimes resolved g. **aulāĭ**, **pictāī** (Virg.).

At a very early period, the gen. sometimes ended in **as**. word **familia**, *family*, when it is compounded with **pater**, us, **filia**, has the gen. **familias**; e.g. **paterfamilias**, *father ly* (acc. **patremfamilias**, gen. **patrisfamilias**, &c.); plur. **ilias**, *fathers of families;* though we find also **paterfamiliae**, **iliarum**.

In the gen. plur. of some words, **um**, archaic (as in the third), is used instead of **arum**, especially **drachmum**, **amphŏrum** ddition of a numeral; **trium amphorum**), for **drachmarum**, um; by the poets also in the words in **gĕna** and **cŏla** (from eget, *to bear;* and **colo**, *to till*); e.g. **terrigena**, *earthborn;* *inhabitant of heaven;* and in patronymics in **des**; e.g. n for **Aeneadarum**; so also in some Greek names of peoples; hum for **Lapitharum**.

Some few words, which have masculines in **us** corresponding the second declension, particularly **dea**, *goddess*, and **filia**, deus, **filius**), rarely **liberta**, *freed-woman* (**libertus**), and a have in the dat. and abl. plur., besides the regular form (**is**), us; e.g. **dis deabusqve omnibus** (Cic.), **cum duabus filiabus** (Liv.).

Concerning the gen. and dat. of **una**, **sola**, and some other n a, see § 37, *Obs.* 2.

REEK FORMS. To the first declension belong some rds and proper names in **e**, **as**, and **es** (η, ας, ης), which hat irregular in the singular (see § 33, *Obs.* 3).

abridgment; **Aeneas**, *a proper name;* **anagnostes**, *reader.*)

epitŏm e	Aene as	anagnost es
epitom e	Aene ă	anagnost ă
epitom en	Aene am	anagnost en
	(Aene an)	(anagnost am)
epitom es	Aene ae	anagnost ae
epitom ae	Aene ae	anagnost ae
epitom e	Aene ă	anagnost ă (anagnost ē).

Obs. 1. The greater number of common nouns in **e**, especially the names of the arts and sciences in **ce** (e.g. **musĭce, logĭce**), have also (and this is to be preferred) the purely Latin form, — **musica, logica, musicam**, &c. Of proper names, some have almost always the Latin form, e.g. **Helĕna, Creta**; others most frequently the Greek, as **Circe**; but in this respect writers differ.

In answer to the question, where? the names of towns always have the Latin genitive; as, **Sinopae**, *at Sinope*.

Obs. 2. The Greek nominative **as** was sometimes changed by the older writers, and in the language of common life to **ă**; e.g. **Mena, Appella**. In the accusative, **am** is most common in prose-writers, **an** in the poets.

Obs. 3. Words in **es** rarely have the Latin form of the nom. in **a**, either in proper names (e.g. **Aeeta**), or in common nouns (e.g. **sophista**, better **sophistes**), except in words which have been completely Latinized, and never have a Greek form; e.g. **poëta**. The voc., besides the termination **ă** (**Atridă**), has also **ē**, when this termination occurs in Greek (in patronymics, e.g. **Atridē**); sometimes **ā** (e.g. **Anchisā**, Virg.).

Obs. 4. Of the proper names in **es**, which in Greek belong to the first declension, some are declined in Latin according to the third (**Aeschines, Apelles**, those in **des** which are not patronymics, e.g. **Alcibiades, Euripides**; and barbaric names, as **Astyages, Xerxes**). In the accus., however, they have likewise **en**; as, in the first declension, **Aeschinem**. Some are found declined in both ways; e.g. **Orestes** (mostly like the third). The common noun **acinăces**, *a sabre*, follows the third declension; **sorītes** (the name of an argument in logic) is declined in the sing. according to the third, in the plural according to the first declension. **Satrăpes**, *a satrap*, which follows the first, has, however, also the gen. **satrapis** (Third Declension).

§ 36. Gender. All substantives of the first declension in **a** are feminine, if they are not appellations of men (as, **scrība**, *clerk*; **nauta**, *sailor*; **collēga**, *colleague*; **aurīga**, *charioteer*; **advena**, *new-comer*); or names of rivers (see § **28**, *a*). **Hadria**, *the Adriatic*, is also masculine. (With respect to **dama, talpa**, see § **30**, *a*.)

Words in **e** are feminine, those in **as** and **es** masculine; e.g. **comētes**. All in **as** are proper names.

CHAPTER IV.

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 37. Words of the second declension end mostly in **us** and (neut.) **um**, some in **er**. They are declined in the following manner:—

SINGULAR.

NOM.	**domin us**, *lord.*	**puer**, *boy.*	**sign um**, *sign.*
VOC.	**domin e**	**puer**	**sign um**
ACC.	**domin um**	**puer um**	**sign um**
GEN.	**domin i**	**puer i**	**sign i**
DAT.	**domin o**	**puer o**	**sign o**
ABL.	**domin o**	**puer o**	**sign o**

PLURAL.

NOM.	**domin i**	**puer i**	**sign a**
VOC.	**domin i**	**puer i**	**sign a**
ACC.	**domin os**	**puer os**	**sign a**
GEN.	**domin ōrum**	**puer ōrum**	**sign ōrum**
DAT.	**domin is**	**puer is**	**sign is**
ABL.	**domin is**	**puer is**	**sign is**

In the same way are declined the adjectives in **us** and **er** (masc.), and **um** (neut.); e.g. **bonus**, *good;* **miser**, *wretched;* **bonum, miserum. Dominus bonus, signum magnum, puer miser.**

Like **puer** is also declined the only word that terminates in **ir**, — **vir**, *the man*, **virum, viri, viro**, — together with its compounds; e.g. **triumvir**, and the national appellation **Trevir**, as well as the adjective **satur**, *sated* (neut. **saturum, saturi**, &c.).

Most words in **er** have the **e** only in the nom. and voc. (where it has been inserted to facilitate the pronunciation), but not in the other cases, where it is dropped before **r**: e.g. **ager**, *the field*, **agrum, agri, agro**, plur. **agri**, &c.; **liber**, *the book*, **librum**, &c. The **e** is retained in the substantives **adulter**, *the adulterer;* **socer**, *the father-in-law;* **gener**, *the son-in-law;* **Liber**, the god Liber, or Bacchus; **liberi, liberorum**, *children;* **puer**, *a boy;* **vesper**, *evening.* In the adjectives **asper**,[1] *rough;* **liber**, *free;* **lacer**, *torn;* **miser**, *wretched;* **prosper**, *prosperous* (better **prosperus**); **tener**, *tender;* and in those which end in **-fer** and **-ger** (from **fero**, *to convey, bring*, and **gero**, *to carry*); **mortifer**, *deadly*, **mortife-**

[1] **Aspris** for **asperis** is found in Virgil.

rum, mortiferi; **alĭger**, *winged*; **armiger**, *armor-bearer*; and in the national appellations, **Iber, Ibērum, Iberi**, and **Celtiber, Celtibērum, Celtiberi**. **Dexter**, *right*, has **dexteri**, and more frequently **dextri**; **Mulciber (Mulceber)**, an epithet of the god Vulcan, **Mulcibĕri** and **Mulcibri**.

Obs. 1. Words in **ius** and **ium** have, according to analogy, **ii** in the gen. In the earlier period, however, only one **i** was used in the substantives (not so in the adjectives); e.g. **Appi**, from **Appius**; **ingĕni, consĭli**, instead of **ingenii, consilii**, from **ingenium**, *genius*, **consilium**, *counsel* (but **egregii**, from **egregius**, *distinguished*); and so always in verse in Virgil and Horace (**Capitoli immobile saxum**; elided, **Capitol' imm.** Virg.). Afterwards, this form became obsolete.

Obs. 2. The following adjectives and pronouns, which in the masc. and neut. follow the second, and in the fem. the first declension: **unus, solus, totus, ullus, nullus, alius, alter, uter, neuter**, with the compounds of **uter** (**uterqve, utercunqve, uterlibet, utervis, alterŭter**), have in all genders **īus** in the gen., and **i** in the dat., — **unīus, solīus totīus, ullīus, nullīus, alīus, alterīus, utrīus, neutrīus, uni, soli, toti, ulli, nulli, alii, alteri, utri, neutri**. (So also in the fem., — **una, unam, unīus, uni**, abl. **unā**.) In verse, the **i** is sometimes made short in the gen., — most frequently so in **alterius (alterĭus)**. The regular forms are very rare: e.g. **alii generis**, in Varro; **aliae pecudis**, in Cicero; **nullo usui**, in Cæsar.

Obs. 3. Words in **ius** (**jus**) have in the voc. not **ie** (**je**), but **i**: e.g. **Mercuri, Gaï** (**Caï**), **Pompeï** (sometimes in verse **Pompei**, as a dissyllable); **Demetri**; **fili**, *son*; **geni**, *guardian spirit*; **Feretri**, from the adj. **Feretrius**. But most common nouns and adjectives (as, **gladius**, *the sword*; **fluvius**, *the river*; **egregius**) have no vocative. Greek adjectives — e.g. **Cynthius**, and proper names in **īus** (also Greek) or **ēus**, εως, e.g. **Arīus** — have **ie**. **Meus** makes **mi** in the voc. **Deus** always has the voc. like the nom. (Compare Syntax, § **299**, *b*, *Obs.* 1.)

Obs. 4. The gen. plur. of some substantives is occasionally formed in **um**, instead of **orum**; viz., of the appellations of money, weights, and measures, — **nummum, sestertium, denarium, talentum, modium, medimnum**, from **nummus**, *a piece of money*; **sestertius**, *a sesterce* (a certain coin); **denarius** (also a coin); **talentum**, *a talent* (a sum of money); **modinus, medimnus**, *a bushel* (especially after **millia**; e.g. **duo millia nummum, decem millia talentum**, but **tantum nummorum**); and of the distributive numerals; e.g. **senum, denum**, from **seni**, *six apiece*; **deni**, *ten apiece*; sometimes also that of the cardinal numbers in **centi (genti)**; e.g. **ducentum pedum**; further, **liberum**, from **liberi**, children; **deum**, from **deus, duumvirum, triumvirum** (also **liberorum**, &c.); and finally of some other words in certain combina-

tions; e.g. **praefectus fabrum**, *prefect of the workmen* (in the army), from **faber**; in the poets also **virum**, from **vir**; and of the names of nations, as **Argivum, Pelasgum**, for **Argivorum, Pelasgorum**. Compare § **34**, *Obs.* 3.

Obs. 5. The word **deus** has the regular **dei, deis**, in the nom. and dat. plural, but more frequently **di, dis**; also, **dii, diis**.

§ 38. Greek Forms. 1. Greek proper names of towns and islands, and some few common nouns, are sometimes found with the Greek termination **ŏs, ŏn**, in the nom. and acc. sing.: e.g. **Delos**, acc. **Delon**; **scorpios**, *a scorpion*; **Pelion** (neut.). In a few solitary instances, we find in names that are very rarely used **oe** (*οι*) in the nom. plur.; e.g. **canephoroe**, *the basket-bearers*; and **ōn** in the gen. plur. of adjectives in the titles of books (e.g. **libri Georgicōn**); and in a few proper names (**colonia Theraeōn**, Sall.). The proper name *Πάνθοος*, contracted *Πάνθους*, is called by Virgil **Panthūs**, voc. **Panthū**.

Obs. 1. Greek proper names in *ρος*, preceded by a consonant, generally have their termination in Latin (in prose always) in **er**; **Alexander, Antipater, Teucer, Meleāger**, gen. **Alexandri**, &c. (Yet we have **Codrus**, and, in the poets, **Evandrus**, and the like.) So also **hexamĕter**, but **diamĕtrus**.

Obs. 2. Greek proper names, which follow the so-called Attic second declension, either take a purely Latin form (e.g. **Tyndarĕŭs**, from *Τυνδάρεως*, or retain some Greek terminations, as in the nom. **Athōs, Androgeōs, Ceōs**, in the accus. **Athōn**. The name of mount Athos is also inflected according to the third declension; **Atho, Athōnem**, and so also **Androgeo, Androgeōnem**.

Obs. 3. Greek proper names in *ευς* (gen. *εως*) are either declined with a Latin form — thus, nom. **Orpheus** (as a dissyllable), accus. **Orpheum**, gen. **Orphei** (and **Orphei**), dat. and abl. **Orpheo** (without a voc.), — or with a Greek form (like the third declension); thus, nom. **Orpheus**, voc. **Orpheu**, acc. **Orphĕă**, gen. **Orphĕŏs**, dat. **Orphĕī** (**Orphei**); but the forms which follow the third declension, with the exception of the accus., are for the most part found only in the poets. The gen. **Achillei** and **Ulixei** (*Ἀχιλλεύς*) are also formed in this way; though **Achilles, Ulixes**, otherwise follow the third declension.

The name **Perseus** (*Περσεύς*) is sometimes declined like **Orpheus**; **Perseus**, acc. **Perseă**, gen. **Persei**, dat. **Perseo** and **Persi** (for **Persei**), abl. **Perseo**; sometimes it has the form of **Perses**, and follows the first declension.

§ 39. GENDER. Words in **us** (**os**) and **r** are masculine, those in **um** (**on**) are neuter.

But of the words in **us**, the following are feminine: —

a. The words **alvus**, *stomach*; **carbăsus**, *linen*; **colus**, *distaff* (rarely masc.); **humus**, *ground*; **vannus**, *winnowing shovel*.

b. The names of towns and islands, — e.g. **Corinthus**, **Rhodus**, — with the following names of countries: **Aegyptus**, **Chersonesus**, **Epirus**, **Peloponnesus**. (These names of places in **us** are all Greek; **Canōpus**, however, is masculine.)

c. The names of all trees and of some shrubs: e.g. **alnus**, *alder*; **fagus**, *beech*; **ficus**, *fig-tree* (also *fig*); **malus**, *apple-tree*; **pirus**, *pear-tree*; **pomus**, *apple-tree*; **populus**, *poplar*; **ulmus**, *elm*, &c.;[1] **buxus**, *box-tree*; **junipĕrus**, *juniper*; **nardus**, *nard* (an odoriferous bush); **papўrus**, *papyrus plant* (rarely masc.); with some Greek names of plants, chiefly ending in **os** (**buglossos**), and the word **balănus**, *acorn*, or *date*.

OBS. Other Latin and Latinized names of plants and flowers are masculine: as, **acanthus**, *acanthus*; **amaranthus**, *amaranth*; **asparăgus**, *asparagus*; **bolētus**, *mushroom*; **calamus**, *straw*, *reed*; **carduus**, *thistle*; **dumus**, *thorn-bush*; **fungus**, *mushroom*; **hellebŏrus**, *hellebore*; **hyacinthus**, *hyacinth*; **pampinus**, *vine* (rarely fem.); **rubus**, *bramble*, &c.

d. Some words originally Greek, which in Greek are feminine, as those compounded with ὁδός: **methŏdus**, *method*; **periŏdus**, *period*; and the words **atŏmus**, *atom*; **antidŏtus**, *antidote* (also **antidŏtum**, neut.); **dialectus**, *dialect*; **diamĕtrus**, *diameter*; **diphthongus**, *diphthong*; **paragrăphus**, *paragraph* (which words are originally adjectives, with a substantive understood); further, the names of most precious stones, e.g. **amethystus**.[2] Lastly **arctos** (the constellation), *the Bear*. **Barbitos**, *lyre*, is both masculine and feminine.

The following in **us** are neuter: **virus**, *poison*; **vulgus**, *the common people* (rarely masc.); and **pelăgus**, *the sea* (τὸ πέλαγος).

---

[1] On the other hand, **pomum**, *apple*; **pirum**, *pear*; **malum**, *apple*. (**Malus**, *a ship's mast*, is masc.) Also **buxum**, *boxwood*.

[2] But **smaragdus**, **beryllus**, **opalus** (and the Latin **carbunculus**), are masculine.

CHAPTER V.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Words of the Third Declension have various endings in the
ve, since they either attach the nominative ending **s** to the
remain without any special ending for that case. The
which the endings are affixed in the other cases, ends with
ant, but is often varied in the nom.; so that, before we can
. word, it is necessary to know, not only the nom., but also
, from one of the other cases; but of this we shall speak
ds (§ 41). (We find the stem by taking the ending **is** from
ive sing.)

ısequence of varying of the stem, words which are different
ther cases may have the same ending in the nom.; e.g.
leath-blow, gen. **caedis**; **miles**, *soldier*, gen. **militis**; **inter-**
erpreter, gen. **interprĕtis.**

est of the declension may be seen from the following exam-
ich show at the same time the different forms of the words,
g as the stem remains unaltered in the nom., or is varied
g an ending and by the pronunciation.

ASCULINE AND FEMININE GENDER.

ords in which the nominative is simply the stem, without
ation whatever, so that the other case-endings are merely
) it.

(**consul**, *consul*; **dolor**, *pain*.)

NG.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
consul	consul es	dolor	dolor es
consul	consul es	dolor	dolor es
consŭl em	consul es	dolōr em	dolor es
consul is	consŭl um	dolor is	dolor um
consul i	consul ibus	dolor i	dolor ibus
consul e	consul ibus	dolor e	dolor ibus

Stems in l or r never have a nominative ending.

rds in which the nominative ending **s** is affixed to the stem,
otherwise unchanged.

(**urbs**, *city*.)

SING.	NOM.	urbs	PLUR.	urb es
	VOC.	urbs		urb es
	ACC.	urb em		urb es
	GEN.	urb is		urb ium
	DAT.	urb i		urb ibus
	ABL.	urb e		urb ibus

Of the termination ium (urb-ium) in the gen. pl., see § 44, 1.

c. Words in which the nom. ending **s** is affixed to the stem with the vowel **i** or **e** (so that **is** and **es** are dropped from the nom. before the other case-endings are added).

(**avis**, *bird*; **caedes**, *murder*.)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	avis	av ēs	caedes	caed es
V.	avis	av es	caedes	caed es
A.	av em	av es	caed em	caed es
G.	av is	av ium	caed is	caed ium
D.	av i	av ibus	caed i	caed ibus
A.	av e (avi)	av ibus	caed e	caed ibus

Obs. 1. These words, the stem of which is found by the rejection of **is** and **es**, are called, to distinguish them from other words of the same declension in **is** and **es**, parisyllables, because they have the same number of syllables in the nom. as in the other cases singular.

Obs. 2. Of the ending **i** in the ablative, see § **42**, 3.

d. Words in which, when the **s** of the nom. is affixed, the stem is also changed by the omission of a consonant (**d** or **t**), or by the passing of **i** into **e**, or in both ways.

(**aetas**, *age*; **judex**, *judge*; **miles**, *soldier*.)

SINGULAR.

Nom.	aetas	judex	miles
Voc.	aetas	judex	miles
Acc.	aetāt em	judĭc em	milĭt em
Gen.	aetat is	judic is	milit is
Dat.	aetat i	judic i	milit i
Abl.	aetat e	judic e	milit e

PLURAL.

Nom.	aetat es	judic es	milit es
Voc.	aetat es	judic es	milit es
Acc.	aetat es	judic es	milit es
Gen.	aetat um	judic um	milit um
Dat.	aetat ibus	judic ibus	milit ibus
Abl.	aetat ibus	judic ibus	milit ibus

Obs. **i** is changed into **e**, because the open syllable becomes a close one. See § **5**, *c*.

c. Words in which the nom., without any termination affixed, deviates from the stem for the sake of the pronunciation.

(**sermo**, *the discourse*; **pater**, *father*; **mōs**, *custom*.)

	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	sermo	pater	mōs
Voc.	sermo	pater	mōs
Acc.	sermōn em	patr·em	mōr em
Gen.	sermon is	patr is	mor is
Dat.	sermon i	patr i	mor i
Abl.	sermon e	patr e	mor e
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	sermon es	patr es	mor es
Voc.	sermon es	patr es	mor es
Acc.	sermon es	patr es	mor es
Gen.	sermon um	patr um	mor um
Dat.	sermon ibus	patr ibus	mor ibus
Abl.	sermon ibus	patr ibus	mor ibus

Obs. In **sermo**, n has been dropped; in **pater**, e has been introduced; in **mos**, s belongs to the stem, and is changed in the gen. into r (§ 8).

2. Neuter Gender. The words of this gender never affix s in the nom., but the stem is sometimes different in the nom. and in the other cases on account of the pronunciation.

a. Words with the stem unchanged.

(**animal**, *animal*.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	animal	animal ia
Voc.	animal	animal ia
Acc.	animal	animal ia
Gen.	animāl is	animal ium
Dat.	animal i	animal ibus
Abl.	animal i	animal ibus

Obs. On the terminstion ia in the plural, see § 43, 1.

b. Words which have the stem different in the nom. and in the other cases.

(**nomen**, *name*; **corpus**, *body*; **lac**, *milk*.)

	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	nomen	corpus	lac
Voc.	nomen	corpus	lac
Acc.	nomen	corpus	lac
Gen.	nomĭn is	corpŏr is	lact is
Dat.	nomin i	corpor i	lact i
Abl.	nomin e	corpor e	lact e

	PLURAL.		
NOM.	**nomin a**	**corpor a**	
VOC.	**nomin a**	**corpor a**	(*not used.*)
ACC.	**nomin a**	**corpor a**	
GEN.	**nomin um**	**corpor um**	
DAT.	**nomin ibus**	**corpor ibus**	
ABL.	**nomin ibus**	**corpor ibus**	

OBS. In **corpus**, **s** is not a mere termination, but belongs to the stem, and is changed in the gen. into **r** (§ **8**). In **lac**, the last consonant of the stem has been dropped in the nom. (§ **10**).

c. Words in **e**, which **e** does not belong to the stem, and is dropped before the other case-endings.

(**mare**, *the sea.*)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	**mare**	**mar ia**
VOC.	**mare**	**mar ia**
ACC.	**mar e**	**mar ia**
GEN.	**mar is**	**mar ium**
DAT.	**mar i**	**mar ibus**
ABL.	**mar i**	**mar ibus**

Many adjectives also follow the third declension, and are declined like those substantives, with which they agree in the nominative and in the form of the stem; e.g. **gravis**, *heavy* (masc. and fem.) like **avis** (but in the ablative only **i**, **gravi**), and **grave** (neut.), like **mare**. **Dolor gravis, corpus grave.** In the neuter gender of adjectives, the accusative is always like the nominative, whatever be the termination of the latter; and the plural, like that of the neuter substantives, is formed in **a** (**ia**).

§ 41. In the third declension, the gender cannot be ascertained from the nom. alone, but from the stem (as seen in the other cases) and the nominative together. There are, however, some forms of the stem and the nom. in which no rule could be given for the gender (especially the masc. and fem.), which would not be liable to numerous exceptions. Of some forms of the stem, only a few, or even single, examples occur.[1]

---

[1] From the nominative alone, only so much can be inferred of the gender, that a word which ends in an **s**, which does not belong to the stem (and consequently is not found in the other cases in the form of **s** or **r**), is either masculine or feminine; but that on the other hand it is neuter, if it neither ends in **s**, nor belongs to one of those forms which never assume **s** for the sake of the pronunciation (as the stems in **l**, **n**, **r**); e.g. **rete**, **caput**.

All names of male and female beings follow the natural gender (according to § 28 and 29), although the form may otherwise properly belong to another gender: e.g. **uxor**, *wife*, feminine; though words in **or**, gen. **ōris**, are otherwise masculine: **Juno**, *the goddess Juno*, fem. (**o**, **ōnis**, masc.); **flamen**, *priest*, masc. (**en**, **ĭnis**, neut.). So also the names of rivers are masculine, without reference to the termination (§ 28).

To the third declension belong a number of Greek or foreign (barbarous) words, which came from the Greeks to the Romans, and which are declined according to the corresponding third declension in Greek; these conform in Latin, in respect both of the stem and gender, to the Greek.

1. The following summary shows what genitives (and hence, at the same time, what stems) correspond to the various nominatives, and also gives the gender for every form of the nom. and of the stem.

The stem of a substantive or adjective, the nominative of which is known, may be often determined from other cognate words, especially verbs, since in them the letters are found which, in the nominative, have been dropped or changed: e.g. **custos**, gen. **custōdis**, *guardian*, because we have **custodio**, *to guard*; **nex**, **necis**, *death*, on account of **neco**, *to kill*; but **grex**, **gregis**, *herd*, on account of **congrego**, *to assemble*.

Nom. **e**, gen. **is**, Neuter; as, **mare**, **maris**, *the sea*.

The abl. of **Praeneste**, the name of a town, is sometimes fem. by synesis; e.g. **Praeneste sub ipsa**. (Compare § 31, *Obs.*)

Nom. **o**, gen. **ōnis**, Masculine; as, **sermo**, **sermōnis**, *discourse*.

But words in **io**, which are derived from verbs or adjectives, are Feminine: e.g. **lectio**, *reading*; **oratio**, *speech*; **legio**, *legion* (from **lĕgo**, *to select*); **regio**, *district* (from **rego**, *to rule*); **natio**, *nation* (from **nascor**, *to be born*); **coenatio**, *dining-room* (from **coeno**, to *dine*); **seditio**, *uproar* (from **eo**, *to go*, and **se**); **communio**, *community* (from **communis**, *common*); **consortio**, *the community* (from **consors**, *participating*). (Other words in **io** are masculine: e.g. **papilio**, *butterfly*; **septentrio**, *north*; **vespertilio**, *bat*; **scipio**, *staff*; **unio**, *pearl*; **senio**, *six*; **ternio**, *three*; so also **pugio**, *dagger*, though from **pungo**.)

Further, some names of (Spanish) towns are feminine: as, **Barcĭno**, *Barcelona*; **Tarrăco**, *Tarragona*. (Other names of towns are masculine; as, **Sulmo**, **Narbo**, **Vesontio**).

Obs. Some names of nations have the gen. **ŏnis**: as, **Macĕdo**, **Sено** (**Laco**, **Lacōnis**; **Io**, **Iōnis**.)

Nom. **o**, gen. **ĭnis** (in **do** and **go**), Feminine: **hirundo, hirundĭnis,** *swallow;* **imago, imagĭnis,** *picture;* **Carthago, Carthagĭnis.**

But the following are masculine: **ordo,** *order;* **cardo,** *hinge;* and usually **margo,** *edge.* (**Cupīdo,** as the name of a god, is masculine; as a common noun, it is masculine in the poets only; in all other cases, feminine.)

Obs. The following words in **do** and **go** have **ōnis,** and are consequently masculine: **praedo,** *robber;* **spado,** *eunuch;* **ligo,** *spade;* **mango,** *slave-dealer;* **harpăgo,** *hook.*

Nom. **o**, gen. **ĭnis** (without a preceding **d** or **g**), masculine: **turbo,** *whirlwind;* and besides, only **homo,** *man;* **nemo,** *no one;* and the name **Apollo.**

The feminine, **caro,** *flesh,* gen. **carnis,** stands by itself.

Nom. **c**, Neuter; as, **lac, lactis,** *milk.*

(Besides **lac,** we have only the word **alec, alēcis,** *brine,* from fish, which has also the form **alex, alēcis,** fem.)

Nom. **al**, gen. **ālis**, Neuter; as, **animal, animālis,** *the animal.*

Sal, *salt* (which is masculine, rarely neuter in the sing.), has **sălis,** So also foreign proper names; as, **Hannibal, Hannibălis.**

The following substantives in **l** are to be noticed separately: the neuters, **fel,** *gall;* **mel,** *honey;* **fellis, mellis.** The masculine, **sōl, sōlis,** *the sun;* some masculine names of persons in **sul**: **consul,** *consul;* **exsul,** *exile;* **praesul,** *leader in a dance;* **consŭlis,** &c.; with **pugil,** *boxer,* **pugĭlis**; and **vigil,** *sentinel,* **vigĭlis** (as an adjective, *watchful*).[1]

Nom. **en**, gen. **ĭnis**, Neuter; as, **nomen, nomĭnis,** *the name.*

The following are masculine: **pecten,** *comb;* and, from their signification, **flamen,** *priest;* **cornĭcem,** *horn-blower;* **fidĭcen,** *harper;* **tibĭcen,** *flute-player;* **tubĭcen,** *trumpeter.*

Nom. **en**, gen. **ēnis**, Masculine; as, **ren, rēnis,** *the kidney* (commonly only in the plur., **renes**).

Obs. Besides this, only the following are similarly declined: **lien,** *spleen;* and the Greek words **splen,** *spleen;* **lichen,** a disease of the skin; **attăgen,** *partridge;* **Anien,** the name of a river (in the nom. likewise **Anio**); with the feminines **Siren,** *Siren;* and **Troezen,** a Greek town.

---

[1] **Mugil, mugilis,** a kind of fish; also, nom. **mugilis,** with the nominative termination **is.**

Nom. **ar**, gen. **āris**, Neuter; as, **calcar, calcāris**, *spur*.

The following (also neuter) have the gen. **āris**: **baccar**, a kind of plant; **jubar**, *radiance*; **nectar**, *nectar*; and the masculine names **Caesar**, **Hamilcar**, **Arar**, *the Saone*; and **lar, lāris**, *household god*.

The following, which are neuters, are to be separately noticed: **far farris**, *corn*; and the Greek word **hepar, hepătis**, *liver*.

Nom. **er**, gen. **ĕris**, Masculine; as, **carcer, carcĕris**, *prison*.[1]

But the following are neuter: **cadāver**, *corpse*; **tuber**, *swelling* (also *truffle*); **uber**, *udder*; **verber** (only in the plur. **verbera**), *blow*. And all botanical names: e.g. **acer**, *maple*; **papaver**, *poppy*; **piper**, *pepper*. **Tuber**, a kind of apple, is masculine. (**Mulier**, *woman*, fem.)

Nom. **er**, gen. **ris**, Masculine; as, **venter, ventris**, *belly*.

Linter, *boat*, is feminine (so **mater**, *mother*).

In the same way are declined **imber**, *shower*, and all ending in **ter** (except only **later, lateris**, masc., *brick*).

We must notice separately the two neuters, **iter, itinĕris**, *journey*; and **ver, vēris**, *spring*; with the name of the god **Jupiter** (**Jovem**), **Jovis**, &c. (The nom. is compounded of the old name and the word **pater**.)

Nom. **or**, gen. **ōris**, Masculine; as, **dolor, dolōris**, *pain*.

The following are feminine, by reason of their signification: **soror**, *sister*; **uxor**, *wife*.

Obs. The words **honor**, *honor*, and **lepor**, *wit*, have frequently, in older writers (Cicero), the nom. **honos** and **lepos**; so also occasionally other words, if they are not derived from verbs; e.g. **labor**, *labor*, **labos**.

Nom. **or**, gen. **ŏris**, Neuter; as, **aequor, aequŏris**, *the surface of the sea*.

(So **marmor**, *marble*; **ador**, *spelt*.) **Arbor** (**arbos**), *tree*, is feminine.

The following is to be separately noticed: **cor, cordis**, *heart*, neuter.

Nom. **ur**, gen. **ŭris**, Neuter: as, **fulgur, fulgŭris**, *lightning*; **Tibur**, *the city Tibur*.

The following are masculine: **furfur**, *bran*; **turtur**, *turtle-dove*; **vultur**, *vulture*; and, from its signification, **augur**, *a soothsayer*.

---

[1] Also the two Greek words, **aēr, aethēr**.

Nom. **ur**, gen. **ŏris**, Neuter; as, **robur, robŏris**, *strength.*

Of this kind, we have only the following: **ebur**, *ivory*; **femur**, *thigh*; **jecur**, *liver*.

Fur, fūris, *thief*, masc. from its signification, is to be separately noticed.

Nom. **as**, gen. **ātis**, Feminine; as, **aetas, aetātis**, *age.*

Anas, *the duck*, has **anătis**, fem.

The following are to be separately noticed: the masculines, **as, assis** *an as* (a copper coin); **mas, măris**, *male*; **vas, vădis**, *surety*; and the neuter, **vas, vāsis**, *vessel* (in the plur. **vasa, vasorum**, see § **5**, 6).

Nom. **es**, gen. **is**, Feminine: as, **caedes, caedis**, *murder.*

Palumbes, *wood-pigeon*, masc. and fem.; **vepres**, *thorn-bush* (not used in the nom., commonly in the plural), masc. **Verres**, *boar*, and the names of rivers, — e.g. **Euphrates**, — are masc. from the signification.

Obs. Some words in **es**, gen. **is**, have also **is** in the nom., with the same gender; e.g. **aedes**, *temple*; **feles**, *cat*; **vulpes**, *fox*; and **aedis, felis, vulpis.**

Nom. **es**, gen. **ĭtis**, Masculine; as, **miles, milĭtis**, *soldier.*

Ales, *bird* (properly an adjective, *winged*), is masculine and feminine; **merges**, *sheaf*, feminine.[1]

Nom. **es**, gen. **ĕtis**, Masculine or Feminine: as, **paries, parĭĕtis**, *wall*, masculine; **seges, segĕtis**, *corn-field*, feminine.

Besides the above, the following are masc. from their signification: **aries**, *ram*; **interpres**, *interpreter*. **Abies**, *fir*, and **teges**, *mat*, are feminine.

The following are to be separately noticed: the masculines, **bes, bessis**, *two-thirds of an as*; **pes, pĕdis**, *foot* (with its compounds; as, **sesqvipes**, *a foot and a half*); **praes, praedis**, *surety*; **obses**, *hostage*; and **praeses**, *protector*; **obsĭdis, praesĭdis**; **heres, herēdis** (common), *heir* or *heiress*: the feminines, **merces, mercēdis**, *wages*; **qvies, qviētis**, *rest* (**reqvies**, *rest, recreation*); **Ceres, Cerĕris**, the goddess *Ceres*.

Obs. From **pes** comes the feminine **compes** (generally **compĕdes**, plur.), *fetters*; the adjective **qvadrupes** is used for any quadruped as a feminine or neuter substantive. As a feminine, it seems to have refer-

---

[1] Like **miles** are declined the personal names **antistes, comes, eqves, hospes, pedes, satelles, veles**; and of other substantives, **ames, cespes, fomes, gurges, limes, merges, palmes, poples, stipes, termes, trames, tudes.**

ence to **bestia**; as a neuter, to **animal**. It is also used as a masculine substantive when a horse is spoken of.

The neuter, **aes, aeris**, *copper*, must be separately noticed.

Nom. **is**, gen. **is**, Masculine or Feminine: as, **piscis, piscis**, *fish*; **avis, avis**, *bird*.

The following are masculine: **amnis**, *river*; **axis**, *axle*; **callis**, *path* (rarely fem.); **canalis**, *conduit*; **cassis**, *a huntsman's net* (generally **casses**, plur.); **caulis**, *stalk*; **collis**, *hill*; **crinis**, *hair*; **ensis**, *sword*; **fascis**, *fagot*; **finis**, *end, boundary* (rarely fem., and that only in the singular signifying *end*); **follis**, *bellows*; **funis**, *rope*; **fustis**, *club*; **ignis**, *fire*; **mensis**, *month*; **orbis**, *circle*; **panis**, *bread*; **piscis**, *fish*; **postis**, *door-post*; **scrobis**, *ditch* (also **scrobs**, sometimes fem.); **sentis**, *thorn-bush*; **torqvis**, *collar* (also **torqves**, rarely fem.); **torris**, *firebrand*; **ungvis**, *nail*; **vectis**, *lever*; **vermis**, *worm*. Further, some words originally adjectives, which are used as substantives, and with which a masculine substantive is understood: **annalis**, *the year-book* (**liber**); **natalis**, *birthday* (**dies**; also **natales, natalium**, *descent*); **molaris**, *mill-stone* (**lapis**), *grinder* (**dens**); **pugillares, pugillarium**, *writing-tablets* (**libri**). Further, the compounds of **as**: e.g. **decussis**, *ten asses*; **manes, manium**, *spirits of the dead*; **Lucretilis**, the name of a mountain. (So also from their signification, **hostis, testis**, and the names of rivers; as, **Tiberis**.)

The following are more frequently masculine than feminine: **angvis**, *snake*; **canis**, *dog*; the following sometimes one, sometimes the other: **corbis**, *basket*; **clunis**, *the hind leg*.

The rest are feminine.

Obs. Here, too, may be noticed the Greek words in **sis** (also feminine) which are derived from verbs: e.g. **poēsis**; the names of towns ending in **polis**: as, **Neapolis**; and some few other words and feminine proper names.

Nom. **is**, gen. **ĕris**, Masculine; as, **cinis, cinĕris**, *ashes*.

Obs. In this way are declined only **cucumis**, *cucumber*, more rarely **cucumis**, in the gen.; **pulvis**, *dust*; and **vomis**, *ploughshare*, which has more frequently the form **vomer**.[1]

Nom. **is**, gen. **ĭdis**, Feminine; as, **cuspis, cuspĭdis**, *the point of a spear*.

Lapis, *stone*, is masculine; also, from their signification, the names of rivers; as, **Phasis**.

---

[1] The **s** in these words belongs to the stem, and has been changed into **r** in the genitive.

Obs. Only a very few Latin words have this termination: e.g. **cassis** *helmet;*[1] but it belongs to various Greek words, which have been adopted in Latin: e.g. **pyramis**, *pyramid;* **tyrannis**, *tyranny;* and several names of men and women. **Ibis, ibidis**, *ibis*, has in the plural **ibes, ibium.** **Tigris**, *tiger*, has in the gen. both **tigridis**, fem., and **tigris**, masc. and fem.; in the plur. **tigres, tigrium.**

The following in **is** are to be separately noticed: the masculines **sangvis**, *blood;* **pollis**, *fine flour* (not used in the nom.); **sangvĭnis, pollĭnis; glis, glīris**, *dormouse;* **semis, semissis**, *half an as:* the feminines, **lis, lītis**, *lawsuit;* **vis**, *force*, without a genitive. (See § **55**, 2.)

Obs. The Greek names **Salamis, Salamīnis**, feminine, and **Simoïs, Simoëntis** (a river), masculine.

Like **lis** are declined the proper name **Dis**, the adjective **dis**, and the national names **Qviris** and **Samnis.**

Nom. **os**, gen. **ōris**, Masculine; as, **mos, mōris**, *manner.*

Os, ōris, *the mouth*, is neuter.

Nom. **os**, gen. **ōtis**; **cos, cōtis**, *whetstone*, and **dos**, *dowry*, are feminine: **rhinoceros** is masculine. So also, from their signification, **nepos**, *grandson;* **sacerdos**, *priest.*

The following are to be separately noticed: **custos, custōdis**, *watchman*, masc.; **bōs, bŏvis**, *cattle*, common; **ŏs, ossis**, *bone*, neuter.

Nom. **us**, gen. **ūtis**, Feminine; as, **virtus, virtūtis**, *virtue.*

Nom. **us**, gen. **ūdis**, Feminine; as, **palus, palūdis**, *marsh.*

(Like **palus** are declined **incus**, *anvil*, and the following with a diphthong: **laus, laudis**, *praise;* **fraus**, *deceit.*[2]) **Pecus**, *a head of cattle*, has **pecŭdis.** (See also **pecus, pecoris**, neut., § **56**, 7.)

Nom. **us**, gen. **ĕris**, Neuter; as, **genus, genĕris**, *a kind, race.*[3]

Venus (the goddess so called) is feminine.

Nom. **us**, gen. **ŏris**, Neuter; as, **corpus, corpŏris**, *body.*

Lepus, *hare*, is masculine.

Nom. **us**, gen. **ūris**, Neuter; as, **jus, jūris**, *right, law.*

Mus, *mouse*, is masculine; **tellus**, *the earth*, feminine. **Ligus**, *a*

---

[1] **Capis, promulsis.**

[2] **Subscus.**

[3] Like **genus** are declined **acus**, *chaff;* **foedus, funus, glomus, latus, munus, olus, onus, opus, pondus, rudus, scelus, sidus, ulcus, vellus, viscus, vulnus.** Like **corpus** are declined **decus** (**dedecus**), **facinus, fenus, frigus, littus, nemus, pecus** (see **us**, gen. **udis**), **pectus, penus** (see § **56**, 7), **pignus, stercus, tempus, tergus** (commonly **tergum, tergi**). From **pignus** we have also **pigneris.** Like **jus** are declined the monosyllables **crus, pus, rus, tus.**

ns, has **Lĭgŭris.** (**Lemŭres**, *ghosts*, occurs only in the plu-

following must be separately noticed: **sus**, *sow*; **grus**, *crane*; **rus**, mostly fem., rarely masc.[1]

. **ns**, gen. **ntis**, Masculine; as, **mons, montis**, *the mountain*; **lentis**, *tooth*.

. Some words belonging to this class are properly Participles, with a masculine substantive is understood: as, **oriens**, *east*; **occi-***dent*, — **sol** being understood.

following are feminine: **gens**, *family* or *race*; **lens**, *lentils*; *intellect, mind*; **frons**, *forehead*; **bidens**, *a sheep of two years* **dens**, *the axe*, is masc.). **Serpens**, *serpent* (properly a parti- is usually feminine (**bestia**), rarely masculine (**angvis**). **Ani-** *living being*, is feminine, in the plural also neuter (**animantia**); ng *a rational being*, it is masculine. **Continens**, *the continent*, lly feminine (**terra**), rarely neuter. The rare philosophical ns, *the being*; **consequens**, *the conclusion*; **accidens**, *an acci-* logic), are neuter.

. **ns**, gen. **ndis**, Feminine; as, **glans, glandis**, *acorn*.

, **juglans**, *walnut*; **frons**, *foliage*; **lens**, *a nit*, and masc. **libri-**

. **bs**, gen. **bis**, Feminine; as, **urbs urbis**, *city*.

. **ps** (**eps**), gen. **pis** (**ĭpis**): —

following are feminine: **stirps**, *stem* (in a few cases masculine, denotes the trunk of a tree); and **daps, dapis**, *food*: **adeps, rceps**, *a pair of tongs*, are masc. and fem. The rest are mascu- Personal names in **ceps**: as, **princeps**, *first, chief*. **Auceps**, *ler*, has **aucŭpis** in the genitive.

Greek words in **ps**, which have been received into the Latin, are ne, and their inflection is regulated according to the Greek: as, s, **hydrōpis**, *dropsy*; **Pelops, Pelŏpis** (a proper name); **gryps**, , *griffin*.

. **rs**, gen. **rtis**, Feminine; as, **ars, artis**, *art*.

following feminines in **s**, with a consonant preceding, must rately noticed: **hiems, hiĕmis**, *winter*; **puls, pultis**, *broth*.

---

s two words, with **strues, struis**, *the heap*; and **lues, luis**, *a contagious dis-*
he only Latin words of the third declension, the stem of which terminates in a vowel;

Nom. **t**. The only example is **caput, capĭtis**, *head*, Neuter, with its compounds **occiput** and **sinciput**.

Nom. **ax**, gen. **ācis**; as, **pax, pācis**, *peace*.

The Latin words **pax, fornax**, *oven*; **fax**, gen. **făcis**, *torch*, are feminine. The Greek are masculine; as, **thorax, thorācis**, *breast-plate*, except the feminine **limax**, *snail*.

Obs. Greek proper names have also **ăcis**: as, **Corax, Corăcis**; and those in **anax** have **anactis**: as, **Astyanax**.[1]

Nom. **ix**, gen. **ĭcis**, Feminine; as, **salix, salĭcis**, *willow*.

The two following are masculine: **calix**, *cup*; **fornix**, *vault*; **varix**, *a varicose vein*, is both masculine and feminine.

Nom. **ix**, gen. **īcis**, Feminine; as, **radix, radīcis**, *root*.[2]

Phoenix, *phœnix* (a Greek word), is masculine (also a national appellation, — *a Phœnician*).

The following feminines should be separately noticed: **nix, nĭvis**, *snow*; **strix, strĭgis**, a fabulous being, in the form of a bird.

Nom. **ox**, gen. **ōcis**, Feminine; as, **vox, vōcis**, *voice*.

The only other word declined in this way is **celox**, *a swift vessel*.

The feminine **nox, noctis**, *night*, must be separately noticed.

(The national names **Cappadox, Allobrox**, have **Cappadŏcis, Allobrŏgis**.)

Nom. **ux**, Feminine; as, **crux, crŭcis**, *the cross*.

The genitive is variously formed with **c** and **g**, **ŭ** and **ū**: **nux, nŭcis**, *nut, nut-tree*; **lux, lūcis**, *light*; **conjux, conjŭgis**, *wife* (as of common gender it denotes also *a spouse*); **frux, frūgis**, *fruit* (not used in the nom.); **faux, faucis**, *throat* (not used in the nom.).

The following are masculine: **tradux, tradŭcis**, *the layer of a vine*; and **dux, dŭcis**, *leader* (also common); **Pollux, Pollūcis**, proper name.

Nom. **x**, with a consonant preceding, gen. **cis**, Feminine; as, **arx, arcis**, *citadel*.

The words in **unx**, denoting the twelfth parts of an as, are masculine: **deunx**, *eleven-twelfths of an as*; **quincunx, septunx** (rarely **calx**, *heel*; **lynx**, *lynx*).

---

[1] In Greek we find also common names in **ax, acis**, but scarcely any one of these is met with in Latin.

[2] Like **salix** are declined besides the words cited above; **coxendix, filix** (**fulix**), **hystrix, natrix, pix**, and the national name **Cilix**, *a Cilician*. Like **radix** are declined several words; viz. **cervix, cicatrix, cornix, coturnix, lodix, perdix, vibix**, and the feminine appellatives in **trix**, e.g. **victrix**. In **appendix** the quantity is uncertain.

The Greek words **Sphinx**, *the Sphinx;* **phalanx**, a certain order
e; **syrinx**, *reed*, have **gis**; e.g. **sphingis**.

. **ex**, gen. **icis**, Masculine; as, **apex**, **apicis**, *the extreme*

following are feminine: **ilex**, *holly;* **carex**, *sedge;* **forfex**, *a pair*
rs; **vitex**, a species of tree; and, from its signification, **pellex**,
ne.
following are masc. and fem.: **imbrex**, *tile;* **obex**, *bolt* (not
the nom. sing.); **rumex**, *sorrel;* and in the poets, also: **cortex**,
ilex, *flint.* (**Atriplex**, *the orache*, is neuter.)
following must be separately noticed: *a.* The masculines with an
x genitive: **grex**, **grĕgis**, *herd;* with **aqvilex**, *a discoverer of*
; and the national name **Lelex**; **rex**, **rēgis**, *king;* **remex**, **remi-**
er; **vervex**, **vervēcis**, *wether;* **sĕnex**, **senis**, *old man;* **foenisex**,
cis, *haymaker.*
he feminines with an irregular genitive: **nex**, **nĕcis**, *death;* **prex**,
prayer (not used in the nom. sing.); **lex**, **lēgis**, *law;* **supellex**,
ctilis, *household goods;* **faex**, **faecis**, *lees.*

urther, there are found in the foreign words which have
lopted from the Greek and other languages different forms
stem and of the nominative, which do not occur in words
ly Latin. (A more copious notice of the Greek words must
ht for in the Greek dictionary.) The endings referred to

. **ma**, gen. **mătis**, Neuter; as, **poëma**, **poëmătis**, *poem.*
. **i**, gen. **is**, Neuter; as, **sināpi**, **sināpis**, *mustard.*

In this way are declined in the sing., without a plural, some
of foreign products, and those of a few Spanish towns; as,
i. Most of them are not used in the gen.; the other cases
in **i**. **Sinapi** has also the fem. form **sinapis** (nom.).
li, **oxymellītis**, a mixture of vinegar and honey, is neuter
so also one or two others in **meli**.
. **y**, gen. **yis** (**yos**), neuter: as, **misy**, **misyis** (contr. **misys**),
)
e are very few words of this class: **misy** is also found indecline-
ty or **astu**, *the city* [of Athens], only in the accusative.
. **on**, gen. **ŏnis**, Feminine; as, **Alcyon**, **Alcyŏnis**, *the king-*

ædon, *nightingale;* **sindon**, *muslin;* with some names of towns:
thēdon, **Anthedŏnis**; **Chaloĕdon.**)
m, *rule*, or *plummet*, is masculine; also, names of men; as,
&c.

NOM.	**on,**	**on,**	**an,**	**en,**	**in,**	} MASCULINE.
GEN.	**ōnis,**	**ōntis,**	**ānis,**	**ĕnis,**	**īnis,**	

Greek proper names, of which the names of towns are feminine: as, **Babylon, Babylōnis**; **Ctesiphon, Ctesiphontis**; and **Eleusin.** (**Delphin, Delphīnis,** *dolphin*, also **delphīnus, delphini.**)

(Of the nom. of names in **on**, see § **45.**)

Nom. **ter,** gen. **tēris,** Masculine; as, **crater, cratēris,** *bowl.*

Nom. **as,** gen. **ădis,** Feminine; as, **lampas, lampădis,** *torch.*

(The national names **Nomas** and **Arcas,** employed also as feminine adjectives.)

Nom. **as,** gen. **antis,** Masculine; as, **adamas, adamantis,** *diamond.*

Melas, Melanis, masc., the name of a man, a river, and a disease.

Nom. **as,** gen. **ătis,** Neuter; as, **erysipĕlas, erysipĕlatis,** the complaint so called.

(Very few instances, commonly only in the nom. and acc.)

Nom. **ēs,** gen. **ētis,** Masculine; as, **lebes, lebētis,** *caldron.*

(So **magnes,** *magnet;* **tapes,** *carpet;* **Tunes,** the city Tunis.)

Nom. **ĕs,** Neuter; as, **cacoēthes,** *a malignant tumor.*

Nom. **ŏs,** Neuter; as, **epos,** *an epic poem.*

(Both of these occur in but very few words, and only in the nom. and acc.)

Nom. **ōs,** gen. **ōïs,** Masculine; as, **heros, herōïs,** *hero, demigod.*

Nom. **ūs,** gen. **untis,** Masculine; as, **Pessinus, Pessinuntis** (a town).

(Only geographical names are thus declined. The names of towns are sometimes used as feminine by *synesis;* e.g. **Amathus** in **Ovid.**)

Nom. **ūs,** gen. **ŏdis,** Masculine; as, **tripus, tripŏdis,** *tripod.*

(None but compounds of *πούς*. **Oedipus** generally, and **polypus,** *polypus,* always follow the second declension.)

Nom. **ys,** gen. **yis,** Feminine; as, **chelys, chelyis,** *cithara.*

(Mostly proper names. **Othrys,** the mountain *Othrys,* is masculine.)

Nom. ys, gen. **ȳdis**, Feminine; as, **chlamys, chlamȳdis**, *cloak.*

Nom. yx, gen. **ȳcis, ȳcis, ȳgis, ȳgis, ȳchis**, Masculine; as **calyx, calȳcis**, *the cup* of a flower.

The genitives follow the Greek. In Greek, many words in **yx** are feminine; of those which have been received into the Latin, only **sandyx, sandȳcis**, a kind of red color; and occasionally **bombyx, bombȳcis**, *the silkworm*; **sardonyx, sardonȳchis**, a precious stone.

CHAPTER VI.

PECULIARITIES OF THE SEVERAL CASES AND OF THE GREEK FORMS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 42. 1. In some words in **is** (gen. **is**), the accusative singular ends in **im** instead of **em**: namely, in **amussis**, *ruler*; **buris**, *plough-tail*; **cucumis**, *cucumber*; **ravis**, *hoarseness*; **sitis**, *thirst*; **tussis**, *cough*; **vis**, *force*; and in the names of towns and rivers: e.g. **Hispălis, Tiběris**; commonly, too, in **febris**, *fever*; **pelvis**, *basin*; **puppis**, *the hinder part of a ship*; **restis**, *rope*; **turris**, *tower*; **secūris**, *axe*; more rarely in **clavis**, *key*; **messis**, *harvest*; **navis**, *ship*.

Obs. The accusative also ends in **im** (or in the Greek form **in**), in many Greek words in **is**. See § **45**, 2 *b*; and in the names of the rivers **Arar** and **Tiger**.

2. The genitive of Greek and foreign proper names in **es** (parisyllables; see § **40**, *c*, *Obs.* 1) often ends in the earlier period (e.g. in Cicero) in **i** instead of **is**; e.g.[1] **Aristoteli, Isocrati, Neocli, Achilli, Ulixi.** (But this never happens in those words of which the stem has been altered in the nominative; e.g. **Laches, Lachētis.**)

3. The ablative commonly ends in **e**, but in some words in **i**; in some, both in **e** and **i**.

The following have **i**: —

a. Those words which have only **im** in the accusative; e.g. **siti, Tiberi** (**poësi**, see 1, *Obs.*).

---

[1] [**Regnum Alyattei** (Hor. iii. Od. 16, 14.)]

b. All neuter words in **e, i, al, ar**, gen. **āris**; **as, mari, sinapi, animali, calcari** (but **sale**, masc., and **nectăre, farre**).

Obs. But the names of towns in **e** have **e** in the abl.: e.g. **Praeneste, Caere**; so likewise mostly **rete**, and **mare** frequently in the poets.

c. The adjectives of two and three terminations (**is, e**, and **er, is, e**): as, **facilis**, abl. **facili**; **acer**, abl. **acri**, with those substantives in **is**, which were originally adjectives; e.g. **familiari, natali.**

Obs. 1. Such substantives, even if they be no longer in use as adjectives, are recognized by their adjective endings (**alis, aris, ilis, ensis**, &c.).

Obs. 2. But some such substantives often — (as, **aedile, from aedilis**) or, at least, occasionally; proper names of this kind almost always — have **e**; as, **Juvenale.** Adjectives formed from the names of towns (e.g. **Veliensis**, from **Velia**) have also sometimes **e**, other adjectives only in some particular passages of the poets.

The following have both **e** and **i**: —

a. Those words which have both **im** and **em** in the accusative; e.g. **puppi** and **puppe.** (But **restis** always has **reste**, and **securis, securi.**)

b. Adjectives and participles of one termination; e.g. **prudenti** and **prudente, inerti** and **inerte.** **I** is, however, the prevailing form: e.g. **prudenti, ingenti, felici, vecordi, Arpinati**, except in ablatives absolute (see § **277**), when **e** is always used: e.g. **Tarquinio regnante**; or, when adjectives in **ens** stand for substantives: e.g. **a sapiente, in omni animante.**

Obs. The following adjectives, however, have **e** only: **compos, impos, coelebs, deses, pauper, princeps, pubes** (**pubĕris**), **superstes**, and almost always **ales, dives**; commonly, too, **vetus, uber.** **Par**[1] and **memor**, on the contrary, always have **i.**

c. The comparatives of adjectives: e.g. **majore, majori**; **e**, however, is the more usual termination.

d. Sometimes, too, the ablative in **i** is used in other substantives in **s.** gen. **is** (parisyllables), besides those above-named: e.g. **igni, avi**; likewise in some which have another termination; as, **imbri** (**imber**), **supellectili** (**supellex**), **ruri**, *in the country* (**rus**); and in some names of towns, to denote the place in which: e.g. **Carthagini**, *in Carthage;* **Tiburi, Anxuri.**[2]

§ 43. 1. The nominative and accusative plural of neuter words generally end in **a**; but the substantives in **e, al, ar** (**āris**), and

---

[1] The substantive **par** has also **pare.** (**Impăre numero**, Virg.)

[2] In the antiquated style even **parti, carni.**

adjectives and participles in the positive (not in the comparative), have **ia**; e.g. **animalia, calcaria, elegantia, inertia, animantia. Vetus** only has **vetera.**

Obs. Several adjectives of one termination, which follow the third declension, form no neuter in the plural. See § **60**, *c*.

2. Those masculines and feminines, which end in **ium** in the gen. plur. (see § **44**), had, in the accusative, in the older period, besides **es**, the termination **is**, which was long the usual one; e.g. **classīs, omnīs**. (It was also written **classeis, omneis.**) But this pronunciation and orthography were not without exceptions. At a later period, they disappeared; but the more ancient orthography is still found here and there in the editions of Latin authors.

§ 44. 1. In some words the gen. plur. is formed by affixing **ium** to the stem instead of **um**; viz.:—

a. In the parisyllables in **es** and **is** (§ **40**, 1, *c*); e.g. **aedium, crinium**; except **ambāges**, *a circuit* (of which the ablative alone is used in the sing.); **strues**, *heap*; **vates, canis, juvenis**, which have **um** (**ambagum, canum**); with **volucris**, *bird* (properly an adjective), which most usually has **um**; and **apis**, *bee*; **sedes**, *seat*; **mensis**, *month*, which often have that termination.

b. In the several words **imber, linter, venter, uter**, *a leather bottle*, **Insuber** (a national name), and **caro** (**carnis**); e.g. **imbrium, carnium.**

c. In the monosyllables in **s** or **x**, preceded by a consonant: e.g. **mons, montium**; **arx, arcium** (except **opum**, from **ops**, unused in the nom.); and in the several monosyllables **as, glis, lis, mas, mus, os**, gen. **ossis, vis** (**vires, virium**), **faux** (not used in the nom. sing.), **nix** (**nives, nivium**), **nox**, and sometimes **fraus** (also **fraudum**).

Obs. 1. The Greek words **gryps, lynx, sphynx**, have **um.**

Obs. 2. Some monosyllables do not occur in the gen. plur., though the remaining cases of the plural are in use; of these, the following may be especially noticed: **cor, cos, rus, sal, sol, vas**, gen. **vadis.**

d. In words of more than one syllable in **ns** and **rs**: e.g. **clientium, cohortium**, from **cliens**, *client*; **cohors**, *cohort*; but sometimes, particularly in the poets, these words have **um** (**parentes, parentum**, a form also common in prose).

e. In neuter words in **e, al, ar** (gen. **āris**), and in those adjectives and participles which have a neuter plural: e.g. **marium, animalium, calcarium**, from **mare, animal, calcar**; **acrium, facilium, felicium, elegantium, inertium,**[1] **locupletium**, from **acer, facilis, felix, elegans, iners,**

---

[1] **Facilium** according to rule *a*; also, **elegantium** and **inertium**, according to *d*.

locuples, except the adjective **vetus** (**veterum**), and **qvadrupes**, **versicolor** (**anceps**, **praeceps**), which have **um**.

From the adjectives in **ns**, we find, now and then, **um**, instead of **ium**: e.g. **sapientum**; from those in **is**, very seldom, and only in the poets: e.g. **caelestum**, from **caelestis**.

Obs. But if the adjectives have no neuter plural (§ **60**, *c*), the genitive ends in **um**; consequently, we have **inopum**, **divitum**, **uberum**, **vigilum**, from **inops**, **dives**, **ūber**, **vigil**. **Celer**, **hebes**, **teres**, are not found in the gen. plur. **Celeres**, the body-guard of the Roman kings, has in the gen. **celerum**.

f. In national names in **is** and **as**: e.g. from **Qviris**, **Qviritium**; from **Arpinas**, **Arpinatium**; and in the two plural words, **penates**, *the guardian gods;* and **optimates**, *the nobles* (rarely **um**). Other words also in **as**, **atis**, sometimes have **ium**; e.g. **civitatium** (but **civitatum** is better).

2. The names of some Roman festivals, which end in **alia**, and are used only in the plural, have, in the genitive, **iorum** (as in the second declension) as well as **ium**; e.g. **Bacchanalia**, **Bacchanaliorum**, the feast of Bacchus. So also the word **ancīle**, *a shield*, which fell from heaven (**anciliorum**).

3. The dative and ablative plural of Greek words in **ma** generally have the termination **is**, for **ibus**; e.g. **poĕmatis**, from **poĕma**.

4. The word **bos**, **bŏvis**, has, in the gen. plur., **boum**; in the dat. and abl., **bōbus**, or **būbus**; in the nom. and acc., the regular form, **bŏves**. **Sus** has, in the dat. and abl. plur., **suibus**, and (contracted) **subus**.

§ 45. (Greek forms in Greek words.) 1. Greek proper names in *ων*, gen. *ωνος* (**ōnis**), and *ονος* (**ŏnis**), the Latin form **o**: e.g. **Plato**, **Zeno**, **Dio**, **Laco**, **Agamemno**; but **on** is retained in some writers (as Cornelius Nepos): e.g. **Dion**, **Conon**; and almost always in geographical names: e.g. **Babylon**, **Lacedaemon**. Those in *ων*, *οντος*, and *ωντος* (**ontis**), for the most part, retain the **n**; **Xenophon**. (In Plautus and Terence, however, some names of this kind are altered in the inflection; e.g. **Antipho**, **Antiphōnis**, instead of **Antiphon Antiphontis**.)

2. *a*. In the poets, and some prose-writers, the accusative occasionally ends in **a**, when the Greek has this termination; but, in prose, this is confined, with a few exceptions, to proper names; e.g. **Agamemnŏna**, **Babylōna**, **Periclea** (**Pericles**), **Troezēna**, **Pana**, and, in the poets, **herōa**, **thorāca**. Only the words **aër** and **aether** have, in prose, too, almost always **aëra**, **aethĕra**.

b. Greek words in **is**, gen. **is**, have, in the accusative, **im** (Latin), and **in** (Greek); e.g. **poĕsim**, **poĕsin**, **Charybdim**, **Charybdin**. Of the

words in **is, idis**, those which, in Greek, have *ιν* and *ιδα* in the accus., **have**, for the most part, **im (in)**, in Latin, rarely **idem** (Greek **ida**): e.g. **Paris, Parim, Parin**, rarely **Paridem**; except those in **tis**, which **have** both forms: e.g. **Phthiōtis, Phthiotim (Phthiotin)**, and **Phthiotidem (Phthiotida)**.

Those which, in Greek, have only *ιδα* (i.e. all oxytones), have, in Latin, also **idem (ida)**; e.g. **tyrannis, tyrannĭdem (tyrannĭda)**. (So especially feminine patronymics and national names; e.g. **Aeneis, Aeneĭdem**, and **Aeneĭda**.)

c. Words in **ys**, gen. **yis**, have, in the acc., **ym** (Latin), or **yn** (Greek); e.g. **Othrym, Othryn**.

d. Those proper names in **es**, gen. **is**, which in Greek follow the first declension (§ **35**, *Obs.* 4), have **en** as well as **em**: e.g. **Aeschinen, Mithridaten**; so also sometimes those which, in Greek, follow the third decl., but have, in the acc., both *η* (according to the third decl.) and *ην* (according to the first): e.g. **Xenocraten**. (Others but rarely; as **Sophoclen**, instead of **Sophoclem**.)

e. Proper names in **es, ētis**, are like **Thales**, which has, in the acc., besides **Thalētem**, a shorter form, **Thalem, Thalen** (abl., **Thale**; in the gen. and dat., this shorter form, **Thalis, Thali**, is unusual).

3. In the genitive of Greek words, the poets use, not unfrequently, the form **os**, but particularly in words in **is** and **as**, gen. **idos** and **ados** (especially in proper names): e.g. **Thetis, Thetidos**; **Pallas, Pallados**; in those in **ys**, gen. **yos**: e.g. **Tethys, Tethyos**; and in proper names in **eus**, gen. **eos**: e.g. **Peleus, Pelĕŏs** (Latin, **Peleus, Pelei**. See § **38**, 3.)

The gen. **seos**, from words in **sis**, — e.g. **poĕsĕos**, from **poēsis**, — is not found in good writers.

Greek names of women, in **o**, as **Io, Sappho**, have mostly the Greek genitive **ūs** (*ους*). In the acc., dat., and abl., **ō** is used; e.g. **Sappho** (acc. *Σαπφώ*, dat. *Σαπφοῖ*), rarely the Latin form **Sapphonem, Sapphoni, Sapphone**.

4. The Greek words in **is, ys**, and **eus**, have the Greek vocative, which is formed by the rejection of **s**: e.g. **Phylli, Alexi, Coty, Orpheu**; but those in **is, idos**, have often too (in Latin) the voc. like the nom.: e.g. **Thaïs**. Names of men in **as, antis** (the voc. in Greek being *αν* and *α*), have **ā**; e.g. **Calchas**, voc. **Calchā**.

Proper names in **es** have **es** and **e**; e.g. **Carneades** and **Carneade, Chremes** and **Chreme** (from **Chremes, Chremētis**).

5. In the nom. plur. of Greek words, the poets often use **es** (*ες*) short, instead of making the final syllable long, as is usual in Latin words (§ **20**, 2). In the name **Sardīs** (gen. **Sardium**), **is** stands for the Greek *εις*.

6. The accusative plural sometimes ends in **as**, as in Greek, especially in the poets; e.g. **Aethiŏpas, Pyramĭdas.** This termination is also used in some barbarous national names which, in their form, resemble Greek words; e.g. **Allobrŏgas, Lingŏnas**, from **Allobrox, Lingon.**

7. The Greek ending of the gen. **on** is used only in the titles of books: e.g. **Metamorphoseōn libri.**[1]

8. The termination of the dative in **si (sin)** is very rarely used, by a few poets, from feminine words in **as** and **is**; e.g. **Troasin, Charisin**, from **Troades, Charites.**

9. From the few Greek neuter words in **os** and **es**, there are formed a nom. and acc. plur. in **ē** (*η*), without any further inflection; e.g. **melos, mele. (Tempe, § 51, *g*.)**

CHAPTER VII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 46. Words of the fourth declension end in **us** or (neut.) **u**, and are declined as follows: —

(**fructus**, *fruit*; **cornu**, *the horn.*)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	**fruct ŭs**	**fruct ūs**	**corn u**	**corn ua**
VOC.	**fruct ŭs**	**fruct ūs**	**corn u**	**corn ua**
ACC.	**fruct um**	**fruct ūs**	**corn u**	**corn ua**
GEN.	**fruct ūs**	**fruct uum**	**corn ūs**	**corn uum**
DAT.	**fruct ui**	**fruct ibus**	**corn u**	**corn ibus**
ABL.	**fruct u**	**fruct ibus**	**corn u**	**corn ibus**

OBS. 1. Like **cornu** are declined only a few words (**genu**, *knee*; **veru**, *spit*). Some cases of other words are formed according to this example; but the word has, at the same time, other forms; as, from **pecu**, *cattle*, nom. and acc. plur. **pecua**, and dat. **pecubus**; but otherwise, **pecus, pecŭdis**, and **pecus, pecŏris**, after the third declension. (See amongst the **abundantia**, § 56, 7.) **Gelu**, *cold*, is, in ordinary language, used only in the ablative. (In other cases, we find the form — not a common one — **gelum, geli.** The nom. **gelu** belongs to the later Latin, and **gelus** is obsolete.)

---

[1] **Maleon**, Μαλιεῶν, *the Maleans* (Curt.).

Obs. 2. The ending **us**, in the gen. sing., is contracted from **uis**, which sometimes occurs in the older language; e.g. **anuis**, *of an old woman*. From some words, — especially **senatus**, *the senate;* and **tumultus**, *the stir*, — some writers (e.g. Sallust) form the gen. in **i**; e.g. **senati, tumulti.**[1]

Obs. 3. In the dative, **ui** is often contracted into **ū**; e.g. **eqvitatu** for **eqvitatui**, as in **cornu.**

Obs. 4. In the dative and ablative plur., dissyllables, with **c** before the ending (**acus**, *needle;* **arcus**, *bow;* **lacus**, *lake;* **qvercus**, *oak;* **specus**, *cave*, and **pecu**); with the words **artus**, *joint;* **partus**, *birth;* **tribus**, *tribe;* and **veru**, *spit*, — have **ŭbus**, instead of **ibus**; e.g. **artŭbus. Portus**, *haven*, has **portibus** and **portubus.**

Obs. 5. The names of some trees in **us**, — especially **cupressus**, *cypress;* **ficus**, *fig-tree;* **laurus**, *the laurel;* and **pinus**, *the pine*, — are sometimes declined throughout like the second declension; sometimes they take those cases of the fourth declension which end in **us** and **u**; e.g. gen. **laurus**, abl. **lauru**, nom. and acc. plur. **laurus.** (**Qvercus** is declined entirely according to the fourth declension.) So also the word **colus**, *distaff.*

Domus, *house*, forms some cases exclusively according to the second declension; while, in others, it has both forms, as follows: —

	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	**dom us**	**dom ūs**
Voc.	**dom us**	**dom ūs**
Acc.	**dom um**	**dom os** (rarely **dom ūs**)
Gen.	**dom ūs**	**dom uum, dom orum**
Dat.	**dom ui** (rarely **dom o**)	**dom ibus**
Abl.	**dom o** (rarely **dom u**)	**dom ibus**

The genitive form **domi** is used only in the signification *at home.* See § **296**, *b.*[2]

§ 47. Gender. Words of the fourth declension, in **us**, are masculine, those in **u** neuter. But of those in **us** the following are feminine: the names of trees; as, **qvercus**: with **acus, colus, domus; manus**, *hand;* **penus**, *a store of provisions* (see § **56**, 7); **porticus**, *portico;* **tribus**, *tribe:* and the plurals **idus** (**iduum**), *the thirteenth or fifteenth day of every month;* and **qvinqvatrus**, a certain

---

[1] It is not correct to assume that the words in **u** had **u** also in the genitive. Only **cornu bubulum**, *cow's horn*, and **cornu cervinum**, *stag's horn*, were inflected, in later times, as if the substantive and adjective made only one word; **cornububuli, cornucervini.**

[2] By some written also **domui**, on the authority of manuscripts.

feast: in the older language also **specus** (also, from their signification, **anus,** *old woman;* **nurus,** *daughter-in-law;* **socrus,** *mother-in-law*).

Obs. **Colus** is also found in the masculine, **specus** (in the nom. and acc.) in the neuter, — both but rarely.

CHAPTER VIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 48. This declension comprises only a few words, which all end in **es,** and are declined as follows: —

(**res,** *the thing;* **dies,** *the day.*)

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	re s	re s	die s	die s
Voc.	re s	re s	die s	die s
Acc.	re m	re s	die m	die s
Gen.	rĕ i	rē rum	diē i	diē rum
Dat.	rĕ i	rē bus	diē i	diē bus
Abl.	re	rē bus	die	diē bus

Obs. 1. In the gen. and dat. singular, the **e** in **ei** is long after a vowel, short after a consonant. In the earlier period, the contracted termination **ē** was also used in these cases (e.g. **fidē, aciē, diē,** for **fidĕi, aciēi, diēi,** in the gen. in Horace, Cæsar, Sallust; **fidē,** in the dat., in Horace).[1] In the genitive, there occurred also an old form in **i**; e.g. **pernicii,** for **perniciei.**

Obs. 2. Only **res** and **dies** are declined throughout in the plural. The words **acies, facies, effigies, species,** and **spes** (in Virgil, **glacies**), are used in the nom. and acc. plur., — not in the other cases. The remaining words have no plural.

Obs. 3. Some words have a double form, according to the fifth declension, and according to the first with the nom. in **a**: see among the **abundantia,** § **56,** 3.

§ 49. All words of the fifth declension are feminine; except **dies,** which is masculine and feminine in the singular, in the plural

---

[1] [**Constantis juvenem fide** (Hor. Od. iii. 7, 4); **Libra die somnique pares ubi fecerit horas** (Virg. Georg. i. 208).]

only masculine. In the singular too, with the signification *day*, it is usually masculine in good prose-writers; but, with the signification *term, time* (**longa dies**), it is almost always feminine (in prose always). (**Meridies**, *mid-day*, is masculine.)

CHAPTER IX.

OF SOME PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE NUMBERS OF SUBSTANTIVES, AND OF SOME IRREGULARITIES IN THEIR INFLECTION.

§ 50. PECULIARITIES RELATING TO THE NUMBERS. Many words in Latin (as in our own language) are used only in the singular; because they are either proper names of definite individual objects (e.g. **Roma**; also, **tellus, humus**, *the earth in general*, — **terrae**, plural, means *lands*); or because they denote an idea in its general or abstract sense, and in its absolute meaning, without reference to the particular objects in which it appears in the concrete. Such are the names of the qualities, properties, and condition and circumstances of a being; as, **justitia**, *justice;* **senectus**, *old age;* **fames**, *hunger;* **scientia**, *knowledge;* **indoles**, *natural gifts:* names used in a collective sense; as, **plebs, vulgus**, *the common people;* **supellex**, *household furniture:* names of a material; as, **aurum**, *gold;* **triticum**, *wheat;* **sanguis**, *blood;* **virus**, *venom.*

If such words as usually designate a whole alter their signification, and are used to denote individual objects, they have also the plural: e.g. **aera**, *instruments of copper, bronze statues;* **cerae**, *wax tablets, wax masks;* **ligna**, *pieces of wood, billets.*

OBS. 1. Such changes of the signification must be ascertained by attentive reading, and from the dictionary. Thus, **mors**, *death*, is used in the plural, of *cases of death, kinds of death;* while **letum**, *death*, is never so employed. In this, the poets go further than the prose-writers; e.g. **tria tura**, *three grains of incense*, from **tus**, *incense.* Sometimes, the poets employ names expressive of abstract ideas, and names of classes or materials, in the plural, without a change in the signification (as of a whole, consisting of several parts): e.g. **silentia**, *silence;* **murmura**, *murmuring;* **flamina**, *blowing;* **hordea**, *barley;* but chiefly only in the nom. and

acc. Thus, the poets sometimes used **ora, pectora, corda,** of a single individual.

Obs. 2. The Latin word may sometimes have originally a more abstract signification than the English which most nearly corresponds to it, and therefore be without a plural; as, **specimen,** *a proof*. (Various horticultural productions, — as fruit and flowers, — as well as the different species of corn, are, in Latin, named in the singular, when it is intended to designate the whole kind, or an indefinite quantity; e.g. **abstinere faba, mille modii fabae** (Hor. Ep. I. 16, 55), *beans* in general: but **fabae,** *beans* taken separately; **glande vesci** (Cic. Or. 9), **in rosa jacere.** This applies also sometimes to other kinds of produce.

Obs. 3. The Latins, unlike ourselves, often used the names of abstract ideas in the plural, when the idea (an activity, property, condition, being) is to be conceived as applying to several persons or things (several subjects), or when it is intended to denote that the idea is exhibited several times, and in a variety of forms. So, when the mind or mood of several persons is spoken of, **animi** is used (**animos militum incendere, animi hominum terrentur**); and we find (in Cicero), **adventūs imperatorum, exitūs bellorum mites, odia hominum, novorum hominum industriae, proceritates arborum, invidiae multitudinis, iracundiae, timores, tarditates, celeritates, tres constantiae** (three kinds of constantia), **omnes avaritiae** (all the ways in which avarice displays itself).[1] So, of the weather, we find the expressions, **nives,** *snow-storms;* **grandines,** *hail-storms;* **soles,** *bursts of sunshine* (in the poets, *days*); **frigora,** *cold seasons*.[2]

Obs. 4. Proper names are used in the plural, not only when borne by several individuals (e.g. **Valerii omnes, duo Scipiones Africani**), but also figuratively of men of a certain kind; e.g. **multi Ciceroues** (many orators as distinguished as Cicero).

Obs. 5. In some historians and poets, certain words, which denote a man of a particular class or rank, are sometimes used in the singular of the whole class: e.g. **Romanus,** for *the Romans;* **eqves,** for *the knights;* **miles,** for *the soldiers*.

§ 51. Some words are used only in the plural (**pluralia tantum**), because they either designate several individual things, which are so named only in the aggregate, and not when taken separately: e.g. **majores,** *ancestors;* or because they are used of something which originally suggested the idea of several constituent parts, or

---

[1] **Rectiqve cultus pectora roborant** (Hor.). **Tantaene animis coelestibus irae?** (Virg.)

[2] **Siccitates paludum** (Cæs. B. G. iv. 38).

the idea of repetition, or the like: e.g. **arma**, gen. **armorum**, *armor*; **fides**, gen. **fidium**, *the cithara*.[1]

Obs. Of such words, the following are most usual: —

a. **Liberi**, *children*, **majores**, *ancestors* (properly the comparative of **magnus**, *great*); **procĕres** and **primores**, *men of rank*; **inferi**, *the inhabitants of the lower world*; **superi**, *the inhabitants of the upper world*; **caelites**, *the inhabitants of heaven*; **penates**, *household gods*; **manes**, *the spirits of the departed*; **munia** (only in the nom. and acc.), *employments*; **utensilia**, *utensils, provisions*; **verbera**, *stripes* (**verbere**, see § 55, 3).

b. Parts of the Body: **artus**, *the limbs*; **cani** (adj., with which **capilli** is to be understood), *gray hairs*; **cervices**, *the neck* (in the later writers, **cervix**); **exta**, **intestina**, **viscera** (rarely **viscus**), *the intestines*; **fauces**, *the throat* (**fauce**, see § 55, 3); **praecordia**, *the diaphragm*; **ilia**, *the flank*; **renes**, *the kidneys*.

c. Materials, Compound Objects: **altaria**, *the altar*; **arma**, *armor*; **armamenta**, *tackling*; **balneae**, *bath-house* (**balneum**, a private, single *bath*, plur. **balnea**); **cancelli**, *lattice*; **casses**, *a fowler's net*; **castra**, *camp* (**castrum**, as the name of a place; e.g. **Castrum Novum**); **clathri**, *a grating*; **clitellae**, *pack-saddle*; **compedes**, *fetters* (**compede**, see § 55, 3); **cunae**, **cunabula**, **incunabula**, *cradle*; **exuviae**, *an integument stripped off* (arms taken in fight); **fides**, *lyre* (**fidem**, **fidis**, **fide**, see § 55, 2); **fori**, *rows of seats*; **loculi**, *a repository* (with several compartments); **lustra**, *a lurking-place of wild beasts*; **manubiae**, *booty*; **moenia** (**moenium**), *the wall of a town*; **obices**, *a bolt* (**obice**, see § 55, 3); **phalĕrae**, *the ornaments of horses*; **salinae**, *salt-works*; **scalae**, *stairs*; **scopae**, *broom*; **sentes**, *thorn-bush*; **spolia**, *spoils*; **valvae**, *folding-doors*; **vepres**, *brambles* (**veprem**, **vepre**, see § 55, 2); **virgulta**, *the thicket*: and, generally, **bigae**, *a carriage with two horses*; **qvadrigae**, *a carriage with four horses*; and the participles **sata**, *the cornfields*; **serta**, *garlands of flowers*.

d. **Ambāges**, *a round about way* (§ 55, 3); **argutiae**, *witty, ingenious discourse*; **crepundia**, *playthings*; **deliciae**, *delight*; **dirae**, *a curse* (from the adj. **dirus**); **divitiae**, *riches*; **excubiae**, *the guard*; **exsequiae**, *funeral solemnities*; **epulae**, *banquet* (sing. **epulum**, generally *a public entertainment*); **fasti**, *calendar*; **grates**, *thanks* (only in the

---

[1] **Majores** denotes all the individual ancestors, but only as taken together; a single ancestor is not called **major**. The same holds good with **liberi**. In these cases, therefore, we think of the individuals which make up the number; and three children is expressed by **tres liberi**. **Fides**, on the other hand, denotes the compound stringed instrument, but not its several parts (the strings are called **nervi**), **arma** is a suit of armor, which consists of several pieces. We think, therefore, in these expressions of the *compound unity*, and **trina arma** (according to § 76, *c*) signifies three suits of armor. Most of the **pluralia tantum** belong to this latter description.

nom. and acc.); **induciae**, *an armistice;* **ineptiae**, *silliness* (rarely in the sing.); **inferiae**, *a sacrifice to the dead;* **insidiae**, *ambuscade;* **inimicitiae**, *enmity* (but **amicitia**); **minae**, *threatening;* **nugae**, *nonsense;* **nuptiae**, *a marriage;* **praestigiae**, *a blind, deception;* **preces**, *supplication* (**prece**, see § **55**, 3); **primitiae**, *first-fruits;* **reliqviae**, *remains;* **sordes**, *dirt* (**sordem, sorde**, see § **55**, 2); **tenebrae**, *darkness;* **vindiciae**, *a judicial process;* so also usually **angustiae**, *a strait* (embarrassment); **blanditiae**, *flattery;* **illecebrae**, *enticement.*

e. Names of Days and Festivals: **Calendae**, *the first day of the month;* **Nonae**, *the fifth* (or *seventh*); **Idūs**, *thirteenth* (or *fifteenth*); **feriae**, *holiday;* **nundĭnae**, *market-day;* **Bacchanalia**, *the feast of Bacchus;* **Saturnalia**, *the feast of Saturn;* and other names of festivals, in **alia** and **ilia**.

f. The names of many towns; e.g. **Veji, Athenae, Leuctra, Gades.** Of those in **i**, some designate both the town and its inhabitants; e.g. **Delphi, Leontini.**

g. The mountain chains **Alpes** and **Acroceraunia**, and the valley of **Tempe** (§ **45**, 9). The poets use some Greek names of mountains as neuter in the plural, instead of masculine in the singular; as, **Taygeta**, for **Taygetus.**

§ 52. Some words, which in the singular are employed to denote a single object or idea, are used in the plural to express not only a number of such objects, but also (as **pluralia tantum**) a more complex object which bears some affinity to them, or a collection of objects: e.g. **littera**, *a letter of the alphabet;* **litterae**, either *letters* or *an epistle;* **auxilium**, *aid;* **auxilia**, *resources* or *auxiliary troops.* (**Binae litterae**, *two epistles;* **bina auxilia**, *two bodies of auxiliaries.* See § **76**, *c.* We also find **litterae** sometimes without a numeral to signify *epistles;* e.g. **afferuntur ex Asia qvotidie litterae,** Cic. pro. leg. Man. 2.)

Obs. Further instances of such words are: —

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aedes, *the temple.*	**aedes**, a. *temple;* b. *a house.*
aqva, *water.*	**aqvae**, a. *waters;* b. *a medicinal spring.*
carcer, *the prison.*	**carceres**, the space partitioned off by *the barriers* (on the race-course).
codicillus (rare), *a small log.*	**codicilli**, *the writing-tablet, the note.*
copia, *fulness, a store, a number.*	**copiae**, a. *stores;* b. *troops.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
comitium, a place in the market in Rome.	**comitia**, *an assembly of the people.*
fortuna, *fortune.*	**fortunae**, *the goods of fortune.*
gratia, *thankfulness* (in action and in feeling).	**gratiae**, *thanks.*
hortus, *garden.*	**horti**, a. *gardens;* b. *pleasure-gardens, a country-house.*
impedimentum, *hindrance.*	**impedimenta**, a. *hindrances;* b. *baggage.*
ludus, *play, a jest.*	**ludi**, *a public spectacle.*
naris, *nostril.*	**nares**, *the nose* (rarely in the sing. in this signification).
natalis (adj. **dies**), *birthday.*	**natales**, *pedigree.*
ops (not used in the nom.), *help.*	**opes**, *power, riches.*
pars, *part.*	**partes**, a. *parts;* b. *the part* (of an actor in a play), *side, party.*
rostrum, *beak, the beak of a ship.*	**rostra**, *the platform* for the orators in the market at Rome (adorned with beaks of ships).
tabula, *board, tablet.*	**tabulae**, a. *boards, &c.;* b. *an account-book, a document.*[1]

§ 53. In some compound words, which consist of two entire unaltered words in the nominative, and may be again resolved into their constituent parts (spurious compounds), both parts of the compound are declined: e.g. **respublica**, *the state*, acc. **rempublicam**, gen. **reipublicae**, &c. (according to the fifth and first decl.); **jusjurandum**, *the oath*, gen. **jurisjurandi**, &c. (according to the third and second).

§ 54. Some few substantives are indeclinable: namely, the Latin and Greek names of the letters (**a**, **alpha**, &c.); the words **fas**, *right;* **nefas**, *wrong;* **instar**, *equality* (in size and signification); **mane**, *the early morning;* **caepe**, *onion;* **gummi**, *gum;* but these words, with the exception of the letters, are used only as nominatives and accusatives. **Mane**, however, is also used as an ablative (**summo mane**, *at the earliest dawn*).

Obs. 1. The names of the letters are also used as genitives, datives, or ablatives, when the addition of an adjective (e.g. **y Graecae**), or the connection, clearly shows the case.

---

[1] **Animi**, *spirit* (*haughtiness*), and **spiritūs**, *haughtiness, pride;* used also of a single individual.

Obs. 2. For **gummi**, writers also use **gummis**, gen. **gummis**, fem., and **gumen**, neuter: for **caepe**, often **caepa**, gen. **caepae**.

Obs. 3. **Pondo** is also indeclinable, being used sometimes as an abl. sing., signifying *in weight:* e.g. **coronam auream, libram pondo** (*a pound in weight; weighing a pound*); sometimes as a plural noun in the nom., acc., and gen.: e.g. **qvinqvagena pondo data consulibus; torqves aureus, duo pondo** (by apposition); **corona aurea pondo ducentum (ducentorum)**.

Obs. 4. Barbarous names — the Hebrew, for instance (in Christian authors) — often receive a Latin termination, in order to make declension practicable, either in the nom. — e.g. **Abrahamus** — or in the other cases only, the foreign form being used for the nom.; e.g. **David**, gen. **Davidis**. The name **Jesus** has, in the acc., **Jesum**; in the other cases, **Jesu**.

§ 55. Some words have an inflection of the cases, but not throughout (**defectiva casibus**, *deficient in their cases*).

Obs. According to the number of the cases in use, such words are called **monoptōta, diptota, triptota**, or **tetraptota**, — words with one, two, three, or four cases.[1] The cause of this incompleteness is found in the meaning or the use of the word, which made only certain cases necessary, or retained no others in use.

1. The following words want the nom.: (**daps**, obsolete), **dapis**, *food;* (**dicio**), **dicionis**, *dominion;* (**frux**), **frugis**, *fruit;* (**internecio**), **internecionis**, *destruction;* (**pollis**), **pollinis**, *fine flour*.

2. The following words are used in the sing. only in certain cases: —

fors, *accident*, in the nom. and abl. (**forte**, usually as an adverb, *accidentally*), without a plural.

(**fides**, or **fidis**, unused, *lyre*), in the acc., gen., and abl., **fidem, fidis, fide**. Used only by the poets; commonly **fides, fidium**, as a plur. **tantum**.

(**impes**, unused, *violence*), in the gen. and abl. **impĕtis, impete**. (Without plural. Usually **impetus**, after the fourth declension.)

lues, *an epidemical disease*, in the nom., acc., and abl., **luem, lue**. (No plural.)

(**ops**, unused, *help*), in the acc., gen., and abl., **opem, opis, ope**. In the plural, — **opes, opum**, *power, riches*, — it is declined throughout. See **§ 52**.

(**sordes**, unused, *dirt*), in the acc. and abl., **sordem, sorde**; both rare. Usually, **sordes, sordium**, as plur. **tantum**.

---

[1] From πτῶσις, *case*, with the Greek numerals.

(**vepres**, unused, *bramble*), in the acc. and abl., **veprem, vepre**; both rare. Commonly **plur. tant., vepres, veprium.**

(**vicis**, or **vix**, unused, *change*), in the acc., gen., and abl., **vicem, vicis, vice.** In the plural, **vices, vicibus**; the gen. is wanting.

vis, *force*, in the nom., acc., and abl., **vim, vi.** In the plural, **vires, virium**, *the powers*, complete.[1]

3. The following when used in the singular are used in the ablative only: **ambāge, compĕde, fauce, obice, prece, verbere,** and all, if we except **prece** and (rarely) **verbere,** only by the poets; otherwise they are **pluralia tantum, ambāges,** &c. (§ **51**, *Obs.*)[2]

4. **Sponte,** *an impulse* (fem.), is used in the abl. sing. only (without a plural) with a possessive pronoun: e.g. **sua sponte,** *of his own accord,* **nostra sponte**; so likewise several verbal substantives in **u** from supines, which are constructed only with a genitive or a possessive pronoun: e.g. **jussu populi,** *by order of the people;* **mandatu Caesaris,** *by a commission from Cæsar;* **rogatu meo,** *at my request;* together with **natu,** in respect of age (birth): e.g. **grandis natu,** *advanced in age.* **(In promptu, in procinctu.)**

5. The following substantives are only used in one particular case, and in certain combinations: **dicis** (**dicis causa,** *for form's sake*), **nauci** (**non nauci,** as gen. of the price, *not worth a farthing;* **non nauci facio, non nauci est**), **derisui** (**esse,** *to be a laughing-stock,* according to § **249**), and so also, **despicatui** and **ostentui** (**esse**), **infitias** (**ire,** *to deny*), **suppetias** (**ferre,** *to bring assistance*), **venum** (**ire,** *to be sold;* **dare,** *to sell*).[3]

Secus, *sex,* with the adjective **virile** or **muliebre,** is used without alteration in the acc. in apposition to all cases, signifying of the male or female sex; e.g. **Liberorum capitum, virile secus, ad decem millia capta** (Liv. XXVI. 47). (Otherwise, **sexus,** after the fourth declension.) **Repetundarum** and **(de) repetundis (pecuniarum, pecuniis)** are found only in these cases, when reference is made to judicial proceedings on account of money raised illegally.

6. The gen. plur. is wanting in some monosyllables of the third declension (see § **44**, *c*, *Obs.* 2).

7. The plural **grates,** some plurals used only by the poets (see § **50**, *Obs.* 1), and the plurals of some monosyllables of the neuter gender (**aera, jura, rura, farra**), are found only in the nom. and acc.; so, likewise, some

---

[1] Acc. plur. **vīs,** in Lucretius.

[2] (**Ambages,** nom. sing., in Tacitus?); **preci,** dat., in Terence; **verberis,** gen., in Ovid.

[3] **Astu,** *craftily,* as an adverb: in later writers, also, **astus,** *craft,* nom.; and **astūs,** nom. and acc. plur.

plural words of the fifth declension (§ **48**, *Obs.* 2), and of the fourth; **impetus, spiritus.**

§ 56. Some words are declined in two or more ways (**abundantia**), and of these some vary in gender as well as in the termination of the nominative case. In some instances, however, one form is used more frequently than the other.

Obs. Words with various inflections are termed **heteroclĭta**; those with various genders, **heterogenea.**[1]

Particular examples of this have been already mentioned: as, **laurus, lauri**, and **laurūs, domus**, &c. (§ **46**, *Obs.* 5); as also the variation between Greek and Latin forms: e.g. **logice** and **logica** (§ **35**, *Obs.* 1).

To this class belong also the following: —

1. In the second declension, some words end both in **us** (masc.) and in **um** (neut.): as, **callus** and **callum**, *callosity;* **commentarius** and **commentarium**, *memoir;* **jugulus** and **jugulum**, *throat;* some names of plants: as, **lupinus, lupinum**, *lupine;* **porrus, porrum**, *leek;* **cubitus**, *elbow;* also, **cubitum** (particularly **cubita**, *ells*); **balteus**, *belt;* **baculum**, *stick;* **clipeus**, *shield*, — more rarely **balteum, baculus, clipeum.**

2. **Menda** and **mendum**, *fault*, varies between the first and second declension. **Vespera**, *evening*, has also **vesper**, and acc. **vesperum**, after the second declension; and, in the ablative, usually **vespere, vesperi**, after the third. (**Vesper, vesperi** (2d), *the evening-star.*) **Aranea** and **araneus**, *spider;* **columbus** and **columba**, *dove;* and some other names of animals. See § **30**, *Obs.*

3. Some words in **ia** and **ies** vary between the first and fifth declension; e.g. **barbaria** and **barbaries, mollitia, mollities, luxuria, luxuries.** (In the gen., dat., and abl., these words more rarely follow the fifth decl.) (The form **materies** is generally used to denote wood for building, — **materia**, for matter.)

4. Some substantives of the fourth declension, derived from verbs, have an additional form in **um, i**; e.g. **eventus, eventum**, *event.* So also **angiportus** (4th) and **angiportum** (2d), *a narrow street;* **suggestus** (4th) and **suggestum** (2d), *platform;* **tonitrus** (4th) and **tonitruum** (2d), *thunder.*

5. The following are to be separately noticed: —

plebs, plebis (3d), and **plebes, plebei** (5th), *the common people.* (**Tribuni plebis** and **plebei**, also **plebi.** See § **48**, *Obs.* 1.)

---

[1] From ἕτερος, *another*, and κλίσις, *inflection*, γένος, *gender.*

reqvies, reqviētis, *rest;* in the acc. and abl., also, **reqviem, reqvie** (5th).

gausăpe, gausapis, and **gausapum** (2d), neut., a kind of woollen stuff; also **gausapa** (1st), fem.; and **gausapes, gausapis,** masc.

praesēpe, praesepis, neut., *manger;* also, **praesepes, praesepis,** fem. and **praesepium** (2d).

tapes, tapētis, masc., *carpet;* also, **tapete, tapetis,** neut., and **tapetum, tapeti.**

ilia, *flanks* (**plur. tant.**), gen. **ilium** (3d) and **iliorum,** dat. and abl. **ilibus.**

6. **Jugerum, jugeri,** *acre,* is declined, in the singular, after the second declension; in the plural, after the third: **jugera, jugerum, jugeribus** (rarely **jugeris**).

Vas, vasis, *vessel* (3d), follows the second declension in the plural; **vasa, vasorum, vasis.**

7. In some words, not only the case-endings, but even the stem itself varies; so that they are, properly, distinct words, not merely different declensions of the same. Of this class are to be noticed, —

femur, *thigh,* **femŏris** and **femĭnis** (from the unused nom. **femen**); and so the remaining cases.

jecur, jecŏris, *liver;* in the gen., also, **jocinŏris, jecinŏris, jocinĕris;** and so the remaining cases.

juventus, juventutis, *youth;* in the poets, **juventa** (1st), and **Juventas, Juventatis,** *the goddess of youth.*

Senectus, *old age;* in the poets, **senecta** (1st).

Pecus, pecŭdis, fem., *a head of* (small) *cattle* (the nom. rare); **pecus, pecŏris** (generally collectively, *cattle*); also, **pecua** (**plur. tantum**), **pecubus.**

penus, penŏris, plur. **penŏra,** *a store of provisions;* also, **penus, penus,** fem., and **penum, peni,** — the last two forms without a plural.

So, also, **colluvio** (3d) and **colluvies** (5th), *filth washed together, a confused mixture;* **contagio** (3d) and **contagium** (2d, in the poets and later writers), *contact, contagion;* **scorpio** (3d) and **scorpius** (2d), *the scorpion;* with some others.

Obs. Some Greek words are partly adopted in their Greek form, partly employed in a Latin form, somewhat modified; e.g. **crater** (3d, masc.) and **cratēra**[1] (fem.), **elephas** (**elephantis,** 3d) and **elephantus** (2d), **tiāras** (1st, masc.) and **tiāra** (fem.). See § **33,** *Obs.* 3. Of the words **chaos,** *chaos;* **cetos,** *whale;* **melos,** *song* (3d, neut.), we find (but rarely) the Latin forms **chaus** (abl. **chao**), **cetus, melus** (masc.). The city of Argos is also named, in Latin, **Argi, Argorum** (§ **51,** *f*).

---

[1] [Hor. Od. iii. 18, 7.]

§ 57. Some few words change wholly or partially in the plural the gender which they have in the singular; as:—

jocus, *jest;* plur., **joci** and **joca**.

locus, *place;* plur., **loca**, *places*, in a material signification; **loci**, *passages in books, subjects*. (Some authors, however, use **loci** in the sense of **loca**.)

carbasus, *linen* (fem.); plur., **carbasa** (*sails*).

coelum, *heaven;* plur., **coeli**.

frenum, *bit;* plur., **freni** and **frena**.

rastrum, *mattock;* plur., **rastri** and **rastra**.

ostrea, *oyster;* plur., **ostreae**, and **ostrea, ostreorum**.

sibilus, *hissing;* plur., **sibili**,—poet., **sibila**.

Tartarus, *hell;* plur., **Tartara**. (A Greek word, used only in the poets.)

Obs. Of **balneae** and **epulae** (**balneum, epulum**), see § **51**, *Obs. c, d*.

CHAPTER X.

THE INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 58. Adjectives, and likewise participles, are declined by cases; but they are at the same time subject to some variation in form to correspond with the gender of the substantive to which they belong. Thus those adjectives which in the masculine gender follow the second declension, in the feminine add **a** to the stem throughout, and are declined according to the first declension. But those, on the other hand, which follow the third declension (of which the stem ends in a consonant), are varied only in the formation of the nominative and accusative. They thus become adjectives of three, of two, or of one termination in the nominative. They are then declined like substantives with a similar stem and of the same gender, as it has been said already, under the declension of substantives. (No adjectives belong to the fourth or fifth declension.)

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, and Three Terminations. Those adjectives which in the masculine and neuter gender follow the second declension, end either in **us**, in the neuter in **um**, and in the feminine in **a**: e.g. **probus, proba, probum**, *honest;* or in **er**, **ĕrum** (**rum**), **ĕra** (**ra**): e.g. **liber,**

libera, liberum, *free;* **niger, nigra, nigrum,** *black;* one ends in **ur**: **satur, satŭra, satŭrum,** *sated.*[1]

Those adjectives in **er,** which retain **e** before **r** in the gen. sing. (and have already been enumerated in § **37**), retain it also in the fem. and neut.: e.g. **liber,** gen. **liberi, libera, liberum**; the others omit it: e.g. **niger,** gen. **nigri, nigra, nigrum.**

Obs. 1. In this way, are also varied the participles in **us**: as, **amatus, amata, amatum,** *loved;* **amaturus, amatura, amaturum,** *that will love;* and **amandus, amanda, amandum,** *that is to be loved, lovable.*

Obs. 2. Of the irregular gen. and dat. of some adjectives in **us,** we have already spoken, in treating of the second declension (§ **37,** *Obs.* 2).

Obs. 3. The distinction between the two classes of adjectives consists only in this, that those in **er** have not assumed the ending **us** in the nominative (as **properus, praeposterus,** and **triqvetius** have done, as well as all those with a long **e,** as **sevērus**), and that in some of them an **e** has been inserted in the nominative. Of **cetera, ceterum** (acc. **ceterum, ceteram, ceterum,** and so on in all genders), and **ludicra, ludicrum** (acc. **ludicrum, ludicram, ludicrum,** &c.), the nom. masc. sing. is not in use; that of **posterus** rarely occurs.

§ 59. 2. Adjectives of the Third Declension, and Two or Three Terminations. Of the adjectives of the third declension some end in **is** in the nominative of the masculine and feminine (with the connecting vowel **i** inserted between the stem and **s,** see § **40,** 1, *c*), in the nominative of the neuter in **e** (with **e** as an affix, see § **40,** 2, *c*); e.g. **lĕvis, leve,** *light* (abl. **levi,** neut. plur. **levia,** gen. plur. **levium.** See § **42–44**). The distinction between the neuter and the other genders is only marked in the nom. and acc. sing. and plur. (**levis, leve; levem, leve; leves, levia**).

Thirteen adjectives, the stem of which ends in **r,** and which are, in all other respects, declined like those adduced ending in **is, e,** have, in the nom. sing. masc. gender, **er** for **ris,** and therefore in this case three terminations; e.g. masc. **acer,** fem. **acris,** neut. **acre** (gen. **acris,** &c.). These adjectives are: **acer,** *keen;* **alăcer,** *alert;* **campester,** *belonging to the field, flat;* **celĕber,** *much frequented, famous;* **celer,** *swift;* **eqvester,** *belonging to the cavalry* or *to knighthood;* **paluster,** *marshy;* **pedester,** *belonging to the infantry;* **puter,** *putrid;* **salūber,** *wholesome;* **silvester,** *belonging to a wood, wooded;* **terrester,** *belonging to the earth*

[1] It is usual to name the genders in this order, though the masculine and neuter are most nearly related in respect of form.

or *continent;* **volŭcer**, *winged:* **celer** alone retains the **e** in the inflection, — fem. **celĕris**, neut. **celere**, gen. **celeris.**

Obs. 1. Sometimes these adjectives end in **ris** in the masc. also, so that they in no respect differ from the others in **is**: e.g. **annus salubris** (Cic.); **collis silvestris** (Cæs.). But this occurs but rarely in most words of this class, and chiefly in the poets.

Obs. 2. To the same form as these adjectives belong the names of the months, **September, October, November, December**, which, in the nom. sing., occur only in the masc. (**mensis**), but are found in the feminine in such phrases as **Kalendae Septembres**, &c. (**libertate Decembri**, *the freedom of December*, Hor.).

Obs. 3. Some few adjectives have both the form in **us** (**a, um**) and that in **is** (**e**); viz. **hilarus, hilaris**, *merry*, and various adjectives formed by composition from substantives of the first and second decl.: **imbecillus** (**imbecillis**, rare), *weak;* **imberbus, imberbis**, *without a beard;* **inermus, inermis**, *unarmed;* **semiermis, semiermus**, *half-armed;* **exanimus, exanimis**, *deprived of life;* **semianimus, semianimis**, *half deprived of life;* **unanimus, unanimis**, *unanimous;* **bijugus, qvadrijugus, multijugus**, and **bijugis**, &c., *with two, four, or many horses;* **infrenus, infrenis**, *unbridled.* So of **acclīvis**, *rising* (in the form of a hill); **declīvis**, *inclined downwards;* **proclīvis**, *inclined downwards* (also *inclined* to any thing, and *easy*); there is found a rare form, **aclīvus**, &c.

§ 60. 3. Adjectives of the Third Declension, and One Termination. *a.* The remaining adjectives of the third declension have only one termination in the nominative: e.g. **sapiens**, *wise;* **felix**, *happy;* gen. **sapientis, felīcis**; so also the participles in **ns**: as, **amans**, *loving;* **legens**, *reading.* But the neuter gender is distinguished in the singular by having the acc. the same as the nom. (masc. and fem. **sapientem, felicem**, neut. **sapiens, felix**), and in the nom. and acc. plural by the termination **ia** (masc. and fem. **sapientes, felices**, neut. **sapientia, felicia**). (Only **vetus has vetera**, see § **43**, 1. Ablative **sapienti** and **sapiente**, see § **42**; genitive plural **sapientium**, see § **44.**)

b. Adjectives of one termination are found in many of the forms of the stem and nominative given under the substantives (§ **41**, *a*). Those which occur most frequently are: nom. **as**, gen. **ātis**: e.g. **Arpinas, Arpinātis**, belonging to the city of Arpinum; **ns, ntis**: e.g. **sapiens, sapientis**, *wise;* **ax, ācis**: e.g. **ferax, ferācis**, *fruitful.*

The remaining forms are **er**, gen. **ĕris** (viz. **degener, pauper, uber**); **es**, gen. **ĭtis** (viz. **ales, coeles, dives, sospes, superstes**); **es, ĕtis**

(**hebes, indiges, praepes, teres**: the following should be noticed particularly: **deses** and **reses, desĭdis** and **resĭdis**; **locuples, locuplētis**; **pubes, pubĕris**, and **impūbes, impubĕris**, which is also declined **impūbis, impubis**); **ex, ĭcis** (e.g. **supplex**); **ix, īcis** (**felix, pernix**); **ox, ōcis** (**atrox, ferox, velox**; but **praecox, praecŏcis**); the several words **caelebs, caelĭbis**; **cicur, cicŭris**; **compos** and **impos, compŏtis** and **impŏtis**; **dis, dītis**; **memor, memŏris**; **oscen, oscĭnis**; **par, păris** (**dispar, impar**); **trux, trŭcis**; **vetus, vetĕris**; **vigil, vigĭlis**; with some which are formed from substantives of the third declension, and have the stem of these substantives: as, **concors, concordis**, with others from **cor**; **biceps, bicipĭtis**, with others (**anceps, praeceps, triceps**) from **caput**; **intercus, intercŭtis**, from **cŭtis**; **iners, inertis**, from **ars**; **discolor, discolōris**, from **color**; **qvadrupes, qvadrupĕdis**, with others from **pes**, &c. (**Exsangvis**, however, has **exsangvis** in the genitive.)

c. The neuter plural is only formed from those adjectives of one termination, which end in **ans** and **ens**, in **as** (rarely), **rs, ax, ix**, and **ox**, and from the numeral adjectives in **plex**; as:

elegantia, sapientia, Larinatia, sollertia, concordia, tenacia, felicia, atrocia, simplicia, duplicia (from **elegans**, *elegant*; **sapiens**, *wise*; **Larinas**, belonging to the city of Larinum; **sollers**, *prudent, ingenious*; **concors**, *agreed*; **tenax**, *tenacious, persevering*; **felix**, *happy*; **atrox**, *horrible*); and from the following, to be separately noticed: **anceps**, *two-sided*; **praeceps**, *steep*; **locuples**, *rich*; **par**, *equal*; **vetus**, *old*; in later writers also from **hebes**, *blunt*; **teres**, *round*; **qvadrupes**, *four-footed*; **versicolor**, *of various colors*. (Consequently, not, for example, from **memor, pauper, supplex, trux, compos, uber**, &c.)

Some adjectives, which otherwise have no neuter in the plural, nevertheless occur with neuter substantives in the dat. and abl.: e.g. **supplicibus verbis**, *with suppliant words* (Cic.); **discoloribus signis**, *with signs of various colors* (id.); **puberibus foliis**, *with sprouting leaves* (from **pubes**, Virg.).

Obs. 1. Some few adjectives vary between one and more endings: as, **opulens**, *rich*, and **opulentus, a, um**; **violens**, *violent*, and, more frequently, **violentus**. **Dives**, *rich*, changes with **dis** (gen. **ditis**), neut. **dite**; the neuter plural is **ditia**, the comp. and superl. both **divitior, divitissimus**, and **ditior, ditissimus**.

Obs. 2. The substantives derived from verbs (personal names) in **tor**, which form feminines in **trix** (see § **177**, 2), are sometimes connected as adjectives with other substantives, especially **victor**, *the conqueror*, as an adj., victorious, fem. **victrix**; and **ultor**, *the revenger*, as an adj., avenging, fem. **ultrix**; e.g. **victor exercitus, ultrices deae**. From these two, the poets form a neuter plural, **victricia** (e.g. **arma**) and **ultricia**

(e.g. **tela**); and in the same way from the substantive **hospes**, *stranger, guest*, the neuter plural **hospita** (e.g. **aeqvora**).

Obs. 3. Some other appellations of persons are also used by the poets and later writers as adjectives (by apposition): e.g. **artifex**, *artist* (**artifex motus**, *motion guided by art*, Quinct.); **incŏla**, *inhabitant* (**turba incola**, *crowd of inhabitants*, Ovid); but very rarely with a neuter substantive (**ruricola aratrum**, *the field-tilling plough*, Ovid).[1]

Obs. 4. **Juvenis** and **senex** are poetically used as adjectives (**juvenes anni**, *youthful years*, Ovid). **Princeps** is an adjective (**princeps locus, principes viri**), but most frequently as belonging to a verb; as, **Gorgias princeps ausus est**, *Gorgias first ventured.* (See Syntax, § 300, *a.*)

Obs. 5. Words are formed in Greek from the names of countries, towns, and nations, ending in **as** (**ados**) and in **is** (**idos**), which are feminine national names, and feminine adjectives. These the Latin poets also use as feminine adjectives, and form others on the same principle: e.g. **Pelias hasta**, *the Pelian spear* (from Mount Pelion); **Ausŏnis ora**, *the Ausonian coast* (**Ausones**); **Hesperĭdes aqvae**, *the Hesperian* (*Italian*) *waters.*

§ 61. Certain forms of some adjectives are not in use, as the nominatives **primor**, *eminent*; **seminex**, *half-dead*; **sons**, *guilty* (**caeterus, ludicrus**, § 58, *Obs.* 3). **Exlex**, *without law*; and **exspes**, *without hope*, — are found only in the nom. and acc.; **pernox**, *through the night*, in the nom. and abl.; **trilĭcem**, *of three threads*, only in the acc. **Pauci**, *few*; and generally **pleriqve**, *most* (many), — are used in the plural only, the last without a genitive. We find, however, **pleraqve nobilitas, juventus**, *the greater part of the nobility, of the youth*; **plerumqve exercitum** (acc.), and sometimes **plerumqve** (neut)., signifying *the greater part.* **Frugi**, *good*; and **neqvam**, *good for nothing*, — are indeclinable in all cases. (**Homo frugi, hominem frugi, hominis frugi**, &c.; **homines frugi**, &c.)

Obs. The words **opus** and **necesse** (also undeclined) are only used in connection with the verb **sum**: **opus est, sunt**, *it is necessary*; **necesse est**, impers., *it is necessary.*

§ 62. Besides the form which is used when a property is simply attributed to an object (**gradus positivus**), adjectives have two forms of comparison (**gradus comparationis**). One is used when, in a comparison of two objects, a quality is attributed to one in a higher degree than to the other (or than to the same at another time), and is called the Comparative degree; e.g. **vir probior**, *a more upright man.* The other form is employed when a quality is

---

[1] [**populum late regem** (Virg.), **regina pecunia** (Hor.).]

attributed to an object in the highest degree, and is named Superlative degree; e.g. **vir probissimus,** *the most upright man.* The changing of the adjective from the positive to the other forms is called its Comparison.

The participles in **ns** (present participle active), and the passive participle (perf. part.) in **us,** are also compared, when they take the complete signification of adjectives; i.e. when they signify a property without reference to time.

Obs. The participle in **urus** (future participle active) and the gerundive (in **ndus**) are never compared.

§ 63. The comparative is formed by adding to the stem (as it is seen in the positive, when the case-ending is removed) the endings **ior** (masc. and fem.) and **ius** (neut.); as:

probus (**prob-us**), compar. **probior, probius**; **liber** (acc. **liber-um**), **liberior, liberius**; **niger** (acc. **nigr-um**), **nigrior, nigrius**; **lĕvis** (**lev-is**), **levior, levius**; **sapiens** (acc. **sapient-em**), **sapientior, sapientius**; **felix** (acc. **felic-em**), **felicior, felicius.** (Acc. **probiorem, probius,** gen. **probioris,** &c., according to the third declension, abl. **probiore,**— more rarely **probiori**; plur., **probiores, probiora,** gen. **probiorum.**)

Obs. From the comparative of some adjectives, there is formed a diminutive in **culus** (see § **182,** *c, Obs.*): e.g. **duriusculus** (**-a, -um**); **grandiusculus, longiusculus, majusculus** (from **major**), **plusculus,** sometimes to show a slight preponderance: e.g. **Thais qvam ego sum grandiuscula est,** *a little older;* sometimes to diminish the force of the positive: e.g. **duriusculum est,** *it is somewhat hard.*

§ 64. The superlative generally ends in **issĭmus (a, um),** which is added to the stem in the same way as the ending of the comparative; e.g. **probissimus, levissimus, sapientissimus, felicissimus.**

In adjectives that end in **er** in the nom. masc. (both of the second and third declension), the **r** of the nom. is doubled, and the ending **ĭmus** affixed: e.g. **liber, liberrimus; niger, nigerrimus; acer, acerrimus; celer, celerrimus.** On the same principle, are formed **veterrimus** from **vetus** (gen. **veter-is**), and **prosperrimus** from **prosperus. Maturus,** *ripe,* has **maturissimus** and **maturrimus** (especially the adverb **maturrime**).

The adjectives **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *difficult;* **gracilis,** *slender, thin;* **humilis,** *low;* **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike,* — form the superlative, after removing the ending, by doubling the **l,** and adding **ĭmus; facillimus, difficillimus, gracillimus,** &c. (From **imbecillis,** *weak,* is formed **imbecillimus,** but from **imbecillus, imbecillissimus.** (See above, § **59,** *Obs.* 3.)

Obs. 1. The remaining adjectives in **ilis** have the usual form; e.g. **utilis, utilissimus**; but many want the superlative. (See below.)

Obs. 2. We may remark the antiquated orthography **probissumus, nigerrumus**, &c., for **probissimus, nigerrimus.** (See § **5**, *a*, *Obs.* 5.)

§ 65. Some adjectives vary from the regular comparison. 1. Adjectives in **dĭcus, fĭcus, vŏlus**, derived from the verbs **dico, facio, volo**: e.g. **maledicus**, *slanderous*; **munificus**, *liberal*; **benevolus**, *well-wishing*, — form the comparative in **entior**, the superlative in **entissimus** (as if from participles in **ens**); **maledicentior, munificentior, benevolentior, maledicentissimus, munificentissimus, benevolentissimus.**[1]

Obs. **Egēnus**, *needy*; and **providus**, *provident*, — take, for their degrees of comparison, those of the participles **egens** and **providens**; as, **egentior, egentissimus.**

2. The following adjectives form their degrees of comparison either with some change of the stem, as it exists in the positive, or from an entirely different stem; sometimes, too, with variations in the ending.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, *good.*	**melior, melius**	**optimus**
malus, *bad.*	**pejor, pejus**	**pessimus**
magnus, *great.*	**major, majus**	**maximus**
multus, *much.*	**plus**[2] (neut.)	**plurimus**
parvus, *little.*	**minor, minus**	**minimus**
neqvam,[3] *good for nothing.*	**neqvior**	**neqvissimus**
frugi,[3] *frugal.*	**frugalior**	**frugalissimus**

From **senex, juvenis**, are formed the comparatives **senior, junior**, without a superlative.

Obs. **Multus**, in prose, signifies *much*; as, **multus sudor, multa cura.** In the poets, it denotes, in the sing., *many a*; e.g. **multa tabella, multa victima.** **Pluris** is used only as a genitive of the price (Syntax, § **294**). **Pluria** for **plura** is rare and archaic. From **plures** come **complures, complura** (rarely **compluria**), gen. **complurium.**

§ 66. *a.* Some adjectives which denote the relation of time or place which one object bears to another, are commonly used only

---

[1] **Mirificissimus** from **mirificus**, in Terence.

[2] In the singular only the neut. **plus**, *more*; nom. and acc., with the genitive **pluris**, in the plur.; **plures, plura**, *several*; **plurium, pluribus.**

[3] Indeclinable in the positive.

in the comparative and superlative. The positive is either not used at all (but only a corresponding preposition or adverb), or only in certain particular combinations, or with a peculiar meaning. The superlative in these adjectives has an irregular, and in some a double form.

(**citra**, prep.)	**citerior**, *on this side.*	**citimus**, *hithermost.*
(**extĕri**, in the plur. only; **extra**, prep.)	**exterior**, *outer.*	**extrēmus**, *the utmost* (rarely **extĭmus**).

Obs. **Extĕri**, *strangers, foreigners;* also, **exterae nationes, extera regna**, &c.

(**infĕrum**, plur. **inferi**; prep. **infra.**)	**inferior**, *lower.*	**infimus** or **imus**, *lowest, undermost.*

Obs. **Inferum** is commonly used only in the combination **mare inferum**, *the sea below Italy, southward of Italy;* **inferi**, *the inhabitants of the infernal regions;* **infera flumina, inferae partes**, *the rivers of the lower world, the subterraneous parts of the world.*

(**intra**, prep.)	**interior**, *inner.*	**intimus**, *most inward.*
(**prope**, prep.)	**propior**, *nearer.*	**proximus**, *nearest.*

Obs. **Propinqvus** is used for the positive. Its comparative, **propinqvior**, is rare.

(**postĕrus**, prep. **post.**)	**posterior**, *later, hinder.*	**postrēmus**, *the last.*

Obs. **Posterus** (not used in the nom. masc.) signifies *the following, the next* (in order of time); e.g. **posterum diem, postera nocte**, in the poets **postera aetas**, and so on. **Posteri**, *posterity.* The superlative form **postumus** is found, in good writers, only in the signification *last-born, born after* (after the father's death), **filius postumus.** (**Anterior** from **ante**, is found only in later writers.)

(**superum**, plur. **superi**; prep. **supra.**)	**superior**, *upper.*	**suprēmus**, *the extreme, last* (in point of time). **summus**, *the highest.*

Obs. **Superum** is usually found only in the expression **mare superum**, *the sea north of Italy* (the Adriatic); **superi**, *the gods above;* **supera**, *the upper parts of the world.* (Rarely as an adjective, **res superae**, *belonging to the upper world*, **limen superum.**)

(**ultra**, prep.)	**ulterior**, *on the other side, further.*	**ultimus**, *the last.*
	prior, *the first, former.*	**primus**, *first.* (See § 74.)

b. The following comparatives and superlatives also want the positive: —

deterior, *worse.*	**deterrimus**
ocior, *swifter.*	**ocissimus**
potior, *preferable.*	**potissimus**

Obs. 1. **satius**, *better, more advisable* (from adverb **satis**), is only used in the neuter with **est** (impersonally).

Obs. 2. (**Sĕqvior**) **seqvius**, *of less account, less good*, is rare as an adjective; adverb, **sēcius.**

§ 67. Many adjectives have no forms for the comparative and superlative, because they only show that an object does or does not belong to a strictly limited class, so that it is impossible or difficult to conceive a difference of degree: e.g. **aureus**, *golden;* and all those which designate a material: **Graecus**, *Greek;* **pedester**, *belonging to the infantry;* **aestivus**, *belonging to the summer;* **hesternus**, *of yesterday;* and others which denote a certain period of time: **vivus**, *living;* **sospes**, *uninjured;* **merus**, *mere, pure;* **memor**, *remembering.* Other adjectives have no comparative or superlative, because, from the form of the adjective, these would want euphony. On account of one or other of these impediments, the following adjectives have commonly no forms of comparison.

a. Those which have the termination **us** preceded by a vowel: e.g. **idoneus**, *convenient;* **dubius**, *doubtful* (but **tenuis**, *thin*, **tenuior, tenuissimus**).

Obs. Those in **uus**, however, are sometimes used in the superlative: **assiduissimus, strenuissimus** (from **assiduus**, *persevering;* **strenuus**, *vigorous*), more rarely in the comparative, as **assiduior.** Of those in **ius**, there occur the comparative **egregior**, from **egregius**, *distinguished*, with some others; and the superlatives **egregiissimus** and **piissimus**, from **pius**, *pious*, but not in the better writers.

b. Most of those which are compounded of verbs or substantives: e.g. those in **fer** and **ger**, from **fero, gero**; **ignivŏmus**, *vomiting fire* (**vomo**); **degener**, *degenerate* (**genus**); **discolor**, *of various colors* (**color**); **inops**, *poor* (**ops**); **magnanimus**, *noble-minded* (**animus**). We must, however, except those in **dicus, ficus, volus**, from **dico, facio, volo**, of which several (not all) are compared (see § **65**, 1), and those from **ars, mens, cor**: as, **iners, sollers, demens, concors, discors, vecors** (rarely **misericors**).

c. Most of those which are manifestly derivatives (from Latin words in use) with the terminations **ĭcus, ālis** or **āris, īlis, ŭlus, tĭmus, īnus, īvus, ōrus** (e.g. **civĭcus, naturalis, hostīlis, qverŭlus, legitĭmus, pere-**

grīnus, furtīvus, decōrus), with those derived from substantives with the terminations **ātus** and **ītus** (e.g. **barbatus**, *bearded*).

Obs. Some exceptions, however, occur, partly in the comparative and superlative: e.g. **hospitalis**, *hospitable;* **liberalis**, *liberal;* **divinus**, *godlike, divine* (**liberalior, liberalissimus**, &c.), partly in the comparative alone: as, **rusticus**, *rural, rustic;* **aeqvalis**, *equal, uniform;* **capitalis**, *fatal, capital;* **popularis**, *favorable to the people;* **regalis**, *royal;* **salutaris**, *wholesome;* **civīlis**, *civil;* **tempestivus**, *seasonable* (**aeqvalior**, &c.).

d. To these are to be added some particular words, which cannot be referred to any general rule: e.g. **ferus**, *wild;* **gnarus**, *knowing;* **mirus**, *wonderful;* **navus**, *active;* **rudis**, *raw, unpolished;* **trux**, *harsh* (while **verus, clarus, dirus**, with the same form, have the degrees of comparison; **serus**, *late*, on the other hand, rarely.)

Obs. 1. Of adjectives with certain terminations, especially **ĭdus**, many remain without comparison (e.g. **trepidus**, *apprehensive*), while others are compared (e.g. **callĭdus**, *sly;* **candĭdus**, *white*, &c.). In some adjectives, it may be simply accident that the forms of comparison occur in no old writer.

Obs. 2. The words **dexter**, *right;* and **sinister**, *left*, express already in the positive a relation to some other object; and the comparative is consequently superfluous. Yet some writers have used **dexterior** and **sinisterior** in the signification of the positive, and even the superlative **dextĭmus** (Sall.).

§ 68. *a.* The following adjectives have no comparative in use, while the superlative occurs: **falsus**, *false;* **inclĭtus**, *renowned;* **novus**, *new* (**novissimus**, *the last*); **sacer**, *holy;* **vetus**, *old* (**veterrimus**; on the other hand **vetustus, vetustior, vetustissimus**).

Obs. Several participles are also used in the superlative without a comparative; e.g. **meritus**, and, compounded with **in**, **invictus**, *unconquered, invincible.* (But **doctus**, *learned*, **doctior, doctissimus**; **indoctus, indoctior, indoctissimus**, &c.)

b. Many adjectives in **ĭlis** (**bĭlis**), which are derived from verbs, have the comparative, but not the superlative: e.g. **agilis**, *active;* **docilis**, *teachable;* **credibilis**, *credible;* **probabilis**, *allowable, probable;* also the following: **ater**, *black;* **coecus**, *blind;* **jejunus**, *fasting;* **longinqvus**, *distant;* **proclivis**, *leaning downwards;* **propinqvus**, *near* (see under **propior**, § **66**, *a*); **surdus**, *deaf;* **teres**, *round;* and some others. (**Adolescentior** from **adolescens**, *young;* commonly a substantive, *the youth.*)

Obs. Others in **ilis** (**bilis**) are compared throughout; e.g. **amabilis, fragilis, fertilis** (**fero**), **nobilis** (**nosco**), **ignobilis, mobilis, utilis.** (**Subtīlis** and **vilis** are not derived from verbs.)

c. When a comparison is required, and the forms of the comparative and superlative are not in use, **magis,** *more,* and **maxime,** *most,* are prefixed to the adjective; e.g. **magis mirus, maxime** (**summe,** *in the highest degree*) **mirus.** Otherwise, this circumlocution is generally used only by the poets.

Obs. With a view to heighten the signification, **per** is prefixed to many adjectives, and by all writers; e.g. **percommodus,** *very convenient.* Those with **prae** — e.g. **praegelidus,** *very cold* — are found more in the poets and later prose. Adjectives, which have their signification enhanced in this way, are not compared. Only **praeclarus,** *illustrious,* is compared as a simple word, and used by all writers.

CHAPTER XI.

THE NUMERALS.

§ 69. Those numerals which are used only to count and to express a given number are called Cardinal numbers: those derived from them, which express the number of an object and its place in the series, — e.g. **tertius,** *the third,* — are called Ordinals. Besides these two kinds, there are in Latin numbers expressing division or repetition (Distributives) which express a number as thought of several times (one for each object or case); e.g. **seni,** *six each, six at a time.*

§ 70. The names of the cardinal numbers are as follows: with them are given the Latin numerical signs.

I **unus, una, unum.**	X **decem.**
II **duo, duae, duo.**	XI **undecim.**
III **tres, tria.**	XII **duodecim.**
IV **qvattuor**	XIII **tredecim** or **decem et tres** (**trés et decim**).
V **qvinqve.**	XIV **qvattuordecim**
VI **sex.**	XV **qvindecim.**
VII **septem.**	XVI **sedecim** (**sexdecim, decem et sex**).
VIII **octo.**	
VIIII or IX **novem.**	

XVII **decem et septem** or **septemdecim (septem et decem).**
XVIII **duodeviginti** (properly 2 from 20, or 20 *minus* 2) or (more rarely) **decem et octo.**
XIX **undeviginti** or (more rarely) **decem et novem.**
XX **viginti.**
XXI **unus (a, um) et viginti** or **viginti unus (a, um).**
XXII **duo (duae) et viginti** or **viginti duo (duae)**, and so on; e.g.:
XXV **qvinqve et viginti** or **viginti qvinqve.**
XXVIII **duodetriginta** or (more rarely) **octo et viginti** or **viginti octo.**
XXIX **undetriginta** or (more rarely) **novem et viginti** or **viginti novem.**
XXX **triginta**, and so on, as with **viginti**; e.g.:
XXXIX **undeqvadraginta** or (more rarely) **novem et triginta** or **triginta novem.**
XL **quadraginta.**
L **qvinqvaginta.**
LX **sexaginta.**
LXX **septuaginta.**
LXXX **octoginta.**
XC **nonaginta.**
XCVIII **nonaginta octo, octo et nonaginta.**
XCIX or IC **nonaginta novem, novem et nonaginta, undecentum.**
C **centum.**
CI **centum et unus**, or **centum unus.**
CII **centum et duo, centum duo,** &c.; e.g.:
CXXIV **centum et viginti qvattuor, centum viginti qvattuor.**
CC **ducenti, ae, a.**
CCC **trecenti, ae, a.**
CCCC **qvadringenti, ae, a.**
IↃ or D **qvingenti, ae, a.**
DC **sexcenti, ae, a.**[1]
DCC **septingenti, ae, a.**
DCCC **octingenti, ae, a.**
DCCCC **nongenti, ae, a.**
CIↃ or M **mille.**
CIↃCIↃ or MM **duo millia,** &c.
IↃↃ **qvinqve millia.**
IↃↃCIↃↃCIↃ or IↃMM **septem millia.**
CCIↃↃ **decem millia.**
IↃↃↃ **qvinqvaginta millia.**
CCCIↃↃↃ **centum millia.**

Obs. 1. The pronominal words (see § **93**) **tot**, *so many*; **qvot**, *how many?* and **totidem**, *just so many*, — have a signification corresponding with these numbers. (The numeral adjectives **multi, pauci, omnes, nulli, nonnulli, pleriqve**, are also allied to them in signification.)

Obs. 2. The Latin numeral signs, with the exception of M (an abbreviation of **mille**), were originally not letters, but arbitrary signs, which subsequently received the form of letters. A stroke (I) with a ↀ (inverted) is 500; and every additional Ↄ corresponds to a cipher in our figures; therefore, IↃↃ = 5,000, IↃↃↃ = 50,000. The number is doubled when as many C's are put before the stroke as there stand Ↄ's after it;

[1] **Sexcenti** is used of an indefinite large number; as, a hundred, a thousand, in English. [So **trecenti** in Horace: **Amatorem trecentae Pirithoum cohibent catenae** (Od. iii. 4, 79.)]

therefore, CIↃ = 1,000, CCIↃↃ = 10,000, CCCIↃↃↃ = 100,000. In more modern Latin books, our (Arabic) numerals are sometimes made use of.

§ 71. The numerals under **mille** are adjectives: the three first are declined; the numbers from **qvattuor** to **decem**, those which end in **decim**, and the tens (**viginti, triginta,** &c.) with **centum**, are undeclined: so also **undeviginti, duodeviginti,** and the others, which are formed in the same way (by subtraction). **Ducenti** and the following hundreds are declined like the plural of adjectives in **us.**

Unus, una, unum, has, in the gen., in all genders, **unīus**; in the dat., **uni** (see § **37**, *Obs.* 2); but is otherwise regularly declined after the second and first declension. It has also a plural, — **uni, unae, una,** — in the signification *alone, of one kind*, with plural substantives. **Uni Svevi**, *the Suevi alone*; **unis moribus vivere** (Cic. pro Flacc. 26), *to live with manners unchanged.* **Uni, alteri**, *the one party, the other.* Of **unae litterae**, see § **76**, *c*, *Obs.*)

Duo is thus declined: —

	MASC. AND NEUT.	FEM.
NOM.	**duo**	**duae**
ACC.	**duo** (masc. also **duos**)	**duas**
GEN.	**duorum**	**duarum**
DAT.	**duōbus**	**duābus**
ABL.	**duōbus**	**duābus**

In the same way is declined the word **ambo, ambae, ambo,** *both* (e.g. acc. masc., **ambo** or **ambos**). The gen. of **duo** has also the form **duum**, especially **duum millium.** (See § **34**, *Obs.* 3; § **37**, *Obs.* 4.)

Tres is declined according to the third declension, thus: —

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**tres**	**tres**	**tria**
ACC.	**tres**	**tres**	**tria**
GEN.	**trium**	**trium**	
DAT.	**tribus**	**tribus**	
ABL.	**tribus**	**tribus**	

§ 72. *a.* **Mille** is usually an indeclinable adjective; e.g. **mille homines, mille hominum, mille hominibus.** Sometimes, however, it is used as a substantive in the sing., and is followed by the name of the objects enumerated in the gen.; e.g. **ea civitas mille misit militum** (Corn. Milt. 5), but then usually only in the nom. or acc.

Obs. 1. When **mille** stands as a nom. in the way last mentioned, i.e. as a substantive with the gen. following, it is, notwithstanding, usually followed by a verb in the plural: **mille passuum erant inter urbem castraqve** (Liv. XXIII. 44). Such a phrase as **ibi mille hominum occiditur** is antiquated.

Obs. 2. **Mille** seldom occurs as a substantive in any other case than the nom. and acc., and then only in connection with **millia** in the same case: **cum octo millibus peditum, mille eqvitum** (Liv. XXI. 61).

b. From **mille** comes the plural **millia** (**milia**), *thousands*, a substantive (gen. **millium**, dat. abl. **millibus**), to which the smaller numerals are prefixed; **tria, sex, viginti, centum millia**, with the gen. of the objects enumerated (see § **285**, *a*); e.g. **sex millia peditum, duo millia eqvitum.**

Obs. 1. When smaller (adjective) numerals follow **millia**, the name of the objects enumerated, provided it comes afterwards, is put in the same case as **millia** (not in the genitive): e.g. **Caesi sunt tria millia trecenti milites; Caesar cepit duo millia trecentos sex Gallos.** But if the name of the objects enumerated comes first, it is usually put in the genitive governed by **millia**; e.g. **Caesar Gallorum duo millia qvingentos sex cepit.** Sometimes, however: **Gallos cepit duo millia qvingentos sex.** (**Omnes eqvites, XV millia numero, convenire jubet**, in apposition. Cæs. B. G. VII. 64.)

Obs. 2. **Bis mille, ter mille**, instead of **duo millia, tria millia**, is poetical.

§ 73. From the examples in § **70**, it is seen that, in compounding the numbers that fall between the tens from 20 up to 100, either the ten *without* **et**, or the smaller number *with* **et**, is placed first (**viginti unus, unus et viginti; viginti et unus** is rare). For 28, 29, 38, 39, &c., the expressions formed by subtraction are the most usual (**duodetriginta, undetriginta**). The hundreds (in prose) are always placed before the tens, with or without **et**, and then the tens before the units; e.g. **centum et sexaginta sex** or **centum sexaginta sex.** (Deviations from this are rare.)

A million is denoted, in Latin, by the expression 10 times 100,000; **decies centum millia** or (with the distributive numeral, see § **76**, *b*) **decies centena millia**, and so on, above a million; **undecies, duodecies centum** or **centena millia** (1,100,000, 1,200,000), **vicies, tricies centum millia** (2,000,000, 3,000,000), **vicies qvinqvies centena millia** (2,500,000). To these, the single thousands are added, in the following way: **decies centena millia triginta sex millia centum nonaginta sex** (1,036, 196).

§ 74. The Ordinals are all adjectives in **us, a, um, and are regularly declined.** Their names are: —

1 **primus**, *first* (of two, **prior**, which is a comparative. See § 66, *a*).
2 **secundus** or **alter.**
3 **tertius.**
4 **qvartus.**
5 **qvintus.**
6 **sextus.**
7 **septimus.**
8 **octavus.**
9 **nonus.**
10 **decimus.**
11 **undecimus.**
12 **duodecimus.**
13 **tertius decimus** (rarely, **decimus et tertius**, &c.).
14 **qvartus decimus.**
15 **qvintus decimus.**
16 **sextus decimus.**
17 **septimus decimus.**
18 **duodevicesimus** (more rarely, **octavus decimus**).
19 **undevicesimus** (more rarely, **nonus decimus**).
20 **vicesimus** (**vigesimus**).
21 **unusetvicesimus** (**unaetvicesima, unumetvicesimum**), more rarely, **primus et vicesimus, vicesimus primus.**
22 **alter** (rarely, **secundus**) **et vicesimus, vicesimus alter**, or **ducetvicesimus** (**ducetvicesima, ducetvicesimum**).
23 **tertius et vicesimus, vicesimus tertius.**
24 **qvartus et vicesimus, vicesimus qvartus**, and so on.
28 **duodetricesimus**, more rarely, **octavus et vicesimus, vicesimus octavus.**
29 **undetricesimus**, more rarely, **nonus et vicesimus, vicesimus nonus.**
30 **tricesimus** (**trigesimus**).
31 **primus et tricesimus, tricesimus primus**, or **unusettricesimus**, &c., as in 21.
38 **duodeqvadragesimus**, more rarely **octavus et tricesimus, tricesimus octavus.**
39 **undeqvadragesimus**, more rarely, **nonus et tricesimus, tricesimus nonus.**
40 **qvadragesimus.**
50 **qvinqvagesimus.**
60 **sexagesimus.**
70 **septuagesimus.**
80 **octogesimus.**
90 **nonagesimus.**
100 **centesimus.**
101 **centesimus primus.**
110 **centesimus decimus.**
124 **centesimus vicesimus qvartus**, etc.
200 **ducentesimus.**
300 **trecentesimus.**
400 **qvadringentesimus.**
500 **qvingentesimus.**
600 **sexcentesimus.**
700 **septingentesimus.**
800 **octingentesimus.**
900 **nongentesimus.**
1,000 **millesimus.**
2,000 **bis millesimus**, and so on with adverbs; e.g.:
10,000 **decies millesimus.**

Obs. 1. Deviations in the composition of the intermediate numbers from 20 to 100 (e.g. **primus vicesimus** without **et**, or **vicesimus et**

primus with **et**) are unfrequent. **Unus in unusetvicesimus**, &c., is declinable; but we find also, in the feminine, the abbreviated form **unetvicesima**, with **un** invariable. **Duo** in **duoetvicesimus**, &c., is undeclined.

Obs. 2. To these numbers belongs the interrogative **qvotus**,[1] *which in s? every third, every fourth*, &c., are expressed by **tertius qvis-artus qvisqve**, &c., with the pronoun **qvisqve**; but *every other econd*) is usually expressed by the adjective **alternus**, with the ive in the plural; e.g. (abl.) **alternis diebus**, *every other day*. **qvisqve hoc facit** properly signifies, *which in the series every s this?* (e.g. *is it every seventh person, every eighth?* &c.). It nifies, *how many do it, pray?* (always in a disparaging sense).

3. The number of years is expressed, in Latin, by **annus**, with al number: **annus millesimus octingentesimus qvadragesi-tavus.**

The distributive (repetitive) numerals are adjectives of rminations, following the first and second declension in the (In the gen. they often have **um** instead of **orum**. See *bs.* 4.) They are as follows:—

singuli, ae, a, *one each, one each time.*	22	**viceni bini**, &c.
bini, ae, a.	30	**triceni.**
terni (**trini**).	40	**qvadrageni.**
qvaterni.	50	**qvinqvageni.**
qvini.	60	**sexageni.**
seni.	70	**septuageni.**
septēni.	80	**octogeni.**
octōni.	90	**nonageni.**
novēni.	100	**centeni.**
dēni.	200	**duceni.**
undēni.	300	**treceni.**
duodēni.	400	**qvadringeni.**
terni deni.	500	**qvingeni.**
qvaterni deni, and so on.	600	**sexceni.**
octoni deni or **duodevi-ceni.**	700	**septingeni.**
	800	**octingeni.**
	900	**nongeni.**
noveni deni or **undevi-ceni.**	1,000	**singula millia** (or only **millia**).
vicēni.	2,000	**bina millia.**
viceni singuli.	10,000	**dena millia.**

[1] [**Qvotus annus** (Hor.).]

Obs. To these numerals corresponds the interrogative **qvotēni**, *how many for each? how many each time?*

§ 76. The distributives are employed, —

a. When it is denoted that a certain number (or something in a certain number) is repeated for each of the persons or things mentioned or thought of: e.g. **Caesar et Ariovistus denos comites ad colloqvium adduxerunt**, *brought each ten attendants;* **agri septena jugera plebi divisa sunt**, *seven acres to each citizen;* **pueri senum septenumve denum annorum**, *of sixteen or seventeen years* (each of that age); **turres in centenos vicenos pedes attollebantur; ambulare bina millia passuum** (every day, or each time). **Tritici modius erat** (was worth, stood at) **sestertiis ternis** (Cic. Ver. III. 81). **Singuli homines, singuli cives**, *each several man* (the men each for himself), *each single citizen.*

Obs. If, in expressing a distribution, **singuli**, *each*, be added, the number may be either a distributive or a cardinal; e.g. **pro tritici modiis singulis ternos denarios exegit** (Cic.); **singulis denarii trecenti imperabantur** (Id.). Instead of **singula millia**, the word **millia** is sometimes used alone; so also **asses** for **singuli asses** (an as each); and some other words, which denote a specific measure, weight, &c.

b. When a multiplication is to be expressed; e.g. **bis bina**, *twice two*, **ter novenae virgines, decies centena millia.** (But also **decies centum millia**, and particularly in the poets **bis qvinqve viri, ter centum**, &c.)

c. With those plural substantives (**substantiva pluralia tantum**) which denote a whole, which can be repeated and counted as such: e.g. **castra**, *a camp;* **bina castra**, *two camps;* **litterae**, *a letter;* **qvinae litterae**, *five letters.* (On the contrary, **tres liberi**, *three children*, because they are counted as individuals.)

Obs. In such instances, **uni** is employed, not **singuli** (§ **71**): e.g. **unae litterae**, *one letter;* **una castra**, *one camp.* We also usually meet with the form **trini**, for **terni**, 3.

d. Sometimes with reference to objects, which are reckoned in pairs: e.g. **bini scyphi**, *a pair of goblets* (belonging together, Cic.); and not very rarely in the poets, with precisely the same meaning as the cardinals: e.g. **bina hastilia**, *two spear-shafts* (Virg.).

Obs. The poets sometimes use the singular of the distributives to express a complex object: as, **binum corpus**, *a double body* (Lucr.); **septeno gurgite**, *with seven-fold flood* (Lucan), of the Nile.

§ 77. From some numbers are formed adjectives of one termination in **plex** (from **plicare**, *to fold*), to denote the multiplication defined by the numeral: viz., **simplex**, *simple;* **duplex**, *double;* **triplex**, *triple;*

qvadruplex, qvincuplex, septemplex, decemplex, centuplex. They are called **adjectiva multiplicativa**, and regularly declined.

Obs. 1. Some words in **plus** (**simplus, duplus, triplus, qvadruplus** [**centuplus**] **octuplus**), are commonly used only in the neuter, to de- ude, so many times greater than another magnitude. (**Du-** ible of something else; **duplex**, twice as great as something as great as itself doubled.)

a the numeral adverbs, see the rules for the formation of

CHAPTER XII.

THE PRONOUNS.

Latin pronouns (properly so called) are distributed, the manner in which they denote an object, into six , the personal, the demonstrative, the reflective, the interrogative, the indefinite. To these may be added ves derived from pronouns, and termed pronominal

ouns have different terminations for the genders of the ob- , and may be combined with them like adjectives (**hic vir, hoc signum**).

Personal pronouns denote the speaker himself (in the peaker and those in whose name he speaks), and the rsons spoken to. They have no distinction of gender, ombined with a substantive, inasmuch as they contain s all the definition required. They are declined in the nner: —

ST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.
	SINGULAR.	
OM.	**ego**, *I*	**tu**, *thou* (so also Voc.)
C.	**me**, *me*	**te**, *thee*
T.	**mihi**, *to me*	**tibi**, *to thee*
L.	**me**	**te**
	PLURAL.	
C.	**nos**, *we, us*	**vos**, *you* (so also Voc.)
casionally)	**nostrum**	**vestrum**
L.	**nōbis**	**vōbis**

Obs. 1. Instead of the genitive of these pronouns, the derivative adjectives (possessive pronouns) **meus** and **tuus, noster** and **vester** (see § **92**), are sometimes made use of, sometimes the genitive neuter of these adjectives, **mei** (*of my being*), **tui, nostri, vestri**; **nostrum** and **vestrum** are only used in certain combinations: on this, see § **297.**

Obs. 2. To all cases of these pronouns, except **tu, nostrum,** and **vestrum,** may be affixed the syllable **met,** which gives prominence to that person in comparison with others (*I myself*); frequently, **ipse** is also added; e.g. **temetipsum.** From **tu,** are formed **tutĕ** and **tutemet,** with the same signification.

Obs. 3. For **mihi,** the poets often use **mi** (contracted); **tete** is sometimes found for **te,** in the most ancient style. **Tu** and **vos** are the only vocatives of pronouns.

§ 80. The Demonstrative pronouns point to some definite object (or give it prominence). They are **hic,** *this here, this;* **iste,** *that there* (with you); **ille,** *yon, that there;* **is,** *that* (which has been already mentioned, or is now defined by the addition of *which*), *he* (*she, it*); **idem,** *the same;* **ipse,** *self;* to which may be also added, **alius,** *another;* and **alter,** *the other* (when two are spoken of).

Obs. **Hic, iste, ille,** may be called direct demonstratives; **is,** an indirect demonstrative; **idem** and **ipse,** emphatic demonstratives. **Alius** and **alter** denote the opposite of something defined; but **alter** has also an indefinite signification, *the one* (of *two*).

§ 81. The demonstratives are declined as follows:—

1. **Hic.**

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**
Gen.	**hujus** in all genders.		
Dat.	**huic** in all genders (monosyllable).		
Abl.	**hoc**	**hac**	**hoc**

PLURAL.

Nom.	**hi**	**hae**	**haec**
Acc.	**hos**	**has**	**haec**
Gen.	**horum**	**harum**	**horum**
Dat. Abl.	**his** in all genders.		

Obs. **Ce** is sometimes appended to the cases in **m** and **s,** particularly the last: e.g. **hujusce, hosce, horunce**; and this form is more

emphatic. In those cases which end in **c**, an **e** was sometimes heard after the **c** in the older pronunciation; as, **hunce, hĭce, huice.** From this with the interrogative particle **ne** originated **hicĭne, hocĭne** (less correctly **hiccine**), &c. (In the cases in **c**, the demonstrative particle **ce** coalesces with the stem of the pronoun. **Hice, haece,** for **hi, hae,** was antiquated.) **Huic,** pronounced as a dissyllable, belongs to a later period.

§ 82. 2. **Iste.**

	SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**
ACC.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**
GEN.	**istius** in all genders.		
DAT.	**isti** ,, ,, ,,		
ABL.	**isto**	**ista**	**isto**

The plural (**isti, istae, ista**) is declined regularly after the second and first declension.

3. In the same way is declined **ille, illa, illud.**

OBS. 1. From an old form **ollus** for **ille**, we find in Virg. a dat. sing. and nom. plur. **olli.** The gen. **illi, illae,** for **illius,** and the dat. **illae** (fem.) for **illi,** are obsolete. (Instead of **istīus** and **illīus** we also find in verse **istĭus** and **illĭus**: comp. § **37,** *Obs.* 2.) For **ellum,** see under **is.**

OBS. 2. For **iste** and **ille** we find also **istic,** fem. **istaec,** neut. **istoc** or **istuc,** and **illic, illaec, illoc** or **illuc,** which in the nom., acc., and abl., are declined like **hic.** Sometimes in the antiquated style, **ce** is appended to other cases of **iste** and **ille**; e.g. **illasce.**

4. Like **iste** is declined **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** only with **m** (not **d**) in the neuter.

OBS. **Ipse** (sometimes in the comic poets **ipsus**) is formed from **is** and the termination **pse,** as **idem** is formed from **is** and **dem.** The old forms **ea-pse, eam-pse,** and **eo-pse,** for **ipsa, ipsam,** and **ipso,** are found in Plautus, and **eapse** in the word **reapse,** which was in use also at a later period (=**re ipsa,** *in fact*).

§ 83. 5. **Is.**

	SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**is**	**ea**	**id**
ACC.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**
GEN.	**ejus** in all genders.		
DAT.	**ei** ,, ,, ,,		
ABL.	**eo**	**eā**	**eo**

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**ii (ei)**	**eae**	**ea**
ACC.	**eos**	**eas**	**ea**
GEN.	**eorum**	**earum**	**eorum**
DAT. ABL.	**iis (eis)** in all genders.		

In the same way is declined **īdem** (for **is-dem**), compounded of **is** and the syllable **dem**; viz., **īdem, eădem, ĭdem, dem** being added to the cases of **is**. (Acc. **eu*n*dem, ea*n*dem**, gen. plur. **eoru*n*dem**.)

OBS. 1. The orthography **ei** in the plural is rare (**eidem** scarcely ever used), **eis** less common than **iis**. **Ii** and **iis** were probably pronounced as monosyllables, and in the poets **iidem** and **iisdem** are always dissyllables (**īdem, īsdem**).

OBS. 2. From the particles **ecce** and **en** (*see there!*), and the acc. masc. and fem. of **is** and **ille**, there originated in familiar language the forms **eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas, ellum, ellam, ellos, ellas**, which occur in Plautus and Terence. (In **eccillum, eccistam**, there is only an elision of **e**.)

§ 84. 6. **Alius.**

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**
ACC.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**
GEN.	**alīus** in all genders.		
DAT.	**alii** ,, ,, ,,		
ABL.	**alio**	**aliā**	**alio**

The plural is declined regularly after the second and first declension.

Altera, altera, alterum, gen. **alterīus** (see § **47**, *Obs.* 2), dat. **alteri**, otherwise regular.

OBS. **Alteri** in the plural signifies *one* (of two plurals), *one* (of two parties, &c.), and in the same way (viz. for one of two plural parties) the plural of the other pronouns in **ter** is employed; namely, **utri, neutri**, and the compounds of **uter**.

§ 85. The Reflective pronoun **se** (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) refers back to the person or thing which is the subject of the proposition, without being itself united to a substantive. It has in the acc. and abl. of both numbers **se** or **sese**, in the dat. **sibi**. The nom. is wanting, as also the gen.; and in place of the gen. is used the derivative **suus**, or its neut. gen. **sui**, as **meus** and **mei** in **ego** (§ **79**, *Obs.* 1).

OBS. **Met** is affixed to **se** and **sibi**, as to **ego** (§ **79**, *Obs.* 2).

§ 86. The Relative pronoun **qvi** (*who, which*) refers to something in another proposition, which the relative clause serves to define or describe (**Cato, qvi; is, qvi**). It is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**qvi**	**qvae**	**qvod**
ACC.	**qvem**	**qvam**	**qvod**
GEN.	**cujus** in all genders.		
DAT.	**cui** ,, ,, ,,		
ABL.	**qvo**	**qvā**	**qvo**

PLURAL.

NOM.	**qvi**	**qvae**	**qvae**
ACC.	**qvos**	**qvas**	**qvae**
GEN.	**qvorum**	**qvarum**	**qvorum**
DAT. ABL.	**qvibus (qvīs)** in all genders.		

OBS. 1. The more ancient way of writing the genitive and dative was **qvojus** and **qvoi**. **Cŭĭ**, as a dissyllable, is found only in the later poets.

OBS. 2. The ablative **qvīs** (**qveis** is only another way of writing it) is antiquated, but sometimes readopted by later writers. An old form **qvi** occurs as an abl. sing., but is only used by good writers in combination with the preposition **cum** (**qvicum** = **qvocum**, masc. and neut., in the more antiquated style also = **qvacum**, fem.), and with verbs in some few expressions as a neuter after an indefinite pronoun understood; **habeo, qvi utar**, *I have (something) to use;* **vix reliqvit, qvi efferretur**, *enough to bury him;* compare § **88**, *Obs.* 2.

§ 87. The Indefinite Relative pronouns **qvicunqve, qvisqvis** (*every one who, whoever*), **uter, utercunqve** (*whichever of two*), show that the assertion of the proposition in which they occur comprises several individuals, and that it is indifferent which is thought of.

Qvicunqve, qvaecunqve, qvodcunqve, is declined like **qvi** (the affix **cunqve** remains unaltered); **uter, utra, utrum** (usually an interrogative pronoun) is regularly declined (except in the gen. and dat. sing. **utrīus, utri**; see § **37**, *Obs.* 2), and so also **utercunqve**.

Qvisqvis is usually found only in the nom. masc., and the nom. and acc. neut. (**qvidqvid** or **qvicqvid**, subst.), also in the abl. masc. and neut. (**qvoqvo**): we rarely meet with **qvemqvem, qvibusqvi-**

bus, and not till a late period with the abl. fem. **qvaqva**. From the unused gen. has originated by an abbreviated pronunciation the expression **cuicuimodi**, *of whatever kind.*

Obs. 1. It is rarely (in the best writers only in the expression **qvacunqve ratione**, *in any way*, **qvocunqve modo**, Sall.) that **qvicunqve** occurs simply as an indefinite pronoun, with the notion of universality (*every one*), without a relative signification. So also **qvisqvis** in the expression **qvoqvo modo**, *in any way*.[1]

Obs. 2. **Qvicunqve** is sometimes resolved, and its parts separated by the interposition of an unaccented word; e.g. **qvare cunqve possum** (even by two pronouns: **qvo ea me cunqve ducet**, Cic.). The same division (*tmesis*) occurs in **qvaliscunqve** (§ 93); e.g. **necesse est, aliqvid sit melius, qvale id cunqve est.** It occurs less frequently in **qvantuscunqve** and **qvilibet (cujus rei libet simulator**, Sall.).

§ 88. The Interrogative pronoun, which requires that an object in question should be specified, is **qvis** or **qvi**, fem. **qvae**, neut. **qvid** or **qvod**, *who? which?* with the more emphatic form **qvisnam, qvinam, qvaenam, qvidnam, qvodnam**, *who then? which then?* and **uter, utra, utrum**, *which of two?* (see § 87). **Qvis** and **qvisnam**, with the exception of the double nom. masc., and the nom. and acc. neut., are declined exactly like the relative pronoun **qvi.** In the neuter **qvid** and **qvidnam** are substantives, **qvod** and **qvodnam** adjectives (**qvid feci? qvod facinus commisit? qvodnam consilium cepit?**). In the masculine, **qvis** is both a substantive and adjective, **qvi** for the most part an adjective (**qvi cantus?**).

Obs. 1. **Qvis** (with the nominative ending **s**) occurs as an adjective in the older writers (Cic.) chiefly with substantives which denote a person (**qvis senator? qvis rex?** but **qvi vir?** in the signification, *what man = what sort of man?*) but often, too, with others (**qvis locus? qvis casus?**). **Qvi** (**qvinam**), on the other hand, is rare as a substantive, and is found almost exclusively in dependent interrogative clauses; as, **non id solum spectatur, qvi debeat, sed etiam qvi possit ulcisci** (Cic. Divin. in Caec. 16). In independent interrogative sentences (e.g. **qvi primus Ameriam nuntiat?**), it is almost unused.

Obs. 2. The ablative form **qvi** (see § 86, *Obs.* 2) is used only in the signification *how?* (**qvi fit? qvi convenit?** *how is it suitable?*)

---

[1] **Qvidqvid** for **qvidqve** (§ 89) in certain combinations, as **ut qvidqvid** for **ut qvidqve** (Cic.), is rare and antiquated.

§ 89. The Indefinite pronouns are **qvis**, *one, any one;* **aliqvis, qvispiam**, *one, any one;* **qvisqvam**, *any one whatever;* **ullus**, *any;* **qvidam**, *some one, a certain one;* **alteruter**, *one or the other* (*of two*); with those which have a distributive signification; **qvisqve**, *each severally;* **unusqvisqve**, *each individual;* **uterqve**, properly, *each of two separately;* then, *both* (**uterqve frater**, *both brothers;* **uterqve eorum**, *both of them;* **utriqve**, *both parties*); and those which denote a universality without distinction (which may be named **indefinita universalia**); **qvivis, qvilibet**, *any one you like* (*whoever it may be*); **utervis, uterlibet**, *any one you like* (*of two*); to which may also be added the negative words **nemo**, *no one* (subst.); **nihil**, *nothing* (subst.); **nullus**, *no, none;* **neuter**, *neither.*

§ 90. 1. **Qvis, qvi**, fem.; **qvae** and **qvă**, neut.; **qvid** and **qvod**, — is declined (except in the nom.) like the relative pronoun, with the exception, that the nom. and acc. neut. plural, as well as the nom. sing. fem., have both forms **qvae** and **qvă**. **Qvid** is used as a substantive, **qvod** as an adjective; **qvis** as both, and in all combinations (**dicat qvis, si qvis, si qvis dux**), **qvi** only after the conjunctions **si, nisi, ne, num**, both as a substantive and an adjective, but chiefly as an adjective (**ne qvis** and **ne qvi, si qvis dux** and **si qvi dux**). **Qva** is more common in the neut. plural than **qvae.**[1]

The following are formed from **qvis**, and declined like it: **ecqvis, ecqvi, ecqva, ecqvae, ecqvid, ecqvod**, *does any one?* and the stronger form **ecqvisnam** (also **numqvisnam**).

2. Like **qvis** is declined **aliqvis**, except that it has only **aliqva** in the fem. sing. and neut. plur. **Aliqvid** is used as a substantive, **aliqvod** as an adjective; **aliqvis** as both, **aliqvi** as an adjective.

3. **Qvisqvam**, neut. **qvidqvam** (**qvicqvam**) without a fem., and without a plur., is declined like **qvis** (without **qvi** or **qvod**).

Obs. **Qvisqvam** is used as a substantive, and also as an adjective with the appellations of persons (**scriptor qvisqvam, qvisqvam Gallus**); the corresponding **ullus** as an adjective, but sometimes (in the best writers only **ullius** and **ullo**, in some also the dat. **ulli**) it is used as a substantive.

§ 91. 4. **Qvidam, qvispiam, qvivis, qvilibet**, and **qvisqve**, are declined like the relative pronoun, except that as substantives they have in the neuter the form **qvid** (**qviddam**, &c.), as adjectives

---

[1] And, to judge by the poets, in the fem. sing. also.

qvod (**qvoddam**, &c.).[1] In **unusqvisqve** both words are declined (**unaqvaeqve**, **unumqvidqve** and **unumqvodqve**, **unumqvemqve**, &c.).

In **utervis** (**utrăvis**, **utrumvis**), **uterlibet** (**utralibet**, **utrumlibet**), **uterqve** (**utrăqve**, **utrumqve**), **uter** is declined (**utriusqve**, &c., see § **87**). In **alteruter** sometimes both words are declined (**alterautra**, **alterumutrum**, gen. **alteriusutrius**, &c.), sometimes only the last (**alterutra**, **alterutrum**). The adjectives **ullus** (**a**, **um**), **nullus**, **non-nullus**, **neuter** (**neutra**, **neutrum**), are regularly declined, except in the gen. (**ullius**, &c., **neutrius**) and in the dative (**ulli**, &c., **neutri**).

Nemo is a substantive of the masculine gender, and follows the third declension (see § **41** under the termination **o**, **Inis**). The genitive is not used in common language, nor the ablative in the best writers; in their stead **nullius** and **nullo** are used.[2]

Obs. **Nemo** is also used as an adjective with the names of persons; e.g. **nemo scriptor**, **nemo Gallus**. (Also **scriptor nullus**, but with national names always **nemo**.)

Nihil is nominative and accusative without any other cases. (The form **nihilum** with the genitive **nihili** and the ablative **nihilo** is used in some few combinations. See § **494**, *b*, *Obs.* 3.)

§ 92. From the personal and reflective pronouns are derived adjectives, which denote that an object belongs to the speaker, or the person addressed, or the subject previously named; **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, **noster** (**nostra**, **nostrum**), **vester** (**vestra**, **vestrum**), *my*, *thy*, *his* (reflect.), *their*, *our*, *your*. They are called Possessive pronouns, and are regularly declined after the second and first declension, except that **meus** has **mi** in the voc. masc.

Obs. 1. **Pte** is sometimes affixed to the abl. sing. of these adjectives (most frequently to that of **suus**), in order to express more emphatically that a thing belongs to a person, as contrasted with what is not his own; as, **meopte ingenio**, **suopte pondere**. **Met** is also attached to **suus** (as to **ego**, **se**), most frequently when followed by **ipse**; e.g. **suamet ipse fraude**, *by his own deceit*. This appendage is but rarely found with **mea** (**meămet facta**, Sall.; **meāmet culpa**, Plaut.).

Obs. 2. A possessive pronoun is also formed from the relative and interrogative pronoun, **cujus**, **cuja**, **cujum**, *whose?* (he) *whose:* e.g. **cujum pecus? is**, **cuja res est**; but it is only used in the antiquated

---

[1] Instead of **quidpiam**, **quidque**; also, **quippiam quicque**.

[2] **Neminis** occurs in Plautus, **nemine** in Tacitus, Svetonius, &c. The dat. **nulli** is rarely used as a substantive.

style, and there, besides the nom. and acc. sing., only in the ing. (**cujā causa**), and the nom. and acc. plur. fem.

From **noster, vester,** and **cujus** (interrogative) come the of one termination, **nostras, vestras, cujas** (acc. **nostratem,** *ur nation* (belonging to our town, our nation), *of your nation, ation?* corresponding to the adjectives in as derived from the owns.

Besides the possessive pronouns, the Latins have other , which denote a person or thing pronominally (i.e. by to it) in respect to its quality, size, or number; as, **talis,** e adjectives, which, while they express one and the same variously formed to correspond with the different kinds of are called correlative adjectives.

djectives are, —

IT.	RELAT. AND INTERROG.	INDEF. REL.	INDEFINITE. (Indefin. and indef. univers.)
uch	**qvalis,** e (of such a quality) *as* (rel.); *of what quality?* (interrog.).	**qvaliscunqve,** *of what quality soever.*	**qvalislibet,** *of any quality you please.*
,)	**qvantus** (so great) *as* (rel.); *how great?* (interrog.).	**qvantuscunqve,** *how great soever.*	**aliqvantus,** *of a certain, considerable size.*
			qvantuslibet, *of any size you please.*
			qvantusvis.
..), . um- ust	**qvot** (so many) *as* (rel.); *how many?* (interrog.).	**qvotcunqve, qvotqvot,** *how many soever.*	**aliqvot,** *some.*
	qvotus, *which in the series?*		

Qvaliscunqve and **qvantuscunqve** are also used as simply not relative) pronouns. **Aliqvantus** is commonly used only er gender (**aliqvantum, aliqvanto**), and as a substantive or rom **tantus,** &c., are formed the diminutives **tantulus,** *of* ll, insignificant) *size,* **qvantulus, qvantuluscunqve, ali-**

qvantulum (*a little*). From **tantum** is formed **tantundem** (nom. acc. neut.), *just so much*, gen. **tantidem.**

Obs. 2. For the pronominal adverbs, see the Rules for the Formation of Words, § **201.**

CHAPTER XIII.

THE INFLECTION OF THE VERBS IN GENERAL.

§ 94. A Verb expresses the condition or agency of a person or thing (the subject); e.g. **caleo,** *I am warm;* **curro, amo, frango,** *I run, I love, I break.*

The agency denoted by the verb either passes immediately to an object which is operated upon, and the name of which is added (in the accusative), and then the verb is called Transitive (properly, *passing over*, from **transeo**): e.g. **amo Deum, frango ramum,** *I love God, I break a branch;* or it is complete in the subject alone, without passing immediately to an object, and then the verb is termed Intransitive (*not passing over*) or neuter: e.g. **curro,** *I run.*

Obs. A verb which is usually transitive may also be sometimes used in such a sense, that no object is to be considered as acted on: e.g. **amo,** *I am in love;* **bibo vinum,** *I drink wine* (trans.); **bibo,** *I drink* (without specifying more particularly, intrans.). In the same way an intransitive verb may assume a signification in which it becomes transitive: e.g. **excedo,** *I go out;* **excedo modum,** *I exceed bounds.*

§ 95. From transitive verbs a new form is deduced, by which it is expressed of a thing, that it suffers the action, or is the object of it: e.g. **amor,** *I am loved;* **ramus frangitur,** *a branch is broken.* This form is called the Passive (the suffering form; also, **genus verbi passivum**), in contradistinction to the original form, which is called the Active (form of activity; **genus activum**).

Obs. Intransitive verbs may be used in the third person of the passive form without a definite subject (impersonally): e.g. **curritur,** *it is run* (they run). See the Syntax, § **218,** *c.*

§ 96. Modi, Moods, Ways. The Latin verbs have four moods, or forms, to distinguish the way in which a thing is stated. These are, —

a. The *Indicative* mood, the declarative way, by which a thing is declared as actually taking place or existing; e.g. **vir scribit**, *the man is writing.*

b. The *Subjunctive* mood, the suppositive way, by which a thing is simply declared as supposed: e.g. **scribat aliqvis**, *some one may write;* **ut scribat**, *that he may write;* **scribat**, *may he write!* (denoting a wish).

c. The *Imperative* mood, the commanding way, by which a thing is commanded or desired; e.g. **scribe**, *write!*

d. The *Infinitive* mood, the indefinite way, by which the action or condition is denoted in a general and indefinite manner; e.g. **scribere**, *to write.*

§ 97. In the different moods, the verbs have, also, distinct forms to express the time to which the act may belong. These forms are found most complete in the indicative active; namely:—

1. For the present time, the *present* tense; e.g. **scribo**, *I write.*

2. For the past time, three forms of a præterite tense:—

a. The *perfect*, **t. praet. perfectum** (of a thing which is simply and absolutely declared as past); e.g. **scripsi**, *I wrote, I have written.*

b. The *imperfect*, **t. praet. imperfectum** (of a thing, which was present at a certain given time); e.g. **scribebam**, *I was* (then) *writing.*

c. The *pluperfect*, **t. praet. plusqvamperfectum** (of a thing which had already taken place at a certain time); e.g. **scripseram**, *I had written.*

3. For the future time, the *future* tense, two forms:—

a. The simple *future*, **t. fut. simplex**, or **t. futurum** (of a thing which is denoted as simply and absolutely future); e.g. **scribam**, *I shall write.*

b. The *future perfect*, **t. fut. exactum** (of a thing which will be already past at a certain future time); e.g. **scripsero**, *I shall* (then) *have written.*

The Present, the Perfect, and the simple Future are the three *leading tenses.*

The Subjunctive has the same tenses as the Indicative, except the future passive, which has no form to express it.

The Imperative has two tenses, the present and future.

The Infinitive has the three leading tenses.

§ 98. PERSONS AND NUMBERS. Verbs have distinct terminations in the Indicative and Subjunctive, according as their subject is the speaker himself (first person), or the person addressed (second person), or is different from both (third person); they also

receive different endings, according as the subject is in the singular or the plural; e.g. **scribo,** *I write;* **scribis,** *thou writest* (*you write*); **scribit,** *he* (*she, it*) *writes;* **scribimus,** *we write;* **scribitis,** *ye write;* **scribunt,** *they write.*

OBS. In the active, the termination of the first person singular is **o, i,** or **m,** of the second **s** (**sti**), of the third **t**; in the plural, that of the first **mus,** of the second **tis,** of the third **nt.** In the passive the terminations are, in the singular, 1, **r**; 2, **ris** and **re**; 3, **tur**; in the plural, 1, **mur**; 2, **mini**; 3, **ntur.**

The imperative has only the second and third person, not the first, since it always expresses an exhortation or command addressed to others.

§ 99. NOUN FORMS. Besides the forms already given, verbs have a substantive form in **um** and **u** (accusative and ablative), which are called the first and second Supines; and, like the infinitive, denote the action in general, but are used only in certain special combinations: e.g. **scriptum,** *in order to write;* **scriptu,** *to be written* (as, **facilis scriptu,** *easy to be written*).[1]

Further, there are three Participles (**participium,** from **particeps,** *sharing*), or adjective forms, to denote that the action is thought of as a property belonging to a person or thing. Two of these participles are active, the third passive.

a. The present active participle; e.g. **scribens,** *writing.*

b. The future active participle; e.g. **scripturus** (**a, um**), *one who will write, is on the point of writing.*

c. The perfect passive participle; e.g. **scriptus** (**a, um**), *written* (from transitive verbs).

There is, moreover, a form in the neuter, which follows the second declension, but without a nominative, which is called the Gerund,[2] and is used to denote an action in general (like the infinitive), but only in some of the cases; e.g. **scribendo,** *by writing;* **ad scribendum,** *to writing.*

From the gerund there is formed in transitive verbs (by the terminations **us, a, um**) a participle or participial adjective in the passive, which is called the Gerundive, and denotes that the action is happening, or must happen, with reference to a person or thing: e.g. **in epistola scribenda,** *in writing the letter;* **epistola scribenda est,** *the letter is to be written, must be written.*[3]

---

[1] The name Supine is borrowed from the adjective **supinus,** *bent backward.*

[2] From **gero,** *I perform.*

[3] It is less correctly named the future participle passive.

From intransitive verbs the perfect participle and the gerundive are formed only in the neuter, and not used as adjectives, but only in combination with the verb **esse**, *to be*, to form an impersonal sentence: as, **cursum est**, *it has been run* (they have run); **currendum est**, *it must be run* (they must run).

Obs. Of the declension and comparison of participles we have already treated under the adjectives, Chap. X.

ATIONS. The way in which the endings, which nses, persons, and numbers, are combined with erb, differs; and sometimes these endings them- or less according to the last letter (the charac- he stem, and hence arise four kinds of inflection, ,[1] to one of which every verb belongs.

onjugation belong those verbs the stem of which owel is united, by contraction, with o in the first ent indicative active: e.g. **amo**, *I love;* but is person **amas**, and in the other forms: e.g. in the ctive in **āre**; as, **amare**, *to love.*

be preceded by another vowel: e.g. **creo**, *I create,* ucio, *I torture,* **cruciare**; **sinuo**, *I bend,* **sinuare.**

l conjugation belong the verbs with the charac- ich in the present infinitive active end in **ēre**:), *I advise, remind,* infinitive **monēre.**

conjugation belong those verbs of which the r is a consonant or the vowel **u**; in the present e **ĕre**: e.g. **scribo**, *I write,* **scribĕre**; **minuo**, *I*

. conjugation belong some verbs in which an i has present indicative active after the proper character- io (**cap-i-o**), *I take,* infinitive **capĕre.**

conjugation belong the verbs with the charac- the present infinitive they have **īre**: e.g. **audio,**

esent indicative may have the same ending in verbs tions, the conjugation to which the verb belongs is present infinitive active.

---

ly signifies a combination in one class, and denotes only the verbs lass. But it is now used of the inflection itself, and we say, to con- n not used by the Romans, who employed the term **declinare.**

§ 101. The first and second conjugation, having the vowels **a** and **e** for their characteristic letters, and thus being pure verbs, resemble each other (as the first and second declension). The consonants of the endings are appended to the vowel of the stem; e.g. **ama-s, mone-s, ama-nt, mone-nt.** In the third conjugation (which corresponds to the third declension, and in which the verbs are impure) a connecting vowel is inserted between the consonants of the stem and of the ending; e.g. **leg-i-s, leg-u-nt.** The verbs of the second conjugation (with some few exceptions, § **122**) reject the **e** in the perfect and supine, and are here inflected like impure verbs. The fourth conjugation is partly similar to the two first conjugations: e.g. in **audi-s, audī-re, audi-vi**; partly to the third: e.g. in **audi-unt, audi-ebam, audi-am** (in the future).

§ 102. Derivation of the Particular Forms in all Tenses and Moods. If the present indicative be known, the stem is found by taking away **o**, the ending of the first person (and in the first conjugation adding at the same time the **a**, which has been amalgamated with this ending; see § **100**, *a*); as, **ama** (first person **amo**), **mone** (**moneo**), **scrib** (**scribo**), **audi** (**audio**). From this stem is formed the present of the other moods, the imperfect of all the moods, the future indicative and imperative, the participle present and the gerundive, by adding the particular ending of each form, as is shown by the examples of all four conjugations given below (§ **109**).

Obs. 1. The characteristics **a, e, i,** are always long when they end a syllable, and are not followed by a vowel.

Obs. 2. Of those verbs of the third conjugation in which an **i** is inserted after the characteristic letter (§ **100**, *c*, *Obs.*), it is to be observed, that this **i** is everywhere dropped before another **i**, and before **ĕ** when followed by **r** (therefore **capis, capere,** but **capiet**), and also in the formation of the perfect and supine, and those forms which are regulated by them (§ **103–106**).

§ 103. The formation of the perfect indicative active is particularly to be noticed.

a. In the first and fourth conjugation it is formed by adding **vi** to the stem: **amāvi, audīvi**; in the second conjugation the characteristic **e** is rejected and **ui** affixed: **monui (mon-ui)**.[1]

Obs. The deviations from this rule are noticed below, Chap. XVII. *seq.*

b. In the third conjugation, the perfect in some verbs ends only in **i**,

[1] **Ui** and **vi** are originally the same termination.

rs in **si**, in others in **ui**. The most simple form is found in ·ith the characteristic letter **u**, where **i** is affixed to the stem: **nuo**, *I diminish* (**minu**), perf. **minui**; and in many with the aristic letters **b**, **p**, **c** (**qv**, **h**), **g** (**gv**), and **d**, where **si** is **d** being omitted before this ending (**bsi** is changed to **psi**, **gsi** to **xi**; see § 10): e.g. **repsi**, from **repo**, *I creep* (**rep**); **scripsi**, **ribo**, *I write*; **dixi**, from **dico**, *I say*; **laesi**, from **laedo**, *I hurt*. nding is used with each of the other verbs will be shown below XIX.).

e verbs which form their perfect with **i** only, and have a consonant · characteristic, lengthen the vowel in the syllable which precedes ng when it is short, and is not lengthened by position; e.g. **lēgi**, go, *to choose, read* (**collēgi**, from **colligo**). Some verbs with the in **i** have the reduplication, i.e., the first consonant with its fol- owel, if this be **o** or **u** (**ŏ**, **ŭ**), but otherwise, with **ĕ**, is prefixed to ı: e.g. **curro**, *I run*, perf. **cŭcurri**; in this case, the vowel of the syllable is not lengthened, but occasionally modified (weakened, e.g. **cado**, *I fall*, perf. **cecĭdi**. In compound words, the redu- ı is dropped: e.g. **incĭdi**, from **incĭdo** (compounded of **in** and except in some particular verbs (which are given below, in the he perfects and supines).

The lengthening of the radical vowel takes place also in · the other conjugations, which (varying from the general rule) only in the perfect. The following only have a short syllable : **bĭbi**, **fĭdi**, **scĭdi**, **tŭli**, from **bibo**, **findo**, **scindo**, **fero**. In some he reduplication is irregular: e.g. **stĕti**, from **sto** (1st conj.); om **sisto**; **spŏpondi**, from **spondeo** (2d conj.).

4. By the perfect indicative active is regulated the perfect other moods (the subjunctive and infinitive), together with perfect and the future perfect (indicative and subjunctive) active, so that the particular endings of these tenses are o the form of the perfect indicative, after the ending of the rson, **i**, has been removed; e.g. **amaveram** (pluperf. indic. om **amav-i**.

5. The supines in the first, third, and fourth conjugations, ned by adding to the stem the endings **tum** (1st sup.) and **tu** p.), before which **b** is changed by the pronunciation to **p**, **g** **gv**) to **c** (§ 10); **amātum**, **scriptum** (**minūtum**), **audītum**, **scriptu** (**minutu**), **auditu**. In the third conjugation the with the characteristic **d** have the endings **sum**, **su**, before **d** is dropped; e.g. **laesum**, **laesu**, from **laedo**, *I hurt*.

In the second conjugation, the **e** of the stem is rejected, and **ĭtum, itu,** are affixed; as, **monĭtum, monĭtu.** (**I** is a connecting vowel, inserted for the sake of the pronunciation.)

Obs. 1. With respect to the irregularities which are produced by the addition of **sum** instead of **tum** in other verbs (besides those already mentioned), and by changes in the stem, see Chap. XVII. *seq.*

Obs. 2. The termination **ĭtum** is everywhere the regular one, where the perfect has **ui** (also in the third conjugation, and those verbs of the first which vary from the general rule); e.g. **gemo,** *I groan*, perf. **gemui,** sup. **gemĭtum,** except where **u** is the characteristic letter of the stem; e.g. **minuo, minūtum.**

Obs. 3. **I** is always long in the supine, when the perfect has **vi,** except in **itum, citum, litum, qvitum, situm,** from the verbs **eo, cieo, lino, qveo, sino,** with an irregular formation. The following only have **a** short **a**: **datum, ratum, satum,** from **do, reor, sero,** also formed irregularly. **Rutum,** from **ruo,** is the only instance with a short **u.**

§ 106. The participle perfect of the passive, and the participle future of the active, are formed, like the supine, by substituting their endings **us, a, um,** and **ūrus, ura, urum,** in the place of **um**; **amātus, monĭtus, scriptus, laesus, audītus, amaturus, monĭturus, scripturus, laesurus, auditurus.** It is therefore only necessary to name the first supine, to show the form of both supines as well as these participles.

Obs. 1. If the supine be not regularly formed from the present, these participles vary in the same way.

Obs. 2. In some few of those verbs, of which the supine and participle perfect vary from the regular formation, the participle future is, nevertheless, formed from the present, **turus or ĭturus** being added to the stem; **juvaturus, secaturus, sonaturus, pariturus, ruiturus, morĭturus, nasciturus, oriturus**; see, under the irregular verbs, **juvo, seco, sono,** of the 1st conj.; **pario** and **ruo,** of the 3d; and, under the deponents, **morior, nascor** (3d), and **orior** (4th).

§ 107. For some tenses no simple form is deduced from the verb, but they are expressed periphrastically by the combination of a participle with a tense of the (auxiliary) verb **sum,** *I am.* In the active voice this occurs in the future subjunctive and infinitive, with the help of the future participle; and in the passive, with the help of the perfect participle, it occurs in the perfect tense and in all those tenses which in the active voice derive their form from the perfect.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE VERB SUM, AND EXAMPLES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 108. The verb **sum**, *I am*, is inflected quite differently from the other verbs, in the following manner: —

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
I am.	PRESENT.	*I may be.*[1]	
sum, *I am.*	**sŭmus**, *we are.*	**sim**	**sīmus**
ĕs, *thou art.*	**estis**, *you are.*	**sis**	**sītis**
est, *he (she, it) is.*	**sunt**, *they are.*	**sit**	**sint**
I was.	IMPERFECT.	*I might be.*[1]	
ĕram	**erāmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
eras	**erātis**	**esses**	**essētis**
erat	**erant**	**esset**	**essent**
I have been.	PERFECT.	*I may have been.*[1]	
fui	**fuĭmus**	**fuĕrim**	**fuerĭmus**
fuisti	**fuistis**	**fueris**	**fuerĭtis**
fuit	**fuērunt**	**fuerit**	**fuerint**
I had been.	PLUPERFECT.	*I might have been.*	
fuĕram	**fuerāmus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fueras	**fuerātis**	**fuisses**	**fuissētis**
fuerat	**fuerant**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**
FUTURE (SIMPLE), *I shall be.*			
ero	**erĭmus**	**futurus sim**	**futuri simus**
eris	**erĭtis**	**futurus sis**	**futuri sitis**
erit	**erunt**	**futurus sit**	**futuri sint**
FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been.*			
fuĕro	**fuerĭmus**	**fuerim**	**fuerĭmus**
fueris	**fuerĭtis**	**fueris**	**fuerĭtis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**fuerit**	**fuerint**

[1] This is only one of several forms by which the subjunctive mood may be represented in English. It may be translated with equal correctness into the indicative mood, or the imperative or infinitive, according to the nature of the sentence in which it occurs. This is true of the subjunctive of all verbs. (T.)

IMPERATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. 2.	**es**, *be thou!*	**este**, *be ye!*
FUT. 2.	**esto**, *thou shalt be.*[1]	**estote**, *you shall be.*
FUT. 3.	**esto**, *he shall be.*	**sunto**, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. **esse**, *to be.* PERFECT. **fuisse**, *to have been.*
FUTURE. **futurus (a, um) esse**, or (in the accus.) **futurum (am) esse**; plur., **futuri (ae, a), futuros (as, a) esse**, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. **futurus (a, um)**, *that will be, future.*

OBS. 1. The supine and gerund are wanting. The participle present is not used as a verb; as a substantive, it is found (rarely) in philosophical language, — **ens**, *the being.*

OBS. 2. Like **sum** are declined its compounds: **absum**, *I am absent* (**abfui** or **afui**); **adsum**, *I am present* (or **assum**, perf. **affui** or **adfui**, see § **173**); **desum**, *I am wanting* (**deest, deĕram**, &c., were pronounced **dēst, dēram**); **insum**, *I am in*; **intersum**, *I am present*; **obsum**, *I am in the way*; **praesum**, *I am at the head*; **prosum**, *I profit*; **subsum**, *I am amongst*; **supersum**, *I am remaining*, of which **absum** and **praesum** alone form the participle present; **absens**, *absent*; **praesens**, *present.* **Prosum** inserts **a d** before the **e** of the verb; e.g. **prosum, prodes, prodest, prosumus, prodestis, prosunt.**

OBS. 3. For **futurus esse** (the fut. inf.) there is another form, **fŏre**; and for **essem** (imperf. subj.) a form, **fŏrem, fores, foret, forent** (**affŏre, affŏrem, profore, proforem**, &c.), on the use of which see § **377**, *Obs.* 2, and § **410**. (In combination with a participle, **fore** must always be used; e.g. **laudandum fore**, not **laudandum futurum esse.**)

OBS. 4. The forms **siem, sies, siet, sient**, in the pres. subj., are antiquated, and still more **fuam, fuas, fuat, fuant**; the forms **escit, escunt** (**esit, esunt**), in the fut. indic., are quite obsolete. When **est** came after a vowel or **m**, the **e** was omitted in the earlier period, both in speaking and writing (**nata st, natum st, oratio st**); in the comic writers the termination **us** also coalesces with **est** (**factust, opust**, for **factus est, opus est**); and occasionally with **es** (**Qvid meritu's?** Ter. Andr. III. 5, 15).

---

[1] In English the forms *be thou, be ye, let him be, let them be*, are also used for the future; that is, in commands which are to be obeyed either immediately, or at any future time. (T.)

Obs. 5. The forms of the verb **sum** are properly derived from two roots **es** (whence **esum**, afterwards **sum**, and all the forms beginning with **e**) and **fu** (**fuo**). (In Greek, *εἰμί* and *φύω*.)

§ 109. The whole formation of the tenses, and the inflection according to persons and numbers in each tense in the four conjugations, may be seen from the following verbs, which are given entire as examples; **amo** (stem, **ama**) of the first, **moneo** of the second, **scribo** of the third, **audio** of the fourth conjugation. Under the third conjugation are given at the same time tenses of **minuo**, as an example of a verb with the characteristic letter **u**, and of **capio**, as an example of a verb with an **i** inserted after the characteristic letter.

I. ACTIVE.

A. *Indicative.*

I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
		PRESENT.	
amo, (*I*) *love.*	moneo, (*I*) *advise.*	scribo, (*I*) *write.*	audio, (*I*) *hear.*
amas, (*thou*) *lovest.*	mones	scribis	audis
amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves.*	monet	scribit	audit
amāmus, (*we*) *love.*	monēmus	scribĭmus	audīmus
amātis, (*you*) *love.*	monētis	scribĭtis	audītis
amant, (*they*) *love.*	monent	scribunt[1]	audiunt
		IMPERFECT.	
	(Ending, in the First and Second Conj., **bam**; in the Third and Fourth, **ebam**.)		
amābam, *I loved* or *was loving.*	monēbam	scribēbam	audiēbam
amabas	monebas	scribebas	audiebas
amabat	monebat	scribebat	audiebat
amabāmus	monebāmus	scribebāmus	audiebāmus
amabātis	monebātis	scribebātis	audiebātis
amabant	monebant	scribebant	audiebant
		minuebam	
		capiebam	
		PERFECT	
	(Ending, in the First and Fourth Conj., **vi**; in the Second, **ui** (with the omission of the **e**); the Third, **i**, **si**, or **ui**. See § 103.)		
amāvi, *I loved or have loved.*	monui	scripsi	audīvi
amavisti	monuisti	scripsisti	audivisti
amavit	monuit	scripsit	audivit
amavĭmus	monuĭmus	scripsĭmus	audivĭmus
amavistis	monuistis	scripsistis	audivistis
amavērunt (or amavēre)	monuērunt (monuēre)	scripsērunt (scripsēre)	audivērunt (audivēre)
		minui	

[1] In the same way also **minuo**, *I lessen;* **capio**, *I take*, **capis, capit, capimus, capitis, capiunt.**

Pluperfect.

(Ending, ĕram, affixed to the perfect, after rejecting the i.)

amavĕram, *I had loved.*	monuĕram	scripsĕram	audivĕram
amaveras	monueras	scripseras	audiveras
amaverat	monuerat	scripserat	audiverat
amaverāmus	monuerāmus	scripserāmus	audiverāmus
amaverātis	monuerātis	scripserātis	audiverātis
amaverant	monuerant	scripserant	audiverant
		minueram	

Future (Simple).

(Ending, in the First and Second Conj., bo; in the Third and Fourth, am.)

amābo, *I shall love.*	monēbo	scribam	audiam
amabis	monebis	scribes	audies
amabit	monebit	scribet	audiet
amabĭmus	monebĭmus	scribēmus	audiēmus
amabĭtis	monebĭtis	scribētis	audiētis
amabunt	monebunt	scribent	audient
		minuam	
		capiam,	
		capies	

Future Perfect.

(Ending, ĕro, which is affixed to the perfect, after rejecting the i.)

amavĕro, *I shall have loved.*	monuĕro	scripsĕro	audivĕro
amaveris	monueris	scripseris	audiveris
amaverit	monuerĭt	scripserĭt	audiverĭt
amaverĭmus	monuerĭmus	scripserĭmus	audiverĭmus
amaverĭtis[1]	monuerītis	scripserĭtis	audiverītis
amaverint	monuerint	scripserint	audiverint
		minuero	

B. *Subjunctive.*

Present.

(Ending, am, which in the First Conj. coalesces with the a of the stem into em.)

amem, *I may love*	moneam	scribam	audiam
ames	moneas	scribas	audias
amet	moneat	scribat	audiat
amēmus	moneāmus	scribāmus	audiāmus
amētis	moneātis	scribātis	audiātis
ament	moneant	scribant	audiant
		minuam	
		capiam	

---

[1] The usual pronunciation in prose is amaverĭmus, amaverĭtis, &c.

e form

IMPERFECT.

g in the First, Second, and Fourth Conj. rem ; in the Third, ĕrem.)

ight love.	monĕrem	scribĕrem	audīrem
	moneres	scriberes	audires
	moneret	scriberet	audiret
	monerēmus	scriberēmus	audirēmus
	monerētis	scriberātis	audirātis
	monerent	scriberent	audirent
		minuerem,	
		caperem	

PERFECT.

(Ending ĕrim, affixed to the perf. indic. after rejecting the i.)

I may	monuerim	scripsĕrim	audivĕrim
	monueris	scripseris	audiveris
	monuerit	scripserit	audiverit
s	monuerĭmus	scripserĭmus	audiverĭmus
	monuerĭtis	scripserĭtis	audiverĭtis
	monuerint	scripserint	audiverint
		minuerim	

PLUPERFECT.

(Ending issem, affixed to the perf. indic. after rejecting the i.)

, *I should*	monuissem	scripsissem	audivissem
	monuisses	scripsisses	audivisses
	monuisset	scripsisset	audivisset
us	monuissēmus	scripsissēmus	audivissēmus
s	monuissētis	scripsissētis	audivissetis
	monuissent	scripsissent	audivissent
		minuissem	

FUTURE.

sim, sis, sit	monitūrus, a, um sim, &c.	scriptūrus, a, um sim, &c.	auditūrus, a, um sim, &c.
		minutūrus, a, um sim, &c.	
simus, sitis, sint			

The Future Perfect is like the Perfect.

C. *Imperative.*

PRESENT.

t, Second, and Fourth Conj. the simple stem ; in the Third, the stem with ĕ.)

love!	monē	scribĕ	audī
e	monēte	scribĭte	audīte
		minue, cape, capĭte	

FUTURE.

(Ending in the First, Second, and Fourth Conj. to; in the Third, ĭto.)

Sing. 2 and 3	amāto	monēto	scribĭto	audīto
Plur. 2	amatōte	monetōte	scribitōte	auditōte
3	amanto	monento	scribunto minuito, capĭto	audiunto

D. *Infinitive.*

PRESENT.

(Ending in the First, Second, and Fourth Conj. re; in the Third, ĕre.)

amāre, *to love.*	monēre	scribĕre, minuĕre, capĕre	audīre

PERFECT.

(Ending isse, affixed to the perf. indic. after rejecting the i.)

amavisse, *to have loved.*	monuisse	scripsisse minuisse	audivisse

FUTURE.

	Singular.			
N.	amaturus, a, um, esse	moniturus, a, um, esse	scripturus, a, um, esse	auditurus, a, um, esse
A.	amaturum, am, um, esse	moniturum, am, um, esse	scripturum, am, um, esse	auditurum, am, um, esse
	Plural.			
N.	amaturi, ae, a, esse	monituri, ae, a, esse	scripturi, ae, a, esse	audituri, ae, a, esse
A.	amaturos, as, a, esse	monituros, as, a, esse	scripturos, as, a, esse minuturus esse, &c.	audituros, as, a, esse

E. *Supine.*

(Ending in the First, Third, and Fourth Conj. tum; in the Second, ĭtum, after rejecting the e.)

amātum, *in order to love.*	monĭtum	scriptum minūtum	auditum
amatu	monitu	scriptu minutu	auditu

F. *Gerund.*

(Ending in the First and Second Conj. ndum; in the Third and Fourth, endum.)

amandum (acc.; gen. amandi; dat., abl., amando.)	monendum	scribendum minuendum, capiendum	audiendum

G. *Participle.*

PRESENT.

(Ending in the First and Second Conj. ns; in the Third and Fourth, ens.)

amans, *loving.*	monens	scribens minuens, capiens	audiens

FUTURE.

(Ending urus, affixed to the Supine, after rejecting um.)

amatūrus, a, um	monitūrus, a, um	scriptūrus, a, um; minutūrus, a, um	auditurus, a, um

II. PASSIVE.

(All the simple tenses of the Indic. and Subj. are formed from those that correspond to them in the Active; r being affixed to o, or substituted for m.)

A. *Indicative.*

I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
PRESENT.			
amor, *I am loved.*	moneor	scribor	audior
amāris (rarely amāre)	monēris (rarely monēre)	scribĕris[1]	audīris
amātur	monētur	scribĭtur	audītur
amāmur	monēmur	scribĭmur	audīmur
amamĭni	monemĭni	scribimĭni	audimĭni
amantur	monentur	scribuntur	audiuntur
		minuor, capior, capĕris, &c.	
IMPERFECT.			
amābar, *I was loved.*	monēbar	scribēbar	audiēbar
amabāris or amabāre	monebāris, re	scribebāris, re	audiebāris, re
amabātur	monebātur	scribebātur	audiebātur
amabāmur	monebāmur	scribebāmur	audiebāmur
amabamini	monebamini	scribebamini	audiebamini
amabantur	monebantur	scribebantur	audiebantur
		minuēbar, capiēbar	
PERFECT.			
amatus, a, um { sum, *I have been loved, or was loved.*	monitus, a, um, sum, &c.	scriptus, a, um, sum, &c. minūtus sum	auditus, a, um, sum, &c.
amatus, a, um { es			
amatus, a, um { est			
amati, ae, a { sumus			
amati, ae, a { estis			
amati, ae, a { sunt			
PLUPERFECT.			
amatus, a, um { eram, *I had been loved.*	monitus, a, um, eram, &c.	scriptus, a, um, eram, &c. minūtus eram	auditus, a, um, eram, &c.
amatus, a, um { eras			
amatus, a, um { erat			
amati, ae, a { eramus			
amati, ae, a { eratis			
amati, ae, a { erant			

[1] See § 114, *b*.

FUTURE.

amābor, *I shall be loved.*	monēbor	scribar	audiar
amabĕris or amabĕre	monebĕris, re	scribēris, re	audiēris, re
amabĭtur	monebĭtur	scribētur	audiētur
amabĭmur	monebĭmur	scribēmur	audiēmur
amabimini	monebimini	scribēmini	audiēmini
amabuntur	monebuntur	scribentur minuar, capiar, capiēris, &c.	audientur

FUTURE PERFECT.

amatus, a, um	ero, *I shall have been loved.*[1]	monitus, a, um, ero, &c.	scriptus, a, um, ero, &c. minūtus ero	auditus, a, um, ero, &c.
	eris			
	erit			
amati, ae, a	erimus			
	eritis			
	erunt			

B. *Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

amer, *I may be loved.*	monear	scribar	audiar
amēris or amēre	moneāris, re	scribāris, re	audiāris, re
amētur	moneātur	scribātur	audiātur
amēmur	moneāmur	scribāmur	audiāmur
amemini	moneamini	scribamini	audiamini
amentur	moneantur	scribantur minuar, capiar, &c.	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

amārer, *I might be loved.*	monērer	scribĕrer	audīrer
amarēris or amarēre	monerēris, re	scriberēris, re	audirēris, re
amarētur	monerētur	scriberētur	audirētur
amarēmur	monerēmur	scriberēmur	audirēmur
amaremini	moneremini	scriberemini	audiremini
amarentur	monerentur	scriberentur minuerer, caperer	audirentur

PERFECT.

amatus, a, um	sim, *I may have been loved.*	monitus, a, um, sim, &c.	scriptus, a, um, sim, &c. minūtus sim	auditus, a, um sim, &c.
	sis			
	sit			
amati, ae, a	simus			
	sitis			
	sint			

[1] For amatus ero, eris, &c., amatus fuero, fueris, &c., is also used.

PLUPERFECT.

amatus, a, um	essem, *I might have been loved.*	monitus, a, um, essem, &c.	scriptus, a, um, essem, &c. minūtus essem	auditus, a, um, essem, &c.
	esses			
	esset			
amati, ae, a	essemus			
	essetis			
	essent			

Future wanting.

C. *Imperative.*

PRESENT.

(Ending in the First, Second, and Fourth Conj. re; in the Third, ĕre.)

Sing. 2	amāre, *be loved!*	monēre	scribĕre	audīre
Plur. 2	amamini	monemini	scribimini minuĕre, capĕre, &c.	audimini

FUTURE.

(Ending in the First, Second, and Fourth Conj. tor; in the Third, ĭtor.)

Sing. 2 and 3	amātor, *be loved!*	monētor	scribĭtor	audītor
Plur. 3	amantor	monentor	scribuntor minuĭtor, capitor, &c.	audiuntor

D. *Infinitive.*

PRESENT.

(Ending in the First, Second, and Fourth Conj. ri; in the Third, i.)

amāri, *to be loved.*	monēri	scribi minui, capi	audīri

PERFECT.

Singular.

N.	amatus, a, um, esse, *to have been loved.*	monitus, a, um, esse, &c.	scriptus, a, um, esse, &c. minūtus esse	auditus, a, um, esse, &c.
A.	amatum, am, um, esse			

Plural.

N. amati, ae, a, esse
A. amatos, as, a, esse

FUTURE.[1]

amatum iri	monitum iri	scriptum iri minūtum iri	auditum iri

---

[1] This tense is compounded of the supine and the passive form of the infinitive of eo, to go. (Amatum ire, in the active, *to be going to love;* hence, for the passive, amatum iri.)

E. *Participle.*

PERFECT.

(Ending us, affixed to the supine, after rejecting um.)

amātus, a, um, *loved.*	**monĭtus**	**scriptus**	**audītus**
		minūtus	

GERUNDIVE (FUTURE).

(Ending in the First and Second Conj. **ndus**; in the Third and Fourth, **endus.**)

amandus, a, um, *that is to be loved.*	**monendus**	**scribendus**	**audiendus**

CHAPTER XV.

VERBS WITH A PASSIVE FORM AND ACTIVE SIGNIFICATION (DEPONENT VERBS).

§ 110. Various verbs in Latin have a passive form with an active signification, in some cases transitive, in others intransitive: e.g. **hortor,** *I exhort;* **morior,** *I die.* They are called Deponent verbs (literally, laying aside, from **depono,** because they lay aside the active form).

OBS. 1. The form of the deponents is to be explained by the consideration, that the form, which is now passive, had not at first definitively and exclusively this signification. Some verbs, which are reckoned among the deponents, are, however, actual passives from active verbs in use, with a signification somewhat modified; e.g. **pasci,** *to graze* (intrans.), from **pasco,** *to graze* (trans., *to lead to pasture*), *to fodder.* Some verbs occur both as deponents and in the active form. See Chap. XXI.

OBS. 2. The verbs **audeo,** *I dare;* **fidó,** *I trust* (**confīdo, diffīdo**); **gaudeo,** *I rejoice;* **soleo,** *I am accustomed,* — have, in the participle perfect, an active signification, and form, with it, the perfect, and the tenses derived from it in a passive form, with an active signification; **ausus sum, fisus sum, gavisus sum, solitus sum**; pluperf. indic., **ausus eram**; subj., **essem,** &c. They are, therefore, half deponents. (Concerning **fio,** see § **160.** **Placeo,** too, and some impersonal verbs of the second conjugation, have, in the perfect, a passive as well as an active form. See § **128,** *a, Obs.* 1, and § **166.**) A few others — e.g. **revertor,** *I turn back* — have a deponent form in the present, but an active form, on the other hand, in the perfect, — **reverti.** See, under **verto,** § **139**; and **perio,** § **145.**

Obs. 3. Some few active verbs, with an intransitive signification, have, notwithstanding, the perfect participle (but no other form) in the passsive, and this participle has then an active signification: e.g. **juratus**, *one who has sworn*, from **juro**, *I swear* (**injuratus**, *one that has not sworn*; **conjuratus**, *a conspirator*, from **conjuro**); **coenatus**, *one that has dined*, from **coeno**, *I dine*. The others are **adultus, cretus, coalitus, exoletus, inveteratus, nupta, obsoletus, potus, pransus, svetus**, each of which is introduced, with its verb, in Chaps. XVII., XVIII., XIX. More rare are **conspiratus**, from **conspīro**, *I combine, conspire*; **deflagratus**, from **deflagro**, *to burn down* (intrans.); **placitus**, *accepted, approved of*, from **placeo**. In Sallust, **pax conventa**, from **pax convenit**.[1]

§ 111. The deponents are referred, according to their characteristic letters, to the four conjugations, and inflected according to the ordinary passive form of each conjugation. The supine and perfect participle are formed from the stem, as in active verbs. Besides the supine, they have also the present and future participles in the active form, so that a deponent has three participles with an active signification for the three leading tenses. The future subjunctive and infinitive are compounded from the future participle as in active verbs.

The gerundive, unlike the other forms, retains a passive signification; as, **hortandus**, *that is to be exhorted*. It is formed, therefore, only from transitive deponents; but the intransitives also have a gerund (with an active signification, § **97**).

Obs. The deponents **pascor, vehor, versor**, which are properly the passives of active verbs in use, have the participles, **pascons, vehens, versans**, not only in the signification belonging to them in the active, but also in that which they have as deponents.

§ 112. The following are examples of deponents of all four conjugations in all tenses and moods.

---

[1] **Consideratus**, *considered*; and (as an adjective), *considerate, circumspect*.

Indicative.

	I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
Present.	hortor, *I exhort.*	vereor, *I fear.*	utor, *I use.*	partior, *I divide.*
	hortāris (re), &c., like amor	verēris (e), &c., like moneor	utĕris, &c., like scribor	partīris, &c., like audior
Imperf.	hortābar	verēbar	utēbar	partiēbar
Perfect.	hortatus, a, um, sum, es, &c.	verĭtus sum	usus sum	partītus sum
Pluperf.	hortatus eram	veritus eram	usus eram	partitus eram
Future.	hortābor	verēbor	utar	partiar
Fut. Perf.	hortatus ero	veritus ero	usus ero	partitus ero

Subjunctive.

Present.	horter	verear	utar	partiar
Imperf.	hortārer	verērer	utĕrer	partīrer
Perfect.	hortatus sim	veritus sim	usus sim	partitus sim
Pluperf.	hortatus essem	veritus essem	usus essem	partitus essem
Future.	hortaturus sim	veriturus sim	usurus sim	partiturus sim

Imperative.

Present.	hortāre	verēre	utĕre	partīre
Future.	hortātor	verētor	utĭtor	partītor

Infinitive.

Present.	hortāri	verēri	uti	partīri
Perfect.	hortātus (a, um) esse; hortatum (a, um) esse, &c.	veritus esse, &c.	usus esse, &c.	partitus esse, &c.
Future.	hortaturus (a, um) esse, &c.	veriturus esse, &c.	usurus esse, &c.	partiturus esse, &c.

Supine.

hortātum	verĭtum	usum	partītum
hortatu	veritu	ūsu	partitu

Gerund.

hortandum	verendum	utendum	partiendum

Participle.

Present.	hortans	verens	utens	partiens
Perfect.	hortātus (a, um)	verĭtus	usus	partītus
Future.	hortatūrus (a, um)	veritūrus	usūrus	partitūrus
Gerund.	hortandus (a, um)	verendus	utendus	partiendus

CHAPTER XVI.

SOME PECULIARITIES IN THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 113. *a.* In the perfect and the tenses formed from it in the first conjugation, if **r** or **s** follows **ve**, or **vi**, the **v** may be omitted, and **a** with the **e** or **i** contracted into **a**; e.g. **amarunt, amarim, amasti, amasse,** for **amaverunt, amaverim, amavisti, amavisse.** So, also, **ve** and **vi** may be dropped before **r** and **s** in perfects in **evi** (from irregular verbs of the second and third conj.), and in the tenses formed from them: e.g. **flestis, nerunt, deleram,** for **flevistis, neverunt, deleveram, decresse** for **decrevisse** (from **decerno**); and in the perfects **nōvi** from **nosco,** and **mōvi** from **moveo,** with their compounds: e.g. **nosse, commosse.** (But always **novero.**)

b. In the perfects in **ivi** and the tenses formed from them, **v** may be left out before **e**: e.g. **definieram, qvaesierat,** for **definiveram, qvaesiverat,** from **definio, qvaero** (perf. irregular **qvaesivi**); also before **i,** when followed by **s,** in which case **ii** in prose is almost always contracted into **i**: e.g. **audissem, petisse** (poetically **petiisse**), **sisti,** for **audivissem, petivisse, sivisti.** More rarely (in the poets) **v** is left out before **it** (**iit** for **ivit**); e.g. **audiit** for **audivit.**

Obs. 1. The form **iit** occurs not unfrequently in **petiit (peto),** and is the only one used in **desiit (desino),** and in the compounds of **eo**; e.g. **rediit.** In these compounds, the form **ii** is also always used in the first person; e.g. **praeterii, perii.** See, under **eo,** § **158.** Otherwise, this is quite unusual (only **petii,** for **petivi**).

Obs. 2. In the later poets, we find but rarely, for **redii** and **petiit,** the contracted form also **redī, petīt,** although not followed by **s.**

Obs. 3. In the perfects in **si** (**xi**), and the tenses formed from them, a syncope is sometimes admitted in archaic forms and by the poets (even Horace and Virgil), when an **s** follows **si,** the **i** being omitted, and either one **s** or two dropped, according to § **10**: e.g. **scripsti, for scripsisti; abscessem,** for **abscessissem; dixe, consumpset, accestis,** for **dixisse, consumpsisset, accessistis.**

§ 114. *a.* In the third person plural of the perf. indic. act., **ēre** (rarely in Cicero) is also used for **ērunt (amavēre, monuēre, dixēre, audivēre),** in which case the **v** cannot be omitted. In **erunt** the poets sometimes use the **e** short; e.g. **stetĕrunt** (Virg.).

b. In the second person singular in the passive (except in the present indicative), the termination **re** is very usual for **ris** (in Cicero it is the one most commonly used); in the pres. indic. (e.g. **arbitrāre, vidēre**), it is rare, and confined almost entirely to deponent verbs. (In the third conjugation it is very seldom, and in the fourth never, used.)

c. The verbs **dico**, *I say*; **duco**, *I lead*; **facio**, *I do, make*; **fero**, *I bring*, — of the third conjugation, have, in the present imperative active, **dic, duc, fac, fer**, without **e**; and, in like manner, the compounds of **duco** (**educ**), **fero** (**affer, refer**), and those of **facio**, in which the **a** remains unchanged (**calefac**, but **confice**; see, under **facio**, § **143**).

Obs. **Face** sometimes occurs in the poets, more rarely **duce** and **dice**. From **scio** (4th conj.), **sci** is unused, **scite** rare; for these, we find the future **scito, scitote.**

According to an older pronunciation, the gerundive, in the third and fourth conjugations, has also the termination **undus**, instead of **endus**; e.g. **juri dicundo, potiundus.**

§ 115. Obsolete Forms of Tenses. *a.* In the old language, and in the poets, the pres. inf. passive sometimes ends in **ier**, instead of **i**; e.g. **amarier, scribier.**

b. The imperf. indic. active and passive, of the fourth conjugation, had sometimes, in the more ancient language, the terminations **bam, bar**, instead of **ēbam, ēbar**; e.g. **scibam, largibar** (from the deponent **largior**).

c. The future indic. active and passive, of the fourth conjugation, had sometimes, in the older style, the endings **ībo, ībor**, instead of **iam, iar**; e.g. **servībo, opperībor** (from the deponent **opperior**).

d. In the present subj. active, we find an old termination, — **im, is, it**, — especially in the word **edim**, occasionally used for **edam**, from **edo**, *I eat*; and in **duim**, from the verb **do**, with its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations; **di duint, di te perduint** (Cic.).

Obs. This termination was retained in **sim**, and in **velim, nolim, malim** (as in the subj. of the perf. and fut. perf.).

e. The future imperative passive, in the second and third person singular, was anciently formed also by affixing to the stem the ending **mĭno** (in the third conj. **imĭno**); e.g. **praefamino**, from the deponent **praefari, progredimino**, from **progredior.**

f. In place of the usual future, another was formed, in the older language, in the first, second (rare), and third conjugation, by affixing to the stem the ending **so** (in the first and second conjugation, **sso**); as, **levasso** (**levo**), **prohibesso** (**prohibeo**), **axo** (**ago**). In verbs of the

ugation in **io**, the **i** was dropped: **capso, faxo,** from **capio,** l the same modifications were introduced, for the sake of eu- in the formation of perfects in **si**: e.g. **adempso,** from **adimo** m **officio,** like **effectum,** because it is a close syllable. Those ie second conjugation, which follow the third in the perfect, do his: e.g. **jusso,** from **jubeo** (perf. **jussi**). From this future, formed a subjunctive in **im** (**levassim, prohibessim, faxim**); **s curassis,** *don't trouble yourself about us*. The language, in its ed state, retained from **facio** the fut. indic. **faxo** (in the first the poets, in threats and promises), and the fut. subj. **faxim** , as a pres. subj. **faxis, faxit, faximus, faxitis, faxint**); audeo, the fut. subj. **ausim** (in doubtful assertions, *I might* **sis, ausit, ausint**).

rticiple is formed from some verbs, mostly intransitive ve and deponent), by adding to the stem **bundus (a, um),** rd conj. **ibundus**; e.g. **contionabundus, cunctabundus, undus** (from **contionor, cunctor, delibero**), **furibundus, us** (from **furo, morior,** 3d; **fremebundus, tremebundus,** m **fremo, tremo**; **pudibundus,** from **pudet,** 2d). It has cation of the present active.

his participle is rarely found with an accusative; e.g. **vitabun-** (Liv. XXV. 13).

By a combination of the participle future active and the perfect passive with the tenses of the verb **sum,** more s may be formed than those already given (which corre- he several tenses of the indicative) to denote special rela- ne; e.g. **dicturus sum,** *I am he that will say=I am about* **cturus eram,** *I was about to say;* **positus fui,** *I have been* For the use and force of these combinations, see the Syn- **l–344, 381,** and **409.**

combinations are formed from the gerundive and **sum,** which mething as *fitting*, in the different moods and tenses; e.g. **est,** or **erat,** *it is* (was) *to be done, it must be done, ought to one.* See, on this subject, the Syntax, §§ **420, 421.**

se combinations are comprised under the name periphras- ation.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES IN GEN ESPECIALLY THOSE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATI

§ 117. Some verbs, though they have the perfect (participle perfect) with the endings specified in § 10 do not form them regularly from the stem, as found in but after some change in the same; e.g. **frēgi** from fr the ending **i**, and lengthening of the vowel according t with the omission of the **n**). To the stem so alter often affixed the ending of a conjugation different fr which the stem of the present belongs: e.g. **jŭvo**, *I h* (1st), perfect **jūvi**, with **i**, as if from a stem of the gation (**juv**); **peto**, *I beg;* **petĕre** (3d), perfect **petīvi**, if from a stem in **i** (4th), supine **petītum**; so likew *cut;* **secāre** (1st), supine **sectum**, as if from a stem conjugation (**sec**). When the perfect and supine (pa these verbs are known, the other tenses, which are det these (§§ 104 and 106), are formed regularly from them

Compound verbs are declined like the simple (unc verbs from which they are derived. Those simple v fore, which are irregular in the perfect and supine, noticed below for each conjugation. Some want eithe fect and supine, or the supine alone, and consequently also which are derived from them.

§ 118. The deviation of the perfect and supine from the in most cases, arisen from the fact that, through the influence ation, the stem in use in the present has been enlarged from more simple stem. This increase consists most frequently addition of a vowel after the final consonant (characteris the stem: e.g. **sona** (pres. indic. **sono**, *I sound*, infin. **son** stead of **son** (perf. **sonui**, sup. **sonĭtum**); **ride** (**rideo**, *I* instead of **rid** (perf. **risi**, sup. **risum**); **veni** (**vĕnio**, *I* instead of **ven** (perf. **vēni**, sup. **ventum**); or, in the ins letter **n**, sometimes after a vowel: e.g. **si-no**, *I permit* (3d) sometimes before a consonant, in which case it may also be the pronunciation to **m** (according to § 8): e.g. **frango rumpo**, perf. **rūpi**.[1] The stem of the present is reduplicat

[1] The insertion takes a peculiar form in **cerno, sperno, sterno**; perf. **stravi**.

(**genui, genitum,** from **gen**) and **sisto.** A peculiar increment of the stem is the terminal affix **sco.** See § **141.** In consequence of this enlargement of the stem in the present, many verbs which there have the characteristics **a, e, i** (1st, 2d, 4th conj.), have a perfect and supine according to the form of the third conj.; and some, of which the characteristic letter is a consonant in the present, form their perfect and supine as if from a stem ending in a vowel. In **uro, gero** (**us-si, ges-si, us-tum, ges-tum**), and some others, the stem in the present has not been lengthened, but varied, with a view to euphony. (In the perfect and supine of **fluo, struo, veho, traho, vivo,** we meet with a consonant, which, in the present, has either been rejected altogether, or weakened, as **h,** or appears in another form as **v.**) Some apparent irregularities in the perfect and supine arise only from the concurrence of the characteristic letter and the ending **si,** in the pronunciation.

The supine sometimes exhibits a remarkable irregularity, in having **tum** (without any connecting vowel, not, as usual, **ĭtum**), where the perfect has **ui** (§ **105,** *Obs.* 2).

Obs. It is to be remarked of the supine, that this form rarely occurs; and the supines of many verbs are, consequently, not found in Latin authors; but we have here considered them to be in use wherever the part. perf. passive, or the part. fut. active occurs, as these are moulded after the same form.

§ 119. First Conjugation. In the first conjugation, the following verbs (with their compounds) have, in the perfect and supine, **ui, ĭtum.**

Obs. The compound verb annexed in each instance serves to familiarize the learner with the quantity of the radical syllable, when it is not long by position, and shows, at the same time, how the vowel is altered in the composition, if such a change takes place (according to § **5,** *c*).

Crĕpo (**crepui, crepĭtum**), *to creak, make a noise.* **Discrĕpo.**

Cŭbo, *to lie.* **Accŭbo.**[1]

Obs. When the compounds of **cubo** insert an **m** before **b,** — e.g. **incumbo,** — they are inflected according to the third conjugation, and acquire the signification *to lay one's self* (to pass over into the condition of lying): e.g. **accumbo, accumbere, accubui, accubitum; accumbit,** *he lays himself by;* **accŭbat,** *he lies by.*

Dŏmo, *to tame.* **Perdŏmo.**

Sŏno, *to sound* (part. fut. act. **sonaturus,** § **106,** *Obs.* 2). **Consŏno.**

Tŏno, *to thunder.* **Attŏno** (**attonitus,** *as if struck by thunder, stunned*). (**Intono** has, for its part., **intonatus.**)

[1] **Incubavit** for **incubuit** in Quinctilian.

Věto, *to forbid*.

Plĭco, *to fold*. It is found usually only in its compounds (**applĭco**, *to apply*; **complĭco**, *to fold together*; **explĭco**, *to unfold*; **implĭco**, *to fold in, entangle*; **replĭco**, *to unfold*), — which have both **ui, itum**, and **avi, atum**. (Generally, the perfect has **ui**, the supine **atum**; but **explico** usually has **explicavi**, in the signification *to explain*; and **applico** has **applicavi**. The simple **plico** is found only in the poets, without a perfect. The participle is **plicatus**.)

§ 120. The following verbs have the terminations **ui, tum** : —

Frĭco, *to rub*, **frĭcui, frictum** (but also **fricatum**). **Perfrĭco**.

Sĕco, *to cut*. (Part. fut. active, **secaturus**, § **106**, *Obs.* 2.) **Dissĕco**.

Mĭco, *to glitter*, has **micui**, without a supine. **Emĭco, emicui, emicatum**. **Dimĭco**, *to fight*, **dimicavi, dimicatum**.

Enĕco, from **nĕco**, *to kill* (**necavi, necatum**), has both **enecui, enectum**, and **enecavi**.

§ 121. The following should be separately noticed : —

Do, *to give*, **dĕdi** (with the reduplication), **dătum, dăre**. In this verb, the **a** of the stem is always short, except in **da** and **das**. So, also, the compounds, **circumdo**, *to surround*; **venundo**, *to sell* (**venum**, *for sale*); **pessundo**, *to throw down* (**pessum**, *downwards, to the ground*); **satisdo**, *to give security* (**satis**, *enough*); e.g. **circumdĕdi, circumdătum**. The remaining compounds (with prepositions of one syllable) are declined after the third conjugation. See § **133**. (**Duim**, § **115**, *d*.)

Jŭvo, *to help*, **jūvi, jūtum**. (Part. fut. act. **juvaturus**, § **106**, *Obs.* 2. **Adjŭvo**.)

Sto, *to stand*, **stĕti, stātum**. The compounds change the **e** of the perfect into **i**: e.g. **praesto**, *to stand for* (to give security), *to perform*, **praestĭti, praestatum**; **persto**, *to persevere*; only those compounded with prepositions of two syllables (**antesto, circumsto, interstо, supersto**) retain **e**, — e.g. **circumstĕti**, — but have no supine. **Disto** is without either perfect or supine.

Lăvo, *to wash, bathe*, without a perfect, which is borrowed from **lăvo, lavĕre, lāvi, lautum** (**lotum**), after the third conj., the present of which is antiquated, and only used by the poets. (**Lautus, lotus**, *washed, clean*; **lautus**, *splendid*.) In the compounds, it takes the form **luo**, — e.g. **abluo**, — after the third conjugation (§ **130**).

Pōto, *to drink*, **potavi, potatum**, and more often **potum** (**potus**, *one that has drunk*; § **110**, *Obs.* 3). **Epōto**.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 122. The following verbs affix **vi** and **tum** to the stem in the perfect and supine (as in the first and fourth conjugation):—

Deleo, *to blot out, destroy*, **delēvi, deleram, delētum. (Delesti, deleram, delesse**, &c.; see § **113**, *a*.)

Fleo, *to weep*.

Neo, *to spin*.

Pleo, *to fill*. Used only in its compounds; as, **compleo, expleo, impleo**, &c.

Abŏleo, *to abolish* (from the unused **oleo**, *to grow*), has **abolēvi, abolĭtum.**

Obs. These verbs are, throughout, **verba pura**, as (with the exception **abolĭtum**) they have, everywhere, the vowel **e** as a characteristic letter before the ending. See § **101.**

§ 123. The verbs in **veo** have **i** in the perfect (with the radical vowel lengthened), **tum** in the supine.

Căveo, *to beware*, **cāvi, cautum. Praecăveo (praecăves).**

Făveo, *to favor*, **fāvi, fautum.**

Fŏveo, *to cherish, foster*, **fōvi, fōtum.**

Mŏveo, *to move*, **mōvi, mōtum. Commŏveo (commŏves). Commosti, commosse.** See § **113**, *a*.

Vŏveo, *to vow, to wish*, **vōvi, vōtum. Devŏveo (devŏves).**

The following want the supine:—

Connīveo, *to close the eyes, to close one eye*, **connīvi**, or **connixi** (both forms little used).

Ferveo, *to glow, boil*, **fervi** and (especially in the compounds) **ferbui.** (Anciently **fervo, fervĕre**, 3d.)

Păveo, *to be afraid*, **pāvi.**

§ 124. The following have the terminations **ui** in the perfect, and **tum** in the supine:—

Dŏceo, *to teach*, **docui, doctum. Dedŏceo (dedŏces).**

Tĕneo, *to hold*, **tenui (tentum).** The supine and forms derived from it are little used, except in the compounds, **detĭneo, obtineo**, and **retineo. Contentus (contineo)** is used only as an adjective.

Misceo, *to mix*, **miscui, mixtum** and **mistum.**
Torreo, *to dry up*, *burn*, **torrui, tostum.**

The following has **ui** and **sum**: —

Censeo, *to think*, *estimate*, **censui, censum. Accenseo. Recenseo**, has, in the supine, both **recensum** and **recensītum.**

§ 125. The following have **i** in the perfect, and **sum** in the supine (as in the third conjugation): —

Prandeo, *to breakfast*, **prandi, pransum.** (**Pransus**, *one that has breakfasted*; § **110**, *Obs.* 3.)
Sĕdeo, *to sit*, **sēdi, sessum. Assĭdeo** (**assĭdes**). Compare **sido**, § **133.** (**Circumsedeo** and **supersedeo**, without a change of vowels.)
Possĭdeo, *to possess*, or *take possession of*, **possēdi, possessum.**
Vĭdeo, *to see*, **vīdi, vīsum. Invĭdeo** (*to envy*), **invĭdes**; **videor**, *to seem.*
Strīdeo, *to hiss*, *whistle*, **strīdi**, without supine: also **strīdo, stridĕre**, 3d.

So also, but with the reduplication, which is dropped in the compounds, —

Mordeo, *to bite*, **momordi, morsum.** (**Demordeo, demordi.**)
Pendeo, *to hang*, **pependi, pensum.** (**Impendeo**, *to hang over*, *impend*, **impendi.**) Compare **pendo**, 3d, *to weigh*, trans.
Spondeo, *promise*, *to become surety*, **spopondi, sponsum.** (The compounds without reduplication, **spondi**; e.g. **respondeo**, *to answer*, **respondi, responsum.**)
Tondeo, *to shear*, **totondi, tonsum. Attondeo**, *to clip* (**attondi, attonsum**).

§ 126. *a.* The following have **si** in the perfect, and **tum** in the supine: [1] —

Augeo, *to increase* (trans.), **auxi, auctum.**
Indulgeo, *to be disposed to overlook*, *give one's self up* (e.g. to a passion), **indulsi, indultum.**
Torqveo, *to twist*, **torsi, tortum.**

b. The following have **si** in the perfect, and **sum** in the supine: —

Ardeo, *to burn* (intrans.), **arsi, arsum.**
Haereo, *to adhere*, *hang fast*, **haesi, haesum. Adhaereo.**
Jubeo, *to order*, **jussi, jussum.**

---

[1] **c, g, qv after r or l, are dropped before s and t.**

, *to remain*, **mansi, mansum.** **Permăneo (permănes).**
, *to stroke*, **mulsi, mulsum.**
, *to milk*, **mulsi, mulsum.** (The substantives **mulctra, mulc-**
mulctral, *a milk-pail*, as if from **mulctum.**)
to laugh, **risi, risum.** **Arrīdeo (arrīdes).**
, *to advise*, **svasi, svasum.** **Persvādeo (persvādes).**
, *to dry, to wipe*, **tersi, tersum.** (Also **tergo, tergĕre,**

following have **si** in the perfect, without a supine: —

to freeze, **alsi.**
to be cold, **frixi.**
, *to shine, glitter*, **fulsi.** (In the poets, **fulgo, fulgĕre**, 3d.)
to give light, shine, **luxi.** **Elūceo (elūcet).**
to mourn, **luxi.** (The substantive **luctus**, *mourning*.)
, *to swell*, **tursi** (very rare in the perfect).
to press, **prsi.**

The following must be separately noticed: —

stir up, excite, **civi, cītum**; also, **cio, cire**, 4th, but always

the compounds, — e.g. **concieo**, or **concio**, — the forms that
second conjugation are scarcely used, except in the pres. indic.
fetch, has, in the participle **accītus, excire**, both **excītus** and
(**Concītus** is rare.)

, *to be languid, sick*, **langui**, without supine.
, *to be fluid, to be clear*, **liqui**, or **lioui**, without supine.

e half deponents (§ **110**, *Obs.* 2), —

, *to dare*, **ausus sum.** (Old fut. subj. **ausim**, § **115**, *f.*)
, *to rejoice*, **gavīsus sum.**
to be accustomed, **solitus sum.** **Assŏlet** (impers.), *it is the*

a. Many of the remaining verbs of this conjugation
ntransitive) have a regular perfect, but no supine: e.g.
mell, have a scent (**redŏleo, redŏles**); **sorbeo**, *to sip*.
ich have a supine, and are declined entirely like **moneo**,
llowing: —

to be warm; **careo**, *to be without*; **coerceo**, *to restrain*; and
o exercise (from **arceo, arcui**, *to ward off*); **debeo**, *to owe, be*
doleo, *to be in pain, grieve*; **hăbeo**, *to have* (**adhĭbeo, ad-**
); **jăceo**, *to lie* (**adjăceo, adjăces**); **liceo**, *to be on sale*;
deserve (also **mereor**); **noceo**, *to injure*; **păreo**, *to obey*

(**appāreo, appāres,** *to appear*) ; **plăceo,** *to please* (**displĭceo, displĭces,** *to displease*) ; **praebeo,** *to afford;* **taceo,** *to be silent* (**retĭceo, retĭces,** *to be silent, to suppress*) ; **terreo,** *to frighten ;* **valeo,** *to be strong, to be able.*

Obs. 1. **Placeo,** however, has also, in the perfect (in the 3d person), **placitus est.**

Obs. 2. In that portion of these verbs which is intransitive, the supine is known only from the fut. part. ; e.g. **caliturus, carĭturus.**

b. Some verbs (almost all intransitive) occur neither in the perfect nor in the supine ; viz. :—

Adŏleo, *to set fire to ;* **aveo,** *to covet, desire ;* **cálveo,** *to be bald* (**calvus**) ; **caneo,** *to be gray-headed* (**canus**) ; **clueo,** *to be named ;* **denseo,** *to thicken, heap up* (commonly **densare,** 1st) ; **flaveo,** *to be yellow* (**flavus**) ; **foeteo,** *to be fetid ;* **hebeo,** *to be blunt* (**hebes**) ; **humeo,** *to be moist* (**humidus**) ; **lacteo,** *to suck* (the breast) ; **liveo,** *to be of a livid color* (**lividus**) ; **immĭneo,** *to bend over, threaten ;* **promĭneo,** *to jut out* (**emĭneo, eminui,** *to be prominent*) ; **moereo,** *to be sad ;* **polleo,** *to be powerful ;* **renīdeo,** *to glitter, smile ;* **scateo,** *to gush out ;* **sqvaleo,** *to be dirty* (**sqvalidus**) ; **vegeo** (rare), *to stir up ;* **vieo** (rare), *to plait.* Others acquire a perfect when they assume the inchoative form (see § **141**) : e.g. **areo,** *to be dry ;* **aresco,** *to become dry ;* **arui,** *I became dry.*

Obs. On the impersonal verbs of the second conjugation, see Chap. XXIV.

CHAPTER XIX.

PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 129. The verbs of the third conjugation have various forms in the perfect and supine (see § **103** and **105**) ; and are consequently all enumerated here, arranged according to the characteristic letter, so as to show to which form every (simple) verb belongs.

§ 130. *a.* Verbs in **uo** have **i** in the perfect, and **tum** in the supine ; as, **minuo,** *to lessen,* **minui, minūtum.**

(So **acuo,** *to sharpen ;* **imbuo,** *to steep, to imbue ;* **indŭo,** *to clothe, put on ;* **exuo,** *to put off ;* **spuo,** *to spit ;* **statuo,** *to set up, determine ;* **sternuo,** *to sneeze ;* **suo,** *to sew ;* **tribuo,** *to, impart.*) In like manner, also,

y, solvi, solūtum; and **volvo**, *to roll*, **volvi, volū-**

ıg want the supine:—

e. (**Argutus**, adj., *sharp, clever.*) **Coarguo.**
fence.

ompounds which have the signification *to wash, to*
, some have the participle perfect; viz., **ablūtus,**
erlūtus, prolūtus. (**Luiturus** belongs to a late

Used only in composition; e.g. renuo. But **abnuo**

t, *to agree;* and **ingruo,** *to invade, impend over.*

rains). (The perfect is also written **pluvi.**)
ow down, generally intransitive, has the supine **rŭtum**
), but the part. fut. act. **ruĭturus** (§ **106**, *Obs.* 2).
e partly transitive: as, e.g., **diruo**, part. **dirŭtus**;
:us, partly intransitive: as, **corruo, irruo.**

g are irregular:—

xi, without a supine. (**Fluxus**, *loose, slack;* **fluctus,**

:p, *build*, **struxi, structum.**
xi, victum.

verbs in bo and po have regularly si (psi), tum

dupsi, gluptum. Deglūbo.
(of women). (Part. **nupta**, *married.*) **Obnūbo**, *to*

Descrĭbo.
Decerpo.
(Rare, and antiquated.)
Obrēpo.
ch, scrape, cut (with a chisel); and **sculpo**, *to form*
Properly, the same word; the compounds always
5, *c*); e.g. **insculpo.**

g deviate from this rule:—

:ompounds of cubo, with m inserted (see § 119);
ubui, incubĭtum.

Rumpo, *to break*, **rūpi**, **ruptum.**
Strĕpo, *to make a noise*, **strepui**, **strepĭtum.** **Obstrĕpo.**
Bĭbo, *to drink*, **bibi.** **Imbĭbo.** } without supine.
Lambo, *to lick.* **Lambi.** } without supine.
Scăbo, *to scratch.* } without supine.

§ 132. *a.* The verbs in **co** (not **sco**), **qvo**, **go**, **gvo**, **ho**, have regularly **si**, **tum** (which with the characteristic letter becomes **xi**, **ctum**).

Dīco, *to say*, **dixi**, **dictum.** **Praedīco**, *to say beforehand.*
Dūco, *to lead*, **duxi**, **ductum.** **Addūco.**
Cŏqvo, *to cook*, **coxi**, **coctum.** **Concŏqvo.**
Cingo, *to surround*, **cinxi**, **cinctum.**
Flīgo, *to strike.* Commonly used only in the compounds, **affligo**, *to strike to the ground*; **conflīgo**, *to fight*; **inflīgo**, *to strike* (against something). (**Profligare**, 1st, *to beat to flight, overthrow, bring nearly to an end.*)
Frīgo, *to parch.* (Supine also **frixum.**)
Jungo, *to join.*
Lingo, *to lick.*
Emungo, *to blow one's nose.*
Plango, *to beat* (**plango** and **plangor**, *to beat one's self for sorrow*).
Rĕgo, *to direct, manage.* **Arrĭgo, corrĭgo, erĭgo, porrĭgo, subrĭgo.** But **pergo**, *to go on* (from **per** and **rego**), has **perrexi, perrectum**; and **surgo**, *to rise* (from **sub** and **rego**), **surrexi, surrectum.** **Adsurgo, adsurrexi, adsurrectum.**
Sūgo, *to suck.* **Exsūgo.**
Tĕgo, *to cover.* **Contĕgo.**
Tingo, tingvo, *to dip.*
Ungo, ungvo, *to anoint.*
(**Stingvo**), *to extinguish*, rare. **Exstingvo, restingvo**, *to extinguish*; **distingvo**, *to distinguish.*
Traho, *to draw*, **traxi**, **tractum.** **Contrăho.**
Veho, *to carry* (trans.). (**Vehor**, as a deponent, *to drive* or *ride* (intrans.); **invĕhor**, *to attack.*)
Ango, *to vex*, **anxi** (rare in the perfect). } without supine.
Ningo (**ningit**, *it snows*), **ninxi** (**ninxit**). } without supine.
Clango, *to resound*, without perf. or sup.

b. The following deviate from this rule:—

Fingo, *to form, invent*, **finxi**, **fictum.**
Mingo, minxi, mictum. (In the present, more frequently **mejo, mejere.**)

Pingo, *to paint*, **pinxi, pictum.**

Stringo, *to graze, touch lightly, draw tight together*, **strinxi, strictum.**

Mergo, *to immerse*, **mersi, mersum.** (**Emergo**, *to come to the surface* (intrans.), but in the perf. part. **emersus**; comp. § **110**, *Obs.* 3).

Spargo, *to scatter, sprinkle*, **sparsi, sparsum. Conspergo.**

Tergo, *to wipe*, **tersi, tersum.** (Also **tergeo**, 2d.)

Vergo, *to incline*, without perfect or supine.

Ago, *to drive*, **ēgi, actum. Adĭgo, adēgi, adactum** (**abĭgo, exĭgo, subĭgo, transĭgo**); but **perăgo** (**perēgi, peractum**) and **circumăgo. Ambĭgo**, *to doubt*; **dēgo**, *to pass* (**aetatem**); **satăgo**, *to be busy*, without perfect and supine. (**Dēgi** belongs to a late period.) **Prodĭgo** (to drive forth), *spend*, without supine. **Cogo**, *to drive together, force*; **coēgi, coactum.**

Obs. **Age** (pres. imp.), *come now!* addressed also to several; **age, considerate**; though we also find **agite** so used.

Frango, *to break in pieces*, **frēgi, fractum. Confringo, confrēgi, confractum.**

Ico (**icio**?), *to strike, conclude* (**foedus**), **īci, ictum.** (Of the pres. indic., **icit, icitur, icimur**, alone are found; the only forms in general use are **ici, ictus**, and **icere**; **ferio** is used instead of the present.)

Lĕgo, *to collect, choose, read*, **legi, lectum. Allĕgo**, *to choose in addition*; **perlĕgo**, *to read through*; **praelĕgo**, *to read aloud*; and **relĕgo**, *to read again* (without a change of the vowel), **allēgi, allectum**, &c.; **collĭgo**, *to collect*; **delĭgo, elĭgo, selĭgo**, *to choose out*; **collēgi, collectum**, &c.; but **diligo**, *to love*, has **dilexi, dilectum**; and so also **intellĭgo** (**intellĕgo**), *to understand*, and **neglĭgo** (**neglĕgo**), *to neglect*.

Linqvo, *to leave*, **līqvi**, (**lictum**). **Relinqvo, relīqvi, relictum**, is more common.

Vinco, *to conquer*, **vīci, victum.**

Fīgo, *to fasten*, **fixi, fixum. Affīgo.**

Parco, *to spare*, **peperci** (**parsi**, rare), **parsum. Comparco** and **comperco, comparsi.**

Pungo, *to prick*, **pupŭgi, punctum.** The compounds have **punxi** in the perfect; e.g. **interpungo.**

Pango, *to fasten*, **panxi**, and **pēgi** (**panctum, pactum**). In the signification, *to fix* (in the way of agreement), it has, for its perfect, **pepĭgi**, sup. **pactum**; but, in this sense, the deponent **paciscor** is always used in the present. **Compingo, compēgi, compactum**, and **impingo. Oppango, oppēgi, oppactum.**

Tango, *to touch*, **tetĭgi, tactum. Attingo, attĭgi, attactum**; **contingo** (**contingit, contĭgit**, impers., *it falls to one's share*).

§ 133. *a.* The verbs in **do** have regularly **si, sum,** with the omission of the **d**: —

Claudo, *to shut,* **clausi, clausum. Conclūdo.**

Divĭdo, *to divide,* **divīsi, divīsum.**

Laedo, *to injure.* **Collīdo,** *to strike together,* &c.

Lūdo, *to play.* **Collūdo.**

Plaudo, *to clap the hands.* **Applaudo.** The remaining compounds have **plōdo**; as, **explōdo,** *to drive off the stage.*

Rādo, *to scrape.* **Corrādo,** *to scrape together.*

Rōdo, *to gnaw.* **Arrōdo.**

Trūdo, *to thrust.* **Extrūdo.**

Vādo, *to go, step,* without perfect or supine. But **invādo, invāsi, invāsum,** and so also **evādo, pervādo.**

b. The following are exceptions: —

Cēdo, *to yield,* **cessi, cessum. Concēdo.**

(**Cando,** unused.) **Accendo,** *to set on fire,* **accendi, accensum.** So also **incendo, succendo.**

Cūdo, *to forge on the anvil,* **cūdi, cūsum. Excūdo.**

Defendo, *to defend, ward off,* **defendi, defensum.** So also **offendo,** *to insult, strike against.*

Edo, *to eat,* **ēdi, ēsum. Comĕdo.** (On the peculiar irregularity in some forms of this verb, see § **156.**)

Fundo, *to pour,* **fūdi, fūsum. Effundo.**

Mando, *to chew,* **mandi** (rare), **mansum.**

Prehendo, *to lay hold of,* **prehendi, prehensum.** (Also **prendo.**)

Scando, *to climb,* **scandi, scansum. Ascendo,** &c.

Strīdo, *to hiss, whistle,* **strīdi,** without supine. (Also **strideo,** 2d.)

Rŭdo, *to roar, bray,* **rudīvi** (rare), without supine.

Findo, *to cleave, split,* **fĭdi, fissum. Diffindo (diffĭdi).**

Frendo, *to champ, gnash the teeth,* without perfect, **fressum** and **fresum.** (Also **frendeo,** 2d.)

Pando, *to spread out,* **pandi, passum** (rarely **pansum**). **Expando.** (**Dispando** has only **dispansum.**)

Scindo, *to tear,* **scĭdi, scissum. Conscindo, conscĭdi, conscissum,** &c. **Abscindo** and **exscindo (excindo)** are not used in the supine, — **exscindo** not even in the perfect. (In its stead, we find **abscīsus, excīsus,** from **abscīdo, excīdo**; see **caedo.**)

Sīdo, *to seat one's self,* **sēdi** (rarely **sīdi**), **sessum. Assīdo (adsīdo), assēdi, assessum,** &c. (Compare **sedeo,** 2d.)

Cădo, *to fall,* **cecĭdi, cāsum. Concĭdo, concĭdi** (without redupl. and without supine), &c. (Of the compounds, only **occĭdo** and **recĭdo** have a supine, **occāsum, recāsum**; rarely **incĭdo.**)

Caedo, *to fell, beat*; **cecīdi, caesum. Concīdo, concīdi, concīsum**, &c.

Pendo, *to weigh*, **pependi, pensum. Appendo, appendi, appensum**, &c. (**Suspendo**, *to hang up*.) (Compare **pendeo**, 2d.)

Tendo, *to stretch*, **tetendi, tensum**, and **tentum. Contendo, contendi, contentum**, &c. (The compounds generally have **tentum**; **extendo, retendo**, both **tentum** and **tensum**; **detendo**, *to slacken, take down* (**tabernacula**); **ostendo**, *to show*, only **tensum**. Substant. **ostentum**; **ostentus** = **obtentus**, *stretched out before, spread out*.)

Tundo, *to beat, pound*, **tutŭdi, tusum** and **tunsum. Contundo, contŭdi, contusum** (rarely **contunsum**), &c.

Crēdo, *to believe*, **credĭdi, creditum. Accrēdo, accredĭdi, accreditum.**

Do. All the compounds of **do, dare** (1st conj., § **121**), with prepositions of one syllable, are inflected after the third conjugation; as, **addo, addĕre, addĭdi, addĭtum** (**condo, trado**, &c.).

Obs. The doubly compounded **abscondo** (**abs** and **condo**) has, in the perfect, **abscondi** (rarely **abscondĭdi**). From **vendo**, *to sell*, the passive participle **venditus**, and the gerundive **vendendus** are in use, but otherwise its passive is supplied in good writers by the verb **veneo** (see § **158**). So, likewise, **pereo** (see **eo**, § **158**) is generally used, instead of the passive of **perdo**, *to destroy, to lose* (except **perditus, perdendus**, and the compound forms).

Fīdo, *to trust*, **fisus sum** (a half-deponent). **Confīdo, confisus sum**; **diffīdo.**

§ 134. *a.* The verbs in **lo** have **ui, tum (ĭtum)**: —

Alo, *to nourish*, **alui, altum** (and **alitum**).

Cŏlo, *to till, cherish*, **colui, cultum. Excŏlo.**

Consŭlo, *to consult, care for*, **consului, consultum.**

Occŭlo, *to conceal*, **occului, occultum.**

Mŏlo, *to grind*, **molui, molĭtum.**

Excello, *to excel, distinguish one's self*, perf. **excellui** (rare), without supine; **antecello, praecello**, without perfect or supine. (Also, **excelleo, antecelleo.**)

b. The following are excepted: —

Fallo, *to deceive*, **fefelli, falsum. Refello**, *to refute*, **refelli**, without supine.

Pello, *to drive away*, **pepŭli, pulsum. Expello, expŭli, expulsum**, &c.

Percello, *to strike down*, **percŭli, perculsum.**

Psallo, *to play on a stringed instrument*, **psalli**, without supine.

Vello, *to tear*, **velli** (rarely **vulsi**), **vulsum. Convello**, *to tear away*,

convelli, convulsum, &c. Only **avello** and **evello** have also (but rarely) **avulsi, evulsi.**

Tollo, *to raise up, take away,* has **sustŭli, sublatum** (with the preposition **sub**; the supine from another stem; see, under **fero,** § **155**). **Extollo,** without perfect or supine.

§ 135. Verbs in **mo**: —

Cōmo, *to adorn,* **compsi, comptum.**

Dēmo, *to take away,* **dempsi, demptum.**

Prōmo, *to take out,* **prompsi, promptum.**

Sūmo, *to take,* **sumpsi, sumptum.**

Obs. The other way of writing these verbs, without **p** (**sumsi, sumtum**) is not so correct. The **p** has been inserted with a view to euphony.

Frĕmo, *to roar, murmur,* **fremui, fremitum. Adfrĕmo.**

Gĕmo, *to sigh,* **gemui, gemitum. Congĕmo.**

Vŏmo, *to vomit;* **vomui, vomitum. Evŏmo.**

Trĕmo, *to tremble,* **tremui,** without supine.

Ĕmo, *to buy,* **ēmi, emptum** (less correctly, **emtum**). **Coëmo, coēmi, coëmptum.** The remaining compounds have **i,** instead of **e,** in the present; as, **adĭmo,** *to take away,* **adēmi, ademptum** (**dirĭmo,** *to separate;* **exĭmo, interimo, perimo, redimo**).

Prĕmo, *to press,* **pressi, pressum. Comprĭmo, compressi, compressum,** &c.

§ 136. Verbs in **no**: —

Căno, *to sing,* **cecĭni.** Of the compounds, **concĭno, occĭno** (also **occăno**), and **praecĭno,** have, for their perfects, **concinui, occinui, praecinui**; the others (**accĭno,** &c.) want this tense. (Substantive, **cantus,** *song,* **concentus,** &c. **Canto, cantare.**)

Gigno, *to beget,* **gĕnui, genitum.**

Pōno, *to put,* **pŏsui, positum. Compōno.** (Poetical contraction; **postus, compostus,** for **positus, compositus.**)

Lĭno, *to smear, anoint,* **lēvi** (**līvi**), **lĭtum. Oblĭno, oblēvi, oblĭtum,** &c.

Obs. The later writers use the form **linio** regularly according to the fourth conjugation. (**Circumlinio,** Quinc.)

Sĭno, *to permit,* **sīvi, sĭtum** (**sĭtus,** *situated*). **Desĭno,** *to leave off,* **desīvi** (**desisti, desiit, desieram,** &c., without **v**; § **113,** *b, Obs.* 1), **desĭtum.** (For **desitus sum,** see, under **coepi,** § **161.**)

Obs. In the perfect subjunctive of **sino, i** and **e** are contracted into **ī, sirim, siris, sirit, sirint.** (Not in **desierim.**)

Cerno, *to sift, decide,* **crevi, cretum. Decerno,** &c. In the signification *to see, to look,* **cerno** has neither perfect nor supine.

Sperno, *to despise*, **sprevi, spretum.**

Sterno, *to throw to the ground*, *strew*, *cover*, **stravi, stratum. Consterno**, *to cover*, **constravi, constratum**, &c.

Obs. In the perfect, and the tenses derived from it, the rejection of the **v**, and contraction, as in the first conjugation, occur but seldom; e.g. **prostrasse, strarat.**

Temno, *to despise*, **tempsi, temptum**; most usually **contemno, contempsi, contemptum** (less correctly, **contemsi, contemtum**).

§ 137. Verbs in **ro**: —

Gĕro, *to carry*, *perform*, **gessi, gestum. Congĕro.**

Ūro, *to burn* (trans.), **ussi, ustum. Adūro, adussi, adustum**, &c. (**ambūro, exūro, inūro**), but **combūro**, *to burn up*, **combussi, combustum** (from an older form of the stem).

Curro, *to run*, **cucurri, cursum.** The compounds sometimes retain the reduplication in the perfect (**accucurri**), but generally lose it (**accurri**).

Fĕro, *to bear*, *carry*, **tŭli, lātum.** See § **155.**

Fŭro, *to rave*, without perfect or supine.

Qvaero, *to seek*, **qvaesīvi, qvaesītum. Conqvīro, conqvisīvi, conqvisītum**, &c.

Obs. In the first person, singular and plural, of the present indicative, the old form, **qvaeso, qvaesŭmus**, is used to give the style a coloring of antiquity, or as a parenthesis (*pray!*).

Sĕro, *to plait*, *put in rows*, **serui, sertum.** The perfect and supine of the simple verb are not in use (only the neuter plural of the part. perfect passive **serta**, *garlands of flowers*, *wreaths*), but those of the compounds are so; as, **consĕro, conserui, consertum.** (**Insĕro, exsĕro, desĕro**, *to forsake*; **dissĕro**, *to develop*.)

Sĕro, *to sow*, **sēvi, sătum. Consĕro, consēvi, consĭtum**, &c. (**Insĕro**, *to graft*, **intersĕro**, *to sow amongst*.) [1]

Tĕro, *to rub*, **trīvi, trītum. Contĕro**, &c.

Verro, *to sweep*, **verri, versum.**

§ 138. Verbs in **so** (**xo**): —

Vīso, *to visit*, **visi**, without supine. **Invīso.** (From **video.**)

Depso, *to knead*, **depsui, depstum.**

Pinso, *to pound*, **pinsui** and **pinsi, pinsitum** and **pinsum.** (Also, **piso, pistum.**)

Texo, *to weave*, **texui, textum.**

---

[1] **Conseruisset** for **conservisset** in Livy is an error of the transcribers.

Those in **esso** have **īvi, ītum**; viz.: —

Arcesso, or **accerso**, *to send for*, **arcessīvi, arcessītum (accersivi, accersitum)**. In the infin. pass., sometimes **arcessiri.**

Capesso, *to take in hand.* (A lengthened form of **capio**, § **143.**)

Facesso, *to make, cause*, intrans., *to retire.* (From **facio**, § **143.**)

Lacesso, *to provoke.* (From the unused **lacio**, § **143.**)

Incesso, *to attack*, **incessivi**, without sup. (The perfect, in the expressions **timor, cura**, &c., **incessit homines, animos**, is from **incēdo**, although the present of the latter verb is not used in *that* signification.) **Incepisso**, *to begin*, without perf. and sup. (Archaic, from **incipio.**)

Petesso, *to seek*, without perf. and sup. (Archaic, from **peto.**)

§ 139. Verbs in **to**: —

Mĕto, *to mow, reap*, **messui** (rare), **messum. Demĕto.**

Mitto, *to send*, **misi, missum.**

Pĕto, *to beg, seek to obtain*, **petīvi** (**petii, petiit**; § **113**, *b*, *Obs.* 1), **petītum. Appĕto.**

Sisto, *to place, set up*, **stĭti** (rare), **stătum** (adj. **stătus**, *fixed*); rarely in an intransitive signification, *to remain standing, place one's self*, and then in the perfect **stĕti** (from **sto**, 1st, from which **sisto** has been formed by reduplication). **Desisto, destĭti, destitum**, &c. (**Consisto, exsisto, insisto, resisto**, all invariably intransitive.) **Circumsisto** alone has **circumstĕti**, from **circumsto.**

Sterto, *to snore*, **stertui**, without supine.

Verto, *to turn*, **verti, versum.** In like manner, the compounds (**adverto**, whence **animadverto, averto**, &c.). The intransitives **devertor**, *to put up*; and **revertor**, *to return*, — are deponents in the present, and the forms derived from it (**reverto** is very rare); in the perfect, on the contrary, they are active verbs, **deverti, reverti** (more rarely **reversus sum** and the participle **reversus**). **Praeverto**, *to be beforehand with, surpass*, has a deponent form in the intransitive signification, *to attend to a thing* (above every thing else), but otherwise very seldom.

Flecto, *to bend*, **flexi, flexum.**

Necto, *to tie*, **nexi** and **nexui** (both rare), **nexum.**

Pecto, *to comb*, **pexi** and **pexui** (both rare), **pexum.**

Plecto, *to punish*, without perfect or supine. In the signification *to plait*, we find only the part. perf. passive, **plexus** (compound **implexus**).

§ 140. Verbs in **sco.** They are partly those in which the **sco** belongs to the stem, and is retained in the inflection; partly those

sco is a prolongation of the stem, and is dropped in the
d supine.

first kind are (all without supine), —

sco, *to confine*, **compescui.**
co, *to separate*, **dispescui.**
to learn, **didĭci.** **Addisco, addidĭci** (with redupl.), &c.
to demand, **poposci.** **Deposco, depoposci** (with the re-

Sco is a prolongation of the stem in the inchoative verbs,
derived either from a verb (**inchoativa verbalia**), or
an (**inchoativa nominalia**), most frequently an adjective,
the commencement of a state (see § **196**). The **inchoa-**
alia have the perfect of the verbs from which they are
.g.: —

co, **incalui**, from **caleo, calui**; **ingemisco, ingemui**, from
ui; **deliqvesco, delicui**, from liqveo, liqvi, or licui. Some
choativa nominalia, which are derived from adjectives of the
lension, have a perfect in **ui** (without a supine): as, **matu-**
ripen, **maturui**, from **maturus**; **obmutesco**, *to grow dumb*,
from **mutus**; **percrebresco**, *to grow frequent* (**creber**), per-
by some written **percrebesco, percrebui**). (So, likewise,
o become worthless, **evilui**, from **vilis**.) **Irraucesco**, *to grow*
ious), **irrausi**, is irregular. The others, derived from adjec-
with many of those from adjectives in **us**, have no perfect; e.g.
. (**Vesperascit**, *the evening comes on*, and **advesperascit,**
eravit, advesperavit; **consenesco**, *to become old*, **con-**

me few inchoatives have also the supine of their stems;

o (**alesco**, from **alo**, 3d), *to grow together*, **coalui, coalitum**
t. perf. **coalitus**, *grown together*).
isco, *to desire*, **concupīvi, concupītum.** (**Cupio**, 3d.)
sco, *to become strong, healthy*, **convalui, convalitum.**
l.)
sco, *to take fire*, **exarsi, exarsum.** (**Ardeo**, 2d.)
asco, *to grow old*, **inveteravi, inveteratum** (part. perf. *in-*
rooted). (From **vetus**; also, **invetero.**)
nisco, *to fall asleep*, **obdormīvi, obdormītum.** (**Dormio,**

co, *to come to life again*, **revixi, revictum.** (**Vivo**, 3d.)

§ 142. Some verbs are lengthened with **sco**, but have lost their inchoative signification, or are formed from stems which are no longer extant, so that they are considered as simple, underived verbs. These are the following: —

Adolesco, *to grow up*, **adolēvi**. So also **abolesco**, *to disappear, cease*; **exolesco**, *to disappear, grow old*; **inolesco**, **obsolesco**. (From the unused **oleo**, *to grow*.) From **adolesco** comes the adjective **adultus**, *grown up*, from **exolesco**, **exolētus**, from **obsolesco**, **obsolētus**, *obsolete*. (Compare, **aboleo**, § **122**.)

Cresco, *to increase*, **crēvi**, **crētum**. **Concresco**, &c. (Part. perf. **crētus**, and particularly **concretus**.)

Fatisco, *to crack* (grow languid), without perfect or supine. (**Fessus**, *weary*, adjective. **Defetiscor**, *to grow weary*, **defessus sum**, deponent.)

Glisco, *to grow, spread*, without perf. or sup.

Hisco, *to open the mouth*, without perf. or sup.

Nosco, *to become acquainted with, inform one's self concerning*, **nōvi**, **nōtum**. The perfect signifies, *I have made the acquaintance of, I know*; the pluperfect, *I knew*. **Nōtus** is only an adjective (*known*), and the fut. part. is not in use. (On the contraction, **nosti**, **norim**, see § **113**, *a*.)

Of the compounds (from the old form **gnosco**), **agnosco** (**adgnosco**), *to recognize*; **cognosco**, *to become acquainted with* (**recognosco**), — have **agnĭtum** and **cognĭtum** in the supine; **ignosco**, *to pardon*, has **ignōtum**. The remaining (**dignosco**, **internosco**) have no supine.

Pasco, *to feed* (cattle), **pavi**, **pastum**. (**Pascor**, as a deponent, *to graze*.) **Depasco**.

Qviesco, *to rest*, **qviēvi**, **qviētum**.

Svesco, *to accustom one's self*, **svevi**, **svetum**. (Part. perf. **svetus**, *accustomed*. Archaic present, **svemus**, from **sveo**. The compounds have sometimes a transitive signification: e.g. **assvesco**, *to accustom one's self, and to accustom one*; generally, however, we find **assvefacio**, in the transitive signification. **Mansvetus**, *tame*.)

Scisco, *to order, ratify* (a law), **scīvi**, **scītum**. (From **scio**.)

§ 143. Verbs with an **i** inserted after the characteristic letter. (The perfect and supine are formed from the stem without **i**.)

Căpio, *to take*, **cēpi**, **captum**. **Concĭpio** (**concĭpis**), **concēpi**, **conceptum**, &c.

Făcio, *to make, do*, **fēci**, **factum**. (Old fut. indic., **faxo**; subj., **faxim**; § **115**, *f*.) **Fio** serves for a passive in the present, and the tenses formed from it; see § **160**; but the participles (**factus**, **faciendus**) and the compound forms are from **facio**. So also the compounds

with verbal stems: e.g. **calefacio**, *to make warm*, **calefeci, calefactum, calefio**; **patefacio, patefeci, patefactum, patefio**;[1] and with adverbs: e.g. **satisfacio**, *to give satisfaction*, **satisfeci, satisfactum, satisfit**. The compounds with prepositions alter the vowel, and are declined like **perficio, perfeci, perfectum**, in the passive (regularly) **perficior**. (But **conficio** sometimes has **confieri** in the passive as well as **conficior**. See § **160**, *Obs.* 1.)

Jăcio, *to throw*, **jēci, jactum**. **Abjĭcio (abjĭcis), abjeci, abjectum**, &c.

Obs. At an earlier period, the compounds were generally spoken and written with one **i**; e.g. **abicio, disicio**. In the poets, **eicit, reice**, dissyllables, and **ējicit, rejiciunt**. **Porricio**, archaic, *to offer in sacrifice*, has no perfect.

Cupio, *to wish*, **cupīvi, cupītum**.

Fŏdio, *to dig*, **fōdi, fossum**. **Effŏdio, effŏdis**.

Fŭgio, *to flee*, **fūgi, fŭgitum**. **Aufŭgio, aufūgis**.

Lacio, *to entice*, whence **lacto, lactare**, *to make sport of one*. It is used only in compounds; **allĭcio**, *to entice*, **allexi, allectum**; so also **illicio, pellicio**; but **elicio**, *to draw out*, has **elicui, elicitum**. (**Prolicio** is not found in the perfect and supine.)

Pario, *to bring forth*, **pepĕri, partum**. (Part. fut. act. **pariturus**; § **106**, *Obs.* 2.)

Qvătio, *to shake* (**qvassi**, unused), **qvassum**. **Concŭtio, concussi, concussum**; **percutio**, &c.

Răpio, *to snatch, take away by force*, **rapui, raptum**. **Arrĭpio, arripui, arreptum**, &c.

Săpio, *to taste, have taste, understanding* (**sapivi**), without sup. **Desĭpio**, *to be foolish*, without perf.

Obs. The inchoative **resipisco**, *to become wise again*, has **resipivi** and **resipui**.

Spĕcio, *to look*, whence **specto, spectare**. Used only in the compounds; **aspĭcio**, *to behold*, **aspexi, aspectum**; **conspicio**, &c.

---

[1] Some of these, however, have no other passive forms than those deduced from **facio**; e.g. **tremefacio, tremefactus**.

CHAPTER XX.

THE IRREGULAR PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 144. The following verbs have **si, tum** (one has **sum**), as in the third conjugation: —

Farcio, *to stuff*, **farsi, fartum (farctum). Refercio, refersi, refertum,** &c.

Fulcio, *to prop*, **fulsi, fultum.**

Haurio, *to draw* (water), **hausi, haustum.** (Part. fut. **hausturus** and **hausurus.**) **Exhaurio.**

Sancio, *to ratify*, **sanxi, sancītum,** and oftener **sanctum.**

Sarcio, *to patch*, **sarsi, sartum. Resarcio.**

Sentio, *to feel, think*, **sensi, sensum. Consentio,** &c. **Assentio** is oftener used as a deponent, — **assentior, assensus sum.**

Saepio (sepio), *to fence*, **saepsi, saeptum. Obsaepio.**

Vincio, *to bind, fetter*, **vinxi, vinctum.**

§ 145. The following have other irregularities: —

Amicio, *to clothe*, **amictum.** Not used in the perfect.

Cio, civi, cĭtum. See **cieo,** § **127.**

Eo, *to go*, **ivi, ĭtum.** See § **158.**

Ferio, *to strike*, without perfect or supine.

(Perio?) Apĕrio, *to open, uncover*, **aperui, apertum**; so also **opĕrio,** *to cover over*, and **cooperio.**

(Perio?) Repĕrio, *to find*, **reppĕri (reperi), repertum**; so also **comperio,** *to learn*, **compĕri, compertum.** (Rarely, with a deponent form in the present, **comperior.**)

Sălio, *to leap*, **salui** (rarely, and not in the first person, **salii**). **Desĭlio, desilui** (rarely **desilii**), &c. (The substantives **saltus, desultor.**)

Sepĕlio, *to bury*, **sepelivi, sepultum.**[1]

Vĕnio, *to come*, **vēni, ventum. (Convenio.)**

Some intransitive verbs derived from adjectives want the perfect and supine: e.g. **superbio,** *to be proud*; **caecutio,** *to be blind* (see § **194,** *Obs.* 2; but **saevio,** and the transitives — as, **mollio** — are complete). These forms are also wanting in those verbs in **ŭrio,** which denote an inclination (**verba desiderativa**; see § **197**); e.g. **dormitŭrio,** *to be sleepy*. (From **esŭrio,** however, we have **esuriturus** in Terence.)

[1] Perf. first person **sepeli** (from **sepelii**; § **113,** *b*, *Obs.* 1 and 2) in Persius.

CHAPTER XXI.

;LAR SUPINES (PARTICIPLES) OF THE DEPONENTS, ›ME OTHER IRREGULARITIES OF THESE VERBS.

some deponents the supine or participle perfect (whence , &c., are formed by composition) varies from the pres- ne way as in the active verbs.

upine itself occurs but seldom in the deponents. The perf. ı (perf. indic.) is here named instead of it.

t conjugation, to which by far the greater part of the longs, they are all inflected regularly.

ferior, *to keep holiday, be idle;* and **operor**, *to busy one's* ıe perfect participle has a present signification; **feriatus**, *d;* **operatus**, *busied.* The same also generally holds good and some others.

ncerning the derivation of the deponents which follow the § 193, *b*.

)f some deponents of the first conjugation, the active form ıally, or even frequently, found in good writers; e.g. **popŭ-** *te*, and **populo**. The most important of these, including **altercor**, *to dispute* (**altercо**, Ter.); **auguror**, *to foretell;* *company* (**comito**, poet.); **conflictor**, *to struggle* (**con-** **fabricor**, *to make;* **feneror**, *to lend at interest;* **luctor**, *to* , Ter.); **ludificor**, *to make sport of, to banter;* **muneror**, **muneror**, *to recompense;* **oscitor**, *to yawn;* **palpor**, *to* ; **stabulor**, *to be in the stall, have one's station.* The f many others is here and there met with in the older

›ther hand, some verbs of the first conjugation, which have y the active form, are used, by some particular authors, as g. **fluctuo**, *to fluctuate;* also, **fluctuor** (Liv.). Further ch verbs are: **bello**, *to make war* (**bellor**, Virg.); **commu-** *nicate* (**communicor**, Liv.); **elucubro**, *to work out* (**elu-** ; **frutico**, *to shoot out branches* (**fruticor**, Cic.); **luxurio**, ; **murmuro**, *to murmur* (**commurmuror**, Cic.); **opsŏno**, **psonor**, Ter.); **velifico**, *to set sail* (**velificor**, Cic., *to work*

the second conjugation the following deponents vary l formation:—

Fateor, *to confess*, **fassus sum. Confiteor, confessus sum**, &c. (**Diffiteor**, *to deny*, without part. perf.)

Reor, *to think*, **rătus sum**, without part. pres.

Medeor, *to heal*, without part. perf.

Misereor, *to have pity on*, has, in most cases, the regular perfect **miserĭtus sum**, more rarely **misertus sum**. (Of **miseretur** as an impersonal, see § **166**, *b*.)

Tueor, *to protect* (look at), (**tuĭtus sum**). Part. fut. **tuiturus**. Instead of the unused perfect, we find **tutatus sum**, from **tutor**. The perfect of **contueor, intueor, contuitus sum, intuitus sum**, is rare. (An archaic form is **tuor** (3d), whence the adjective **tūtus**.)

Obs. The regular deponents of the second conjugation are: **liceor**, *to bid for*; **mereor**, *to deserve* (also in the active form **mereo**);[1] **polliceor**, *to promise*; **vereor**, *to fear*.

§ 149. To the third conjugation belong the following deponents, which may be arranged like the actives according to their characteristic letters: (**fungor** is declined like the passive of **cingo**, **patior** like that of **qvatio, qveror, qvestus**, like that of **gero, gestum**, &c.)

Fruor, *to enjoy*, **fruitus** and **fructus sum** (both rare); part. fut. **fruiturus**.

Fungor, *to perform*, **functus sum**.

Grădior, *to step, go*, **gressus sum. Aggrĕdior, aggressus sum**, &c.

Lābor, *to slide, fall*, **lapsus sum. Collābor**, &c.

Liqvor, *to melt* (intrans.), *to flow away*, without part. perf.

Lŏqvor, *to speak*, **locutus sum. Allŏqvor.**

Mŏrior, *to die*, **mortuus sum**. Part. fut. **moriturus. Emŏrior.**

Nītor, *to lean, exert one's self*, **nixus** or **nisus sum. Adnītor.** (**Ennītor**, *to bring forth young*, **enixa est**.)

Pătior, *to suffer*, **passus sum. Perpĕtior.**

(From **plecto**, *to plait, to twist*, § **139**.) **Amplector, complector**, *to embrace*, **amplexus sum, complexus sum.**

Qvĕror, *to complain*, **qvestus sum. Conqvĕror.**

Ringor, *to show one's teeth*, without part. perf.

Sĕqvor, *to follow*, **secūtus sum. Consĕqvor.**

Utor, *to use*, **usus sum. Abūtor.**

(**Verto, revertor**, &c., see § **139**.)

---

[1] **Mereo** is chiefly used of what is gained by trading and of military service; **merere stipendia, m. eqvo**; on the other hand, we generally have **bene, male mereri**; in the perf., also in this signification, chiefly **merui**; but in the participle **meritus** (**bene meritus**).

lowing in scor (see § 141): —

us sum. **Adipiscor, adeptus sum,** is more
ptus sum.)
ry, **defessus sum.** (From **fatisco,** § 142.)
(intrans.), **experrectus sum.** Obsolete par-

(from the subst. ira), without perf. **Iratus**
I am angry. (*I grew angry,* is expressed by
rom **succenseo** or **suscenseo.**)
cor, *to devise,* **commentus sum. Remin-**
part. perf.
nctus and nactus sum.
tus sum. Part. fut. nasciturus. **Enascor.**
cognatus, prognatus, from a form gnas-

olitus sum.
cement, **pactus sum. Compaciscor** or **com-**
compectus sum. Pepigi, from the stem
ed for the perfect.
ofectus sum.
us sum.
art. perf.

onjugation the following deponents vary

ensus sum. See **sentio,** § 144.
nce, **expertus sum.** (Compare **comperio,**

sus sum.
, **orsus sum.**
ppertus (opperītus) sum.
. Part. fut. **oriturus.** (The gerundive **ori-**
s, *descended.*)

dicative, the form of the third conjugation is
ur; in the imperf. subj., both **orīrer** (4th)
dorior, adorīris, adorītur, are in use.)

onents of the fourth conjugation are: **blan-**
present; **mentior,** *to lie;* **molior,** *to move,*
de (rarely **partio**; but **dispertio, impertio**
than **dispertior, impertior**); **potior,** *to ob-*
; **punior,** *to punish* (in Cicero, elsewhere we

Obs. 3. From **potior**, the poets, and some prose-writers, occasionally use, in the present indicative, **potĭtur, potĭmur**; and, in the imperf. subj., **potĕrer**, &c., after the third conjugation.

§ 152. Those deponents, of which the active form is in use, sometimes receive a passive signification: as, **comitor**, *I am accompanied*; **fabricantur**, *they are made*; **populari**, *to be laid waste*, — but particularly the part. perf.: e.g. **comitatus** (in all writers), **elucubratus, fabricatus, populatus, meritus.**

§ 153. A few rare instances are met with of other deponents in a passive signification: e.g. in Cicero, **adūlor, aspernor, arbitror, dignor, criminor**; in Sallust, **ulciscor.** Of some deponents, the participle perfect only is used, by good writers, in a passive signification also; **abominatus, adeptus, auspicatus, amplexus, complexus, commentus, commentatus, confessus, despicatus, detestatus, ebiandītus, mentītus, expertus** (**inexpertus**), **exsecratus, interpretatus, ludificatus, meditatus** (**praemeditatus**), **mensus** (**dimensus**), **metatus** (**dimetatus**), **moderatus, opinatus** (**necopinatus**), **pactus, partītus, perfunctus, periclitatus, stipulatus, testatus, ultus** (**inultus**, *unavenged*), with some others in the poets, and second-rate writers.[1]

CHAPTER XXII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (VERBA ANOMALA).

§ 154. Those verbs are termed irregular, which vary from the usual form, not only in the formation of the perfect and supine, but also in the endings of the tenses, and the mode in which they are combined with the stem. An example of one such verb, **sum**, has already been adduced. The others are now given.

Possum, *to be able*, is inflected in the following manner: —

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
possum	**possim**
pŏtes	**possis**
pŏtest	**possit**
possĭmus	**possīmus**
potestis	**possītis**
possunt	**possint**

[1] In the fut. imperat. we sometimes meet with **utĭto, tuento**, &c., for **utĭtor, tuentor.**

IMPERFECT.

s, at	possem, es, et
, atis, ant	possēmus, etis, ent

PERFECT.

it	potuerim, is, it
istis, ĕrunt	potuerĭmus, ĭtis, int

PLUPERFECT.

as, at	potuissem, es, et
s, atis, ant	potuissemus, etis, ent

FUTURE.

it	Wanting.
ĭtis, unt	

FUTURE PERFECT.

, it	potuerim, is, it
s, ĭtis, int	potuerĭmus, ĭtis, int

INFINITIVE.

PERF. potuisse. FUT. Wanting.

wanting. The participle present **potens** is only e, *powerful.*

compounded of **potis** (or properly **pot**) and **sum** um). Anciently and by the poets it was expressed nt (**potis** being invariable in gender and number) ossunt: in common language also simply **pote** for m, **possis, possit**, there was also an obsolete form s); **potesse** for **posse.**

carry, after the third conjugation, borrows its tŭli, lātum, from other stems. In some of the the present, the connecting vowel between the omitted, in the manner following:—

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

	feror, ferris, fertur
ferunt	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

ferrem, ferres, ferret	**ferrer, ferrēris, ferretur**
ferremus, ferretis, ferrent	**ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur**

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	**fer, ferte**	**ferre, ferimini**
FUTURE.	2, 3 **ferto**	2, 3 **fertor**
	fertote, ferunto	3 **feruntor**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	**ferre**	**ferri**

The remainder is regular (imp. ind. act. **ferebam**, pass. **ferebar**; plup. **tuleram, tulissem**; fut. perf. **tulero**, from **tuli**, &c.). In the same way are declined the compounds (in which the prepositions before **fero, tuli, latum**, are modified according to § 173): e.g. **affĕro, attŭli, allātum**; **offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum**. **Aufero**, from **ab-fero**, has **abs-tuli, ablatum**; **refero, rettuli (retuli), relatum**. **Suffero**, *to carry, bear*, has rarely **sustuli** in the perfect: instead of this **sustinui** is employed; and **sustuli, sublatum**, are used for the perfect and supine of **tollo**, *to lift up* (§ 134). **Differo**, *to put off, spread out*, has **distuli, dilatum**; but in the intransitive signification, *to differ*, it has neither perfect nor supine.

§ 156. The verb **ĕdo**, *to eat*, **ēdi, ēsum**, of the third conjugation (§ 133), in addition to the regular inflection, has also shorter forms in the present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and present infinitive, agreeing exactly in form with those parts of the verb **sum** which begin with **es**; viz.:—

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

ĕdo, edis, edit
es, est
edimus, editis, edunt
estis

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

ederem, ederes, ederet
essem, esses, esset
ederemus, ederetis, ederent
essemus, essetis, essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	**ede,**	**edite**
	es,	**este**
FUTURE.	**edito,**	**editote**
	esto,	**estote**
		edunto

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	**edere**
	esse

s found for **editur**, and **essetur** for **ederetur**.[1]
s are also used in the compounds; e.g. **comes**, **omedis**, **comedit**, **comedere**, from **comĕdo**.

nōlo, *I will not* (from **ne volo**); **mālo**, *I* **e**, i.e. **magis**, **volo**),—are declined as fol-

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

nolo	**malo**
non vis	**mavis**
non vult	**mavult**
nolŭmus	**malŭmus**
non vultis	**mavultis**
nolunt	**malunt**

IMPERFECT.

nolebam	**malebam**
nolebas, &c.	**malebas**, &c.

PERFECT.

nolui	**malui**

PLUPERFECT.

nolueram	**malueram**

FUTURE.

(**nolam**, unused)	(**malam**, unused)
noles, &c.	**males**, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

noluero	**maluero**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

nolim	**malim**
nolīs	**malīs**
nolit	**malit**
nolīmus	**malīmus**
nolītis	**malītis**
nolint	**malint**

---

on produced by the omission of the connecting vowel and a
e in these is pronounced as long by nature.

IMPERFECT.

vellem	**nollem**	**mallem**
velles, &c.	**nolles, &c.**	**malles, &c.**

PERFECT.

voluerim	**noluerim**	**maluerim**

PLUPERFECT.

voluissem	**noluissem**	**maluissem**

FUTURE PERFECT.

voluerim	**noluerim**	**maluerim**

IMPERATIVE.

Wanting.	PRES. SING. **noli**; PLUR. **nolite**		Wanting.
	FUT. SING. 2, 3 **nolito**; PLUR. 2 **nolitote**		
		3 **nolunto**	

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	**velle**	**nolle**	**malle**
PERFECT.	**voluisse**	**noluisse**	**maluisse**

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.	**volens**	**nolens**	Wanting.

OBS. The following are obsolete forms: **nevis, nevult, nevelle,** for **non vis, non vult, nolle**; **mavolo, mavelim, mavellem,** for **malo, malim, mallem.** From **si vis, si vultis,** annexed to a command or request (*pray, if you please*), originated in familiar language, and the style intended to imitate it, the expressions **sis, sultis**: **Vide, sis, ne qvo abeas** (Ter.) **Refer animum sis ad veritatem** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 16). **Facite, sultis, nitidae ut aedes meae sint** (Plaut.).

§ 158. The verb **eo,** *to go,* **īvi, itum,** of the fourth conjugation, is thus inflected in the present and the forms derived from it:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
eo, is, it	**eam, eas, eat**
imus, itis, eunt	**eāmus, eātis, eant**
IMPERFECT.	
ibam, ibas, ibat	**irem, ires, iret**
ibamus, ibatis, ibant	**iremus, iretis, irent**
FUTURE.	
ibo, ibis, ibit	**iturus, a, um, sim, &c.**
ibimus, ibitis, ibunt	

IMPERATIVE.

SING. 1! PLUR. **īte!**
ING. 2 and 3 **īto**; PLUR. 2 **ītote**
3 **euntō**

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **īre**

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. **iens, euntem, euntis, &c.**
GERUND. **eundum.**

ast is regularly formed from **īvī** (**īveram** or **īeram, īvisse,** and **ītum** (**ītūrus, īturus esse**). **Eo** being an intransitive passive can only be formed in the third person (impersonally, .); viz., **ītur, ībatur, ībitur, ītum est,** &c., **eātur, īretur.**

manner are inflected the compounds, which usually have **ii,** n the perfect; e.g. **abii, redii** (§ 113, *b*, *Obs.* 1). Some of **eo, ineo, praetereo**) take a transitive signification, and these complete passive, thus: Ind. pres. **adeor, adīris, adītur, adīmini, adeuntur**; imperf. **adībar,** &c.; fut. **adībor,** &c.: Subj. pres. **adear,** &c.; imperf. **adīrer,** &c.; Imperat. re, fut. **adītor,** plur. **adeuntor**: Infin. pres. **adīrī**; part. perf. gerundive, **adeundus, a, um.**

so comes also **vēneo** (**venum eo**), *to be put up for sale, be* h is used as the passive of **vendo** (§ **133**), and inflected like compounds. (In the imperf. indic. sometimes **veniebam.**)

o, *to go about*, is the only compound which is regularly in- cording to the fourth conjugation; e.g. participle present, **ambientem, ambientis.** (The imperfect is sometimes **ambi-**

Qveo, *to be able;* and **neqveo**, — *to be unable*, are inflected ut without imperative, future participle, or gerund (**queo, ; queunt, queam,** &c.; **quibam, quirem, quivi, quive- quierim, quivisse,** or **quisse,** &c.).

. The part. pres. also scarcely occurs in ordinary language; eam, **qviveram, qvibo, neqvibo,** are obsolete and rare forms.

qvit, in the pres. indic., are used only with **non** (**non qvis qvit** for **neqvis** and **neqvit**) ; in general **qveo** is used only in propositions, and far more rarely than **possum.**

. In the older style a passive form was sometimes used where ve passive was subjoined: **forma nosci non qvita est** (Ter.); pass.) **neqvitur** (Sall.). Compare **coeptus sum,** § **161.**

---

egularity in **eo** consists in the radical vowel **i** being changed into **e** before **a, o,** in its having in the imperf. and fut. indic. the form in **bam** (for **ebam**) and **bo** b

§ 160. **Fio**, *to become, be done*, answers as a passive to the verb **facio** (§ **143**), from which it borrows the perf. part., the gerundive, and the compound tenses.

The remainder varies only slightly from the regular inflection: —

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
fio, fis, fit	**fiam, fias, fiat**
(fimus, fitis), fiunt	**fiamus, fiatis, fiant**
IMPERFECT.	
fiebam, fiebas, &c.	**fĭĕrem, fieres, &c.**
FUTURE.	
fiam, fies, &c.	Wanting.

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
PRES. SING. **fi**; PLUR. **fite**	PRES. **fĭĕri**

(Factus sum, eram, ero, sim, essem, factum esse, factum iri.)

OBS. 1. For the compounds, see under **facio**. **Confieri** has only **confit, confiat, confieret** (3 pers.); **defieri**, *to be wanting*, only **defit, defiunt, defiat.**

OBS. 2. In this verb (contrary to the general rule), the vowel **i** is long before another vowel, except in **fieri, fierem.**

CHAPTER XXIII.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 161. Several verbs are not completely inflected in all the forms of which their signification would allow. Those which want the perfect or supine have been already specified. Some of the irregular verbs are at the same time defective. This chapter contains those verbs especially which want the present, or are only used in a very few isolated forms.

The verbs **coepi**, *I began;* **memini**, *I remember* (**commemini**); and **ōdi**, *I hate*, — are not used in the present, and the tenses derived from it. The perfect of **memini** and **odi** has the signification of a present, the pluperfect that of an imperfect, and the future perfect that of a future. These verbs are thus inflected: —

	INDICATIVE.		
PERF.	**coepi, coepisti, &c.**	**memini, &c.**	**odi, &c.**
PLUP.	**coeperam**	**memineram**	**oderam**
FUT. PERF.	**coepero**	**meminero**	**odero**

	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PERF.	**coeperim**	**meminerim**	**oderim**
PLUP.	**coepissem**	**meminissem**	**odissem**
FUT. PERF.	(same as perf.)		

	IMPERATIVE.	
Wanting.	FUT. SING. 2 **memento**	Wanting.
	PLUR. 2 **mementote**	

	INFINITIVE.	
PERF. **coepisse**	**meminisse**	**odisse**

	PARTICIPLE.	
PERF. PASS. **coeptus**	Wanting	(**osus**, obsolete)
FUT. ACT. **coepturus**	——	**osurus.**

OBS. From **osus**, which has an active signification, we find the compounds, **exosus, perosus**, *hating*.

Coepi is found also in the passive, **coeptus sum**, which is joined to a passive infinitive: e.g. **urbs aedificari coepta est**; but we may also say **aedificari coepit.** (In the same way also **desitus est** is used, from **desino**, *to cease* (§ **136**): e.g. **Veteres orationes legi sunt desitae**, Cic.; but also **desii**: e.g. **bellum jam timeri desierat**, Liv.)

OBS. **Incĭpio** (**incēpi, inceptum**, from **capio**) serves for a present of **coepi**, and more rarely **occĭpio** (**occepi, occeptum**). **Incipio facere, coepi facere** (less frequently **incepi**[1]).

§ 162. *a.* **Ajo**, *to say, say yes*, is used in the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ajo, aïs, aït	— **ajas, ajat**
— — **ajunt**	— — **ajant**
IMPERFECT.	
ajebam, ajebas, &c.	
(In Plautus and Terence, **aibam.**)	

[1] **Coepi** with the accusative of a substantive is rare, **incipio** common (**incipere oppugnationem**; **proelium incipitur**, Sall. Jug 74); but we find in the passive **ludi coepti** articiple (**opus coeptum**) is not uncommon.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. **ajens** (adj., *affirmative*)

OBS. The Imperative **aï** is quite obsolete.

b. **Inqvam**, *I say*, is used in the following forms: —

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.
inqvam, inqvis, inqvit	— —	**inqviebat**
inqvĭmus, inqvĭtis, inqviunt		

PERFECT.	FUTURE.
— **inqvisti, inqvit**	**inqvies, inqviet**

IMPERATIVE (rare).

PRES. SING. **inqve** FUT. SING. 2 **inqvĭto**

OBS. This verb is used only when a person is introduced, speaking in his own words, and is inserted after one or more words of the speech cited; e.g. **Tum ille, Nego, inqvit, verum esse**, *I deny, said he, that it is true.* **Potestne, inqvit Epicurus, qvicqvam esse melius? Inqvam** is also used, in narrations, as a perfect.

c. **Infit**, *he begins*, is used only in the third person of the present indicative, either alone, signifying, *begins to speak*, or with an infinitive, usually one which implies speaking; e.g. **laudare, percontari infit.** (Archaic and poetical. Perhaps from **fari.**)

§ 163. **Fari**, *to speak* (a deponent of the first conjugation), with its compounds (**affari, effari, praefari, profari**), is used in the following forms (but those within brackets are found only in the compounds): —

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
— — **fatur**	Wanting.
(famur, famini)	
IMPERFECT.	
(fabar)	**(farer, &c.)**
PERFECT.	
fatus sum, &c.	**fatus sim, &c.**
PLUPERFECT.	
fatus eram, &c.	**fatus essem, &c.**
FUTURE.	
fabor (faberis), fabitur	Wanting.

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	SUPINE (second).
PRES. SING. fare	PRES. fari	fatu

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. fantem, fantis, &c., without nominative.
PERFECT. fatus, a, um.
GERUND. fandi, fando.
GERUNDIVE. fandus, a, um (e.g. fanda atqve nefanda).

OBS. The simple verb fari is antiquated, and used chiefly by the poets.

§ 164. **Salveo**, *to be safe, uninjured*, is used only in salutations; in the imperative, **salve**, *hail!* plur. **salvete** (fut. sing. **salveto**); in the infinitive, in the construction **salvere (te) jubeo**, *I bid you welcome;* and in the fut. indic. **salvebis** (in written salutations). In the same signification we find the imperative **ave (have)**, *hail! good day!* plur. **avete**, fut. sing. **aveto**; rarely **avere jubeo**. (**Aveo** means, *I am inclined, have a desire;* § 128, *b.*)

An old imperative is **apăge** (ἄπαγε = **abige**), *away with!* **apage te**, *pack yourself off! away with you!* (Also simply **apage**, *away!*)

As an imperative, we find also the very unusual form, **cĕdŏ**, *give me!* (**cedo librum**), *out with it! tell me!* (**cedo, qvid faciam**). In the plural (obsolete), **cette**.

OBS. Besides the verbs here given, there are others, of which one or two forms are not found, because there was but seldom occasion for their use, — e.g. **solebo** and **solens**, from **soleo**, — and their sound was, perhaps, also disagreeable, as in **dor, der, deris**, from **do**. From the verb **ovo**, *to rejoice* (used especially of a victorious procession, less important than a triumph), we commonly find only the participle **ovans**, — in the poets also **ovat (ovet, ovaret)**.

CHAPTER XXIV.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 165. Those verbs are called impersonal which are used only in the third person singular, and have usually no reference to a subject in the nominative.

OBS. Besides those verbs which are exclusively impersonal, some, which are otherwise personal, are used impersonally in certain significations: e.g. **accidit**, *it happens*, from **accido**. See the Syntax,

§ 166. The following verbs are impersonal:—

a. Those which indicate the weather: e.g. **ningit**, *it snows*; *rains*; **grandinat**, *it hails*; also, the two inchoatives, **lucesc cescit**), *it grows light, the day dawns*; and **vesperascit** (**adv cit**), *the evening comes on.*

b. The following verbs of the second conjugation:—

Libet, *it pleases*, **libuit** and **libitum est** (half-deponent **libet.**

Licet, *it is permitted*, **licuit** and **licitum est.**

Miseret (**me**), (*I*) *pity*, without perf.; also, **miseretur, m est.**

Obs. **Misereor** is also used personally. **Miseror, miserari,** signifies, *to compassionate* (in words).

Oportet, *it is right, necessary*; **oportuit.**

Piget, *it vexes*; **piguit** and **pigitum est.**

Poenitet (**me**), (*I*) *repent*; **poenituit.**

Pudet, *it causes shame* (**p. me**, *I am ashamed*); **puduit a tum est.**

Taedet, *it is irksome, causes vexation* (**taedet me**, *I am wea* without a perfect; instead of which the compound, **pertaesu** made use of.

Obs. The verbs **decet**, *it becomes, befits*, **decuit**, and **dedĕ** *unbecoming*, are, properly speaking, not impersonal, because refer to a definite subject and occur in the plural (**omnis eu decet, parva parvum decent**); but yet they are used only in person, inasmuch as they can be predicated neither of the spe the person addressed.

c. **Rĕfert**, *it is of importance*; **rĕtulit** (from **fero**; disti from **rĕfero** by the quantity).

§ 167. The impersonal verbs (and those which are so used impersonally) are inflected regularly in the several t conformity with the present and perfect, but their significat not allow them to have an imperative, a supine, or a p (except that in some verbs the perf. part. pass. neuter is c with **est**, &c.). **Oportet** has therefore, in the indicative, **oportebat, oportuit, oportuerat, oportebit, oportuerit**; in junctive, **oporteat, oporteret, oportuerit, oportuisset, opo** in the infinitive, **oportere, oportuisse.** But **libet, licet, p pudet**, have participles somewhat varied in their mean application.

with pleasure; **licens** (adj.), *free* (*unbridled*);
um est, liciturum esse (imperat. **liceto**).
(**pudibundus**, *bashful*); **poenitens** (rare),
to be repented of; **pudendus**, *what must cause*
nd (as from personal verbs), **ad poenitendum**,

vations on the Inflection of the Verbs.

oid mistakes, the beginner must take par-
verbs, the meaning and inflection of which
e alike in the first person of the present

Conj. (in o);	**aggĕro**, *to bring to*, 3 (from **gero**).
	appello, *to land*, 3 (**pello**).
l, 1;	**compello**, *to drive together*, 3 (**pello**).
l (**ligo**);	**collĭgo**, *to collect*, 3 (**lego**).
rify, 1;	**consterno**, *to cover over*, 3 (**sterno**).
	effĕro, *to carry out*, 3 (**fero**).
	fundo, *to pour*, 3.
, 1;	**mando**, *to chew*, 3.
	obsero, *to sow*, 3.
tum, 4;	**salio**, *to salt*, **salivi**, **salitum**, 4.
	volo, *to wish;* irreg.

shed by a difference in the quantity of the

of, 3;	**cōlo**, *to strain*, 1.
	dīco, *to say*, 3.
praedĭco,	**indīco**, **praedīco**.
	edŭco, *to lead out*, 3 (**duco**).
	lēgo, *to send as a deputy, bequeath*, 1.
ion;	**allēgo**, *to send a deputy, to cite as proof.*
	relēgo, *to banish.*

the second and third conjugations, have, as is
d XIX., the same form in the perfect or supine
m them; e.g. **victurus**, from **vinco** and from
l, from **oblĭno**; **oblītus**, *one who has forgotten*,

CHAPTER XXV.

ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

§ 169. Adverbs have no inflection except comparison. Generally speaking only those adverbs can be compared which are derived from adjectives and participles which are themselves compared, with the terminations **e** (**o**) or **ter** (see § **198**). The comparative of the adverb is then the same with that of the adjective in the nom. neut., and the superlative of the adverb is formed like that of the adjective, but with the ending **e** instead of **us**; e.g.: —

docte (doctus), doctius, doctissime; aegre (aeger), aegrius, aegerrime; fortiter (fortis), fortius, fortissime; acriter (acer), **acrius, acerrime; audacter (audax), audacius, audacissime; amanter (amans), amantius, amantissime; facile (facilis), facilius, facillime.**

Obs. **Tuto** makes in the sup. **tutissimo**; and **merito, meritissimo,** *quite according to one's deserts.*

§ 170. If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so in the same way; e.g.: —

bene (bonus), melius, optime; male (malus), pejus, pessime; multum (the neuter of the adjective, used as an adverb), **plus, plurimum** (the same); **parum,** *little, too little* **(parvus), minus, minime (minimum,** in expressing a measurement; **minimum distat, minimum invidet,** Hor.); **deterius (deterior), deterrime; ocius (ocior), ocissime; potius (potior), potissimum; prius** (prior), **primum** and **primo** (properly the acc. and abl. neuter); **nove (novus), novissime.**

The following should be particularly noticed: **magis** (compar. *more*), **maxime,** which has no positive, although **magnus,** from which it is derived, is compared throughout; and **uberius, uberrime,** from uber. **Valde,** *very strongly* (for **valĭde,** from **validus**), has **validius** (rarely in the poets, **valdius**), **validissime.**

Obs. The adverbs which denote a mutual relation of place, and from which adjectives are formed in the comparative and superlative (§ **66**), have a corresponding comparison as adverbs: **prope, propius, proxime; intra, interius, intime; ultra, extra, post,** — **ulterius, exterius, posterius,** — **ultimum** or **ultimo,** &c. (particularly **postremum** and **postremo**); **supra, superius, summe** (*in the highest degree*), **summum** (*at the highest*), **supremum,** *at last, for the last*

ı and **infra** have only **citerius, inferius,** without a

ır adverbs, only the following are compared:—

ıtus, diutissime.
nuperrime, without a comparative.
ıaepius, saepissime.
'e, *ill;* **sēcius** (non, **nihilo sēcius,** *no less, nevertheless*

ɔori), *betimes;* **temperius.**

.tin language has the following Prepositions, to **n** between substantives:—

Those constructed with the Accusative.

e by, **ad manum**).
rersum, *against.* (Rarely **exadversus,** *opposite,*

h.
round, round about. (**Circum amicos, urbes,** *nds, in the towns, in the islands round about.*)
ls, about (of time; **circiter horam octavam**).
e, against (in a hostile sense).
is side of.
generally of a friendly way of feeling or acting).
f.
elow.
among.
within.

ɔculos), *on account of.*
the hands or power of any one.

ind.
, *except.* (**Praeter ceteros,** *before the others.*)

n account of.
ɔper side of, above.
t to, according to.
ıer side of.
er side of, beyond.

II. *Those which are constructed with the Ablative.*

Ab, a, *from.* (**Ab** is always used before vowels, and often before consonants, **a** only before consonants; before **te, abs** is also used, **abs te.**[1])

Absqve, *without* (archaic; **absqve te si esset,** *if it were not for you*).

Coram, *before, in presence of.*

Cum, *with.*

Obs. **Cum** is put after and joined to the personal, reflective, and relative pronouns; **mecum, nobiscum, secum, qvocum, qvacum, qvibuscum.** It may, however, be prefixed to the relative and interrogative pronouns (especially in the poets); e.g. **cum qvo, cum qvibus.** (**Mecum et cum P. Scipione.**)

De, *of, from* (*down from*), *concerning.*

Ex, e, *out of.* (**Ex,** before vowels and consonants, **e** only before consonants.)

Prae, *before, in comparison with, on account of.* (**Prae lacrimis,** *for tears;* **prae me beatus,** *in comparison with me.*)

Pro, *before, for.*

Sine, *without.*

Tenus, *up to* (is put after its case: **pectore tenus**).

Obs. **Tenus** sometimes takes the genitive; e.g. **crurum tenus** (Virg.).

III. *Those constructed with the Accusative or Ablative.*

In, *in, on* (abl.); but acc. in answer to the question *whither.*
Sub, *under;* abl. in answer to the question *where.*
Subter, *beneath, on the under side of,* usually the acc.
Super, *concerning* (abl.); *above, on the upper side of* (acc.).

On the construction of these four prepositions, further particulars will be given in the Syntax (§ **230**).

Obs. 1. For the particular ways of employing the remaining prepositions, and their application in certain idioms and phrases, the dictionary must be consulted. The idiom of the Latins, in consequence of a different way of conceiving the relations of things, is very often different from our own; e.g. when it is said in Latin, **initium facere ab aliqva re,** and not **cum.** (Hence, also, we find, **Unde initium faciam?**)

Obs. 2. Some prepositions are also used as adverbs, the name of the person or thing referred to not being specified: viz., **coram** (*personally,*

---

[1] In the use of **ab** and **ex** before consonants writers vary from each other, and are not always even consistent with themselves.

face to face); **ante** (*before, previously*, **antea**); **circa, circiter, contra, extra, infra, intra, juxta, pone, post** (*behind, afterwards*, **postea**), **prope** (*near*), **propter** (*in the neighborhood*), **supra, ultra, subter, super.** (In antiquated style, **i prae**! *go first!* **ire adversum**, *to go to meet.*) (**Ad** is used as an adverb, with numerals, in the signification, *about*, without any influence on the case; e.g. **ad duo milia et qvingenti**, Liv. IV. 59. **Praeter** is sometimes used in the signification, *except*, with the same oblique case which precedes; e.g. **Caeterae multitudini diem statuit praeter rerum capitalium damnatis**, Sall. Cat. 36.) Also, **Nullae litterae praeter quae**, *except those which*, Cic. = **praeter eas quae.**

Obs. 3. On the other hand, some adverbs are occasionally used as prepositions; viz., with the ablative, **palam**, *publicly, in presence of* (**populo**); **procul**, *far from* (**procul mari**, most generally **procul a mari**); **simul**, *together with* (**simul his**, poet. for **simul cum his**); with the accusative, **usqve** (**usqve pedes**, but rarely, and only in late writers; otherwise, **usqve ad pedes**); with the ablative or accusative, **clam**, *without the knowledge of* (**clam patrem, clam vobis**).

Obs. 4. **Prope** is often combined with **ab, prope ab urbe. Propius** and **proxime**, from **prope**, are also used as prepositions with the accusative; **propius urbem, proxime urbem** (also **propius, proxime ab urbe**). Very rarely a dative is put after **propius** and **proxime. Versus** is subjoined to **ad** and **in**: e.g. **ad Oceanum versus**, *toward the Ocean*; **in Italiam versus**, *toward Italy*. It is used in the same way with the acc. of names of cities, in signifying motion (§ **232**); e.g. **Romam versus ire**, *towards Rome.*

Obs. 5. **Ergo**, *for the sake of*, is used (in antiquated style) as a preposition with the genitive, and is put after its case; as, **victoriae ergo.**

§ 173. In composition with verbs, and with other words beginning with consonants, some prepositions undergo a modification in the final consonant, particularly by its assimilation with the consonant which follows (according to § **10**). **Cum** (**con**) is also modified before vowels.

Ab. **Abscedo, abscondo** (**cedo, condo**); **aufero, aufugio** (**fero, fugio**, but **afui, afore**, or **abfui**); **amoveo** (**moveo**); **asporto** (**porto**); **abstineo** (**teneo**); **avello.** In the other compounds, **ab** remains unchanged; as, **abdo, abluo, abnĕgo, abrado, absumo.**

Ad. **D** is changed into the following consonant: **accedo, affero, aggero, allino, annŏto, appareo, acqviro, arrŏgo, assumo, aspicio** (not **asspicio**; see § **10**), **attingo**; but **d** generally stands before **m**

(**admiror**), and always before **j** and **v** (**adjaceo, adveho**). Some, however, wrote **adcedo, adfero,** &c., and particularly **adspicio.**

Ex. **Effero** (**fero,** archaic, **ecfero**); **existo** (also written **exsisto**), **exspecto** and **expecto** as pronounced, see § **10**). (**Edo, egero, eluo, emoveo, enăto, erigo, eveho**; but **excedo, expedio, exqviro, extendo.**)

In. **Imbibo, immergo, importo,** before **b, m, p**; **illino, irrēpo**; before other consonants it remains unchanged. (But we find **inbibo,** &c.) (**Indigeo, indipiscor,** from an older form, **indu.**)

Ob. **Occurro, offero, oggero, opperior**; before other consonants, unchanged. (Instances of irregularity are found in **obs-olesco, ostendo, o-mitto.**)

Sub. **Succurro, sufficio, suggero, summitto, supprimo, surripio** (but **subrideo,** *to smile*; **subrusticus,** *somewhat clownish*); before other consonants, unchanged. (The following are formed irregularly: **suscipio, sus-cĭto, sus-pendo, sus-tineo, sus-tuli,** from **subs,** with **su-spicio** and **sus-censeo** or **succenseo.**)

Trans. Usually, **trāduco, trajicio, trano,** sometimes **tramitto** (always **trado** and **traduco,** not in their literal signification); with these exceptions, it is unaltered. (**Transcribo.**)

Cum, in compounds, is changed, before consonants, to **con,** when the **n** is varied, as in **in** (**comburo, committo, comprehendo, colligo, corripio**). But some wrote also **conburo,** &c. Before vowels and **h,** it is changed to **co**; **coalesco, coëmo, coire, coorior, cohaereo** (**coicio,** archaic for **conjicio**). (But **comedo. Cognosco, cognatus.**)

Obs. 1. **Inter** is changed in **intelligo, per** in **pellicio** (**pelluceo** and **perluceo**), **ante** in **anticipo** and **antisto.**

Obs. 2. Of the preposition **prō,** it is to be observed, that it is shortened in some few compounds; namely, in **profari, proficiscor** (but **prōficio**), **profiteor, profugio, profugus, profestus, pronepos**; in **procuro** and **propello,** the **pro** is sometimes short. (**Prŏfundus, prŏfanus.**) With these exceptions, it is always long; **prōduco, prōmitto,** &c. (In Greek words, the preposition **pro** is short, as in Greek, except in **prōlogus, prōpino.**) We may also notice **prod-eo, prodesse, prodigo** (**ago**), **prodambulo**; but **proavus, prohibeo.** (Otherwise, **pro** is not used before vowels.)

Obs. 3. For **circumeo,** from **circum** and **eo,** we sometimes find **circueo,** especially in the part. perf. **circuitus,** whence the substantive **circuitus.**

THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

CHAPTER I.

IN GENERAL. DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

is the name by which we distinguish
expressions of a language, which have
ntation nor are combined with any other
ional endings, or being used in a certain
e roots become *primitive words* or *stems*
o, **dux** (**duc-s**). When a verb is imme-
oot (as **duco**), it is usual to consider and

ts which express the definite idea of an ob-
ch serve only to give some indication or
pronominal words have taken their rise;
oots which denote ideas, most express an
means of inflectional endings are immedi-
) that the root is at the same time the stem,
ched (§ **26**). But various substantives are,
from the root by the simple addition of the
many cases, the root is not found as a
ve or adjective; e.g. **sol, frons, laus, pro-**
1 are derived **frondēre, laudare, probare,**

, in becoming a verb, is changed, and aug-
so that the root and the stem of the verb
irely alike: e.g. **frango** (stem of the pres-
e the perfect **fregi**). See § **118.**
erbs of the second conjugation, the **e** does
oot, except in those which have **evi** in the
ion-i-tum, without **e.**) But to avoid pro-
st convenient to speak here of the **e** as if it

s it is contained in the primitive words
d derivative endings (*suffixes*, from **suf-**
by which derivative words are formed.
's may be again derived, so that one and

the same word may be both a derivative itself, and a primitive in relation to others. From the root in **amo** (**ama**) comes **amabilis**, and from that **amabilitas**; from the root in **probus** comes the verb **probo**, from that **probabilis**, and from this **probabilitas**.

Obs. Properly speaking, the derivative ending forms only the stem of the new word, which does not become an actual word till it receives the inflectional ending by which the derivative ending is itself occasionally varied. From **prob** in **probus** is first formed **proba** (the stem of the verb), which, with the ending of the first person present, becomes **probo**. From **probabil** is formed **probabilitat**, which, with the nominative ending, becomes **probabilitas**. For the sake of convenience, the derivative endings are here named with the first inflectional ending (especially since a particular derivation requires at the same time a particular way of declension); in substantives, therefore, the nominative; in adjectives, the nominative masculine; in verbs, the first person of the present indicative.

b. Derivative endings serve to distribute and classify the different conceptions (e.g. an action, a person, a quality) which contain the signification of the primitive, so that the words formed with one and the same derivative ending belong to the same class, and denote ideas which are conceived in the same way; e.g. words in **tas** are substantives, which denote a property. The most important of these kinds of derivation are here adduced according to the parts of speech to which the derivatives belong.

Obs. 1. There are many derived Latin words, the root or primitive of which cannot be found; others are derived according to forms which are unusual, or can no longer be recognized; some derivative endings (especially of substantives) are used only in a very few words, or chiefly in those the primitive of which is unknown, so that the meaning of the endings cannot be ascertained. In the case also of those endings, the force of which is more evident, the signification is sometimes very comprehensive, and rather undefined.

Obs. 2. There are, sometimes, several endings which have the same meaning and application: e.g. **tas** and **tudo** denote properties; in these cases, one ending is employed in some words, the other in others. Some derivative endings are rarely found in the older writers, but became common at a later period.

Obs. 3. The examining and ascertaining of the origin of words from their roots and primitives is called Etymology (*ἐτυμολογία*);[1] the primitive word is also called **etymum** (*ἔτυμον, the real*).

---

[1] It will be seen that the term is here employed in a more restricted sense than when applied to the first part of Grammar.

§ 176. *a.* The derivative endings are attached to the stem of the primitive, divested of the inflectional endings; e.g. from the substantive **miles**, gen. **milit-is**, are formed the verb **milit-are**, the substantive **milit-ia**, the adjective **milit-aris**. In substantives of the first and second (often also of the fourth declension), both **a** and **u** are dropped. When primitive verbs are varied in the stem of the present (§ **174**, *Obs.* 2), the derivation is formed from the unaltered root (which is shown in the inflection of the verb); e.g. from **frango** (**frag**) are derived the substantive **fragor**, and the adjective **fragilis**.

Obs. If the last syllable of the stem has a different sound in the inflection, according as it is open or close (e.g. **semen**, but **semin-is**; **colo**, but **cultus**), this is also shown in the derivation (**seminarium, colonia**, but **sementis, cultura**).

b. In verbs of the first and second conjugations, **a** and **e** are dropped before those derivative endings which begin with a vowel (**am-or, pall-or, opin-io**). **E** is also dropped before consonants (except in those verbs which have **evi** in the perfect).

Obs. In stems ending in **u**, **u** is changed into **uv**, before a vowel; e.g. **pluviae, colluvies** (but **ruina**).

c. When the stem ends in a consonant, and the derivative ending begins with a consonant, a short connecting vowel (commonly **ĭ**, more rarely **ŭ**) is frequently interposed. Sometimes no vowel is interposed, but a consonant rejected (e.g. **fulmen** from **fulg-eo**). This often takes place when the stem ends in **v**, in which case the preceding vowel is lengthened; e.g. **mōtus, mōbilis**, from **mŏveo, adjūmentum** from **adjŭvo**.

d. The final vowel of the verb-stems (**a, e, i, u**) is always long before the derivative ending (**velāmen, complēmentum; molīmen, volūmen**).

e. Sometimes the derivation is made not immediately from the stem of the verb, but from the supine, so that a new ending is affixed to its **t** or **s** (with the omission of **um**); e.g. **ama-t-or**.

Obs. The supine and participle are, themselves, formed like substantives and adjectives by derivation from the verb.

§ 177. Substantives are derived from verbs (**substantiva verbalia**) and from other substantives, or from adjectives (**subst. denominativa**).

Obs. From the proper derivative endings of the substantives, by which they are formed from known stems with a definite modification of their meaning, we must distinguish the final vowels **a** and **u** before the inflectional endings, by which the substantives acquire the open form of declension (first and second). These endings belong to a great number of substantives of which the roots are unknown; but it is only in a few instances that substantives from known roots are formed by these alone (as the personal names **scriba, advĕna, perfŭga,** from **scribo, advenio, perfugio, a** being, at other times, a feminine ending; **coqvus,** from **coqvo**); but they are found in combination with other derivative endings (**ia, ium,** &c.) Some few personal names are formed by simply adding the declension-endings (nom. **s**) to known roots or verb-stems (**dux, rex, pellex, praeses,** from **duco, rego, pellicio, praesideo**), as also some other substantives (**lex, lux, nex, vox, obices,** from **lego, luceo, neco, voco, obicio**).

Of the endings with which substantives are formed from verbs, the following are to be noticed:—

1. **or,** affixed to the stem of intransitive verbs (mostly of the first or second, never of the fourth conjugation), forms substantives, which denote the action or condition; **amor, error, clamor, favor, pallor, furor** (**amare, errare, clamare, favēre, pallēre, furĕre**).

Obs. Various substantives in **or** are not derived from any known verb; while, on the other hand, verbs are formed from them: e.g. **honor, labor** (**honos, labos**), — **honorare, laborare.**

2. **or,** affixed to the stem of the supine (**tor** or **sor**), denotes the (male) agent; **amator, adjūtor, monĭtor, fautor, victor, cursor, petītor, audītor, largītor.**

From many such substantives in **tor,** there are formed feminines in **trix**: e.g. **venatrix, victrix, fautrix, adjutrix;** more rarely in **strix** from those in **sor**: e.g. **tonstrix,** from **tonsor.** (**Expultrix,** from **expulsor,** ejecting the **s.**)

Obs. 1. Sometimes, personal names in **tor** (**ātor** or **ĭtor**) are formed also from substantives of the first or second declension; e.g. **viator, gladiator, funditor,** from **via, gladius, funda** (**janitor,** from **janua; vinĭtor,** from **vinea**).

Obs. 2. Masculine names of persons, in **o, ōnis,** derived from verbs, are of less frequent occurrence: e.g. **erro,** from **errare;** and **heluo,** from **heluari.**

§ 178. Further:—

3. **io** (**ion-is**), affixed to the stem of the supine (**tio, sio**), denotes the action of the verb from which it is derived; e.g. **administratio, tracta-**

tio, cautio, actio, accessio, divisio, largitio. (**Mentio**, from the unused **meniscor.**)

Obs. More rarely, **io** is affixed immediately to the stem of the verb; e.g. **opinio** (**opīnor**), **obsidio** (**obsideo**), **contagio** (**tango, tag**), **oblivio** (from the original stem in **obliviscor**). **Consortio, communio,** are formed, in the same way, from adjectives.

4. **us** (gen. **us**), affixed to the stem of the supine, also denotes the action of the verb; e.g. **visus, usus, auditus.**

Obs. 1. From some verbs, substantives are formed, both in **io** and in **us**; e.g. **contemptio** and **contemptus, concursio** and **concursus.** In some words, some writers prefer the one, others the other form (later authors more usually adopt the form in **us**), without any difference in the signification; in other words, there is some difference in the usage: e.g. **auditio**, *the act of hearing;* **auditus**, *the sense of hearing.* To signify *on, in consequence of, by* (this or that action), the second supine of many verbs (abl. in **u**) is made use of, without a perfect substantive being formed; e.g. **jussu, mandatu, rogatu** (compare § **55**, 4).

Obs. 2. In some of these words in **io** and **us**, the signification of an action is lost: e.g. **coenatio**, *a supper-room;* **regio**, *a district* (**rego**, *to govern*); **legio**, *a legion* (**lego**, *to choose*); **victus**, *a way of life, sustenance.*

5. Of the same signification as **io** and **us**, but somewhat rarer, is **ūra**, affixed to the stem of the supine; e.g. **conjectura, cultura, mercatura, sepultura, natura** (from **nascor**, different from **natio**); still more rare, is **ēla**, affixed to the stem of the verb: e.g. **qverēla** (**qveror**); or to that of the supine: e.g. **corruptela** (**corrumpo**). **Ium**, affixed to the stem of the verb, has nearly the same signification; e.g. **judicium, gaudium, odium, perfugium** (place of refuge), **vaticinium** (**vaticinor**).

Obs. From some few verbs, there are formed substantives in **īgo**, which denote an action or a condition arising out of the action; e.g. **orīgo** (**orior**), **vertīgo** (*turning, dizziness*), **tentīgo** (**tendo**), **prurīgo** (**prurio**). **Cupīdo, formīdo, libīdo,** from **cupio, formido, libet.**) **Ies** denotes rather a result produced; e.g. **congeries, effigies** (from **fingo**, without **n**), **species** (from the unused **specio**), **acies** from **acuo.**

§ 179. Further: —

6. The termination **men** (**mĭn-is**) denotes a thing in which an action and activity appear; e.g. **vīmen** (**vieo**), **flumen** (**fluo**), **lumen** (**luceo**, the **c** rejected), **specĭmen** (**specio, spexi**), **exāmen** (for **exagmen**, from **ago**). Sometimes, the result, the means, the action itself: e.g. **volūmen**, *what is rolled together, a roll;* **acūmen**, *what is sharpened, a point;* **levamen, nomen** (**novi**), **certāmen.** The poets and later prose-

writers use many words in **men**, some to express an action, others the means and instrument, which do not occur in the earlier prose-writers, who use instead words in **io**, **us** (gen. **us**, § **178**, 4), or in **mentum** (see *infra*, 7); e.g. **conamen, hortamen, molimen** (**conatus, hortatio, molitio**), **regimen, tegmen** (also **tegimen, tegūmen**), **velamentum, tegumentum**).

7. The termination **mentum** denotes a mean, an instrument, a thing which serves for some end; **ornamentum, complementum, instrumentum, alĭmentum** (alo), **condīmentum** (condio), **monumentum, documentum** (moneo, **doceo**, with the connecting vowel **u**), **adjūmentum** (**adjuvo, adjuv-i**, **v** being rejected), **momentum** (**moveo**), **tormentum** (**torqveo**). (Compare § **176**, *c*.)

Obs. Sometimes, such words in **mentum** are formed from substantives or adjectives of the first or second declension, as if they came from verbs of the first conjugation (**amentum**); e.g. **atramentum** (*means of blackening, black paint, ink*), **ferramentum**.

8. **culum** (in earlier times written and pronounced **clum**) and **bulum** denote the means or instrument (sometimes the place) of an action: **gubernaculum**; **coenaculum**, *a garret* (properly, a dining-room); **ferculum** (**fero**), **operculum** (**operio, oper-ui**), **vehĭculum, vocabulum, pabulum** (**pasco, pa-vi**), **stabulum** (*a stall, standing-place*), **latĭbulum** (**lateo**), **infundĭbulum** (**infundo**). If the stem ends in **c** or **g**, only **ulum** is added; **vinculum** (**vinc-io**), **cingulum**, (**cingo**).

Obs. 1. **Crum** is used instead of **clum** (**culum**) when there is an **l** in the preceding syllable, or the one before it; **sepulcrum** (**sepelio**), **fulcrum** (**fulcio**), **simulacrum, lavacrum**. **Brum** is used instead of **bulum** when there is an **l** in the preceding syllable; **flabrum, ventilabrum** (also **crībrum**, from **cerno**, and some feminines in **bra**; e.g. **dolābra, latĕbra, vertĕbra**, as **fabula**, from **fari**).

Obs. 2. The same meaning is expressed by **trum**, before which **d** is changed to **s**; **aratrum, claustrum** (**claudo**), **rostrum** (**rodo**).

Obs. 3. Some few such words are formed from other substantives: e.g. **turibulum**, *a censer*, from **tus**; **candelabrum** (see *Obs.* 1), from **candēla**.

§ 180. Substantives derived from other substantives have the following terminations:—

1. **ium**, affixed to personal names, denotes a condition and relation, sometimes an action or employment; e.g. **collegium, convivium, sacerdotium, ministerium, testimonium**, from **collēga, convīvia, sacerdos, minister, testis**. Affixed to personal names in **tor**, it denotes the place of the action; e.g. **auditorium**, from **auditor**.

2. **atus**, affixed to personal names, denotes a relation and office; **consulatus, tribunatus, triumviratus.** (**Censura, dictatura, praetura, praefectura, qvaestura.**)

3. **arius** denotes a person who engages in something as a trade; e.g. **statuarius, argentarius, sicarius**; **arium**, a place for collecting or preserving any thing: **granarium, seminarium, armamentarium, vivarium** (place for preserving living animals), from **granum, semen, armamenta, vivus**; **avia**, sometimes the place where labor is applied to something. (Compare the adjective termination **arius**, § **187**, 10.)

4. **īna**, affixed to personal names, denotes an employment and a place for carrying on a thing; **medicīna, sutrina** (**sutor**), **doctrina, disciplina, tonstrina** (**tonsor**). (**Officina**, from **officium**; **piscina**, from **piscis**; **ruina**, from **ruo**; **rapina**, from **rapio**; in the neuter, **textrinum, pistrinum.**) (In **regina, gallina**, it denotes only the feminine gender.)

5. **al, ar** (the last formed is used when an l occurs in the preceding syllable, or the one before it (compare § **179**, 8, *Obs.* 1), denotes a material object, which stands in relation to a thing, or belongs to it; e.g. **puteal, animal, calcar, pulvīnar**, from **puteus, animus, calx, pulvinus.**

Obs. Properly the neuter of the adjective ending **alis** (**aris**), without the **e**, which is retained in a few words; e.g. **facale**, *neck-cloth*.

6. **ētum**, affixed to the names of plants, denotes the place where they grow together in a quantity, and also the plants themselves collectively; e.g. **olivetum, myrtetum, fruticetum, arundinetum, qvercetum**, from **oliva, myrtus, frutex, arundo, qvercus.**

Obs. The following are formed irregularly: **salictum, carectum** (**salix, carex**), **arbustum** (**arbos**), **virgultum** (**virgula**).

īle, affixed to the names of animals, denotes a stall; **bubīle, ovīle** (**bos, ovis**). (Affixed to verbs, it also signifies a place; **cubīle**, *a place to lie down, a couch*; **sedīle.**)

Obs. Examples of derivative endings of rare occurrence, or with a less obvious signification in substantives derived from substantives, are **o** or **io** (in some personal names; e.g. **praedo**, from **praeda**; **centurio, mulio**, from **centuria, mulus**; but in many other words, from some unknown stem), **īca** (e.g. **lectīca**, from **lectus**, and in words from an unknown stem), **īca** (**fabrīca**, from **faber**), **ia** (e.g. **militia**, from **miles**), **ūgo** (e.g. **aerūgo**, from **aes**), **uria** (e.g. **centuria, luxuria**, from **centum, luxus**).

§ 181. From some names of male persons and animals in **us** and **er**, corresponding feminine nouns are formed by affixing **a** to the stem, **us** being dropped; e.g. **eqva, cerva, capra**, from **eqvus, cervus, caper** (see § **30**), **dea, filia, serva, magistra**, from **deus, filius,**

servus, magister; also in **trix**, from personal names in **tor** (§ **177, 2**). Those substantives which have a corresponding feminine form are called **subst. mobilia.**

Obs. It is only in a few solitary instances, that **a** is found attached in this way to stems of the third declension; **antistita, clienta, hospita, tibicĭna**, from **antistes, cliens, hospes, tibĭcen.** A rarer formation still is that of **regīna, gallina, leaena**, from **rex, gallus, leo**; **avia, neptis, socrus**, from **avus, nepos, socer.**

§ 182. The following terminations should also be noticed:—

1. By means of **lus, la**, or **lum**, and **culus, cula**, or **culum**, are formed diminutives, which are often used by way of endearment, commiseration, or to ridicule something insignificant: e.g. **hortŭlus**, *a little garden*; **matercŭla**, *a (poor) mother*; **ingeniolum**, *a little bit of talent*. The diminutives have the same gender as their primitives, and end, accordingly, in **us, a**, or **um.** Both sets of endings are combined in different ways with the different stems, and hence occasionally assume an irregular form.

With respect to this it is to be observed:—

a. **lus (a. um)** is used with primitive words of the first and second declension, and with some few of the third, but always when the characteristic letter is **c** or **g.** It is affixed to the stem (after rejecting **a** or **us**), with the connecting vowel **u** (therefore, **ulus, ula, ulum**); e.g. **arcula, litterula, lunula, servulus, oppidulum, aetatula, adolescentulus, facula, regulus**, from **arca, littera, luna, servus, oppidum, aetas, adolescens, fax, rex.** If a vowel precedes **us, a, um**, in the primitive, then the diminutive ends in **ŏlus (a, um)**; e.g. **filiolus, lineola, ingeniolum**, from **filius, linea, ingenium.**

b. To stems of the first and second declension in **ul, r** with a consonant preceding, and in **in**, with some others in **er** and **n, lus (a, um)** is affixed without a connecting vowel; **r** and **n** are assimilated with the following **l**; **u** and **i** are changed into **e**, and **e** inserted before **r** after a consonant (**ellus, ella, ellum**): e.g. **tabella, ocellus (tabula, oculus)**; **libella, agellus, libellus, labellum** (from **libra, ager (agri), liber, labrum**); **lamella, asellus** (from **lamina, asinus**); **catella, corolla, opella, puella** (from **catēna, corōna, opera**, and the unused **puera**, from **puer**).

Obs. 1. Diminutives of this class are sometimes formed from other diminutives; **cista, cistula, cistella**, and (by again adding **ula**) **cistellula.**

Obs. 2. Some few words have the termination **illus (a, um)**, instead of **ellus**; as, **bacillum, pugillus, sigillum, pulvillus**, from **baculum,**

pugnus, signum, pulvīnus. Codicillus, lapillus, anguilla, from **codex, lapis, anguis,** are formed in the same way, from primitives of the third declension.

c. **culus (a, um)** is used with primitives of the third, fourth, and fifth declension. In primitives of the third declension in **l, r,** and **s,** if this last is not merely the nominative ending (consequently, when it is changed to **r** in the genitive), the diminutive ending is affixed immediately to the nominative; **animalculum, fraterculus, matercula, uxorcula, oorculum, flosculus, osculum, opusculum, pulvisculus,** from **animal, frater, mater, uxor, cor, flos, os (oris), opus, pulvis. (Vasculum,** from **vas, vasis.)**

Obs. From **rumor** is formed **rumusculus**; and from **arbor, arbuscula** (and, in the same way, **grandiusculus,** &c., from the comparative **grandior**); **ventriculus,** from **venter (acriculus,** from the adj. **acer**). From **os, ossis,** is formed **ossiculum.**

d. From primitives in **o (on-is,** or **in-is)** is deduced the form **unculus**; e.g. **sermunculus, ratiuncula, homunculus (sermo, ratio, hōmo.) (Caruncula,** from **caro**; **pectunculus,** from **pecten.)**

Obs. The following are formed irregularly, with the same ending: **avunculus, domuncula, furunculus,** from **avus, domus, fur (ranunculus,** from **rana,** with a change of gender).

e. In primitives in **es,** gen. **is** or **ei,** and **is,** gen. **is,** the ending is affixed to the stem, after dropping the nominative ending **s**: **nubecula, diecula, pisciculus,** from **nubes, dies, piscis (aedicula,** from the form **aedis)**; in the words in **e,** the **e** is changed into **i**: e.g. **reticulum,** from **rete.**

f. In those words in which the nominative ending **s** is affixed to a consonant, and in words of the fourth declension, the ending is affixed to the stem with the connecting vowel **i** (the **u** being first rejected in the fourth declension); e.g. **ponticulus, particula, coticula, versiculus, corniculum** (from **pons, pars, cos, versus, cornu**).

Obs. 1. If the stem ends in **c** or **g,** the ending **lus** is made use of. See *a.*

Obs. 2. The following are irregular forms: **homuncio (homullus),** from **homo, equleus,** from **equus**; **aculeus,** *a point or sting,* masc. from the fem. **acus.**

Obs. 3. The diminutive form **illus (a, um)** occurs in some words with the characteristic **x,** which appear to be immediately derived from verbs, but have shorter substantives corresponding to them, formed by rejecting the **x,** and contraction; e.g. **vexillum (veho, vex-i)** and **velum paxillus (pango)** and **palus, maxilla** and **mala. (Tela** from **texo.)**

§ 183. The Greek patronymics, which designate sons, daughters, or descendants of a man, and end in **ides, ides,** or **ades,** of the first

declension, or end in **is, idos,** or **ias, iados,** of the feminine gender, are used by the Latin poets, — and in prose, also, when well-known Greek families are spoken of: **Priamĭdes, Pelīdes (Peleus), Aenĕădes, Alcmaeonidae; Tantalis, Nerēis (Nereus), Thestias (Thestius).**

§ 184. Substantives which denote a quality are formed from adjectives, by the following endings: —

1. **tas,** with the connecting vowel **i (ĭtas)** affixed to the stem of the adjective; e.g. **bonitas, crudelitas, atrocitas.** From adjectives in **ius** is formed **ietas**: e.g. **pietas**; from those in **stus** is formed **stas**: e.g. **venustas.**

Obs. The following are without a connecting vowel: **libertas, paupertas, pubertas, ubertas, facultas, difficultas.** Some few substantives of this form are derived from substantives, as **auctoritas**; or from verbs, as **potestas.** To this is allied the ending **tus**; e.g. **virtus,** from **vir.**

2. **ia,** mostly from adjectives and participles of one termination; e.g. **audacia, concordia, inertia, clementia, abundantia, magnificentia** (from **magnificus,** like **magnificentior**), (but also **miseria, perfidia,** &c., and from those in **cundus: facundia, iracundia, verecundia;** but **jucunditas**).

3. **tia (ĭtia),** from a few adjectives of three terminations; e.g. **malitia, justitia, laetitia, avaritia, pigritia, tristitia.**

Obs. Some of these have also a form in **ies**; as, **mollitia** and **mollities,** usually **planities (planus).** From **pauper,** we find **pauperies** (commonly **paupertas**).

4. **tūdo,** affixed to the stem (of adjectives of three or two terminations), with an **i**; e.g. **altitudo, aegritudo, similitudo.**

Obs. 1. To some adjective stems in **t, udo** alone is affixed; e.g. **consvetudo, sollicitudo.**

Obs. 2. From some adjectives, there are formed substantives, both in **tas** and **tudo**; e.g. **claritas** and **claritudo, firmitas** and **firmitudo.** In such cases, the substantive in **tudo** is generally the least used.

Obs. 3. From **dulcis** is formed **dulcēdo** (usually in derived signification, *attraction*, or *charm*), (**dulcitudo,** *sweetness*, is rare), and from **gravis** (subst. **gravitas,** *weight*), **gravēdo,** signifying *heaviness of the head, cold.* (**Torpēdo,** from **torpeo.**) Later writers form some additional substantives in this way; **pingvedo** (for **pingvitudo**), **putredo,** &c.

Obs. 4. A more rare and peculiar termination is **monia**; e.g. **sanctimonia, castimonia, acrimonia.** (**Parsimonia,** *frugality*, for **parcimonia, qverimonia,** *a complaint*, from the verb **qveror.**)

CHAPTER II

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 185. Adjectives are derived partly from verbs, partly from substantives, and a few from adverbs. From verbs are formed adjectives with the following endings (besides the participles, which — both those in ordinary use, and those in **bundus**, § 115, *g* — may also be included in this class) : —

1. **Idus** (**dus** with the connecting vowel **i**), affixed chiefly to the stem of intransitive verbs in **eo**, denotes the condition and property which are expressed by the verb; e.g. **calidus, frigidus, tepidus, humidus, aridus, madidus, timidus**, from **caleo**, &c. Some few are formed from other verbs or from substantives, or have no known primitive; e.g. **rapidus, turbidus, lepidus, trepidus**, whence **trepidare** (**gravidus**, from **gravis**).

2. *a.* **Ilis** (**lis** with a connecting vowel), affixed to the stems ending in a consonant, denotes passively the capacity of being the object of an action: e.g. **fragilis**, *brittle*; **facilis**, *what may be done, easy*; **utilis, docilis, habilis** (**doc-eo, hab-eo**).

b. This is still oftener expressed by **bilis** (with the connecting vowel, **ibilis**); e.g. **amabilis, probabilis, flēbilis** (**fleo, flevi**) **volūbilis** (**volv-o**), **credibilis, vendibilis** (**mobilis, nobilis**, from **mov-eo, novi**, the **v** being dropped).

Ons. 1. Some such adjectives have an active signification; e.g. **praestabilis, terribilis**, *causing fright*. (**Penetrabilis**, *penetrating*, and *penetrable*.)

Ons. 2. Some adjectives in **ilis** are formed from the supine, partly with the signification of a possibility: e.g. **fissilis**, *what may be cleft*; **versatilis**, *what may be turned*; partly (and chiefly) with the mere signification of the passive verb (*produced by*, like the perf. part.): e.g. **fictilis, coctilis, altilis**. (Some in **bilis** also are formed from the supine: **comprehensibilis**, *comprehensible*; **flexibilis**, *pliant*; **plausibilis**, *commendable*.)

3. **ax**, affixed to the stem, denotes a desire, inclination, most frequently one that is too violent or vicious: e.g. **pugnax, audax, edax, loqvax, rapax** (**rap-io**); sometimes, only the action itself (like the part. pres.): e.g. **minax**, *threatening*; **fallax**, *deceiving*. (**Capax**, *that which can contain*.)

4. Less usual are the endings **cundus** (capacity, inclination, approach to an action): e.g. **iracundus** (**ira-scor**), **facundus** (**fari**), **verēcundus**,

rŭbĭcundus (*ruddy*, **rubeo**[1]); **ŭlus** (**lus** with **u**), denoting either a simple action, or an inclination to it: e.g. **patulus, qverulus, crĕdulus** (**garrulus**, from **garrio**); **uus**, with a passive signification from transitives: e.g. **conspicuus, perspicuus, individuus**; sometimes (poetically) with an active sense, from intransitives: e.g. **congruus**; **aneus**: e.g. **consentaneus**, nearly = **consentiens.**

§ 186. Adjectives are formed from substantives chiefly with the following endings, of which some closely resemble each other in meaning, and cannot in all cases be clearly distinguished.

1. **eus** denotes the material of which a thing consists; e.g. **aureus, ligneus, cinereus** (**cinis, ciner-is**), **igneus, vimineus.** It more rarely denotes something which a thing resembles in its nature; e.g. **virgineus** (poet.), *maidenlike*, **roseus** (poet.)

Obs. To denote the kind of wood of which a thing is made, the ending **neus** or **nus** is commonly employed; e.g. **iligneus**, or **ilignus, qverneus, qvernus, populneus** (rarely **populnus**, also **populeus**), **fagĭnus** (connecting vowel **i**), **cedrĭnus.** In the same way we find **eburneus, eburnus, coccinus, coccineus**, and **adamantĭnus, chrystallĭnus.** The ending **nus** also signifies what belongs to a thing or comes from it; as, **paternus, fraternus, maternus, vernus** (*of spring*).

2. **ĭcius** (**cius** with **i**) denotes the material of which a thing is made, or that to which a person or thing belongs: e.g. **latericius, caementicius, tribunicius, aedilicius, gentilicius** (relating to the **gentīles**, the members of the same **gens**).

Obs. Sometimes adjectives in **īcius** are derived from the part. perf. pass. or from the supine, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and consequently its kind: **commenticius**, *feigned*; **collaticius**, *effected by contributions*; **adventicius.** (**Novīcius**, from **novus.**)

3. **āceus** denotes material or resemblance, or that to which a thing belongs; e.g. **argillaceus, ampullaceus** (*formed like a bottle*), **gallinaceus.**

§ 187. Further: —

4. **ĭcus** (**cus** with **i**) denotes to what a thing belongs or relates; e.g. **bellicus, civicus, hosticus.**

Obs. 1. Instead of **civicus, hosticus**, prose-writers rather use **civilis, hostilis** (5), except only in the combinations, **corona civica, ager hosticus.**

Obs. 2. From these must be carefully distinguished the following words derived from verbs or prepositions: **amīcus, inimicus, pudīcus, antīcus, postīcus** (**aprīcus**, from an uncertain root).

---

[1] **Jucundus** (**juvo**), **fecundus.**

Obs. 3. The belonging to a thing is also expressed by **ticus**; e.g. **aquaticus, rusticus, domesticus.**

5. **ilis** denotes what is agreeable to the nature of a thing and resembles it, also what belongs to it; **civilis, puerilis, anilis** (**anus**), **scurbilis** of uncertain derivation, but **humilis, parilis.**)

ame signification as **ilis**, but is far more common; **alis, decemviralis, judicialis, mortalis, regalis,** s, from the adjective **liber**). If the ending be pre- he last syllable but one before the ending begins or used instead of **alis** (compare § **179**, 8, *Obs.* 1); **taris, palmaris** (but **pluvialis, fluvialis**).

belongs to a thing, is at home in a thing, is suited **s, fluviatilis, umbratilis.**

conformity, or belonging to something; e.g. **patrius,** y formed from personal names in **or**; **praetorius, ius.**

what belongs to a thing or proceeds from it: e.g. **libertinus**; particularly from the names of animals: **us, agninus** (e.g. *of meat*, **agnina**[1]).

ermination we must carefully distinguish **inus** (**nus** owel), of the material, especially with the names of **186**, 1, *Obs.*).

a resemblance, a belonging to a thing: **montānus,** **us, meridianus** (**humanus**, from **homo**); espe- numbers, in order to show what belongs to a partic- **s primanus**, *a soldier of the first legion*; **febris** *n ague.*

oncerns or belongs to a thing; **agrarius, gregarius,** **narius.** (In the masc. it is often used as a sub- who occupies himself with any thing. See § **180**, 3.)

e numerals are formed adjectives in **arius**, in order ng bears a particular relation to a certain number: **arius**, *a coin which contains ten asses*; **senex** *old man of seventy*, &c.; **numerus ternarius**, *the* following are formed from adverbs: **adversarius,** **rius**; **necessarius**, from **necesse**.)

elongs or is adapted to a thing; **festivus, furtivus** (irregularly from **aestas**). Affixed to participles, **us**) the way in which a thing has originated; e.g. **captivus.**

---

[1] **Bubulus, ovillus, suillus.**

§ 188. Further: —

12. **ōsus** denotes the property of being full of a thing; **ingeniosus, calamitosus, libidinosus, lapidosus, damnosus, periculosus** (**ambitiosus, superstitiosus**, from **ambition-is, superstition-is**, omitting the **n**; **laboriosus**). From substantives of the fourth declension there is formed **uosus**; e.g. **saltuosus.**

13. **ŭlentus** (**lentus** with a connecting vowel; after **n** and **i**, **olentus**), full of a thing, connected with a thing; e.g. **fraudulentus, turbulentus, sangvinolentus, violentus.**

14. The ending **atus** (formed like a participle of the first conjugation) denotes what a thing has, or is provided with, and forms a great number of adjectives: e.g. **barbatus, calceatus; falcatus,** *set with sickles*, sometimes, *formed like a sickle*; **virgatus,** *striped*; **auratus,** *gilt*; **togatus.**

Obs. 1. From substantives in **is**, gen. **is**, is derived the form **ītus**: e.g. **aurītus, crinītus** (all poetical or of more recent date; also **mellītus** from **mel, galerītus** from **galerus**); from words of the fourth declension are formed a few in **ūtus**: as, **cornūtus, astūtus** (**nasūtus**, from **nasus**, 2), but **arcuatus** (**arqvatus**).

Obs. 2. With **tus** are also formed **onustus, robustus, venustus, funestus, scelestus, honestus, modestus, molestus.**

15. Less important endings are **timus** (**legitĭmus**), **ensis** (belonging to a particular place; **castrensis, forensis**), **ester** (**campester, eqvester**).

Obs. 1. From some substantives in **or**, which are derived from verbs (§ **177**, 1), the poets form adjectives in **ōrus**: **canorus, odorus** (**odor**, from **oleo**); **decōrus** (**decet**) is used in prose.

Obs. 2. From some adjectives are formed diminutives according to the rules given above (§ **182**) for the substantives; **parvulus, aureolus, pulchellus, misellus, pauperculus, leviculus** (**parvus, aureus, pulcher, miser, pauper, levis**). **Bellus** (**bonus**), **novellus** (**novus**), and **paullum** (**parvus**) are formed irregularly.

Obs. 3. From adverbs of time and place are formed adjectives which express the property of belonging to a certain time or place, — some of them with peculiar derivative endings, and with a number of irregularities in the several words: as, in **ānus** (**peregrinus**, from **peregre**; **repentinus, matutinus, intestinus**; **clandestinus**, from **clam**); **tĭnus** (**diutinus, pristinus**); **rnus** (**hodiernus, diurnus, nocturnus**, from **diu**, in its earlier meaning, *by day*, and **noctu**); **ternus** (**sempiternus, hesternus** from **heri**); **īcus** (**posticus**).

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from proper names according to special rules. Of adjectives derived from the names of men and families it is to be observed: —

1. The names of Roman families (**gentes**) in **ius** are properly adjec-
tives (Fabius, gens Fabia) and are used, as such, of a man's works or
ertain to the community or state; e.g. **lex**
circus Flaminius. Any thing else that
, and is named after him, is expressed by
om the name; e.g. **bellum Marianum**,

are formed adjectives in **ianus**, to indicate
s named after him: e.g. **Ciceronianus**,
anus from some in **a**: e.g. **Sullanus**;
.g. **Gracchanus** (more usual forms are
c.); also rarely in **inus**: e.g. **Verrinus**,

which have become surnames, are partly
o the family and the individual (**domus**
partly have new adjectives derived from
the poets and later writers, adjectives in
names; as, **Caesareus, Romuleus** (even

mes, the two Greek forms in **ēus** (**ius**,
f, of some both forms, but of others one
. **Aristotelius, Epicureus, Platonicus,**

f towns, adjectives are formed in Latin
, **as, ensis**, which express what belongs
ame time used as substantives to denote
ntilicia). These Latin adjectives are
reek towns (or towns known to the
), but not from all.

s ending in **a, ae, um, i**: e.g. **Romanus,**
Tusculanus (Tusculum), **Fundanus**
eek names in **a** and **ae**: e.g. **Trojanus,**
some others, which have also in Greek an
anus (**Tralles**).
owns, which form a Greek word in **ites**
the inhabitants, adjectives are formed in
daritanus (**Tyndaris**), **Panormitanus**
(and so from all in **polis**). (**Gaditanus,**

; in **ia** and **ium**: e.g. **Amerinus** (**Ame-**
), (**Praenestinus, Reatinus**, from **Prae-**

neste, Reate); and with various Greek names, which have [illegible] also in the Greek: e.g. **Centuripinus, Tarentinus, Agrigentinus.**

3. **as** (gen. **ātis**), with some in **a, ae,** and **um** (mostly i **num**); e.g. **Capēnas (Capena), Fidenas (Fidenae) Urbinas, Antias.** (Never with Greek towns.)

4. **ensis,** with names in **o,** and some in **a, ae, um**: e.g. **Su Tarraconensis, Bononiensis (Bononia), Cannensis Ariminensis (Ariminum), (Carthaginiensis, Crotoniensis** Greek names of towns, from which the names of the inh formed in *ευς* (*ιευς*, **ienses**): e.g. **Patrensis, Chalcidens censis, Nicomedensis, Thespiensis,** with some others (**At**

Obs. 1. In some rare instances, **eus** is retained from *ευς*: e. for **Cittiensis**; **Halicarnasseus,** for **Halicarnassensis.**

Obs. 2. The following adjectives, derived from the name are irregular in their form: **Tibur, Camers, Caeres, Vejen**

5. The Greek adjectives in **ius** (*ιος*), formed from the towns and islands (in **us, um,** and **ōn,** with some others), a in Latin: e.g. **Corinthius, Rhodius, Byzantius, Laced Clazomenius (Clazomenae), (Aegyptius,** from the name o try, **Aegyptus**); so also those in **ēnus**: e.g. **Cyzicenus**; also those in **aeus**: e.g. **Smyrnaeus, Erythraeus (Cumam Cumaeus** in poetry, and so with several others).

Obs. The Latin writers also occasionally retain the G of the inhabitants in **tes** (**ātes, ītes, ōtes**); e.g. **Abderite tes** (adj. **Spartanus**), **Tegeates** (adj. **Tegeaeus**), **Heracle**

§ 191. The names of nations are often themselves formed with the endings given in the preceding p e.g.:—

Romanus, Latinus (from **Latium**), **Sabinus** (without a and in **scus** or **cus** (**Oscus, Volscus, Etruscus, Graecus**); they are used as genuine adjectives to express whatever conce longs to the people (**bellum Latinum,** &c.). From other nati which are pure substantives, are formed adjectives in **icus,** a Greek (or such as were adopted from the Greeks) also in **ius cus, Gallicus, Marsicus, Arabicus, Syrius, Thracius, Cilici Gallus, Marsus, Arabs, Syrus, Thrax, Cilix**). Of indivi ever, such expressions are used as **miles Gallus,** &c., no and the poets use and even decline as adjectives national na which are otherwise substantives: e.g. **orae Italae** (Virg.); **sus, flumen Medum** (Hor. for **Medicum**), **Colcha venena**

Obs. 1. In the same way, we read, in the poets, **flumen** for **flumen Rhenus.** (**Mare Oceanum,** Caes.)

Obs. 2. Concerning the use of the Greek feminine national names and adjectives in ia and as in the Latin poets, see, under Rules for Inflec-
r also employ the Greek feminines of some
ssa (Cilissa, Cressa, Libyssa, Phoenissa,
h as substantives and adjectives; e.g. Cressa

s of countries (which are regularly formed
by the ending ia; Italia, Gallia, Graecia,
ives are sometimes again formed to denote
not the people) or comes out of it; e.g.
rcitus Hispaniensis, *the Roman army in*
aticus.)

some names of countries in ium (like names
Samnium; with some of Greek origin in us

ral names of nations, from which no names of
he same word is used to designate both: e.g.
tiis habitare, hiemare; in Bruttios ire; ex
cere.

CHAPTER III.

'ATION OF VERBS.

ed from substantives, from adjectives, and

rbs are derived from substantives by sim-
ne endings of the first conjugation. These
and employ on something that which is
ve; e.g. fraudare, honorare, laudare, nu-
e, vulnerare.

n of such verbs, a preposition is sometimes
, *to heap up* (agger; aggerare is rare and
t out (stirps). See Rules for the Composi-
.

es, intransitive verbs are formed by this mode
re, militare, from labor, miles.
verbs are formed after the fourth conjugation:
dire, punire (finis, vestis, custos, poena);

the intransitive **servire**; a few intransitives after the second: e.g. **floreo, frondeo** (**flos, frons**).

b. In the same way are formed from substantives (and adjectives) a great number of deponents of the first conjugation, mostly with an intransitive signification (to *be* something, behave like something, occupy one's self with something, &c.); e.g.:—

Philosophor, *to be a philosopher, philosophize* (**philosophus**); **graecor**, *to act or live like a Greek* (**Graecus**); **aqvor**, *to fetch water* (**aqva**); **piscor**, *to fish* (**piscis**); **negotior**, *to traffic* (**negotia**); **laetor**, *to be joyful* (**laetus**); far less frequently with a transitive signification: e.g. **interpretor**, *to interpret, explain* (**interpres**, *an interpreter*); **osculor**, *to kiss* (**osculum**, *a kiss*); **furor**, *to steal* (**fur**, *a thief*), &c. (**Partior, sortior**, from **pars, sors.**)

Obs. The following have peculiar derivative endings: **navĭgo** (**litigo, mitigo**), and **latrocinor** (**patrocinor, vaticinor**).

§ 194. Transitive verbs are formed from adjectives (mostly from those of the first and second declension) by adding the endings of the first conjugation; first, with the signification, to make a thing what the adjective denotes; and, secondly, with a signification often modified in various ways:—

Maturare, *to make ripe, to hasten*; **lēvare**, *to make smooth* (**lēvis**); **ditare**, *to enrich* (**dives**); **honestare**, *to honor*; **probare**, *to approve.* Such verbs have rarely an intransitive signification: e.g. **nigrare**, *to be black*; **concordare**, *to be agreed*; **propinqvare**, *to draw near*; **durare** (trans.) *to harden*, (intrans.) *to endure.*

Obs. 1. A preposition sometimes enters into the composition of such transitive verbs: e.g. **dealbare**, *to whiten* (**albus**); **exhilarare**, *to cheer* (**hilarus**). (Compare § **206**, *b*, 2.) (**Memoro, propinquo**, are commonly **commemoro, appropinquo**, in the best prose.)

Obs. 2. Some few such verbs are formed after the fourth conjugation: e.g. **lenire, mollire, stabilire** (**lenis, mollis, stabilis**); and some intransitives: e.g. **superbire, ferocire** (**superbus, ferox**; the deponent **blandior**, from **blandus**); some few intransitives, after the second: e.g. **albeo**, *to be white*; **caneo**, *to be gray.*

§ 195. From verbs are derived new verbs with a signification somewhat varied in the following ways:—

1. By the ending **ĭto** (**itāre**, 1st) are derived verbs which denote a frequent repetition of an action, frequentative verbs. The ending is affixed to the stem of verbs of the first conjugation, and to the stem of the supine of verbs of the third, and those of which the supine is simi-

larly formed; e.g. **clamito, rogito, minitor (minor), dictito, cursito, haesito (haereo), visito (video), ventito (venio).**

Obs. From **ago, qvaero, nosco** (3d), are formed **agito, qvaerito,**
verbs of the first conjugation. **Latito, pavito, pol-**
so, paveo, polliceor (2d).

tion of an action is also expressed by simply affixing the
st conjugation to the stem of supines formed according
. **ourso (cursare), mersо, adjuto (adjutum), tutor**
eor), amplexor (amplexus, from **amplector), ito**
f these verbs, however, denote, not a simple repetition,
f an action, in which a repetition of the original action
dicto, dictare, *to dictate* (**dico,** *to say*); **pulso,** *to*
rust); **qvasso,** *to break to pieces* (**qvatio,** *to shake*);
e (**traho,** *to draw*); **salto,** *to dance* (**salio,** *to leap,*
snatch at (**capio,** *to lay hold of*). (**Canto,** *to sing,*
ing and play; **gesto,** *to carry,* from **gero,** *to carry,*

licitor, from **habeo, liceor,** 2d.

e ending **sco (scere,** 3d) is affixed to the stem (in
ugation retaining the **e,** in the third with the con-
to form inchoative verbs, which denote the begin-
on or condition. By far the greater number of
formed from verbs of the second conjugation, and
eposition prefixed at the same time: e.g. **labasco,**
ger (**labare**); **calesco,** *to grow warm*; and **inca-**
xardesco, efflоresco (**ardeo, floreo,** not **exardeo** or
iisco, *to sigh over* (**gemo**); **obdormisco,** *to fall*

choatives derived from verbs, many are formed in **esco**
inchoativa nominalia); e.g. **maturesco, nigresco,**
us, niger, mitis). See the Rules for Inflection, § **141.**
from substantives: e.g. **puerasco,** from **puer**; **ignes-**
to take fire.
ng verbs in **sco (scor),** which have an inchoative mean-
d **142.**

ending **ürio (urire,** 4th), added to the stem of the
sideratives, which express an inclination to a thing:
ave a desire to eat, to be hungry; **empturio,** *to wish*
o, *to be in labor.* There are, however, only a few
. they are little used, except **esurio** and **parturio.**

scaturio, &c., are not desideratives.

5. The termination **illo** (**illare**, 1st), added to the stem, forms some few diminutive verbs; e.g. **cantillo**, *to quaver*, from **cano**.

6. From some intransitive verbs there are formed, by a change of the conjugation, — sometimes, also, by a change in the quantity of the radical syllable, — transitive verbs, which signify the causing of that which is denoted by the intransitive. From **fugio**, *to fly*; **jaceo**, *to lie*; **pendeo**, *to hang, weigh* (intrans.); **liqveo**, *to be clear, fluid*, — come **fugo** (1st), *to cause to fly*; **jacio**, *to throw*; **pendo**, *to weigh* (by hanging up); **liqvo** (1st), *to clarify*. From **căd**o, *to fall*; **sĕdeo**, *to sit*, — come **caedo**, *to fell*; **sēdo** (1st), *to pacify*.

Obs. The signification is otherwise altered in **sīdo**, *to sink*; **assīdo**, *to seat one's self*; **sedeo**, *to sit*; **assĭdeo**, *to sit by*. See also under **cubo**, § **119**.

CHAPTER IV.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 198. Adverbs are derived from adjectives (numerals), substantives (pronouns), and the noun forms of verbs (participles and supines), rarely from other adverbs or prepositions.

Adverbs, which express a way or manner, are derived from adjectives, by the endings **ē** (**o**), and **ter**.

a. The ending **ē** is affixed to the stem of adjectives and participles used adjectively (perf.) of the first and second declension; e.g. **probē, modeste, libere, aegre** (**aeger, aegri**), **docte, ornate**.

Obs. 1. From **bonus** is formed **benĕ** (of the **ĕ**, see § **19**, 2); from **validus, valde**.

Obs. 2. From some adjectives and participles of the second declension, there are formed adverbs in **ō** (abl.); as, **tutō, crebrō, necessario, consulto**. From **certus** are formed both **certō** and **certe**, which are generally used alike: **certe scio** and **certo comperi** (*for certain*); **certe eveniet**, *it will certainly happen*; and **nihil ita exspectare qvasi certo futurum**. But, in the signification, *at least*, we always find **certe**.[1]

b. The ending **ter** is affixed to the stem of adjectives and participles of the third declension (with the connecting vowel **i**): e.g. **graviter, acri-**

---

[1] The others in **o** which are used in good writers are **arcano, cito, continuo, falso, fortuito, gratuito, liqvido, manifesto, perpetuo, precario, raro** (**rare**, *thinly, far apart*), **secreto, sedulo, serio, sero, auspicato, directo, festinato, necopinato, improviso, merito** (*according to one's deserts*); and **immerito, optato, sortito** (*according to lot*); further, **primo, secundo**, &c. See § **199**, *Obs.* 2.

ter (acer, acris), felicĭter (audacter is preferred to **audaciter**); but if the stem ends in **t**, one **t** is omitted: e.g. **sapienter** (instead of **sapientter**), **amanter, solerter.**

Obs. 1. From **hilarus** and **hilaris** are formed **hilare** and **hilariter**; **ulentus opulenter.**

adjectives in **us**, there is formed, besides the adverb e.g. **humane** and **humaniter, firme** and **firmiter**; in **lentus**: e.g. **luculente** and **luculenter.** (Ally **gnaviter.**)

ficilis, alius, and **neqvam,** are formed **difficulter,** om **brevis** is formed **breviter,** *briefly*; and **brevis** *ime*; from **proclivis proclivi** (**proclive**), *down-*

ectives, no proper adverb is formed, but the neuter adverb. This is the case with **facile** (but **difficul-**sublĭme (*on high*), **multum, plurimum, paullum, nimis**), **tantum, qvantum, ceterum, plerumqve,**

m, *in the nick of time*; **commode,** *suitably*.) On ctives for adverbs by the poets, see Syntax, § **302.**

cardinal numbers are formed adverbs, which, f the four first, end in **ies**; **e, o, em, im, inta,** pped before the ending. These are the follow-

d to unus)	**septies decies**
by a change	**duodevicies,** or **octies decies**
n)	**undevicies,** or **novies decies**
	vicies
	semel et vicies or **vicies semel** (not **semel vicies**) (**vicies et semel**)
orm, qvin-	
)	**bis et vicies** or **vicies bis** (**vicies et bis,** &c.)
	tricies
	qvadragies, &c.
	centies
	centies tricies, or **centies et tricies,** &c.
ies	**ducenties**
ttuordecies	**millies** (**bis millies, decies millies, centies millies,** &c.)
qvindecies	
iecies	

Obs. 1. To these adverbs correspond the pronominal adverbs **toties** *so often;* **qvoties,** *how often?* (See § **201,** 4.)

Obs. 2. From the ordinals are formed adverbs in **um** and **o,** which are employed to signify, *for which time:* e.g. **tertium consul,** *consul for the third time;* **qvartum consul (eo anno lectisternium, qvinto post conditam urbem, habitum est,** Liv. VIII. 25); or, in enumerations: **primum,** *in the first place;* **tertium,** *thirdly. For the first time, first,* is generally expressed by **primum;** **primo** usually signifies, *in the beginning, from the beginning. For the second time,* is expressed by **iterum** (**secundum** is not used); instead of **secundo,** *secondly,* the Latins more frequently say **deinde, tum.** For the remaining numbers, the forms in **um** are the most usual, particularly in the signification of a certain number of times. *For the last time,* is expressed by **ultimum** (**postremum, extremum**); *now for the last time,* **hoc ultimum;** *then for the last time,* **illud ultimum.**

§ 200. *a.* Some adverbs are formed from substantives by means of the ending **itus,** to denote a proceeding from something: e.g. **funditus,** *from the foundation;* **radicitus.** The following are formed in the same way from adjectives: **antiqvitus,** *from times of yore;* **divinitus,** *by divine ordering;* **humanitus,** *after the manner of men.*

b. By **atim** (as if from supines of the first conjugation) adverbs are formed from substantives and adjectives, denoting in this or that way; e.g. **catervatim, gregatim, gradatim; vicatim,** *by streets, from street to street;* **singulatim,** *severally;* **privatim,** *as an individual.*

Obs. The following are formed without **a**: **tribūtim,** *by tribes;* **viritim,** *man by man;* **furtim** (**fur**), **ubertim** (**uber**).

c. By the termination **im,** adverbs are formed from the supine, to denote the way and manner: e.g. **caesim, punctim,** *by striking, by stabbing;* **carptim,** *by snatches;* **separatim,** *separately;* **passim,** *here and there* (*scattered, and without order,* **pando**). (**Mordicus,** *with the teeth,* from **mordeo,** is formed quite irregularly).

§ 201. From the pronouns are formed adverbs, which denote place, time, degree, number, manner, and cause, and have the same power of expressing the relation of things which the pronouns have. For each idea (of place, time, &c.) there are formed correlative adverbs corresponding to the different classes of pronouns, — demonstrative, relative, and interrogative, indefinite relative, and indefinite. The relative adverbs connect the sentence to which they belong with another, and are conjunctions: the adverbs of place

differ according as they signify remaining in a place, or motion to a place, from a place, or on a certain road.

1. Adverbs of place: —

a. (in a place) demonstr. **ibi**, *there;* **hic**, *here;* **istic**, *there, there by you;* **illic**, *there;* **ibīdem**, *in that same place;* **alībi**, *elsewhere:* relative and interrogative, **ubi**, *where; where?* indefinite relative, **ubicunqve, ubiubi**, *wherever:* indefinite, **alicubi, uspiam, usqvam**, *anywhere* (**nusqvam**, *nowhere;* **utrobiqve**, *in both places*): indefinite universal, **ubivis, ubiqve, ubilibet**, *in any place you will, everywhere.*

b. (to a place) demonstr. **eo**, *thither* (**huc, istuc**, and **isto, illuc** and **illo, eodem, alio**); relative and interrogative, **qvo** (**utro**, *of two*); indefinite relative, **quocunqve, qvoqvo**; indefinite, **aliqvo, usqvam** (**nusqvam, utrōqve**); indefinite universal, **qvovis, qvolibet.**

c. (from a place) demonstr. **inde**, *thence* (**hinc, istinc, illinc, indīdem, aliunde**); relative and interrog., **unde**; indef. relative, **undecunqve** (rarely **undeunde**); indefinite, **alicunde** (**utrinqve**); indefinite universal, **undiqve, undelibet.**

d. (on the road) demonstr., **eā**, *on that road* (**hac, istac, illā**, and **illac, eādem, aliā**); relative and interrogative, **qvā**; indefinite relative, **qvacunqve** (**qvaqva**); indefinite, **aliqvā**; indefinite universal, **qvavis, qvalibet.**

2. Adverbs of time: demonstr., **tum**, *then* (**tunc**); interrogative, **qvando**, *when?* (**ecqvando**, *whether ever?*); relative, **qvum**, *when, as;* indefinite relative, **qvandocunqve, qvandōqve**, *whenever;* indefinite, **aliqvando**, *once* (**qvandoqve**, rarely **qvandocunqve**), **unqvam**, *ever* (**nunqvam**, *never*).

Obs. 1. In place of the indefinite pronominal adverbs derived from **aliqvis** (**alicubi**, &c.), shorter forms, derived from **qvis**, are used after the conjunctions **ne, num, si**, and **nisi**, which are the same as the longer forms with the removal of **ali**: e.g. **necubi**, *that nowhere;* **neqvo, necunde, ne qva, ne qvando.**

Obs. 2. **Ubicunqve, qvocunqve, undecunqve** (**undeunde**), rarely occur without a relative signification, as indefinite words expressing universality.

3. Adverbs of degree: demonstr., **tam**, *so* (*so very*); relative and interrogative, **qvam**, *as, how?* indefinite relative, **qvamvis, qvamlibet**, *how much soever.*

4. Adverbs of number: demonstr., **toties**, *so often;* relative and interrogative, **qvoties** (so often) *as, how often?* indefinite relative, **qvotiescunqve**, *how often soever;* indefinite, **aliqvoties**, *sometimes.*

5. Adverbs which express way and manner: demonstr., **ita, sic**, *so, in* [illegible] *g to is* and *hic*); relative and interrogative, **ut,**

uti, *as, how?* (**qvi**, *how?*); indef. relative, **utcunqve** (**utut**). (In later writers, **qvaliter**, rarely **taliter**.)

6. Adverbs of the cause: demonstr., **eo**, *therefore;* relative, **qvod qvia**, *because;* interrogative, **cur**, *wherefore?*

From these adverbs, others are again formed by composition; e.g. **eatenus, qvatenus**, &c. (See § **202**, *Obs.*)

§ 202. Some adverbs are yet to be noticed, which denote relations of place.

a. In **o** (as in **eo, qvo**, &c.), from prepositions (or adverbs), to express motion to a place; **citro, ultro** (*to that side;* then, *of one's own accord, into the bargain*), **intro, porro** (*forwards, further*, from **pro**), **retro** (**re**).

b. In **orsum, orsus, oversum, oversus** (from **versus**), to denote a direction to one side, from pronouns and prepositions; **horsum, qvorsum, aliorsum, aliqvoversum, qvoqvoversus, prorsum**, *forwards* (**prorsus**, *completely, throughout*), **retrorsum** (**rursum, rursus**, *again*), **introrsum, sursum** (from **sub**), **deorsum, seorsum.** (**Dextrorsum, sinistrorsum.**) (**Extrinsecus**, *from without*, **intrinsecus**, *from within*, are opposites.)

c. **fariam**, *in — places, in — parts*, from numerals; **bifariam, quadrifariam**, (**multifariam**).

Obs. Some of the remaining derivative adverbs are substantives in a certain case (sometimes in an obsolete form), used with a special meaning: e.g. **partim** (old accusative from **pars**), **forte** (**fors**), **temperi, vesperi, noctu** (**nox**; **interdiu**, *by day*), **mane, foris** (**esse**, *out of the house, from home*), **foras** (**ire**, *out of doors*). Others are compounds of a case and a governing word; e.g. **hactenus, qvemadmodum** (**intereā, praetereā, propterea, anteā, posteā**, with an unusual construction). In **nudiustertius**, *the day before yesterday*, **nudiusqvartus, nudiusqvintus**, &c., words grammatically connected are fused into one by the pronunciation (**nunc dies tertius, qvartus**, &c., viz. **est**).

CHAPTER V.

THE FORMATION OF NEW WORDS BY COMPOSITION.

§ 203. By composition two words are formed into a new compound word (**verbum compositum**, as opposed to **verbum simplex**), the meaning of which is made up of the meaning of the two compounded words.

If two words are used in a fixed order to denote a single idea, but are yet syntactically combined as separate words, each with its proper grammatical form, the composition is termed spurious. Such compounds are formed from a substantive and adjective, which are both declined: e.g. **respublica**, *the state;* **jusjurandum**, *an oath*

a genitive and a governing word: e.g. **senatus-imilis**. The words thus connected may occasion-d, especially by **qve** and **ve**; **resqve publica, .ta (res vero publica)**.

genuine compounds of a verb (or participle) with a e negative **in**, the older poets occasionally separate the verb by **qve**: e.g. **inqve ligatus**, for **illigatus**-Virg.); **inqve salutatus**, for **insalutatusqve**, *un-*lo also **hactenus, eatenus, qvadamtenus**, by a word **qvadam prodire tenus** (Hor.). In prose, this s)[1] is sometimes used with the intensive **per**: e.g. **per um est; pergratum perqve jucundum**, with an .n the middle. (On **qvicunqve, qvilibet**, see § **87**,

it part of the compound may be a noun (substan-r numeral), an adverb, a preposition, or one of nich occur only in composition as prefixes. These :—

ound about), **dis**, *on different sides* (*from each other*,), *back* (*again*), **sē**, *aside*, which denote the local tion, and are commonly named inseparable preposi-**ere**, *to eat round about;* **discerpere**, *to tear in pieces;* t; **sēcedere**, *to go aside*) ; and the negative particle **in** e verbs, mostly intransitive, are found as the first ound, with **facere**; e.g. **calefacio**.

s altered into **am** in **amplector, amputo**; into **an** **anceps, anqviro.** (**Anfractus, anhēlo.**)

altered before **c** (**q**), **p**, **t** (**discedo, disqviro, dis-**and before **s** with a vowel following (**dissolvo**); similated (**differo, diffringo**) ; before the other con-ed to **di** (**dido, digero, dimitto, dinumero, diripio, ivello**; but **disjicio**, properly **disicio**; **dijungo**, and o) ; this **di** is long, but in **dirimo**, from **disemo**, the t. (Otherwise **dis** is not used before vowels.)

---

[1] **Tmesis**, *a cutting*, from τέμνω, *to cut.*

Re before vowels becomes **red** (**redarguo, redeo, redigo, redoleo, redundo, redhibeo**). (So also **sēditio**, from **se** and **eo**; in no other instance is **se** used before a vowel.) **Re** is short, but (in verse) is lengthened in **recido, religio, reliqviae** (rarely in **reduco**). In the perfect of **reperio, repello, refero,** and **retundo**, the first consonant of the verb was pronounced (and in older times also written) double; **repperi, reppuli, rettuli, rettudi** (from the reduplicated **pepuli**, &c.).

Obs. 2. The negative **in** is only compounded with adjectives and adverbs, and with some few participles, which have assumed altogether the character of adjectives: e.g. **incultus**, *uncultivated*; **indoctus**, *unlearned*; and with substantives, in order to form negative adjectives or substantives: e.g. **informis**, *shapeless, ugly*, from **forma**; **infamis** (**fama**); **injuria**, *injury*, from **jus**. It is varied before consonants like the preposition **in**. (Some compounds of participles with the negative **in** must be carefully distinguished from the participles which resemble them, from verbs compounded with the preposition **in**: e.g. **infectus**, *undone* (**in** and **factus**); and **infectus**, *dyed* (**inficio**); **indictus**, *not said*; and **indictus**, *ordered, imposed* (**indīco**). In good style, however, the negative compound of the participle is rarely used when the verb is found compounded with **in**; so that, e.g. **immixtus** signifies only *mixed* (**immisceo**); **infractus**, *broken* (**infringo**); but *unmixed, unbroken*, are expressed by **non mixtus, non fractus**.)

Obs. 3. **Ve** (of rare occurrence) has also a negative signification in **vēcors, vēgrandis, vēsanus**. In some compounds **ne** (**nec**) is made use of; e.g. **nĕqveo, nĕfas** (**nĕcopinatus, nĕgotium**).[1]

Obs. 4. It is only in composition that we find **sesqvi**, *one and a half*; e.g. **sesqvipes** (whence **sesqvipedalis**). **Semi**, from **semis** (gen. **semissis**), is used in compounds to denote *half*.

§ 205. *a.* If the first member be a noun, the second is affixed to its stem (omitting the inflectional endings, and **a** and **u** in the first, second, and fourth declensions). If the second member begins with a consonant, the connecting vowel **i** is often inserted; e.g. **causidicus, magnanimus, corniger, aedifico, lucifuga.** (**Naufragus** with a diphthong from **navis, frango.**)

Obs. 1. In some words, however, the connecting vowel is not employed; e.g. **puerpera** (**puer, pario**), **muscipula** (**mus, capio**). Hence the final consonant of the first member has been dropped in the pronunciation of some words; e.g. **lapicida** (**lapis, lapid-is**, and **caedo**), **homicida** (**homin-is**). (**Opifex**, from **opus, facio**).

---

[1] **Ne** is short in **neqveo** and **nefas**, and the words allied to it (**nefarius, nefandus, nefastus**), long in other words (**neqvam, neqvitia, neqvaqvam, neqvicqvam, nedum**). **Nec** is short.

Obs. 2. The connecting vowel o (u) is rare: **ahenobarbus**, *brazen-beard*; **Trojugena.**

Obs. 3. For the adverbs formed from adjectives, the stem of the adjectives is used, except **bene** and **male** (**svaviloqvus**, but **beneficus**).

b. In the radical syllable of the second member of a compound word,

are more frequently, but not always, changed
d the same is true of **e** in the open radical syllable
ee the examples in Chaps. XVII., XVIII., XIX.,
nious), **inermus** (**arma**). (**A** is altered to **u**
nouloo.)
ike **permăneo, contrăho, perfrĕmo, inhaereo,**
); **conŏvus.**
ord generally retains the grammatical form of the
ongs to the same class of words; e.g. **inter-rex,**
. Yet substantives and verbs sometimes vary.

l word belongs to a different class of words from
table grammatical form is given to the stem of the
us, from **male** and **dico**; **opifex**, from **opus** and
nominative ending **s.**
owever, the ending of a substantive is suitable to
ded from it: as, **crassipes**, from **crassus** and **pes**;
d **color.**
ticular derivative ending is affixed, corresponding
the new word, so that it is formed at once by
ation: e.g. **exardesco**, from **ex** and **ardeo**, with
latifundium, from **latus** and **fundus**; **Trans-**
lpes.

ound words may be referred to various classes
ous ways in which the compound signification
meaning of the simple words. These are:—

erminativa, in which the first word defines the
more exactly after the manner of an adjective
ray prepositions, prefixes, and adjectives are set
s, **cognomen, interrex, dedecus, injuria, nefas,**
uently prepositions, prefixes, and adverbs are put
erb-stems, in order to form adjectives: e.g. **sub-**
clownish; **consimilis, tercentum, beneficus,**
desuper.) A great class of verbs especially is
h prepositions (also with **amb, dis, re, se**), (see
I., XIX., XX.); rarely with adverbs (**maledico,**

satisfacio). (**Subirascor, subvereor,** *to become a little angry, to be a little afraid.*)

Obs. 1. The composition of a verb already compounded with a new preposition (by which a **vocab. decompositum** is formed) is not common in Latin, except with super; e.g. **superimpendo.** (**Recondo, abscondo, assurgo, consurgo, deperdo, dispereo, recognosco,** since **condo, surgo, perdo, pereo,** and **cognosco** are considered as simple verbs; **repercutio, repromitto, subinvideo,** *to envy a little.* A few others are found in inferior writers.)

Obs. 2. Some substantives of this class take the ending **ium,** and denote a collection, a portion; e.g. **latifundium (lati fundi), cavaedium, triennium (biduum, triduum, qvatriduum,** from **dies**). From **sexviri (seviri),** *the sixmen* (as a board), and similar words, comes the singular **sexvir,** &c., of a member of such a fraternity. (**Duumvir, triumvir,** plur. **duoviri, tresviri,** and **duumviri, triumviri.**)

b. **Composita constructa,** in which one member is considered as grammatically governed by the other: they are divided again into two classes.

1. The first member is a substantive, or a word put for a substantive, which may generally be conceived of as an accusative (object), sometimes as an ablative, governed by the second member, which is a verb. In this way are formed especially substantives, mostly personal names (without an ending affixed, or with the nominative ending **s,** or in **a, us**): e.g. **signifer (signum fero), agricola, opifex, causidicus, tubĭcen (tubā cano), tibĭcen** (for **tibiicen**), **funambulus (in fune ambulo);** also neuters in **ium, naufragium,** and some adjectives: e.g. **magnificus;** with others in **ficus, letifer,** and verbs: e.g. **belligero, animadverto, tergiversor** (with a frequentative form, and as a deponent), **amplifico, aedifico, gratificor,** from **facio.**

Obs. 1. In **stillicidium, gallicinium,** the first member is to be considered as a genitive governed by the verb (**stillarum casus**).

Obs. 2. Compounds are formed in a similar way from an intransitive verb-stem and **facio**: e.g. **calefacio,** *to cause to be warm* (**caleo,** *to warm*); **tremefacio, expergefacio,** *to awake* (trans.); **assvefacio,** *to accustom to a thing.*[1] (**Condocefacio, commonefacio, perterrefacio,** from transitive verbs, only express the agency more emphatically.)

2. The first member is a preposition, the second a substantive or a word put for a substantive, which is to be conceived of as governed by the preposition. Thus are formed, — 1. adjectives: e.g. **intercus (aqva),** particularly by adding the endings **anus, inus, aneus** (e.g. **antesignanus, Transpadanus, suburbanus, Transtiberinus, circum-**

[1] For the sake of the versification, the poets sometimes have **tepēfacio, liqvēfit,** &c., instead of **tepĕfacio, liqvĕfit,** &c.

foraneus); 2. verbs of the first, more rarely of the fourth, conjugation, which denote to bring into a given relation: e.g. **segregare** (*to bring away from the* **grex**), **insinuare** (**in sinum**), **irretire** (**in rete**), **erudire** (*to bring out of rudeness*). The verbs, however, which are so formed with **ex**, often denote only to make into something: e.g. **effeminare, explanare, efferare** (§ **193**, *Obs.* 1, § **194**, *Obs.* 1).

c. **Composita possessiva**, which are adjectives compounded of an adjective (numeral, participle), a substantive, or a preposition, for their first member, and a substantive for their second, and denote in what way some subject *has* that which is expressed by the last member of the compound word: e.g. **crassipes** (*one that has thick feet, thickfoot, thick-footed*), **qvadripes, alipes** (*wingfooted*), **trimestris** (*three-monthly, what has three months*), **concolor** (*of a like color*), **concors, affinis** (*that which has its boundary on something*); **decolor** (*that which has no color, colorless*), **exsors** (*for which there is no lot*), **expers, enervis, informis** (*which is without form, shapeless, ugly*), **inermus**, *unarmed*.

Obs. 1. If the substantive belongs to the third declension, adjectives of one ending are formed (**concors, excors**, &c., with a nominative ending; **bimaris**, of two endings); from substantives of the first and second declensions are formed adjectives in **us**, as **bifurcus**; but frequently also in **is**, if the preceding syllable be long by position: **elingvis, enervis** (**bicornis**). In some the ending is variable. See § **59**, *Obs.* 3.

Obs. 2. In the numerals in **decim** the two members are added.

SYNTAX.

RULES FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.

§ 207. SYNTAX teaches how words are combined to make connected discourse. The inflections of words are employed, partly to show how the words in a proposition are mutually related and connected (First part of the Syntax), partly to define the relations of the whole proposition; viz., the mode of the assertion, and the time of the fact asserted (Second part). Besides the inflections, the succession and order of the words and propositions also serve to give precision to discourse (Third part).

OBS. In Latin, as in other languages, the regular order of the words is sometimes changed, because attention is paid rather to the sense than to the words and their grammatical form. This is called **constructio ad sententiam, synesim.** Sometimes, too, a convenient rather than a strictly accurate form of expression is aimed at. The irregularities hence arising, which, in some cases, have become established by use, may generally be reduced to three kinds, either to an abbreviated form of expression (**ellipsis**), where something is omitted which the mind must supply, or to a superfluous expression (**pleonasmus**) [2] or to attraction (**attractio**), where the form of one word is determined by another, though not standing in exactly the same relation. Such peculiarities of expression are sometimes termed figures of speech, or figures of syntax, to distinguish them from rhetorical figures of speech, which do not affect the *grammatical* form.

---

[1] The Greek word *σύνταξις* denotes *a joining* or *arranging together.*

[2] *Ἔλλειψις, deficiency; πλεονασμός, redundancy.*

PART FIRST.

THE COMBINATION OF WORDS IN A PROPOSITION.

CHAPTER I.

THE PARTS OF A PROPOSITION. AGREEMENT OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

§ 208. *a.* Discourse consists of propositions. A proposition is a combination of words, which asserts (or requires) something (an action, condition, or quality) of another. A complete proposition consists of two principal parts: *the subject*, or that of which something is asserted; and *the predicate*, or that which is asserted of the subject.[1] It is in some cases unnecessary to designate the subject by a separate word, since the ending of the verb often indicates it; e.g. **eo**, *I go.*

Obs. 1. An action may be said to take place without being referred to a definite subject (impersonally). See § 218.

Obs. 2. Sometimes a proposition is not fully stated, because the words which are not expressed may easily be understood from the context, as, for example, in answers.

b. The subject of a proposition is expressed by a substantive (or several substantives combined), or another word used as a substantive; viz., either a pronoun: e.g. **ego**; or an adjective, which names persons or things according to some particular quality: e.g. **boni**, *the good;* **bona**, *good things, what is good;* or by an infinitive: e.g. **vinci turpe est**; or by any word used only to denote its own sound and form: e.g. **vides habet duas syllabas**, (the word) **vides** *has two syllables.*

---

[1] **Subjectum** (subjicio), properly what is laid underneath, *the foundation* (*the subject of the discourse*); **praedicatum**, from **praedicare**, *to assert.*

Obs. 1. Something may also be asserted of the contents of a whole proposition, and it may therefore stand for the subject, having its predicate in the neuter gender; e.g. **qvod domum emisti, gratum mihi est.**

Obs. 2. If the subject be a personal pronoun, it is usually omitted, being known from the ending of the verb: e.g. **curro, curris**; in the same way, **is**, *he*, as the subject, is often omitted. (See §§ **321**, **482**, and **484**, *a*.)

Obs. 3. In the imperative proposition in the second person, the predicate is not combined with the subject, but is addressed to the subject, the name of which may be added in the vocative.

§ 209. *a*. The predicate consists either of a verb (whether active or passive), which by itself denotes a definite action, condition, or character: e.g. **arbor crescit, arbor viret, arbor caeditur** (simple predicate); or of a verb which does not in itself denote a definite action, condition, or character, and an adjective (participle) or substantive with it as a predicate noun, by which the subject is defined and described: e.g. **urbs est splendida; deus est auctor mundi** (resolved predicate).

Obs. 1. A substantive or adjective, used as a predicate noun, may sometimes be represented in the predicate by a neuter demonstrative or relative pronoun; e.g. **Nec tamen ille erat sapiens, qvis enim hoc fuit?** (Cic. Fin. IV. 24.) **Qvod ego fui ad Trasimenum, id tu hodie es** (Liv. XXX. 30). The adverbs **satis, abunde, nimis, parum,** may be used as predicate nouns.

Obs. 2. On the supplying of the verb from the context, and its omission by ellipsis, see §§ **478, 479.**

b. Besides **sum**, those verbs are also used as incomplete in themselves, and are therefore combined with a predicate noun, which denote to *become*, and to *remain* (**fio, evado, maneo**); as well as the passives of many others, signifying to *name*, to *make*, to *hold*, or *consider*, &c., which are completed by the simple addition of the words which denote what a thing is named, what it is made, and for what it is held; e g.: —

Caesar creatus est consul; Aristides habitus est justissimus.
(See § **221**, and, on the active of these verbs, § **227**.)

Obs. 1. It is not quite correct to call **sum** the copula, and the subjoined word alone the predicate.

Obs. 2. Instead of being joined to a predicate noun in the nominative, **esse** may be combined with some other expression, which serves to de-

scribe or define, as, for instance, with a genitive; **esse alicujus, esse magni pretii**, *of great value*, **pluris**; or with a preposition and its case, or with an adverb of place, to denote the place or relation in which a thing is: **esse in Gallia, in magno timore, prope esse, praesto esse.** (**Esse pro hoste**, *to be accounted an enemy*.) Sometimes, also, in familiar language, **sum** is used with an adverb which denotes way and manner (**ita, sic, ut**), instead of an adjective; e.g. **Ita sum, sic est vita hominum** (= **talis**). So also we find the expressions, **recte sunt omnia** (*all is well*); more rarely, **inceptum frustra fuit, impune fuit.** The following are used impersonally: **ita est, sic est**, *so it is*; **contra est**; **bene est**, *it is well*; **melius est alicui**, *some one is better off*. **Esse** is used as a verb of complete and independent meaning, signifying *to exist*; **est Deus.** The other verbs above cited may also be used with a complete and independent meaning; e.g. **Verres ab omnibus nominatur.**

Obs. 3. Some verbs express only a relation to an action or suffering, which action is then given by the addition of another verb in the infinitive, the predicate thus becoming more complex: e.g. **cogito proficisci; cupio haberi bonus; videor esse magnus** (often, **videor magnus**).

§ 210. *a.* The predicate may be more definitely limited by adverbs, and by substantives or words used substantively, which give the object and circumstances of the action; e.g. **Caesar Pompejum magno praelio vicit.**[1]

b. A substantive may be connected in a certain relation with another substantive in order to define it more accurately; e.g. **pater patriae.** To every substantive also there may be added other substantives descriptive of the same person or thing, to define or characterize it more closely; e.g. **Tarqvinius, rex Romanorum.** The subjoining of these is called apposition, and that which is subjoined is said to be in apposition.

c. To every substantive may be added adjectives (participles), which may be again defined by a substantive in a certain case; e.g. **vir utilis civitati svae**, *a man useful to his state.*

Obs. An adjective, which is immediately connected with the substantive, is called *attributive* (**vir bonus**), to distinguish it from that which is used as a predicate with the verb **sum**; **vir est bonus.**

§ 211. *a.* The verb of the predicate agrees in number and person with the subject: **pater aegrotat; ego valeo; nos dolemus; vos gaudetis.**

---

[1] Objectum from objicio, that which is placed over against the action and exposed to it.

Obs. 1. We must here remark of the *first* person, that, in Latin, a man sometimes speaks of himself in the first person plural (see § **483**; and of the *second*, that, in certain kinds of propositions, the second person singular of the verb in the subjunctive is used of a hypothetical subject in the same way as *you* is often employed in English. See § **370**, and § **494**, *Obs.* 5. (On the phrase, **uterqve nostrum veniet**, see § **284**, *Obs.* 3.)

Obs. 2. The third person plural is sometimes used without a definite subject to denote a common saying (**ajunt, dicunt, ferunt, narrant**, &c.), or the general use of a term (**appellant, vocant**), or a general opinion (**putant, credunt**), and also, when the verb **vulgo** is introduced, to express what persons in general do; **Vulgo ex oppidis gratulabantur Pompejo** (Cic. Tusc. I. 35). **Saturnum maxime vulgo colunt ad occidentem** (Id. N. D. III. 17).

b. The predicate adjective or participle agrees with the subject in number, gender, and case; in the same way every adjective (partic.) is regulated by the substantive with which it is connected: —

Feminae timidae sunt. Hujus hominis actiones malae sunt, consilia pejora.

A personal or reflective pronoun used as a subject has the gender which belongs to the name of the person or thing for which it stands; **Vos** (*you women*) **laetae estis.**

Obs. 1. A neuter predicate adjective may be joined to a subject of the masculine or feminine gender, to denote a *being of a certain class* in general (substantively); e.g. **varium et mutabile semper femina** (Virg. Æn. IV. 569), *woman is always a changeable and inconsistent being;* **varia et mutabilis s. fem.**, *a woman is always changeable and inconsistent.* **Turpitudo pejus est** (*something worse*) **qvam dolor** (Cic. Tusc. II. 13).

Obs. 2. If the subject has for its predicate a personal name, which has a distinct form for the masculine and feminine gender, that form is preferred which corresponds to the gender of the subject: **Stilus est optimus dicendi magister; philosophia est magistra vitae.** The same rule applies to apposition; e.g. **moderatɔr cupiditatis pudor** (Cic.). **Effectrix beatae vitae sapientia** (Cic.). (But **Qvid dicam de thesauro omnium rerum memoria?** Cicero de Or. I. 5.)

§ 212. If two or more subjects of different persons are spoken of at the same time, the verb is in the first person plural, if one of the subjects is of this person; and with the second, if one of the subjects is of this and none of the first person: —

Ego et uxor ambulavimus; tu et uxor tua ambulavistis. Haec neqve ego neqve tu fecimus. (Ter. Ad. I. 2, 23.)

Obs. 1. If two subjects have the same verb, and this is predicated of each of them separately, and with the addition of different circumstances, the predicate is put in the plural where it is intended to give prominence to what is common and similar in the two transactions: **Ego te poëtis (=apud poëtas), Messala antiqvariis criminabimur** (Dial. de Orat. 42). But where a contrast is to be forcibly expressed, the predicate is usually regulated by the nearest subject: e.g. **Ego sententiam, tu verba defendis.** So, also, sometimes, with **et — et**: e.g. **et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit** (Cicero ad Att. IV. 17); and always so, when, to a single defined individual, there is added a general designation of others, who are in no way related to him: **Et tu et omnes homines sciunt** (Cicero ad Fam. XIII. 8).

Obs. 2. When the predicate is placed with the first subject, and the others follow, the first only is regarded; e.g. **Et ego hoc video et vos et illi.**

§ 213. *a.* Two or more connected subjects of the third person singular take the predicate (1) in the plural, if importance be attached to the number as well as to the connection, *which is generally the case with living beings:* —

Castor et Pollux ex eqvis pugnare visi sunt (Cic. N. D. II. 2); **pater et avus mortui sunt** (*both of them*).

Also, when persons and things are connected; **Syphax regnumqve ejus in potestate Romanorum erant** (Liv. XXVIII. 18).

2. In the singular, when the subjects are considered collectively as a whole; e.g.: —

Senatus populusqve Romanus intelligit (Cic. ad Fam. V. 8). This is often the case with things and impersonal ideas, one idea being expressed by several words, or several ideas, which are connected, being considered as one: e.g. **Tempus necessitasqve postulat** (Cic. Off. I. 23). **Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae** (Id. Off. III. 11). **Divitias gloria, imperium, potentia seqvebatur** (Sall. Cat. 12).

But when the things and ideas are expressed as distinct and opposed, the verb stands in the plural: e.g. **Jus et injuria natura dijudicantur** (Cic. Legg. I. 16). **Mare magnum et ignara (=ignota) lingva commercia prohibebant** (Sall. Jug. 18).

Obs. 1. Sometimes, when the subjects are personal appellations, the verb is used in the singular, because each individual is thought of separately, and the verb drawn to the nearest subject: e.g. **Et proavus L.**

Murenae et avus praetor fuit (Cic. pro Mur. 7).[1] **Orgetorigis filia et unus e filiis captus est** (Cæs. B. G. I. 26). This occurs especially when the verb precedes: **Dixit hoc apud vos Zosippus et Ismenias** (Cic. Verr. IV. 42); otherwise, very rarely.

b. When subjects of the singular and plural (in the third person) are connected, and the predicate stands nearest that in the singular, the verb may also be put in the singular, provided that this subject is made more particularly prominent or considered separately; otherwise, the verb is in the plural; e.g.:—

Ad corporum sanationem multum ipsa corpora et natura valet (Cic. Tusc. III. 3). **Hoc mihi et Peripatetici et vetus Academia concedit** (Cic. Acad. II. 35). **Consulem prodigia atqve eorum procuratio Romae tenuerunt** (Liv. XXXII. 9).

Obs. 1. If the subjects are connected by the disjunctive particle **aut**, the predicate is sometimes regulated (both in gender and number) by the nearest subject; sometimes, it is put in the plural: **Probarem hoc, si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret** (Cic. Tusc. V. 9). **Non, si qvid Socrates aut Aristippus contra consvetudinem civilem fecerunt, idem ceteris licet** (Id. Off. I. 41). But with **aut — aut vel — vel, neqve — neqve**, the predicate is almost always regulated by the nearest subject: e.g. **In hominibus juvandis aut mores spectari aut fortuna solet** (Cic. Off. II. 20). **Nihil mihi novi neqve M. Crassus neqve Cn. Pompejus ad dicendum reliqvit** (Cic. pro Balbo, 7). The plural occurs very seldom: **Nec justitia nec amicitia esse omnino poterunt nisi ipsae per se expetantur** (Cic. Fin. III. 21); except when the subjects are of different persons; for then the plural is generally employed (according to § **212**): **Haec neqve ego neqve tu fecimus** (Ter.).

Obs. 2. If the subjects are not connected by conjunctions, but the sentence is divided into several clauses by the repetition of a word (**anaphora**), the predicate is found both in the singular (as referring to the nearest clause) and (more rarely) in the plural: **Nihil libri, nihil litterae, nihil doctrina prodest** (Cic. ad Att. IX. 10). **Qvid ista repentina affinitatis conjunctio, qvid ager Campanus, qvid effusio pecuniae significant?** (Cic. ad Att. II. 17).

§ 214. *a.* If the subjects connected are of different gender, the adjective or participle of the predicate is regulated in gender, provided the singular be used (§ **213**, *a*, 2) by the nearest subject;

---

[1] **Et Q. Maximus et L. Paullus et M. Cato iis temporibus fuerunt** (Cic. ad Fam. IV. 6), *all lived at that time.*

Obs. 2. If several adjectives are attached to a substantive in such a way as to suggest the notion of *several* different things of the same name, the substantive is put either in the singular or plural; but if it be the subject, it always takes a plural predicate: **Legio Martia qvartaqve rempublicam defendunt** (Cic. Phil. V. 17); **prima et vicesima legiones** (Tac. Ann. I. 31). In the same way, it is also said of two men with a common name: **Cn. et P. Scipiones** (Cic. pro Balb. 15); more rarely, **Ti. et C. Gracchus** (Sall. Jug. 42); but **Cn. Scipio et L. Scipio**.

Obs. 3. (On §§ **212–214**). In some few instances it happens that regard is paid, in the treatment of the predicate, only to the more remote subject as the essential one, to which the nearer is only supplementary; e.g. **Ipse meiqve vescor** (Hor. S. II. 6, 66).

§ 215. The nature and character of the subject are sometimes more regarded in the predicate than the grammatical form of the word employed.

a. With collective nouns used of living beings, some prose-writers, and the poets occasionally, join a plural predicate of the gender to which the individuals belong, but only in the case of substantives which denote an undefined number (a crowd, number, heap, part), as **pars, vis, multitudo: Desectam segetem magna vis hominum immissa in pars — pars** (*some — others*), **uterqve**, the superlative with **quisqve, agrum fudere in Tiberim** (Liv. II. 5). **Pars perexigua, duce amisso, Romam inermes delati sunt** (Liv. II. 14). In this way (**optimus quisqve**), are sometimes used with the plural: e.g. **Uterque eorum exercitum ex castris educunt** (Caes. B. C. III. 30). **Delecti nobilissimus quisqve** (Liv. VII. 19).

Obs. With substantives which denote an organized whole (**exercitus, classis**, &c.), such a plural predicate is only found by a negligence in the expression; e.g. **Cetera classis, praetoria nave amissa, qvantum qvaeqve remis valuit fugerunt** (Liv. XXXV. 26). We must not confound with this use of the predicate in the plural, the employment of the plural verb in a subordinate proposition, with reference to the individuals which are denoted in the leading proposition by a collective word: **Hic uterqve me intuebatur seseqve ad audiendum significabant paratos** (Cic. Fin. II. 1). **Idem humano generi evenit, qvod in terra collocati sunt** (sc. **homines**) (Id. N. D. II. 6).

b. If male persons are denoted figuratively by feminine or neuter substantives, the predicate is, notwithstanding, sometimes added in the natural gender: **Capita conjurationis virgis caesi ac securi percussi sunt** (Liv. X. 1); so also occasionally with **millia**: **Millia triginta servilium capitum dicuntur capti** (Liv. XXVII. 16).

coeperunt (Caes. B. G. II. 26), *as they helped one another*. **Pro se qvisqve dextram ejus amplexi grates habebant** (Curt. III. 16). Sometimes, however, the predicate agrees with word in apposition: **Pictores et poetae suum qvisque opus a vulgo considerari vult** (Cic. Off. I. 41). **His oratoribus duae res maximae altera alteri defuit** (Cic. Brut. 55). Especially when a division and contrast are denoted by **alter — alter**, or by the special names of the individual subjects; **Duo consules ejus anni, alter morbo, alter ferro periit** (Liv. XLI. 22).

Obs. 2. When another substantive is connected with the subject by **qvam** (**tantum, qvantum**) or **nisi** (in comparisons or exceptions), the predicate, if it follows the word so subjoined, often agrees with it: e.g. **magis pedes qvam arma Numidas tutata sunt** (Sall. Jug. 74). **Me non tantum litterae qvantum longinqvitas temporis mitigavit** (Cic. ad Fam. VI. 4). **Qvis illum consulem nisi latrones putant** (Id. Phil. IV. 4). (This is unusual, if a resemblance only is denoted by a word subjoined with **ut** or **tanqvam**.)

§ 218. An impersonal proposition, by which the existence of an action or relation is asserted, without being referred, as predicate, to any noun for its subject, is formed in Latin as follows: —

a. By the purely impersonal verbs (enumerated in § **166**).

Obs. 1. Those verbs which denote the weather, especially **tonat, fulgurat, fulminat**, are also predicated personally of the god (Jupiter), who is conceived of as the author of the tempest, as well as figuratively of others; e.g. **tonare**, of orators. (**Dies illucescit.**)

Obs. 2. With the verbs **libet, licet, piget, pudet, poenitet, taedet**, we sometimes find a neuter pronoun in the singular used as a subject, to point out what produces the feeling expressed by the verb: e.g. **sapientis est proprium nihil, qvod poenitere possit, facere** (Cic. Tusc. V. 28). **Non, qvod qvisqve potest, ei licet** (Id. Phil. XIII. 6). (Occasionally even in the plural: **Non te haec pudent?** Ter. Ad. IV. 7, 36. **In servum omnia licent**, Senec. de Clem. I. 18.) With these exceptions, what produces the feeling is expressed by the addition of a case (the genitive, see § **292**), by the infinitive, the accusative with the infinitive, a proposition with **quod**, or by an indirect question; each of which supplies the place of a subject, but is not the grammatical subject.

Obs. 3. On the way in which the person is expressed with **miseret**, &c., see § **226**; with **libet, licet**, § **244**, *a*. The gerund of **pudet** and **poenitet** is occasionally used as if from a personal verb, signifying, *I am ashamed, I repent:* e.g. **Non pudendo, sed non faciendo id, qvod non decet, impudentiae nomen fugere debemus** (Cic. Or. I. 26).

CHAPTER II.

THE RELATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES IN THE PROPOSITION; THE CASES; THE NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

§ 219. The relation in which a substantive, or a word used as a substantive (pronoun, adjective, participle), stands to the other parts of a proposition, is denoted by its Case (sometimes with the help of a preposition).

Substantives standing in the same relation stand also in the same case; viz.: —

a. The word which has another in apposition with it, and the word in apposition: **Hic liber est Titi, fratris tui; Tito, fratri tuo, viro optimo, librum dedi.**

b. Words which are connected by conjunctions, or by enumeration, or division and antithesis; e.g. **Gajus laudis, Titus lucri cupidus est.**

c. The word with which a question is put, and that with which the answer is given (if in the answer there is only the name of the person or thing in question): e.g. **Qvis hoc fecit? Titus** (sc. **fecit**). **Cujus haec domus est? Titi et Gaji, fratrum meorum. Cui librum dedisti? Tito, fratri tuo.**

Obs. 1. If a word in the accusative, dative, ablative, or genitive, be subjoined to another word, in order to complete and define its meaning, we say that the former is *governed* by the latter (as its *object*). If a word generally takes other words in a particular case, — e.g. the dative, — in order to define it, we say that it is *constructed* with, or governs this case. Since the construction depends on the signification of the governing word, and this occasionally varies, the same word may be differently constructed, according to its different significations.

Obs. 2. If a word in a certain signification may be constructed with two different cases, — e.g. **similis rei alicujus,** and **rei alicui,** — we sometimes, but rarely, find the two constructions in the same sentence united by a conjunction, or in antithesis: **Stoici plectri similem lingvam solent dicere, chordarum dentes, nares cornibus iis, qvae ad nervos resonant in cantibus** (Cic. N. D. II. 59). (**Adhibenda est qvaedam reverentia adversus homines, et optimi cujusqve et reliqvorum,** Cic. Off. I. 28.)

Obs. 3. The introduction of **dico,** *I mean,* does not affect the construction of a word in apposition: **Qvam hesternus dies nobis, consularibus dico, turpis illuxit!** (Cic. Phil. VIII. 7.)

Caesar fuit magnus imperator. T. Albucius perfectus Epicureus evaserat (Cic. Brut. 35).[1]

The passives of verbs of *naming*, *creating*, *accounting* (see § **227**), which, to complete their signification, require the addition of words which shall show how the subject is *named* or *accounted*, or what it is *created*, are followed simply by those required words in the nominative: **Numa creatus est rex. Aristides habitus est justissimus.**

§ 222. The Accusative in itself only denotes that a word is not the subject; but further than this, like the nominative, it specifies no particular relation. The *Object of transitive verbs*, or the person or thing to which the action of the subject is directly applied, is put in the accusative: **Caesar vicit Pompejum; teneo librum.** The object may be turned into the subject, and the same verb predicated of it in the passive; in which case the agent (which in the active proposition was the subject) is subjoined with **a** or **ab**: **Pompejus a Caesare victus est; liber a me tenetur.**

Obs. 1. (On §§ **221** and **222**). What is predicated of the subject as an action, may be predicated of the object as suffering, so that this takes the place of the subject. The accusative is the original word, unlimited and unrelated. In the masculine and feminine, a peculiar form — the nominative — has been devised, in order to denote the word as a subject (or a predicate noun); but, in the neuter, the accusative and nominative are identical. The accusative, therefore (as an absolute form of the noun introduced), is in the most simple way to define and complete the predicate expressed in the verb. In the indefinite infinitive expression, where the connection between the subject and predicate is not of itself asserted, the subject and the predicate noun stand in the accusative: e.g. **hominem currere**, *that a man runs*; **esse dominum**, *to be lord*. See § **394**, and § **388**, *b*.

Obs. 2. In the case of some verbs, which may be limited in the active, by means of the preposition **ab**, — e.g. **postulare aliqvid ab aliqvo**, — it may sometimes be doubtful, in the passive, whether **ab** has the same signification as with the active verb, or whether it denotes the agent; e.g. **postulatur a me** may signify either, *others demand of me*, or, *I demand*.

Obs. 3. With reference to the use of the passive, it is to be observed, that it is often employed in Latin, where, in English, an active transitive is used, with the reflective pronoun expressed or understood, because the action is conceived of, not so much as proceeding from the subject as some-

---

[1] **Evado** denotes a result which is produced or attained after a considerable time.

c. Many verbs that are properly intransitive sometimes assume a transitive signification: e.g. several, which denote a state of mind, or its expression as occasioned by something; as, —

Doleo, *I am pained;* **lugeo**, *I mourn;* **doleo, lugeo, aliqvid**, *I lament something:* **horreo**, *I tremble, shudder;* **horreo aliqvid**, *I am alarmed at something;* **miror, qveror, aliqvid**, *I wonder at, complain of something;* **gemo, lacrimo, lamentor, fleo, ploro aliqvid**, *I weep for something;* **rideo aliqvid**, *I laugh at something;* so likewise **maneo (te triste manet supplicium**, *awaits thee*, Virg.),[1] **crepo** (e.g. **militiam**, *to be always talking of*); **depereo aliqvem**, *to be in love with one;* **navigo mare**, *I navigate the sea;* **salto Turnum**, *I dance Turnus* (represent him by dancing); **erumpo stomachum in aliqvem** (*pour out my bile*).

These peculiarities of different verbs must be learned by practice, and from the dictionary. The poets have used several verbs transitively, which are never so used in prose.[2]

Obs. 1. The passive, however, in prose is used only of a few such verbs as have clearly assumed a transitive meaning. We say, **rideor**, *I am laughed at;* but **doleo, horreo**, never have the passive, except in the gerundive, **horrendus**, *horrible.*

Obs. 2. We must particularly notice the accusative with **olere, redolere**, *to smell of*, i.e. *to have the smell of;* **sapere, resipere**, *to have the taste of;* e.g. **olere vinum**, *to smell of wine.* In the same way, it is said, **sitire sangvinem; anhelare scelus** (*to breathe out wickedness*); **spirare tribunatum** (*to have one's mind full of the tribuneship*); **vox hominem sonat** (*sounds like that of a man.* Never in the passive).

Obs. 3. The poets often go very far in giving intransitive verbs a transitive signification: e.g. in expressions like **resonare lucos cantu** (Virg.), *to make the groves re-echo with song;* **instabant Marti currum** (Virg.), *they labored diligently at a car;* **stillare rorem ex oculis** (Hor.), **manare poëtica mella** (Id.), *to drop, let flow.* They also form a passive from such expressions: e.g. **triumphatae gentes** (Virg., in prose **triumphare de hoste**); **nox vigilata** (Ov.).[3]

Obs. 4. The accusative of a substantive of the same stem, or at least of corresponding signification, may stand with verbs which are otherwise not used transitively, usually with the addition of an adjective or pronoun: e.g. **vitam tutiorem vivere, justam servitutem servire, insanire similem errorem** (Hor.). **Ego patres vestros vivere arbitror,**

---

[1] **Manere**, however, is also constructed with the dative, *to remain to a person.* So likewise, **res aliqvem latet**, and less frequently, **alicui.**

[2] **Mediasqve fraudes**
Palluit audax (Hor. Od. III. 27. 27).

[3] **Regnata Laconi rura Phalanto** (Hor. Od. II. 612).

invado are constructed both with the simple accusative and with the preposition repeated (**ingredi urbem** and **in urbem; ingredi iter, magistratum,** *to enter upon;* **invadere in hostem,** Cic.; **hostis invaditur,** Sall.); usually **irrumpo in urbem, insilio in eqvum,** but also **irrumpo urbem, insilio eqvum** (not in the passive). **Incessit** (from **incedo**; see § **138**) **timor patres** and **cura patribus** (dat.). Other verbs with **in** (e.g. **incido, incurro, involo, innato**) are used only rarely and poetically with the accusative instead of with **in** or the dative.

c. **Excedo, egredior,** *to overstep;* e.g. **fines.**

Obs. In the signification *to go out*, these verbs are mostly constructed with **ex,** as also commonly **elabor; evado,** *to slip from, escape.* Concerning **excedo, egredior,** with the simple ablative, see § **262.** (The passive of **excedo** and **evado** is not used. **Exeo,** with the accus., — e.g. **modum,** — is poetical.)

d. **Antevenio,** *to be beforehand with;* **antegredior,** *to go before.* The verbs **antecedo, anteeo, antecello, praesto,** *to excel,* are constructed both with the dative and the accusative, but most frequently with the former (not in the passive).

Obs. **Excello** is used with the dative (**excellere ceteris**), or without a case (**inter omnes**).

§ 225. Those verbs which denote *presence in a place* (**jaceo, sedeo, sto**) govern the accusative when they are compounded with **circum; Multa me pericula circumstant.** (Concerning the compounds with **ad,** see § **245,** *Obs.* 2.)

Obs. We must separately notice **obsideo** (with its signification entirely changed; *to besiege*). Of other compound verbs, which convey no idea of space, and yet become transitive by composition, we may notice **allatro, alloqvor, impugno, oppugno,** and **expugno.** (**Attendo aliqvid**; e.g. **versum,** and **aliqvem, attendo animum ad aliqvid, praeeo verba, carmen.**)

§ 226. With the impersonal verbs **piget, pudet, poenitet, taedet (pertaesum est), miseret,** the name of the person whose mind is affected stands as an object in the accusative (but that which excites the emotion, in the genitive): e.g. **pudet regem facti; miseret nos hominis; solet vos beneficiorum poenitere.** In the same way **decet,** *it beseems, becomes,* and **dedecet,** govern the accusative; e.g. **Oratorem irasci minime decet.**

Obs. Transitive verbs which are used impersonally retain the accusative; e.g. **non me fallit (fugit, praeterit),** *it does not escape my attention.*

§ 227. Some verbs, which do not in themselves denote a complete action, take, besides the object itself, the accusative of a sub-

constitutes a predicate of the object,
ɔtion of the verb. (Strictly speaking,
ɜsition to the object.) In the passive,
mplete with the predicate noun in the
)9. Such verbs are the following: —

: *to make* (to choose, nominate), *to have*
me, &c.), as **facio, efficio, reddo, creo,**
ıntio, dico, &c., do, sumo, capio, in-
thing is made, &c., is subjoined to these
itia homines caecos reddit.[1] **Meso-**
ıphrates (Cic. N. D. II. 52). **Scipio**
ım efficere (Id. Lael. 20). **Populus**
reavit (jussit, Liv.). **Ciceronem una**
ımanus consulem declaravit (Cic. de
Claudius libertinorum filios senatores
cum in consulatu collegam habuit.
edit adjutorem. Augustus Tiberium
is ascivit.

· to *show one's self as something*, to find a
:.g. **Praesta te virum** (Cic.). **Rex se**
pnosces me tuae dignitatis fautorem
ill promote your dignity).

fy to *name* and to *look upon* or *esteem*
ppello, voco, nomino, dico, saluto, &c.,
duco, existimo, numero, judico, and
consilium reipublicae Romani appel-
librum aliqvem Laelium inscripsit.
judicavit. Te judicem aeqvum puto
ırum honestum? *What does Epicurus*
es he understand by virtue? (Cic. de Fin.

ao are used in this signification mostly in
ɾus est justissimus; nolo existimari
ɜere aliqvem pro hoste (*to treat him as*
; **in hostium numero habere; parentis**
re) aliqvem.

---

[1] **positive; but not in the passive, where fieri alone is**

Obs. 2. **Puto, existimo, judico, duco,** *to think, believe, hold* (that a thing is so and so), are followed by an infinitive proposition. **Credor,** used in the way here mentioned (*to be looked upon as something*), is poetical; **credor sangvinis auctor** (Ovid).

Obs. 3. If several objects, differing in gender or number, are combined with one of these verbs, the predicate noun, if it be an adjective or participle, is regulated according to the rules given in §§ **213** and **214.**

Obs. 4. A predicate noun may also be subjoined to the passive participle of these verbs: e.g. **Marius hostis judicatus,** *Marius who was declared an enemy;* and (although rarely) in other cases besides the nominative and accusative, e.g. in the ablative: **Filio suo magistro eqvitum creato** (Liv. IV. 46), *when he had named his son* **mag. eqv. Consulibus certioribus factis** (Liv. XLV. 21, from **certiorem facio,** *to apprise*); and in the dative: **Remisit tamen Octavianus Antonio hosti judicato amicos omnes** (Svet. Oct. 17).

§ 228. Some few words, all of which have for their object a person (or something considered as a person), may take another accusative, to denote a more remote object of the action; viz.: —

a. **Doceo,** *to teach* one a thing; **edoceo,** *to inform, acquaint with;* **dedoceo,** *to cause* one *to unlearn* a thing (make one break off); **celo,** *to keep* one *in ignorance of* a thing (conceal): e.g. **docere aliqvem litteras. Non celavi te sermonem hominum** (Cic.). But we find also the construction, **docere aliqvem de aliqva re,** signifying *to acquaint with something;* and **celare aliqvem de aliqva re.**

Obs. In the passive, the accusative may be retained with **doceo (doceri motus Ionicos,** Hor.; **L. Marcius sub Cn. Scipione omnes militiae artes edoctus fuerat,** Liv.), especially with the participle (**doctus iter melius,** Hor.; **edoctus iter hostium,** Tac.); but the more usual expression is **discere aliqvid (doceri de aliqva re,** *to be informed*). (Also, **doctus Graecis litteris,** *skilled in Greek;* **doceo aliqvem Graece loqvi; Graece loqvi docendus.**) The accusative of a neuter pronoun may stand with **celor** (e.g. **Hoc nos celatos non oportuit,** Ter. Hec. IV. 4, 23); otherwise, it is expressed **celor de re aliqva.**[1]

b. **Posco (reposco); flagito,** *to demand* something from one; **oro,** *to pray for* something; **rogo,** *to ask;* **interrogo (percontor),** *to ask* one about a thing: **Verres parentes pretium pro sepultura liberum**

---

[1] **Docere aliqvem Latine, Graece (scire, nescire, oblivisci Latine, Graece); docere aliqvem fidibus** (*to teach one to play on a stringed instrument*). With a simple accusative of the thing in the signification *to lecture on,* **trado (philosophiam trado)** is used in preference to **doceo.**

Caesar frumentum Aeduos flagitabat
si regem auxilia orabant (Liv. XXVIII.
sententiam rogavit (Cic. ad Q. Fr. II. 1).
trica qvaedam interrogat (Cic. Tusc. I.
, interrogatus sententiam (and in the
hing is desired of me).

posco, flagito aliqvid ab aliqvo (as we
liqvid ab aliqvo). (**Precor deos, ut.**)
merely with the name of the thing wished
em orare. These verbs have especially
ect desired is expressed by the neuter of a
vod me rogas), or of a numeral adjective
§ 224). The same holds of **rogo**; **inter-**
ive a substantive as the accusative of the
to call upon a person to say something:
ium; with this exception, **interrogo de**
ely used in this way. (**Si qvis meum te**
r. Ep. I. 20, 26), commonly **percontor**
, or **percontor aliqvid ex aliqvo.**

so notice the expression, **velle aliqvem**
a person; e.g. **qvid me vis?**

ıter of a pronoun (**id, hoc, illud, idem,**
, aliqvid, qvidpiam, qvidqvam, qvid-
of a numeral adjective (**unum, multa,**
ined to intransitive verbs, to denote, not
ompass and extent of the action (in gen-

ral verbs which denote a state of mind and
glorior, irascor, succenseo, assentior,
ccurate definition is often annexed to the
ause. (The pronoun belongs properly to
ied in the verb itself; e.g. **hoc glorior** =
the object of the verb is to be expressed by
or a preposition, must be employed: e.g.
re rebus tibi assentior.) **Vellem idem**
s (Cic. Cat. M. 10), strictly, *to boast the*
hing. **Utrumqve laetor, et sine dolore**
o valuisse (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 1). **Al-**
sitne tanta vis in virtute, alterum non
convenientia sibi dicant (Cic. Finn. V.
hejotārum succensere aliqvid suspicere

(Cic. pro Dej. 13), *that he entertains some grudge.* **Omnes mulieres eadem student** (Ter. Hec. II. 1, 2), *have the same inclinations.*

b. Likewise, with other verbs, which may require, to complete their notion, a similar definition of measure and extent: **Qvid prodest mentiri? Hoc tamen profeci. Ea, qvae locuti sumus** (different from **de qvibus locuti sumus**). **Si remittent qvidpiam dolores** (Ter. Hec. III. 2, 14). **Si qvid adolescens offenderit, sibi totum, tibi nihil offenderit** (Cic. ad Fam. II. 18), *if* he *commits a fault, he will have to bear all the consequences, and not you.* **Callistratus in oratione sua multa invectus est in Thebanos** (Corn. Epam. 9), *heaped many reproaches on the Thebans.*

Obs. 1. Hence in the passive, **si qvid offensum est**, instead of the purely impersonal, **si offensum est. Hoc pugnatur** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 3), *this is the object of the contest.*

Obs. 2. With the phrase **auctor sum** (*I advise, assure*), we sometimes find a neuter pronoun in the singular, as with a transitive verb; e.g. **Consilium petis, qvid tibi sim auctor** (Cic. ad Fam. VI. 8. Elsewhere, **cujus rei**).

2. This method of limiting an action occurs sometimes, also, with transitive verbs which have an accusative of the proper object: **Qvidqvid ab urbe longius arma profertis, magis magisqve in imbelles gentes proditis** (Liv. VII. 32). **Nos aliqvid Rutulos juvimus** (Virg. Æn. X. 84). This is found especially with verbs of *warning* or *exhorting:* **moneo, admoneo, commoneo, hortor**; also with **cogo. Discipulos id num moneo, ut praeceptor es non minus qvam ipsa. studia ament** (Quint. II. 9, 1). **Metellus pauca milites hortatus, est** (Sall. Jug. 49). **Qvid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames?** (Virg. Æn. III. 56). This accusative is found with the passive also; **Non audimus ea, qvae ab natura monemur** (Cic. Læl. 24). If a neuter pronoun is not used, we find, e.g., **admoneo aliqvem rei,** (§ **291**), or **de re.** But in a very few cases we find the accusative of a substantive, instead of **de**; **Eam rem nos locus admonuit** (Sall. Jug. 79).

§ 230. The accusative is employed with the prepositions given in § **172**, II. With regard to those prepositions which, according to the different relations they express, may be employed with the accusative or the ablative, the following observations may be useful.

In. *a.* **In** has the accusative when it denotes a motion *to* or *into*, or a direction *towards* a thing, and in the kindred although not literal significations derived from these, and denoting a state of mind, action towards, and in reference to something, activity in a certain direction, and with a certain object. **Proficisci in Graeciam, in carcerem conjicere, in civitatem recipere; advenire in provinciam, convenire, congregari, concurrere, exercitum contrahere in locum aliqvem** (and hence

Obs. 4. With certain verbs, the usage varies, in some cases, between **in** with the accusative, and **in** with the ablative, with some slight difference of meaning. Thus, we find **includere aliqvem in carcerem, orationem in epistolam** (*to bring into*), and **includere aliqvem in carcere** (*to shut up*); also simply **includere carcere** (see § **263**) and **includere aliqvid orationi suae** (see, under the dative, § **243**); so also **condere aliqvem in carcerem (in vincula)**, *to throw into prison*, but **condere aliqvid in visceribus** (Cic.), **incidere aliqvid in aes** (*to cut a thing in brass*), **in tabula** (*on a tablet*), and **incidere nomen saxis** (dat., see § **243**); **imprimere, insculpere aliqvid in animis, in cera** and **cerae**. We find **abdere se in aliqvem locum (in intimam Macedoniam**, Cic.), *to go to a place for the purpose of concealment* (hence also **abdere se domum, Arpinum**, according to § **232, eo, aliqvo**), but **abdere milites in insidiis, abditus in tabernaculo.**

Sub. *a.* **Sub** takes the accusative when it denotes motion and direction; e.g. **sub scalas se conjicere, venire sub oculos, cadere sub sensum**; also of time, when it denotes *towards, immediately after, at about:* **sub noctem, sub adventum Romanorum, sub dies festos** (*immediately after the holidays*); **sub idem tempus.**[1]

b. **Sub** has the ablative when it denotes the being under a thing; **sub mensa, esse sub oculis.** (Rarely when applied to time; **sub ipsa profectione**, *during the very time of.*)

Super has the ablative, in prose, only when it signifies *concerning:* **Hac super re scribam ad te postea** (Cic. ad Att. XVI. 6); with this exception, it takes the accusative. (In the poets, we also find **super foco,** *on the hearth*, &c.)

Subter (*under, on the under side of*) usually has the accusative, very rarely the ablative, and that only in the poets; e.g. **subter praecordia.**

Obs. 1. The compound adverbs, **pridie** and **postridie**, are also, to a certain extent, used as prepositions with the accusative, but in good writers only with the days of the month, and the names of festivals (**pridie Idus, postridie Nonas, postridie ludos Apollinares**); with the genitive usually only in the expression, **pridie, postridie ejus diei.** For a peculiar use of the preposition **ante (in ante, ex ante)**, see the section on the Calendar, in the Appendix.

Obs. 2. Not only is the adverb **propius, proxime** (according to § **172**, *Obs.* 4), used like the preposition **prope** with the accusative (more rarely with the dative), but even the adjective is sometimes constructed in this way: e.g. **propior montem** (Sall.), **proximus mare** (Cæs.); but the dative is, in such cases, the most usual. (**Proximus ab aliqvo**, *the next after a person*, in a series, like **prope ab**, *not far from*; **propius a terra**

[1] [**Extremae sub casum hiemis, jam vere sereno** (Virg. Georg. I. 349).]

ne alter ab altero habitant. In the signification
h **accedo prope aliqvem** and **prope accedo ad ali-**

the following transitive verbs compounded with
o, trajicio, transporto, — we have not only the name
ut also that of the place over which a thing is led
n the accusative (which belongs to the preposition):
pias Iberum traduxit. Caesar milites navibus
rtat. (Also **traducere, trajicere, homines trans**

me character is the expression **adigo aliqvem arbi-**
person before (**ad**) *the judge*; and **adigo aliqvem jus-**
ad jusjurandum, and **adigo aliqvem jurejurando**),
oath.

roper names of towns and smaller islands (each of
nsidered as a town) stand in the accusative with-
n, when they are specified as the place where the
:—

thenas proficisci, Delum navigare (**appellere clas-**
iavis appellitur Syracousas, *runs into the harbor of*
o via Capuam ducit. Usqve Ennam profecti sunt
9), *as far as to.* But **ad** is used when only the vicin-
meant; **Adolescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus**
I. 4), *to an encampment before Capua.*
e no motion is indicated, but only an extent of space
eposition is added; **omnis ora Salōnis ad Oricum**
8).
s or **oppidum** be prefixed, the preposition is inserted:
: **in oppidum Cirtam** (Sall. Jug. 102), *into Cirta*; **ad**
i would mean, *arrived at Cirta.* So also usually, when
m with an adjective is put after the proper name;
inthus conlulit se Tarqvinios in urbem Etruriae
(Cic. R. P. II. 19).
used with the names of *countries*, and larger islands.
ver, we find the names of larger islands constructed
of towns; **in Cyprum venit,** and **Cyprum missus**

poets, the *names of countries* also are put as the place
is to end without a preposition; e.g. **Italiam venit**

---

rcitum Pado, *on the Po*; **trajicere, transmittere flumen,** *to*
icere in Africam, without an object, *to cross over to Africa.*

(Virg.). (Occasionally, in prose, the Greek names of countries in **us**, as **Aegyptus, Epirus, Bosporus**; e.g. **Aegyptum proficisci** (Corn. Dat. 4). The poets also use national names, as well as common names in general, when considered as the place where a motion is to end, in the accusative without a preposition; e.g. **Ibimus Afros** (Virg. Ecl. I. 64). **Tua mea imago haec limina tendere adegit** (Id. Æn. VI. 696). **Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras** (Ovid, Met. III. 462).[1]

§ 233. The accusatives **domum**, *home;* and **rus**, *to the country*, — are constructed like the names of towns: e.g. **domum reverti, rus ire**; also, **domos**, of several different homes; e.g. **ministerium restituendorum domos obsidum** (Liv. XXII. 22), *the business of bringing each of the hostages to his home.* To **domum** may be added a possessive pronoun or a genitive, in order to show whose house is meant: e.g. **domum meam, domum Pompeji venisti (domum alienam, domum regiam = regis)**; **domos suas discesserunt** (Corn. Them. 4); but we also find **in domum suam, in domum Pompeji** (and **domum ad Pompejum**).

Obs. 1. With other pronouns and adjectives **in** must be inserted; **in domum amplam et magnificam venire.**

Obs. 2. The accusative of the place is sometimes joined to a verbal substantive: **domum reditio** (Cæs.); **reditus inde Romam** (Cic.).[2]

§ 234. *a.* When the measure of extent is given, or a movement is measured, the word which expresses the measure is put in the accusative with verbs, and such adjectives or adverbs as express extension (**longus, latus, altus, crassus**); e.g.:—

Hasta sex pedes longa; fossa decem pedes alta; terram duos pedes alte infodere. Fines Helvetiorum patebant in longitudinem ducenta qvadraginta millia passuum. Caesar tridui iter processit. A recta conscientia transversum ungvem (*a finger's breadth*) **non oportet discedere** (Cic. ad Att. XIII. 20).

b. When a distance is specified (**abesse, distare**), the measure may stand either in the accusative or the ablative; e.g.:—

Abesse tridui iter (Cic.). **Teanum abest a Larino xviii millia passuum** (Cic. pro Cluent. 9). **Aesculapii templum v millibus passuum ab Epidauro distat** (Liv. XLV. 28).

---

[1] [**Tumulum antiqvae Cereris, sedemqve sacratam venimus** (Virg. Æn. II. 742).]

[2] [**Iter Italiam** (Virg. Æn. III. 507). **Hac iter elysium** (Id. Æn. VI. 542).]

oth cases are used when it is said *at* what dis-
place; e.g.: —

bus passuum sex a Caesaris castris consedit
Caesar millia passuum tria ab Helvetiorum
(Id. ibid. I. 22).

gnum spatium abesse (Cæs. B. G. II. 17), and
stris utrisqve abesse (Id. ibid. I. 43). But if
lum be used in defining the distance at which a
words always stand in the ablative: e.g. **Rex**
assuum intervallo consedit (Cæs. B. C. II. 38).
ıe millium spatio castra ab Tarento posuit
f the place from which the distance is reckoned
e preposition **ab** only often stands before the
ıs passuum duobus castra posuerunt (Cæs.

ay with the adjective **natus** (*so and so*) *old;*
years (the measure of the age) is put in the
annos natus.

he way of designating the measure by comparison
atus, *more than —— years old*), and other adjec-
g. **longior**, *more than —— ells*, and the like, *long*,

ng duration and extent of time (*how long?*), the
the time are put in the accusative: —

nta annos praefuit Athenis. Veji urbs decem
continuas circumsessa est (Liv. V. 22). **An-**
ıtippum (Cic. Off. I. 1). **Dies noctesqve fata**
l. Phil. X. 10).[2] **Ex eo dies continuos qvinqve**
castris produxit (Cæs. B. G. I. 48), *did it once*
ve days. Occasionally **per** is prefixed (as in English
sm per dies facti sunt (Cic. in Cat. III. 8),
ys.

n which time is expressed with ordinals should be
ı annum jam tertium et vigesimum regnat (of

ative also stands with **abhinc**, *ago;* e.g. **Qvaestor**
qvattuordecim.

---

ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur (Cæs. B.

by night, but all through the day and night.

Obs. 3. The ablative, to express duration of time, is rare in the best writers: **Tota aestate Nilus Aegyptum obrutam oppletamqve tenet** (Cic. N. D. II. 52). **Pugnatum est continenter horis qvinqve** (Cæs. B. C. I. 47). This construction occurs more frequently in later writers; e.g. **Octoginta annis vixit** (Senec. Ep. 93). On the other hand, to express the time which is applied to any purpose, and in which it is accomplished, the ablative is always employed; e.g. **Tribus diebus opus perfici potest.** See § **276.**

§ 236. In exclamations of astonishment or suffering at the condition or character of a person or thing, the person or thing stands in the accusative with or without an interjection: —

Heu me miserum! or **Me miserum! O fallacem hominum spem fragilemqve fortunam** (Cic. de Or. III. 2). **Testes egregios!** (ironical.)

Obs. 1. In the exclamation with the interjection **pro**, the vocative is employed: **Pro, Di immortales! Pro, sancte Juppiter!** except in the phrase, **Pro deum (hominum, deum atqve hominum) fidem!** The vocative of direct address may also be used with **o**: **O magna vis veritatis! O fortunate adolescens, qvi tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!** (Cic. pro Arch. 10).

Obs. 2. With the interjections **hei** and **vae**, which express lamentation, the name of the person or thing lamented is put in the dative: **Hei mihi! Vae tergo meo!**

Obs. 3. With **en** and **ecce** (which call the attention to something as present), we often find the nominative (in Cicero, always): **Ecce tuae litterae** (*behold, there came your letter*). **En memoria mortui sodalis.** The accusative occurs less frequently.

§ 237. The poets use the accusative more freely in certain combinations, and in this some prose-writers imitate them in a few instances.

a. The passive of the verbs **cingo**, *to gird*; **accingo, induo**, *to clothe*; **exuo**, *to undress*; **induco**, *to draw over*, — is employed with a new active signification, — *to clothe one's self with, to put on*, **exuor**, *to put off*, and constructed with the accusative: **Coroebus Androgei galeam clipeiqve insigne decorum induitur** (Virg. Æn. II. 392). **Priamus inutile ferrum cingitur** (Id. ibid. II. 511). (Figuratively: **magicas accingi artes** (Id. ib. IV. 493), *to put on magic as armor, to equip one's self with it.* **Inducta cornibus aurum victima** (Ov. Met. VII. 161). **Virgines longam indutae vestem** (Liv. XXVII. 37). (Otherwise in prose: **induo aliqvem veste**; also, **induo vestem**, *to put on a dress.*)

which denote an emotion of the mind: **tuam vicem saepe doleo, indignor; nostram vicem irascuntur; sollicitus, anxius reipublicae vicem; suam vicem** (*for his part*) **officio functus.** So likewise **cetera,** *in other respects;* **vir cetera egregius** (Liv.).

§ 238. In a few phrases, the accusative stands for the more special case, genitive or ablative; sc. **id temporis,** for **eo tempore** (e.g. **id temporis eos venturos esse praedixeram,** Cic. in Cat. I. 4); **id (illud) aetatis,** for **ejus aetatis** (e.g. **homo id aetatis; qvum esset illud aetatis**), and **id (hoc, omne) genus,** for **ejus (hujus omnis) generis** (e.g. **id genus alia,** *other things of that kind*).

Obs. Concerning the genitive in **id temporis,** compare § **285,** *b*. On **virile, muliebre secus,** see § **55,** 5.

§ 239. We must particularly notice the elliptical expression, **Qvo mihi (tibi),** with an accusative, signifying, *What am I (are you) to do with —— ? of what use is —— to me (to you)?* e.g. **Qvo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti?** (Hor. Ep. I. 5, 12); and similarly: **Unde mihi (tibi),** *Where can I get —— ?* e.g. **unde mihi lapidem?** (Id. Sat. II. 7, 116). (**Qvo tibi, Pasiphaë, pretiosas sumere vestes?** Ov. A. A. I. 303.)

CHAPTER III.

THE DATIVE.

§ 240. The remaining cases, except the vocative, denote severally a particular relation, in which a person or thing stands either to an action, but without being immediately the object acted on (accusative), or to another person or thing.

Obs. The dative and the ablative primarily denoted the local relation of a person or thing to an action; viz., the dative, the direction of the action towards something external to itself, or its taking place near it; the ablative, the taking place of the action on or in something (also, at the same time its proceeding *from* a place, *from being in* a place). Subsequently, these cases were used of other relations, in which the imagination discovered a resemblance with the outward material relations. This now became the proper leading signification of these cases; and the actual local relations were, for the most part, defined more closely through the medium of prepositions, sometimes with one of these special cases (the ablative), sometimes with the accusative, as the general form of the word.

denotes, in general, that what is asserted by , or holds good, *for* and *in reference to* some hing (the relation of interest): —

imum senectuti est otium (Cic. de Or. I. 60). **ıcus leges civitatibus suis scripserunt** (Id. **s pulchra dominis aedificatur, non muribus Foro nata eloqventia est** (Id. Brut. 82). **Non ıcimus** (Sen. Ep. 106). **Sex. Roscius praedia** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 17), *for the benefit of*. **Nihil eqve accordiae** (Ter. Andr. I. 3, 1). **Orabo** III. 2, 47), *I will propose for her for my son*. **ıs missionem petebat** (Tac. Ann. I. 19), *applied oldiers*.

, which is not (as in the following special rules) rord, but *to* the whole predicate, is commonly **odi** and **incommodi**.

. signification *in defence of* (a person or thing) dative, but is expressed by **pro**: **Discere pro nobilitate, pro patria mori**; so also we find *s favor*: **Hoc non contra me est, sed pro me.**

·oposition is sometimes qualified by a dative of *eference to what* a thing is so and so, instead ubstantive by means of a genitive or preposition: **ıus fuit** (Liv. II. 30. Also, **populationum**). **ıst?** (Cic. pro Quinct. 11). **E bestiarum cor- lia morbis et vulneribus eligimus** (Cic. N. D. **a morbos**, or **remedia morborum**). **Neqve amplitudine aut praesidia periculis aut ad- ıvaero** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 24, in which example ld be remarked; *I seek for myself no protection* ɔ) *future dangers*: **adversus pericula, praesidia atuci locum sibi domicilio delegerunt** (Cæs. oets take greater liberties in this respect: e.g. : **rebus causa novandis** (Virg. Æn. IV. 290); **us rei novandae**). **(Longo bello materia,**

articularly notice the use of the dative with the icate noun, where it is specified in what relation nother: **Murena legatus Lucullo fuit** (Cic. pro *Lucullus, of Lucullus*. **L. Mescinius heres est** (Id. ad Fam. XIII. 26). **Ducem esse alicui,**

Obs. 5. Here we may also notice the dative **with facio (fio), with qvid, idem,** signifying *to do with one* (in relation to one): e.g. **qvid facies huic conclusioni?** (Cic. Acad. II. 30). **Qvid? Eupolemo non idem Verres fecit?** (Cic. Verr. IV. 22). **Qvid mihi futurum est?** On the ablative in this signification **(hoc homine)**, see § **267.**

Obs. 6. The dative of a participle is occasionally used to denote *when* (under what circumstances) a thing occurs: **Sita Anticyra est in Locride laeva parte sinum Corinthiacum intrantibus** (Liv. XXVI. 26), *on the left to those who sail in* = on the left as you sail in. **Duo milites neqvaqvam visu ac specie aestimantibus pares** (Liv. VII. 10).

§ 242. The dative is particularly joined to many verbs which in themselves denote an acting in reference to something. Many transitive verbs express an action, which, besides the object acted on, concerns another person or thing with reference to which it is performed, and therefore take two substantives, the proper object in the accusative, and a *reference object*, or more remote object, to which the action is directed, in reference to which it is performed, in the dative: **Dedi puero librum; trado provinciam successori; erranti viam monstro.** The dative also stands with the passive of these verbs, the relation being the same: **Liber puero datus est; provincia successori traditur; erranti via monstratur.**

Such verbs are, e.g., **do, trado, tribuo, concedo; divido,** *to distribute;* **fero,** *to bring;* **praebeo, praesto, polliceor, promitto; debeo,** *to be indebted;* **nego, adimo, monstro, dico, narro, mando, praecipio,** &c. (with which the more remote object is most frequently a person). But, besides this, the dative stands with all expressions formed of a verb and an accusative, which in their combination denote a similar relation to a person or thing: e.g. **modum ponere irae; patefacere, praecludere aditum hosti; fidem habere alicui,** or **narrationi alicujus; morem gerere alicui,** *to humor a person;* **nullum locum relinqvere precibus, honestae morti; dicere (statuere) diem colloqvio,** *to fix a day for a conference.*

Obs. 1. This dative of the more remote object is sometimes properly used with Latin verbs, where, on account of the somewhat different meaning and construction of the English phrases commonly used in translating them, we should have expected a different construction in Latin. So we find **probare alicui sententiam suam,** *to make his opinion agreeable to some one* (in the passive, **haec sententia mihi probatur**); **conciliare Pompejum Caesari,** *to make Pompey a friend to Cæsar, gain him over*

b. (Manifest local relation): **Ad nos multi rumores afferuntur; affigere litteram ad caput alicujus** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 20), *to fasten it on his head;* **detrahere annulum de digito; injicere se in hostes,** *into the midst of the enemy;* **inscribere aliqvid in tabula; inferre signa in hostem;**[1] **imponere in cervicibus hominum sempiternum dominum** (a figurative but manifest local relation); **imprimere notionem in animis; eripere aliqvem e periculo.**[2]

Obs. 1. In the case of some verbs compounded with **ad**, the preposition is repeated, even without its proper signification, in preference to employing the dative, especially with **addo, adjicio: adjungo,** *to add* (but **adjungo mihi amicum,** *I gain myself a friend*); **applico me ad virtutem, ad philosophiam, ad aliqvem doctorem,** *I attach myself to him;* **adhibeo ad aliqvid,** *to apply to any purpose.* **Subjicio** and **subjungo** occur in derived signification with both constructions: **Mummius Achajae urbes multas sub imperium populi Romani subjunxit; subjicio aliqvid oculis** and **sub oculos,** *to place something* (*under*) *before one's eyes,* **sensibus** and **sub sensus.** We read **extorqvere alicui gladium** and **pecuniam ab aliqvo; impendere pecuniam, operam in aliqvid,** and (in later writers) **alicui rei.**

Obs. 2. The verbs compounded with **cum** usually repeat the preposition; **confero, comparo, compono aliqvid cum aliqvo, conjungo eloqventiam cum philosophia.** Yet we find also the dative: **Ennius eqvi fortis senectuti comparat suam** (Cic. Cat. M. 5); **parva componere magnis. Tibi me studia communia beneficiaqve tua jam ante conjunxerant** (Cic. ad Fam. XV. 11). We find always, **communico aliqvid cum aliqvo.**

Obs. 3. The later writers (from Livy downwards) use the dative with increasing frequency, even in an improper signification, like the poets: e.g. **incidere nomen saxis** (Plin. Min. **Incidere legem in aes; foedus in columna incisum,** Cic.). **Insculpere elogium tumulo** (Svet.).

Obs. 4. The dative is also sometimes put with **continuo** (**laborem nocturnum diurno,** *cause it to follow immediately after*), **socio, jungo,** on account of their similarity in signification with these compound verbs.

---

[1] [**Inferretqve deos Latio** (Virg. Æn. I 6).]

[2] The following verbs, as well as some others, belong to this class: **affero, affigo, admisceo, admoveo, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjicio, circumpono, detraho, decutio, deripio, detero, eripio, extorqveo, impono, imprimo, infero, injicio, interpono, objicio, offero, offundo, oppono, praeficio, subdo, subjicio, subjungo, suppono, subtraho (superpono);** and those which denote a comparison: **antefero, antepono, praefero, praepono, posthabeo, postpono;** to these we may add **aufero.**

ntiae, Cic.) So also **aeqvare aliqvem** *n a level with another*; **aeqvare turrim** *d to the walls*, i.e. to build it as high.
struction with **adspergo, circumdo,** and *b.*

lso used for the more remote object with which denote an action, state of mind, or a person or thing, but without convey- f an immediate acting upon it (e.g. to &c.) : —

civibus ; nocere hosti ; nemo omnibus imus victis parcit.

ese are : —

to benefit, to injure) : **prosum, obsum, t, conducit.**[1]
to yield) : **adversor, obtrecto, officio, tercedo, gratificor.**
cted) : **cupio (alicui,** *to wish one well*), **seco, indulgeo, invideo,**[2] **insidior.**
ure for, to remedy, to spare) : **auxilior, ulo, prospicio, medeor (sano** governs

) : **placeo, displiceo.**
e, advise, persuade) : **impero,**[4] **obedio, , servio, famulor, suadeo, persuadeo.**
riendly, or to speak as such) : **assentior, , convicior, maledico, minor.**
credo, fido, confido, diffido.[5]
est, *I have not the book* ; **amicis, officio** *friends, not to do one's duty* ;[6] **nubo,** *to* n) ;[7] **propinqvo (appropinqvo),** *to ap-* ;[8] **videor,** *to seem.*

---

ive, **aliqvem** or **aliqvid.**
s either of the person or the thing ; **invideo tibi** and th person and thing are to be expressed, the usual con- **videbat, ignosco festinationi alicujus.**
ber, transitive.
ere **aliqvid,** transitive.
io) also govern the ablative.
ish, re **aliqva. Deficio,** *to fail,* frequently with the

.
tive.

k. (To happen, to befall): **accidit, contingit, evenit.**

l. **Libet, licet.** The same is the construction of the phrases **obviam eo (obvius sum, fio), praesto sum; dicto audiens sum (alicui)**, *to listen to a man, obey him;* **supplex sum, auctor sum (alicui,** *to advise one*).

b. This more remote object cannot, like the proper object, become the subject with the passive; and such verbs (like those which are intransitive) can only be used impersonally in the passive, in which case the dative follows without alteration: —

Invidetur (*men envy*) **praestanti florentiqve fortunae** (Cic. de Or. II. 52). **Non parcetur labori** (Id. ad Att. II. 14). **Nemini nocetur; legibus parendum est** (*one must obey*). **Obtrectatum est adhuc Gabinio** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 19). **Divitibus invideri solet,** *men are accustomed to envy.* **Mihi nunqvam persvaderi potuit, animos esse mortales** (Cic. Cat. M. 22), *no man has ever been able to convince me.*

The beginner must take particular care that he is not misled by the English phrases, *I am envied, maligned*, &c., to use the verbs, **obtrecto, invideo, parco, maledico,** and **studeo**, personally in the passive.

Obs. 1. With some verbs the construction varies between the dative and the accusative, according to the meaning.[1] **Metuo, timeo, caveo,** signify, with an accusative (**aliqvem, aliqvid**), to fear some one (something), to beware of something (an evil, an enemy); with a dative, to be (from a motive of kindness) anxious or apprehensive for something: e.g. **timeo libertati, caveo veteranis** (poetically, **mater pallet pueris**).[2] **Prospicio** and **provideo**, with a dative, signify, to be prospectively anxious about a thing: e.g. **prospicere saluti, providere vitae hominum**; with an accusative, to take care for the providing of something, e.g. **frumentum. Tempero aliqvid**, to order, to regulate (properly, to mix): e.g. **rempublicam legibus; moderor aliqvid**, to conduct, arrange; e.g. **consilia**; with a dative, to moderate: e.g. **tempero, modoror irae, laetitiae. Consulo,** see § **223**, *b*, *Obs.*

Obs. 2. Some few verbs are used both with the accusative and the dative without any perceptible difference in their signification: **adūlor** (generally the accusative), **aemŭlor** (almost always the accusative), **comitor, despēro** (**salutem** and **saluti**; **pace desperata,** *after the hope of peace was given up*), **praestolor.** In poetry, verbs of contending, &c. (**certo, pugno, luctor**), with the dative instead of the ablative with **cum**; e.g. **Frigida pugnabant calidis** (Ov. Met. I. 19).

---

[1] [**Consulere sibi and se** (Cic. Cat. II. 27).]

[2] **Caveo (mihi) ab aliqvo, ab aliqva re,** *to be on one's guard against a person or thing.*

Obs. 3. Some few of these verbs have also such a transitive signification, that they may take (according to § 242) both a proper object in the accusative and a more remote object: as, **credo alicui aliqvid**, *to trust a thing to any one* (**aliqvid creditur alicui**); **impero provinciae tributum, milites**, *to command a province to pay tribute, to furnish troops* (**tributum imperatur provinciae**); **minor alicui mortem** (see § 242, *Obs.* 1); **prospicere, providere exercitui frumentum. (Invideo alicui aliqvam rem,** — whence **res invidenda**, *a thing for which a person is to be envied,* — but more commonly **aliqva re.** See § 260, *b.*)

Obs. 4. To change such a dative into the subject of a proposition, and to use the verb personally in the passive, is a rare irregularity: **Ego cur, acqvirere pauca si possum, invideor?** (Hor. A. P. 56). **Vix eqvidem credor** (Ov. Trist. III. 10, 35). **Medendis corporibus** (Liv. VIII. 36), *by the healing of the bodies.*

Obs. 5. In a few instances, a substantive which is derived from a verb that governs the dative, and denotes the idea contained in it, is itself constructed alone with the dative: **Insidiae consuli non procedebant** (Sall. Cat. 32), *the plots against the consul did not succeed.* **Obtemperatio legibus** (Cic. Legg. I. 15).

§ 245. *a.* The intransitive verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante** (**con**), **in, inter, ob, post, prae, re, sub, super,** like the transitive verbs similarly compounded (§ 243), take the dative to express relation to another object; namely, that to which the preposition applies, if the compound verb has a secondary meaning, which suggests no idea of any local relation; e.g.: —

Adesse amicis, antecellere omnibus, instare victis et fugientibus, indormire causae (*to sleep over a cause*), **intervenire, interesse praelio, occurrere venientibus, praecesse exercitui, resistere invadentibus, respondere exspectationi, subvenire egentibus, succumbere dolori.** The dative remains unaltered, if the verb stands impersonally in the passive: **Resistitur audaciae hominum; egentibus subveniendum est.**[1]

---

[1] Such verbs are **adjaceo, alludo, annuo, arrēpo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, asto, antecedo, anteeo, antecello** (see § 224, *d*), **collūdo, congruo, consentio, convenire** (*to be fitting, suitable*), **convenire cum,** *to agree with*, **pax, res convenit inter nos,** *we are agreed about peace, the matter*), **consto (mihi), consŏno, incumbo** (**incubo**), **indormio, inhaereo, illudo** (**auctoritati**; also transitive, **praecepta**), **immorior, innascor, innitor, insto, insisto, insulto** (**alicui in calamitate**; also, **patientiam alicujus**); **interjaceo** (rarely with an accusative), **intervenio, occumbo** (**morti,** but more frequently **mortem** or **morte,** *its death*); **obrēpo, obsto, obstrēpo, obtingo, obvenio, obversor, praesidio, repugno, resisto, succumbo, supersto,** with the compounds of **sum.**

b. But if a local relation be clearly designed, though only figuratively, the preposition with its case is commonly used: —

Adhaeret navis ad scopulum. Inhaeret sententia in animo. Ajax incubuit in gladium. Severitas inest in vultu. Incurrere in hostes; invehi in aliqvem; incurrere in reprehensionem; incidere in periculum, in morbum (*to fall*); **concurrere, congredi cum hoste; cohaerere cum aliqvo.**

Sometimes a different preposition is employed to denote the local relation more accurately; e.g. **obrepere in animum, obversari ante oculos.**

Obs. 1. In individual verbs, we must particularly notice the way in which the idea is conceived; so we have **incumbo in** or **ad studium aliqvod**, *to apply one's self to a study*; **acqviesco in aliqvo**, *to acquiesce in any thing, to find composure in it.* In general, the older prose-writers more frequently repeat the preposition (e.g. always **insum in**); the poets and later writers use the dative more (**inesse rei**), even where the verb has its own proper signification: e.g. **accidere genibus praetoris** (Livy; we find in Cicero, **ad pedes alicujus**), **congredi alicui, cohaerere alicui.**

Obs. 2. The preposition is never repeated with **adjaceo, assideo, asto** (**assidere alicui**, not **ad aliqvem**); **accedo**, on the other hand, never has the dative, except in the signification *to join, to go over to* (an opinion, a party), **accedo Ciceroni, sententiae Ciceronis**, or when it means *to be added;* otherwise, the construction is always **accedo ad.** In the poets and some few prose-writers (chiefly of a later age), the accusative is sometimes found after the compounds of **jaceo, sedeo**, and those verbs which denote motion, with **ad** in its proper signification (i.e. applied to space), without the preposition being repeated: e.g. **assidere muros, adjacere Etruriam** (Livy); **allabi oras, accedere aliqvem** (Sall.), **advolvi genua.** On the verbs compounded with **ante**, and on **praesto**, see § **224**, *d.*

§ 246. The verb **sum** stands with the dative, to denote that something exists for (is possessed by) a person or thing: —

Sex nobis filii sunt. Homini cum deo similitudo est (Cic. Legg. I. 8). **Jam Troicis temporibus erat honos eloqventiae** (Cic. Brut. 10). **Controversia mihi fuit cum avunculo tuo** (Cic. Fin. III. 2). **Rhodiis cum populo Romano amicitia societasqve est,** *the Rhodians are friends and allies of the Romans.*

Obs. 1. This form of expression is commonly used only to denote what belongs to a person or thing as a possession or given relation, not of what appertains to it as a quality or as a constituent part. We should therefore avoid such phrases as **Ciceroni magna fuit eloqventia** (for **in**

[illegible]

Obs. 1. Some such adjectives are frequently used in speaking of persons (or what is considered as a person) as substantives with the genitive; viz., **amicus, inimicus** (**amica, inimica**, also **familiaris**, *a confidant*), **par** (*one's like or equal*), **aeqvalis, cognatus, propinqvus** (*a relation*, also **necessarius**), **affinis, vicinus. Amicus, inimicus,** and **familiaris** are so used, even in the superlative: **regis amicissimus; inimicissimus illius; familiarissimus meus.** (Also **iniqvi mei, nostri, invidi nostri.**) Thus, too, we generally find, **superstes omnium suorum**, *one who has survived all his friends*, — less frequently, **superstes alicui.**

Obs. 2. **Similis** (**consimilis, adsimilis**) and **dissimilis** are put in the best writers both with the genitive and the dative; and, in the earlier writers, almost always with the genitive of the names of living beings (especially gods and men): **similis igni** and **ignis, similis patris, similis mei, sui, nostri.**

Obs. 3. The poets say not only **dissimilis**, but also **diversus alicui**, instead of **ab aliqvo** (*different from*), and use the verbs **discrepo, differo, disto, dissideo**, with the dative instead of with **ab**; **Qvid distant aera lupinis?** (Hor.)

Obs. 4. **Affinis**, signifying *concerned in*, governs both the dative and the genitive: **Affinis ei turpitudini; affinis rei capitalis.**

Obs. 5. **Propior** and **proximus** are also put with the accusative. See § **230**, *Obs.* 2 (after **subter**).

Obs. 6. Those adjectives which denote an aptitude for any thing (**aptus, habilis, idoneus, accommodatus, paratus**), have more often **ad** than the dative: **orator ad nullam causam idoneus; homo ad rem militarem aptus. Idoneus arti cuilibet** (Hor.). They govern the dative in the signification *suited, fitted:* **oratores aptissimi concionibus; histriones fabulas sibi accommodatissimas eligunt.** (**Alienum nostrae dignitati**, *unsuited to our dignity*. See § **268**, *b*.)

Obs. 7. The dative is also put with the adverbs **convenienter, congruenter, constanter, obseqventer**; e.g. **vivere convenienter naturae, dicere constanter sibi.**

Obs. 8. The poets sometimes employ the dative after **idem** (in any case but the nom.), instead of **atqve** with the nominative; **Invitum qvi servat, idem facit occidenti** (Hor. A. P. 467), *the same as he who kills him.*

§ 248. The datives **mihi, nobis** (sometimes **tibi, vobis**), are put with expressions of surprise and reprehension, with demands or with questions about a person, in order to denote a certain degree of concern or sympathy: —

§ 250. *a.* With passive verbs the agent is sometimes put in the dative instead of the ablative with **ab**; in prose, however, with the idea somewhat modified, since it denotes, either that the action is done for the interest of the agent, or (in the perfect and pluperfect) that it exists for him as completed: —

Sic dissimillimis bestiis communiter cibus qvaeritur (Cic. N. D. II. 48). **Haec omnibus pertractata esse possunt** (Id. de Or. II. 34). **Res mihi tota provisa est** (Id. Verr. IV. 42). But in the poets even without this distinction; **Carmina qvae scribuntur aqvae potoribus** (Hor. Ep. I. 19, 3).

b. On the other hand, the dative is regularly put with the gerundive and gerund, to denote the person who has to do something (whose duty a thing is): —

Hoc mihi faciendum est; haec pueris legenda sunt (*the boys must read this*). See §§ **420** and **421**.

§ 251. The poets use the dative, in order to express the direction of a motion *towards*: **It clamor caelo** (Virg. Æn. V. 451 = **ad coelum versus**). **Spolia conjiciunt igni** (i.q. **in ignem**, Id. ib. XI. 194).

CHAPTER IV.

THE ABLATIVE.

§ 252. The Ablative denotes, in general, that a thing, though not standing in the relation of the direct or more remote object indicated by the accusative and dative, belongs to the predicate, serving to complete and define it more accurately (stands with the thing predicated as a *circumstance* attending it, or a thing pertaining to it). The ablative is used in this way either with the prepositions given in § **172**, 1, or alone: for those cases in which the ablative is used without a preposition, the rules are given below.

Obs. Nearly everywhere where the ablative stands in Latin, a preposition (as *in, through, on, from, with, by*) is used in English. This difference should be carefully noted by beginners. The general divisions which are made in classifying the Latin ablatives sometimes approximate so nearly, that it cannot be easily determined to which class some particular cases belong.

ignavia atqve socordia corruptus sit, Sall. Jug. 31. The more usual construction would omit **ab**.)

Obs. 2. Some poets use **ab** where the **ablativus instrumenti** would usually stand in prose: e.g. **Turbinem celer assveta versat ab arte puer** (Tib. I. 5, 4), *by the help of his wonted art.* **Sidereo siccata ab aestu** (Ov. Met. VI. 341).[1]

Obs. 3. When it is intended to denote that a thing is effected by the employment of a rational agent, the ablative is not used, but **per**: **Augustus per legatos suos bellum administrabat** (also **operā legatorum**). But the ablative may stand when the person is named simply as a substitute for the thing it implies: e.g. **testibus** for **testium dictis**; or when it is considered as a thing: e.g. bodies of troops: **Jacent** (*they are convicted*) **suis testibus** (Cic. pro Mil. 18). **Hostem sagittariis et funditoribus eminus terrebat** (Sall. Jug. 94). (On the contrary, of animals; **bubus arare, eqvo vehi**, like **curru**.)

§ 255. The **ablativus instrumenti** is used in Latin, in some constructions, where the notion of a mean or instrument is not conveyed in the English expression which most nearly corresponds to them: e.g. **extollere aliqvem honoribus** (*by posts of distinction*, instead of which we should say, in English, *to posts of distinction*); **erudire aliqvem artibus et disciplinis** (but also, **erudire aliqvem in jure civili**, of a particular department of instruction). In such expressions as **florere (opibus et gratia)** and **valere (T. Coruncanius plurimum ingenio valuit)**, we have at the same time the idea of abundance. See **§ 259. (Sacrificatum est majoribus hostiis**, *greater victims were sacrificed*; **faciam vitulā pro frugibus.)**

Obs. 1. With verbs which signify *to value, to judge, to classify*, &c., the ablative denotes that by which the valuation is regulated (the means and measure of the valuation): **Non numero haec judicantur, sed pondere. Magnos homines virtute metimur, non fortuna** (Corn. Eum. 1). **Populus Romanus descriptus erat censu, ordinibus, aetatibus** (Cic. Legg. III. 19). **Amicitiae caritate et amore cernuntur** (Id. Part. Or. 25). **Hecato utilitate officium dirigit magis qvam humanitate** (Cic. Off. III. 23).

Obs. 2. Some verbs which signify *to enclose, to hold, to receive*, are sometimes followed by the ablative of the place by which the enclosing is effected, instead of the preposition **in**; as, **includere aliqvem carcere (in carcere**, usually **in carcerem**), **versu aliqvid concludere, recipere, invitare aliqvem tecto, urbe** (usually **aliqvem in civitatem, in ordinem senatorium, aliqvem domum recipere**), **tenere se castris (copias in castris continere)**, **tollere aliqvem**

---

[1] [**Torrida ab igni** (Virg. Georg. I. 234).]

§ 257. The ablatives **causa** and **gratia**, *for the sake of*, are put with (and usually *after*) a genitive or possessive pronoun: —

Reipublicae causa accusare aliqvem; tua causa hoc facio; dolorum effugiendorum gratia voluptates omittere.

Obs. 1. Without a genitive or possessive pronoun, we have **ea de causa**, or **ea causa**; **justis causis, ea gratia.**

Obs. 2. With these exceptions, the cause (signifying *that for the sake of which* a thing is done) is not expressed by the ablative, but by the prepositions **ob** and **propter** (or by **causa, gratia**). Yet from a conciseness of expression the use of the ablative of means or motive comes very near to denoting the cause, and is almost identical with it; e.g. **Levitate armorum et qvotidiana exercitatione nihil hostibus noceri poterat** (Cæs. B. G. V. 34, i.q. **efficiebatur, ut nihil noceri posset**). The distinction between the ablative of the motive (in the subject itself) and the mode of exactly expressing the cause may be seen from the following example: **Non tam ob recentia ulla merita qvam originum memoria** (Liv. XXXVIII. 39), *remembering their origin.*

Obs. 3. Here we may notice the use of the ablative **eo**, and occasionally **hoc**, in the signification *on that account* (= **ideo**): **Homines suorum mortem eo lugent, qvod eos orbatos vitae commodis arbitrantur** (Cic. Tusc. I. 13). (**Millia frumenti tua triverit area centum, Non tuus hoc capiet venter plus ac meus,** Hor. Sat. I. 1, 46.)

§ 258. The ablative of a substantive qualified by an adjective (participle) or pronoun, denotes the way *in which* a thing is done, the accompanying circumstances *under which* it is done (**ablativus modi**). With those substantives which in themselves denote a way or manner (**modo, more, ratione, ritu,** sometimes **consvetudine, habitu**), a genitive may be put instead of the adjective.

Miltiades summa aeqvitate res Chersonesi constituit (Corn. Milt. 2), *with the greatest justice.* **Deos pura, integra incorrupta et mente et voce venerari debemus** (Cic. N. D. II. 28). **Summa vi insistere. More Carnadeo disputare. Fieri nullo modo (pacto) potest. Apis more modoqve carmina fingo** (Hor. Od. IV. 2, 27). **Voluptas pingitur pulcherrimo vestitu et ornatu regali** (*in*, or *with, the most beautiful vestments and royal magnificence*) **in solio sedens** (Cic. Fin. II. 21). (Also, **habitu reginae**, *in the garb of a queen.*) **Ire agmine qvadrato. Allobrogum legati pontem Mulvium magno comitatu ingrediuntur** (Id. in Cat. III. 2), *with a numerous*

Obs. 4. As in the example **magno comitatu**, the modal ablative is often used of military forces: **exiguis copiis pugnare; proficisci, venire, adesse omnibus copiis, expedito exercitu, triginta navibus longis.** But **cum** is also used; **Caesar cum omnibus copiis Helvetios seqvi coepit** (Cæs. B. G. I. 26). (When there is no adjective or numeral, **cum** is always used.)

Obs. 5. Here also we may notice the expressions, **pace alicujus** and **bona venia alicujus dicere aliqvid**, *with his permission;* **periculo alicujus aliqvid facere**, *at his risk;* also, **alicujus auspiciis, imperio, ductu rem gerere**, *under any one's command;* **simulatione (specie) timoris cedere**, *with assumed fear* (Cæs. B. C. II. 40); **obsidum nomine**, *as hostages* (Id. B. G. III. 2); **classis nomine pecuniam civitatibus imperare**, *to impose a tax, under the pretence of employing it for the equipment of a fleet* (Cic. pro Flacc. 12); **alicujus verbis salutare aliqvem**, *in some one's name.* On the other hand, **cum** (*to*) sometimes serves to denote an (attendant) consequence and effect: **Accidit, ut Verres illo itinere veniret Lampsacum cum magna calamitate et prope pernicie civitatis** (Cic. Verr. I. 24).

§ 259. The ablative serves to denote the *price* for which a thing is bought, sold, made, or brought about (also with the verbs **esse, stāre, constare, licere**, signifying *to cost, to be on sale for*), and to express the *value* at which a thing is estimated:—

Eriphȳle auro viri vitam vendidit. Praedium emitur (vēnit) centum millibus nummum. Caelius habitat triginta millibus (Cic. pro Cæl. 7). **Apollonius mercede docebat. Victoria Poenis** (dative) **multo sangvine stetit. Tritici modius in Sicilia erat (aestimatus est) ternis sestertiis** (Cic. Verr. III. 81). **Otium non gemmis venale.**

Obs. 1. If the price is only indefinitely given (as being high or low), the genitive of adjectives is sometimes used to express it (**tanti, magni,** &c.). See § **294.**

Obs. 2. We find the expressions **mutare, commutare, permutare aliqvid aliqvo**, *to exchange a thing* (part with it for something else): e.g. **fidem et religionem pecunia mutare; oves pretio mutare.** Sometimes, however, they denote, to obtain a thing in exchange for another. We also have **commutare aliqvid cum aliqvo**, *to acquire* or *part with a thing in the way of exchange* (usually the latter).

§ 260. The ablative is put with various verbs, to define their meaning more accurately, by specifying *in what*, and *in reference to what*, the action or condition in question is manifested.

Obs. The following is a bold poetical expression (in Virg. Æn. VI. 229): **Ter socios pura circumtulit unda,** *went round and sprinkled them with pure water.* (**Loca custodiis intermissa,** Liv. VII. 36, i.q., **ubi custodiae intermissae sunt.**)[1]

§ 261. *a.* The ablative is put with those intransitive verbs which signify a deficiency in (a need of) something, and those transitive verbs which signify a deprivation of a thing, to denote that of which there is a deficiency or of which a person is deprived (ablative of want); as, with **careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, — orbo, privo, spolio,**[2] **fraudo, nudo** (*to strip of —*); e.g.: —

Carere sensu, egere auxilio, vacare culpa, spoliare hominem fortunis, nudare turrim defensoribus.

Obs. **Egeo** and **indigeo** (**indigeo** especially very often) also govern the genitive.[3]

b. In the same way we have **invideo alicui aliqva re (laude sua),** and **interdico alicui aliqva re,** *forbid a person the use of a thing and access to it;* e.g. **aqva et igni, domo sua.** (In the passive, impersonally; **prodigis** (dative) **solet bonis interdici.**)

Obs. 1. These verbs are less frequently constructed with an accusative: **invidere alicui laudem** (but often **invidere laudi alicujus**), and **interdicere feminis usum purpurae; interdicta voluptas.**

Obs. 2. A double construction (as in § **259,** *b*) is found with **exuo** (**aliqvem veste** and **vestem mihi,** or commonly only **vestem**) and **abdĭco** (**me magistratu** and **abdico magistratum**).

§ 262. Those verbs are also constructed with an ablative, which denote (being intransitive) *to abstain from a thing, to renounce it;* or (transitive), *to free, to keep away, to exclude from something;* as, —

Abstineo, desisto, supersedeo, libero, solvo, exsolvo, levo, exonero, arceo, prohibeo, excludo: e.g. **abstinere** (or **abstinere se**) **maledicto, scelere, liberare aliqvem suspicione, levare aliqvem onere, arcere tyrannum reditu, prohibere aliqvem cibo tectoqve; prohibere Campaniam populationibus,** *to protect from pillage.*

But the verbs which signify *to abstain, to hinder, to exclude,* are also used with the preposition **ab:** e.g. **abstinere a vitiis; prohibere hostem a**

---

[1] [**Virgineum suffuderit ore cruorem** (Virg. Georg. I. 480).]

[2] [**Foliis viduantur orni** (Hor. Od. II. 9, 8).]

[3] **Vaco** occurs also in the signification *to be unoccupied,* and then a dative may be subjoined: e.g. **philosophiae,** *have leisure to engage in it;* hence, in later writers, **vacare rei alicui,** *to apply to a thing, spend one's time about it.*

Obs. **Fido** and **confido** also have the dative (**diffido**, almost always). See § **244**. **Doleo** has also the accusative (**meum casum illi doluerunt**). See § **223**, *c*. **Glorior de** and **in aliqva re** (*in and of the possession of a thing*). **Nitor auctoritate alicujus**, *support one's self on it* (as a mean or instrument); also, **divinatio nititur in conjectura**. We should also notice **delector aliqva re** and **aliqvo**, *to find pleasure in any thing* or *person*); **Laelio valde delector**.

§ 265. The verbs **utor (abūtor), fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** have the object in the ablative: —

Uti victoria, frui otio, fungi munere, urbe potiri, vesci carne. (**Utor aliqvo amico**, *to have him for a friend*, — **amico** being in apposition; so, likewise, **Me usurus es aeqvo**, *you will find me fair*.)

Obs. 1. The use of the ablative is to be explained by the fact, that these verbs had not originally a purely transitive signification. **Potior** is also put with the genitive, though rarely in prose; but always in the phrase, **potiri rerum**, *to make one's self master of sovereign power* (*to possess it*).

Obs. 2. In the older poets, and some few prose-writers, these verbs are occasionally found with the accusative. The gerundive is used like that of a common transitive verb which governs the accusative: e.g. **in munere fungendo**; **dare alicui vestem utendam**; **spes potiundorum castrorum** (Cæs. B. G. III. 6 = **castris potiendi**).

§ 266. The expression **opus est** stands as a predicate with the nominative, without altering **opus**; e.g.: —

Dux nobis (dative) **et auctor opus est** (Cic. ad Fam. II. 6), *we need a leader and guide;* **exempla permulta opus sunt** (Id. de Invent. II. 19).

Or impersonally (*there is need, one wants*) with the ablative; e.g.: —

Praesidio opus est. Auctoritate tua mihi opus est. Qvid (**nihil**) **opus est verbis?** (In the negative form, or the interrogative with **qvid**, it is, almost without exception, impersonal.) In this last way, **usus est** is also employed with the same signification: **Viginti usus est minis.** (**Si usus est**, *in case it should be necessary*.)

Obs. With **opus est**, that which is necessary may also be expressed by an infinitive, or an accusative with the infinitive; e.g. **Qvid opus est maturare?** or, **Opus est te abire, opus est Hirtium conveniri**, *that Hirtius should be spoken to*. Instead of this infinitive, the ablative of a participle, or substantive combined with a participle, is often employed: **Opus est maturato** (Liv. I. 58). **Opus fuit Hirtio convento** (Cic. ad Att. X. 4). **Qvid opus est facto** (**qvid**, — as if **fieri** were to follow).

sua majestate; extorris patria, regno. (On **inops** and **pauper**, see § **209**, *e.*) But these adjectives, with the exception of **inanis, orbus,** and **extorris,** are also used with the preposition **ab; oppidum vacuum defensoribus** and **a defensoribus.**

Obs. 1. **Liber** always has **ab** with the names of persons (**locus liber ab arbitris**), otherwise but seldom. **Alienus** has **ab,** especially in the signification *disinclined* (**alienus a litteris**), and always with the names of persons; **alienus a me.**

Obs. 2. **Inanis** and **immunis** have also the genitive: **haec inanissima prudentiae reperta sunt; alienus,** less frequently. The rest of these adjectives are hardly found with the genitive, except in the poets: **liber curarum, purus sceleris, vacuus operum; mons nudus arboris** (Ov.). **Alienus,** signifying *inconvenient, unfavorable,* has also the dative.

c. **Contentus, anxius, laetus, maestus, superbus, fretus. Natura parvo cultu contenta est. Fretus conscientia officii.**[1]

d. **Dignus** and **indignus: dignus beneficio, poena; dignus Hercule labor; indigna homine oratio.**

§ 269. Those participles which denote birth (**natus, ortus, genitus, satus, editus**), have the parentage or rank indicated in the ablative: —

Mercurius Jove et Maja natus erat; natus nobili genere; eqvestri loco ortus. With the parents, **ex** (**dē**) is also used; **Ex fratre et sorore nati erant.**

Obs. More remote ancestors are expressed by **ortus ab: Belgae orti sunt a Germanis** (Cæs. B. G. II. 4). **Cato Uticensis a Censorio ortus erat** (Cic. pro Mur. 31).

§ 270. The ablative sometimes denotes the measure of distance. See, under the accusative, § **234.** With comparatives the ablative denotes how much a thing exceeds (is greater or less than) something else in the quality mentioned: —

Romani duobus millibus plures erant qvam Sabini; uno digito plus habere, *a finger more;* **multis partibus** (*times*) **major; dimidio minor; altero tanto longior,** *as long again;* **qvinqvies tanto amplius** (Cic. Verr. III. 97). **Honestas omni pondere gravior habenda est qvam reliqva omnia** (Id. Off. III. 8), *infinitely more weighty, more important.* In the same way, the ablative is used, with **ante** and **post,** signifying *how much earlier* or *later* a thing takes place; and with

---

[1] **Fretus** also occurs in Livy with a dative (like **fido**).

Obs. The ablative seems properly to denote that the higher degree is brought to light by the other, which is associated with it in the comparison.

§ 272. The ablative of a substantive combined with an adjective (participle, pronoun) is joined to a substantive either with the verb **esse**, or without any connecting word, to denote the quality and character of a person or thing (the *ablative of quality*, the *descriptive* ablative):—

Agesilaus statura fuit humili et corpore exiguo. Herodotus tanta est eloqventia, ut me magnopere delectet (Cic. de Or. II. 13). **Summis ingeniis exqvisitaqve doctrina philosophi** (Id. Fin. I. 1). **C. Valerius, summa virtute et humanitate adolescens** (Cæs. B. G. I. 47). **Erat inter Labienum et hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisqve praeruptis** (Id. B. G. VI. 7). **Apollonius affirmabat servum se illo nomine habere neminem** (Cic. Verr. V. 7). **(Philodami filia summa integritate pudicitiaqve existimabatur,** Cic. Verr. I. 25, = **esse existim.)**

Obs. 1. For the distinction between the ablative of quality and the genitive of quality, see § **287**, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. In the same way, we have **trulla aureo manubrio**, *a cup with a golden handle* (of a constituent part of the vessel itself); but also **cum aureo manubrio.**[1] Sometimes the ablative of quality is put with **sum**, to denote a situation, where we otherwise find **in**: **Esse magna gloria. Nunqvam pari periculo Carthago fuerat** (Corn. Hannib. 2). **Esse meliore condicione; eodem statu esse, manere**; and **in eodem statu.**

Obs. 3. Instead of the ablative, a genitive is sometimes used, when reference is made to external form and magnitude: e.g. **clavi ferrei digiti pollicis crassitudine** (Cæs. B. G. III. 13), *of the thickness of one's thumb*. **Uri sunt specie et figura et colore tauri** (Id. B. G. VI. 28).

§ 273. A local relation (the remaining or happening in a place, motion from a place) is commonly expressed by prepositions (**in — ab, ex, de**); in some cases, however, the preposition is left out and the ablative used alone.

a. The remaining or happening in a place is denoted by the ablative alone, when the names of towns and smaller islands (which may be regarded as towns) are spoken of, if the names belong to the third declension, or are of the plural number: **Babylone habitare; Athenis litteris operam dare.**[2]

---

[1] **[Nuntiabant agnum cum duobus capitibus natum, et Sinuessae porcum humano capite** (Liv. XXXII. 9).]

[2] **Carthagini, Tiburi,** see **§ 42,** *d.*

if one were to search through all Asia. **Qvis toto mari locus tutus fuit?** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 11), *what place in the whole sea?*

Obs. **In** is nevertheless also used: e.g. **Tanti terrae motus in Gallia compluribusqve insulis totaqve in Italia facti sunt** (Cic. de Div. I. 35). **Nego in tota Sicilia ullum argenteum vas fuisse, qvod Verres non conqvisierit** (Id. in Verr. IV. 1).

§ 274. The ablative is used without a preposition to signify the path or way by which, or direction in which, a movement takes place:

Via Nomentana (via breviore) proficisci; porta Collina urbem intrare; recta linea deorsum ferri; Pado frumentum subvehere, *on the Po, up the Po.*

§ 275. A motion *from* a place is expressed without a preposition by the ablative of the names of towns and smaller islands, and the words **domo,** *from home;* **rure,** *from the country;* and sometimes **humo,** *from the ground*:—

Roma proficisci, discedere Athenis, Delo Rhodum navigare; frumentum Rhodo advehere; domo auxilium mittere; rure advenire; oculos tollere humo (also, **ab humo**).

Obs. 1. **Ab** is, however, sometimes (by Livy usually) used with the names of towns, and always when a removal from the neighborhood of a town is spoken of; e.g. **Caesar a Gergovia discessit** (Cæs. B. G. VII. 59), *from Gergovia, which he had been besieging.* The preposition is likewise used when **oppidum** or **urbs** precedes the name: **Expellitur ex oppido Gergovia** (Id. ib. VII. 4). (**Genus Tusculo, ex clarissimo municipio, profectum,** Cic. pro Font. 14.)

Obs. 2. The ablative of the names of towns (together with **domo**) is used without a preposition to denote the place from which a letter is written (e.g. **Romā a. d.** iv. **Idus Octobres**), and with **abesse,** *to be absent;* e.g. **abesse Roma** (but **tria millia passuum a Roma abesse,** *of the distance*).

Obs. 3. To denote a person's home, we sometimes find such expressions as **Gn. Magius Cremonā** (Cæs. B. C. I. 24), *Gn. Magius of Cremona;* more usually with an adjective: *Gn. Magius Cremonensis.* (In Livy we also find **Turnus Herdonius ab Aricia,** I. 50.) In the same way is used the ablative of the names of the Roman tribes; **Servius Sulpicius Lemoniā,** *of the Lemonian tribe.*

Obs. 4. The poets use also the ablatives of other words to indicate the place from which a motion proceeds: e.g. **descendere caelo** (Virg.); **labi eqvo** (Hor.). (**Abesse virtute Messalae,** *to fall short of,* Hor.) Of the ablative with certain verbs, in the signification *out of, away from,* see § **263.**

Obs. 3. To express the time *within* which a thing takes place, **in** is sometimes inserted: **Sulla sollertissimus omnium in paucis tempestatibus factus est** (Sall. Jug. 96); particularly when a numeral is employed to show *how often* a thing happens, or how much is done in a certain time: e.g. **bis in die** (*a day*) **saturum fieri; ter in anno nuntium audire. Lucilius in hora saepe ducentos versus dictabat** (Hor. Sat. I. 4, 9). (But also **septies die**, *seven times a day*.)

Obs. 4. In the same way, **in** is often inserted to intimate *within* what time, reckoned from a certain point, a thing happens: **Decrevit senatus, ut legati Jugurthae in diebus proximis decem Italia decederent** (Sall. Jug. 28); but also **diebus decem** (Id. ib. 38), **qvatriduo eum exspecto** (*in four days*). **Paucis diebus** and **in paucis diebus**, *in the course of a few days, a few days afterwards*, or *in a few days*: **Paucis diebus Jugurtha legatos Romam mittit** (Sall. Jug. 13); **paucis diebus ad te veniam.** Here, too, we should notice the expression in connection with a relative clause: **paucis** (**in paucis**) **diebus** (**annis**), **qvibus** ——, *a few days after*, ——; e.g. **Diebus circiter xv, qvibus in hiberna ventum est, defectio orta est** (Cæs. B. G. V. 26). **In paucis diebus, qvibus haec acta sunt, Chrysis moritur** (Ter. And. I. 1, 77). **Sex. Roscii mors qvatriduo, qvo is occisus est, Chrysogono nuntiatur** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 37), properly, *in the course of the same four days, during which his assassination took place.*[1]

Obs. 5. We must particularly remark the use of the ablative with **hic** or **ille** to give the period of time, measured from the present, or from some given point in the past, within which a thing occurs: **His annis qvadringentis Romae rex fuit** (Cic. R. P. I. 37), *it is not more than four hundred years since there was a king at Rome,—four hundred years ago, or less.* **Ante hos qvadringentos annos** and **abhinc annos qvadringentos** is a more definite statement. See § **270**, *Obs.* 4. **Respondit, se paucis illis diebus argentum misisse Lilybaeum** (Id. Verr. IV. 18). **Hanc urbem hoc biennio evertes** (Id. Somn. Scip. 2), *before two years are past;* more definitely, **intra biennium.**[2]

Obs. 6. For an ablative of time with an ordinal numeral, followed by the adverb **ante** or **post** (e.g. **die decimo post** or **decimo post die**), we find also the preposition **ante** or **post**, with the accusative: **post diem decimum** (**decimum post diem**), as in § **270**, *Obs.* 4. (**Post tertium diem moriendum mihi est**, Cic. Div. I. 25 = **tribus his diebus, post**

---

[1] [**Oppidum paucis diebus, qvibus eo ventum est, expugnatum** (Cæs. B. G. III. 18). **Diebus x, qvibus materia coepta erat comportari** (Id. ibid. IV. 18).]

[2] **Intra centum annos,** *in less than a hundred years;* **inter centum annos,** *in the course of a hundred years, in a period of a hundred years;* e.g. **Inter tot annos unus innocens imperator inventus est** (= **tot annis**).

ıvam, or **postqvam** (e.g. **undecimo** , Cic. ad Att. XII. 1), we find also ı; e.g. **Post diem qvintum, qvam at, legati a Boccho veniunt** (Sall. this is a rare instance) **post sextum**), for **sexto anno post cladem** ii, Svet. Claud. 27.)[1]

he ablative instead of the accusative ion, see § **235**, *Obs.* 3.

tantive pronoun) having an adjec- , or having another substantive in d as being in a certain state (**rege duce**), is put in the ablative, and at that which is asserted in the pro- tinuance of that which is expressed the *ablative absolute*, or ablative of

It denotes either simply a par- **ge vivo**, *while the king lived*) ; or erformed, or the relation to it of **n gestum est rege duce**, *so that nder the king's command*). The expresses occasion, contrast, and great variety of phrases : —

st Antonio consulibus (*in the con- n consulibus Catilinae conjuratio thagoras Tarqvinio Superbo re- gn of Tarquin*). **Regibus ejectis** *the expulsion of the kings*). **An- eqvitum constitutus est** (*without* **est me invito. Nihil de hac re** d Fam. I. 2), *without violating the* **ıne auctore** (Id. Legg. III. 16), *at* **Scipio. Qvo auctore tantam rem is formis saepe dispares mores dissimilis est?** (Id. N. D. I. 35), *rs under the same exterior?* (**Aestu** I. 15, *in very hot weather*. **Tabulas**

re find (without the preposition) die (anno) o altero, qvam condita Roma est, ite- I. 33). (Postridie qvam, postero die tum, qvam affuerat, diem (Svet. Jul. 35),

in foro, summa hominum freqventia, exscribo, Id. Verr. II. 77, *in the midst of a great crowd.* Compare § **257**.)

A negative may also be attached to the adjective or participle; **factum hoc est me non invito.**

Obs. 1. In this way, the contents of a whole proposition, with its accessory ideas, may, by means of participles, be expressed as a circumstance qualifying another proposition; e.g. **hostibus post acre prœlium a littore submotis, Caesar castra posuit.** See §§ **428** and **429**.

Obs. 2. A simple demonstrative pronoun may sometimes stand in place of the adjective: **Qvid hoc populo obtineri potest?** (Cic. Legg. III. 16,) *what measure can be carried, so long as the people is such as it now is*, or *with the present people?* [1] **His moribus**, *in the present condition of the public morals.*

Obs. 3. In a few particular expressions, an external circumstance is intimated still more briefly by the ablative of a single word; e.g. **sereno** (Liv. XXXVII. 3), *with a fair sky*; **austro** (Cic. Div. II. 27), *in a south wind, when the wind is southerly.*

§ 278. *a.* Sometimes, when it can be done without obscuring the sense, a single predicate is qualified by several ablatives, which all differ from each other, so far as the application of the foregoing rules are concerned: —

Et legibus et institutis (§ **256**) **vacat senectus muneribus iis** (§ **261**) **qvae non possunt sine viribus sustineri** (Cic. Cat. M. 11). **Catilina scelerum exercitatione** (§ **254**) **assvefactus erat frigore et fame et siti perferendis** (§ **267**). (Id. in Cat. II. 5.) **Menippus meo judicio** (§ **256**, *Obs.* 3) **tota Asia** (§ **273**, *c*) **illis temporibus** (§ **276**) **disertissimus erat** (Cic. Brut. 91).

b. An ablative, which denotes reference (§ **253**), or the means (§ **254**), as well as an ablative of place (§§ **273**, *a*, **274**, **275**), or of time (§ **276**), is sometimes joined immediately to a verbal substantive, and not to the predicate of the proposition; e.g.: —

Harum ipsarum rerum reapse, non oratione, perfectio (Cic. Rep. I. 2); **exercitus nostri interitus ferro, fame, frigore, pestilentia** (Id. in Pis. 17); **mansio Formiis** (Id. ad Att. IX. 5); **reditus Narbone** (Id. Phil. II. 30); **illa universorum civium Romanorum per tot urbes uno puncto temporis misera crudelisqve caedes** (Id. pro Flacc. 25). (**Bello civili victor.**) This, however, is rare. (Compare § **298**.)

---

[1] [Itaqve ego illum exercitum, et Gallicanis legionibus, et hoc delectu, qvem in agro Piceno et Gallico Q. Metellus habuit, et his copiis, qvae a nobis qvotidie comparantur, magno opere contemno (Cic. in Cat. II. 3).]

Obs. 1. The relation which in Latin is denoted by the genitive is usually expressed in English by a preposition (especially *of*), or by a substantive and adjective: e.g. **ordo mercatorum**, *the mercantile class*; **bellum servorum**, *the war with the slaves* (also, **bellum servile**).

Obs. 2. In order to avoid repetition, the substantive which governs the genitive may be omitted, if it can, without ambiguity, be supplied from the context: **Meo judicio stare malo qvam omnium reliqvorum** (Cic. ad Att. XII. 21). **Perspicuum est, benevolentiae vim esse magnam, metus imbecillam** (Id. Off. II. 8). **Qvis potest sine maxima contumelia conferre vitam Trebonii cum Dolabellae?** (Id. Phil. XI. 4.) **Flebat pater de filii morte, de patris filius** (Id. Verr. I. 30). (On the other hand: **Nulla est celeritas, qvae possit cum animi celeritate contendere**, Id. Tusc. I. 19). A pronoun (**hic** or **ille**), answering to the word understood, is rarely inserted before the genitive, and only when direct reference is made to something already known, or mentioned shortly before; **Nullam enim virtus aliam mercedem laborum periculorumqve desiderat praeter hanc laudis et gloriae** (Cic. pro Arch. 11), *except this, of which I have already spoken*. Expressions like the following: **Videtisne captivorum orationem cum perfugis convenire** (Cæs. B. C. II. 39), instead of **cum perfugarum** (sc. **oratione**); or, **Ingenia nostrorum hominum multum ceteris hominibus praestiterunt** (Cic. de Or. I. 4), instead of **ceterorum hominum ingeniis**, result from a want of precision in the thought, the person or thing itself being put in the place of that which belongs to it.

Obs. 3. The word **aedes** or **templum** is often omitted (elliptically), after the preposition **ad** (sometimes after **ab**), before the genitive of the name of the divinity: **Ventum erat ad Vestae. Pugnatum est ad Spei.**

Obs. 4. A man's wife or son or daughter is, in a few instances, briefly expressed by the genitive alone: **Verania Pisonis** (Plin. Ep. II. 20); *Piso's Verania*, i.q. *Piso's wife Verania*; **Hasdrubal Gisgonis** (Liv. XXV. 37), *Gisgo's Hasdrubal*, i.q. *Hasdrubal, the son of Gisgo*, to distinguish him from another famous Hasdrubal, the son of Hamilcar. In the case of sons, this way of expression is chiefly used with names which are not Roman. (So likewise, **Flaccus Claudii**, *Flaccus, the slave*, or *freedman of Claudius*.)

Obs. 5. Since a thing may belong to a person in various ways, it follows that one and the same possessive genitive, governed by the same word, may admit of two meanings; e.g. **libri Ciceronis**. So also, **injuriae praetoris**, *the unjust acts of the prætor* (active); and **injuriae civium**, *the wrongs suffered by the citizens* (passive).

especially the use of the indeclinable substan-
on language, is used only in combination with
uch as, *the same* (in compass, weight, impor-
: **instar omnium** (Cic. Brut. 51), *as good as*
rbis instar inter ceteras habere videba-
be, *as it were, a city*; **montis instar equus**
ion), *a horse like a mountain*.

genitive may also be governed by an adjective
a neuter pronoun; **Omnia erant Metelli**
6), *every thing from Metellus*, that is, all his
5, *c*, *Obs.*)

ng joined immediately to the governing
. genitive may be combined with it by
r **fio**, so as to *declare* whose a thing is, or
hom it belongs: —

go totus Pompeji sum (Cic. ad Fam. II.
ion est (Id. ibid. IX. 16), *is not by Plautus.*
erunt, viri fiunt (Id. Top. 4). **Thebae**
factae sunt (Liv. XXIII. 13).

expresses whose property a thing is made;
ose it is supposed to be; e.g. **Neqve glo-**
um faciam (Sall. Jug. 85), *I will not take the*
he toil to them.

nm with the genitive, signifying to be some
e, is derived the expression, **aliqvid est mei**
esse dicionis Carthaginiensium, *to be under*
haginians (Liv. XXX. 9), and **facere ali-**
atis, arbitrii, *to bring a thing under one's own*
one's own disposal; **Romani imperio aucti,**
ucti erant (Liv. I. 25). **Marcellus id nec**
esse dixit (Id. XXV. 7), *that he had neither*

th the verb **sum** also denotes to whom or
appropriately belongs: —

lata oratio est (*is not suited to*). **Petu-**
entium qvam senum (*is more appropri-*

a genitive (or a possessive pronoun) is
verb **sum**, combined with an infinitive for
at is any one's affair (task, duty, custom,
characteristic sign) of a thing: —

Cujusvis hominis est errare, nullius, nisi insipientis in errore perseverare (Cic. Phil. XII. 2), *to err is the lot of every man, may happen to every man.* **Est boni judicis parvis ex rebus conjecturam facere. Secundas res immoderate ferre levitatis est** (*betrays weakness of character*). **Nihil est tam angusti animi tamqve parvi qvam amare divitias** (Cic. Off. I. 20). **(Tempori cedere semper sapientis habitum est,** Cic. ad Fam. IV. 9, *has always been considered fitting for a wise man.*)

Obs. 1. The same is more definitely expressed thus: **judicis officium (munus) est; sapientis est proprium,** &c. **Humanum est errare. Stulti est,** *it is peculiar to the fool, a distinguishing mark of the fool;* **stultum est,** *it is foolish.* With adjectives of one termination, the first method of expression is almost always employed; **Est prudentis sustinere impetum benevolentiae** (Cic. Læl. 17). We should hardly say, **Est prudens sust. imp. ben.**

Obs. 2. The following construction is worthy of notice: **Negavit moris esse Graecorum, ut in convivio virorum mulieres accumberent** (Cic. Verr. I. 26), *that it was according to the Greek custom.*

§ 283. A genitive is used with substantives of transitive signification to express the object of the transitive force (*the objective genitive*). Such substantives are those which are derived from transitive verbs, and express the notion of the verb; and others, which denote an affection, aversion, knowledge, ignorance, or a power, capacity, or influence; e.g.: —

Indagatio veri, accusatio sceleratorum, amor Dei (*love to God,* **amare Deum**), **odium hominum** (*misanthropy*), **timor hostium** (*fear entertained of the enemy*), **spes salutis, cura rerum alienarum, oblivio officii** (**obliviscor officii**); **taedium vitae** (**taedet vitae,** § **292**), **fuga laboris, studium severitatis, studium Pompejanarum partium, cupiditas gloriae, fames auri; scientia juris, peritia belli, ignoratio veri; potestas** (**copia**) **rei alicujus** (**facere alicui potestatem dicendi**); **signum erumpendi** (*for breaking out*); **occasio et locus pugnae** (**pugnandi**); **materia jocorum; libertas dicendi; praecepta vivendi** (*rules for life*).

Obs. 1. **Amor Dei, timor hostium,** may also signify (as the *possessive genitive,* according to § **280**) *God's love* (*to others*), *fear entertained by the enemy.* The context shows which signification is to be adopted.

Obs. 2. With those words which denote a feeling towards any one, the prepositions, **in, erga,** and **adversus,** are also used; e.g. **odium, mulierum,** and **odium in hominum universum genus** (Cic. Tusc. IV. 11). **Meum erga te studium. Adhibenda est reverentia qvae-**

Obs. 1. Instead of the genitive, the prepositions **ex, de,** and, in certain combinations, **in** or **inter,** *among,* are also used: e.g. **melior ex duobus, alter de duobus, aliqvis de heredibus, unus e tribus** (*one of three*); **Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit** (Cic. Legg. II. 11); **inter omnes unus excellit** (Id. Or. 2). But a partitive substantive is not readily combined by a preposition with another substantive (not **pars ex exercitu**). Concerning the use of a distributive apposition (**consules alter — alter**), instead of a proper division (**consulum alter — alter**), see § **217,** *Obs.* 1.

Obs. 2. A partitive genitive may also be governed by a substantive, which does not, in itself, signify a part, if several persons or things are designated by *one* name, and then mentioned severally; **Venio ad ipsas provincias, qvarum** (*of which*) **Macedonia, qvae erat antea munita et pacata, graviter a barbaris vexatur** (Cic. Prov. Cons. 2). On the other hand, a partitive genitive is rarely combined with the subject of a proposition by **sum** without a governing noun, as in the following instances: **Ariminenses erant duodecim coloniarum** (Cic. pro Cæc. 35), *were of, belonged to, the twelve colonies.* **Fies nobilium tu qvoqve fontium** (Hor. Od. III. 13, 13), *one of the famous fountains.*

Obs. 3. The word **uterqve** is always used with the genitive of pronouns (**uterqve eorum,** *both of them*; **uterqve nostrum,** *both of us*); with substantives, on the contrary, it is generally put as an adjective: **uterqve frater** (rarely, **uterqve legatorum,** Vell. II. 50).

Obs. 4. The adverb **partim** is used as a partitive adjective in the nominative and accusative with the genitive or a preposition: **Partim eorum ficta aperte, partim effutita temere sunt** (Cic. Div. II. 55). **Partim e nobis timidi sunt, partim a republica aversi** (Cic. Phil. VIII. 11). (The gender is regulated by the leading idea.)

Obs. 5. The use of a neuter adjective, in the singular or plural, as a substantive with the genitive, to denote a part (or parts) of a thing, is rare in the earlier writers (Cicero), with the exception of **dimidium,** *half:* e.g. **dimidium pecuniae** (Cic. Q. Fr. II. 4); but common at a later period, and in the poets: **medium (reliqvum) noctis; extremum aestatis; ad ultimum inopiae** (Liv. XXIII. 19), *to the extremity of want;* **plana urbis; ultima Orientis.** In the older writers, it is **media nox, extrema aestas; ultimus Oriens** (see § **311**); **plana urbis loca.** In the poets and later writers, the partitive idea often disappears, and only the quality of the thing is expressed; e.g. **incerta belli,** *the uncertainty* (*accidents*) *of war;* **lubricum paludum,** *slippery, marshy ground* (Tac. Ann. I. 65).[1]

---

[1] In poetical language also **cuncta terrarum** (Hor. Od. II. 1, 23), *the whole of the earth,* and (according to *Obs.* 6) **cuncti hominum.**

navis (Cic. Fin. IV. 37), *a ship-load of gold*; **flumina lactis**, *rivers of milk* (Ovid). **Tria millia eqvitum.** See § **72.**

Obs. So also, **sex dies spatii** (Cæs. B. C. I. 3, — properly, *six days' term* = a term of six days; also, **spatium sex dierum**); **sestertii bini accessionis** (Cic. Verr. III. 49), *two sesterces addition* (**accessio duorum sestertiorum**, *an addition of two sesterces*). **Praedae hominum pecorumqve. Imber sangvinis.**

b. This genitive is governed by the nom. or acc. sing. neut. of an adjective of quantity (**multum, plurimum, amplius, minus, minimum, tantum, qvantum, tantundem, nimium,** sometimes **exiguum,**[1] or of a (demonstrative, relative, interrogative, or indefinite) pronoun, and by **nihil,** the governing word being used as a substantive, in order to lay stress on the measure or degree or nature of the things spoken of: —

Multum temporis in aliqva re ponere; minimum firmitatis habere; id negotii habeo; hoc praemii; hoc tantum laboris itinerisqve (Cic. Verr. V. 49); **nihil virium; qvod roboris erat** (*what there was in strength, the strength which there was*). **Qvidqvid habui militum, misi. Qvid mihi consilii datis? Qvid tu hominis es?** (Ter. Heaut. IV. 6, 7), *what sort of man are you?* **Exiguum campi** (Liv. XXVII. 27).[2] Where this prominence is not aimed at, we find simply **tantum studium, tanta (tam multa) opera; qvod consilium mihi datis?** &c. (**Plus operae** = **major opera, plus** itself not being used as an adjective.)

The above adjectives and pronouns may also have, for their genitive, a neuter adjective of the second declension, which stands as a substantive: **aliqvid pulchri; qviddam novi; nihil boni; tantum mali; hoc incommodi; qvod pulchri erat, omne sublatum est** (*whatever beautiful things there were*); but also, **aliqvid pulchrum; nihil altum, nihil magnificum cogitare.** (The adjectives of the third declension are not employed in this way; we always find the form **aliqvid memorabile.** The adjectives of quantity are combined with another adjective only in the genitive in the singular: **plurimum novi**; in the plural, the other construction is used: **plurima nova,** § **301,** *b*; **plura nova**).

Obs. 1. Such an adjective or pronoun, with a genitive, cannot be governed by a preposition; we must say, **ad tantum studium,** not **ad tantum studii.** Yet we find **ad multum diei (ad multum diem),** *till*

---

[1] Not **magnum** or **parvum.**

[2] [**Cur sui qvidqvam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 16).]

[2] [**Injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum** (Cæs. de Bell. Gall. III. 10).]

[3] **Causa suspicionis** may also mean *the cause of the suspicion.*

Obs. 3. If, by the aid of the verb **sum**, a substantive is explained by another, which might have been combined with it without a verb in the genitive case to form a single idea, the genitive is often put with **sum**, and not the nominative, the subject being understood as repeated after **sum**: **Unum genus est eorum, qvi,** &c. (Cic. in Cat. II. 8), *one class is that of those, consists of those.* **Captivorum numerus fuit septem millium ac ducentorum** (Liv. X. 36), *the number of the prisoners was seven thousand two hundred* (**numerus septem millium**). **Major pars Atheniensium erat** (Just. V. 10), *the greater part was of Athenians, consisted of Athenians;* but also, **Praenestini maxima pars fuere** (Liv. XXIII. 19).

§ 287. The genitive of a substantive with an adjective (numeral, participle, pronoun) is either put with a substantive immediately by way of description, or is connected with a subject by the verb **sum**, in order to show its nature and properties, its requirements, its size and kind (*the genitive of quality, the descriptive genitive*).

a. **Juvenis mitis ingenii; vir et consilii magni et virtutis; civitates magnae auctoritatis; plurimarum palmarum vetus gladiator** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 6), *an old gladiator, who has obtained many victories.* **Natura humana imbecilla atqve aevi brevis est** (Sall. Jug. 1).

b. **Res magni laboris** (*which require much labor*); **hospes multi cibi** (Cic. Fam. IX. 26).

c. **Classis trecentarum navium; fossa centum pedum; exsilium decem annorum; homo infimi generis; multi omnium generum** (Cic. de Or. II. 9), *many men of every kind;* **vir ordinis senatorii; omnes gravioris aetatis** (Cæs. B. G. III. 16), *all men of advanced age.* **Virtus tantarum virium non est** (Cic. Tusc. V. 1). **Hoc non est tanti laboris, qvanti videtur. Classis fuit trecentarum navium.** (Also, **Critognatus magnae auctoritatis in Arvernis habitus est** (Cæs. B. G. VII. 77), *passed for an influential man.* **Caesar diversarum partium habebatur** (Svet. Jul. 1), *it was supposed that Cæsar belonged to the opposite party.* **Di me finxerunt animi pusilli** (Hor. Sat. I. 4, 17), *have created me pusillanimous.*)

Obs. 1. We must particularly notice the descriptive compounds of the genitive **modi** with a pronoun, which are used altogether as indeclinable adjectives: **hujusmodi, ejusmodi, illiusmodi, istiusmodi, ejusdemmodi, cujusmodi** (relat. and interrog.), **cujuscunqvemodi, cuicuimodi, cujusqvemodi**; e.g. **ejusmodi causa, ejusmodi causae,** &c.

Obs. 2. The genitive of quality resembles the ablative of quality (§ **272**); but the genitive denotes more the general nature and kind of the subject (*of*), while the ablative rather puts forward particular quali-

§ 289. The genitive is employed (as an objective genitive) with many adjectives which denote a quality that is directed to a certain object (transitive adjectives). (Compare § **283** on the objective genitive with substantives.) Such adjectives are the following:—

a. All participles in the present from transitive verbs, when they stand as pure adjectives, — i.e. when they are not used to signify a relation or action at a particular time, but denote a quality in general, — and the adjectives in **ax** formed from transitive verbs: **amans reipublicae civis (amantior reipublicae, amantissimus reipublicae**; see § **62**); **negotii gerens** (*carrying on a business*); **injuriarum perferens** (but if an adverb be subjoined, the participle has usually the construction of the verb: **homo facile injurias perferens**); **patiens laboris atqve frigoris**; **appetens gloriae**; **tenax propositi vir**; **tempus edax rerum**; **capacissimus cibi viniqve.**

b. Those adjectives which denote a desire (knowledge) of a thing or experience in it, or the reverse (dislike, ignorance, inexperience): as **avarus, avidus, cupidus, studiosus (fastidiosus), conscius, inscius, nescius, gnarus, ignarus, peritus, imperitus, prudens, rudis, insolens (insolitus), insvetus, memor, immemor**; and sometimes those which denote forethought or want of forethought (**providus, diligens, curiosus, incuriosus**): e.g. **cupidus gloriae, studiosus litterarum, peritus belli, ignarus rerum omnium, insvetus male audiendi, memor beneficii; vir omnis officii diligentissimus** (Cic. pro Cael. 30).[1]

Obs. 1. Such is also the construction of **consultus** in **jurisconsultus**, *one acquainted with law* (but also **jureconsultus**), and **certus** in the phrase **certiorem aliqvem facere**; e.g. **consilii, voluntatis** (but as frequently with **de**). The poets and later writers employ also some other adjectives of cognate signification in this way; e.g. **callidus, doctus (doctissima fandi,** Virg.).[2]

Obs. 2. **Conscius** is sometimes put according to this rule with the object in the genitive, and a dative of the person *with* whom one is privy to a thing (according to § **243**): e.g. **conscius alicui caedis, mens sibi conscia recti, conscius sibi tanti sceleris** (Sall. Cat. 34); sometimes also with the dative of the thing to which a person is privy: **conscius facinori, conscius mendacio alicujus.**

Obs. 3. **Rudis** and **prudens** are also used with **in**; **prudens in jure civili.** (Also **rudis ad pedestre certamen,** *inexperienced in the foot-race*; **insvetus ad onera portanda.**)

---

[1] [**Rudis agminum sponsus** (Hor. Od. III. 2, 9). **Imbrium divina avis imminentum** (Id. ibid. 27, 10).]

[2] [But **dulces docta modos** (Hor. Od. III. 9, 10). See § **228,** *Obs*]

(with the idea of a certain *fulness* and satiety), **vetus militiae, ambiguus futuri (de futuro,** with the notion of *ignorance*), **dubius viae, certus eundi.**[1] **Animi,** in particular, is often put in this way with adjectives which denote a certain state of feeling; **aeger, anxius, laetus, ingens animi.** Compare § **296,** *b*, *Obs.* 3.[2]

§ 291. Those verbs also take a genitive (objective) which signify to *remember* and *forget* (**memini, reminiscor, obliviscor**; very rarely, **recordor**), and those which denote to *remind* (a person) *of* a thing (**admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio**):—

Semper hujus diei et loci meminero. Oblivisci decŏris et officii. Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae (Sall. Cat. 21). **Omnes tui sceleris et crudelitatis ex illa oratione commonefiunt** (Cic. Verr. V. 43).[3]

Obs. 1. The accusative is often put with those verbs which signify *to remember* and *to forget*, most frequently with **memini,** when they denote *to have a thing in the memory* (*knowledge of a thing*) or the reverse (but not *to think of a thing*, or *not to think of it*); **memini numeros, si verba tenerem** (Virg. B. IX. 45). **Oblivisci causam** (*to forget the case*, of an advocate). **Antipatrum Sidonium tu probe meministi** (Cic. de Or. III. 50), *you still remember him, you knew him well.* **Recordor,** *to remember, think of*, almost always governs the accusative; we also find **recordor de aliqvo.** (**Mentionem facio rei** and **de re.**)

Obs. 2. With **admoneo,** etc., we also have, instead of the genitive, the accusative neuter of a pronoun or numeral adjective (§ **228,** *c*); and likewise the preposition **de: Unoqvoqve gradu de avaritia tua commonemur** (Cic. Verr. I. 59).

Obs. 3. The impersonal expression, **venit mihi in mentem,** *an idea strikes me*, is put, in the same way as those verbs, with the genitive; **Venit mihi Platonis in mentem,** *Plato occurs to me.* But it is also used personally, that which strikes a person being put as the subject: **Non venit in mentem pugna apud Regillum lacum?** (Liv. VIII. 5.) **Venit mihi in mentem vereri.**

§ 292. The verb **misereor (miseresco),** *to pity;* and the impersonal verbs **miseret (miserescit, miseretur), piget, poenitet, pudet, taedet, pertaesum est,** — have the object of the feeling (the person

---

[1] [**Capitis minor** (Hor. Od. III. 5, 42). **Fessi rerum** (Virg. Æn. I. 178). **Felices operum** (Id. G. I. 277).]

[2] [Also **notus animi** (Hor. Od. II. 2, 6).]

[3] The genitive with these verbs denotes that the mind is directed to an object, and is thus in combination with it.

one pities, is ashamed of, &c.) in the genitive. (The ashamed, &c., is expressed by the accusative, § 226).

borum! **Miseret me fratris. Poenitet me consilii. s fortunae poenitet** (Cic.), *every one is dissatisfied with* **tomines infamiae suae neqve pudet neqve taedet.** th **pudet** also denotes the person *before* whom the shame **ne deorum hominumqve** (Liv. III. 19).

of the genitive, we find also an infinitive of the action ect of repentance, shame, &c. **Pudet me haec fateri. enitet, pudet,** we have sometimes a demonstrative or i in the neuter as a subject. See § **218**, *Obs.* 2. (**Poenidus.** See § **167**, *Obs.*) **Miseror, commiseror,** *to* be accusative.

those verbs which signify to *accuse, impeach, con-xcquit*, the name of the crime *of which* a person is s put in the genitive, as with **accūso, incuso, insi-** (*to charge one before a court of justice*); **postulo, vo** (*to bring an action against a person for* —); **ar-convinco, damno, condemno, absolvo**; e.g.: —

liqvem furti; damnari repetundarum; convincere cii; absolvere aliqvem improbitatis.

les the verbs cited, a few others are also so constructed ormulas: e.g. **interrogare aliqvem ambitus** (Sall. Cat. *nan with obtaining office corruptly*; **judicatus pecuniae,** *case relating to money* (Liv. IV. 14). We should like- participle **compertus,** *convicted* (of a thing); e.g. **compertus.**[1]

following construction is also used: **accusare, postu- aliqvem de veneficio, de vi** (but not **arguo**). The e (**ablat. instrum.**) is likewise often put with these **e aliqvem crimine ambitus; damnatus est crimine ceteris criminibus absolutus** (*in what relates to the s and charges*). (**Accusari, damnari, absolvi lege** *ling to the Cornelian law:* **absolvi suspicione sceleris,** *rom the suspicion of crime.*) (**Accusare inertiam** *to complain of the indolence of young men.*)

damno and **condemno**, the punishment to which a mned (that with which he shall atone for his crime), is tive or ablative; e.g. **damnari capitis, pecuniae,** or

[1] In the Jurists **teneri (furti).**

capite.[1] **Omnia mortalium opera mortalitate damnata sunt** (Sen. Ep. 91). For a definite penalty consisting of money or land, the ablative is always employed: **damnari decem millibus, tertia parte agri,** as with **multo** always; **agro pecuniaqve hostes multare. (Damnari ad bestias, in metalla. Voti damnari.)**

§ 294. When the price for which a thing is *bought, sold,* or *made,* is stated indefinitely (by an adjective of quantity, or **nihilum**), the price is expressed in the genitive with **tanti, qvanti (tantidem, qvantivis, qvanticunqve), pluris, minoris;** but in the ablative with **magno, plurimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo, nonnihilo.**[2] With those verbs which signify *to estimate* (**duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo,** together with **sum** signifying *to be worth, have a certain price*), the genitive of all these words is employed, **aestimo** alone having both cases: —

Qvanti Chrysogonus docet? (Juv. VII. 176), *On what terms does Chrysogonus teach?* **Frumentum suum qvam plurimo vendere. Qvanti oryza empta est? Parvo** (Hor. Sat. II. 3, 156). **Voluptatem virtus minimi facit. Datames unus pluris apud regem fiebat qvam omnes aulici** (Corn. Dat. 5). **Homines sua parvi pendere, aliena cupere solent. Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi** (Cic. Off. I. 22). **Magni** and **magno aestimo virtutem.**[3]

Obs. 1. The verbs which mean *to estimate* take also (in common discourse) the genitives **flocci, nauci, assis (unius assis), teruncii,** with a negative, signifying *not to value in the least, to esteem not worth a farthing:* **Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt** (Cic. ad Fam. IV. 5). **(Hujus non facio,** *I care not that much for it!*) **Putare, habere pro nihilo.**

Obs. 2. Here we may also notice the idioms, **aeqvi boniqve** (or **boni** alone) **facio aliqvid, boni consulo,** *to take in good part.*

Obs. 3. The expression **tanti est** first denotes simply something (something *good*) *is worth so much,* is *of such importance,* that one ought to do or bear something for its sake; **Tanti non fuit Arsacem capere, ut earum rerum, qvae hic gestae sunt, spectaculo careres** (Cael. Cic. ad Fam. VIII. 14). Without any definite subject, we have: **tanti est,** *it* (the thing spoken of) *is worth the trouble;* **nihil est tanti,**

---

[1] **Damnatusqve longi**
Sisyphus Aeolides laboris (Hor. Od. II. 14, 19).

[2] The genitive of **tantus, qvantus,** and the comparatives, the ablative of **nihilum,** of the positives and superlatives (as also of the diminutive **tantulum**).

[3] This genitive is nearly allied to the genitive of quality.

Lastly, it is used of an *evil* which it is worth
is ready to bear), usually with an infinitive for
nti, Qvirites, hujus invidiae tempestatem
is belli periculum depellatur (Cic. Cat. II.
stantive: **Ant si rescierit** (Juno), **sunt**, o,
let. II. 424), *then I will bear her brawling.*

al verb **interest**, *it is of importance*, points
to whom a matter is of importance, by the
ve pronouns **meā, tua, sua, nostra, vestra**
rt, in the same signification, has the same
onouns, but rarely with the genitive.[1]

t, non tam sua qvam reipublicae interesse,
Jul. 86). **Clodii intererat, Milonem perire**
id tua id refert? (Ter. Phorm. IV. 5, 11).
Qvinct. IX. 4, 44, *it is of importance for the*
words.)
lly employed to express that in reference to
importance; **Magni ad honorem nostrum**
um ad urbem venire (Cic. ad Fam. XVI. 1).
ich is of importance may be designated by a
the verbs do not stand quite impersonally):
vehementer interest reipublicae; or by an
erest recte facere; but it is most frequently
a of a clause with the accusative and infinitive,
interrogative form. Of *how much* importance
by adverbs (**multum, plurimum, tantum,**
pere, vehementer), or by the genitive of the
nti, *&c.*).
pleo, compleo, egeo, and particularly **indigeo**,
he genitive instead of the ablative. See under
§ **261**, *a*, *Obs.* Concerning the poetical geni-
fy to desist, to refrain from, see § **262**, *Obs.* 4.[2]

of towns and small islands of the first and
lar are put in the genitive, to denote the
r occurs: —

ivere, Corinthi habitare. (Of other names
§ **273**, *a.*)

---

construction is unknown. Perhaps the pronoun has a kind *direction* (*in relation to me*).
positive, see § **172**, *Obs.* 5.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the genitive of larger (Greek) islands is also so used: **Cretae considere** (Virg. Æn. III. 162); **Conon Cypri vixit** (Corn. Chabr. 3), or (but rarely) of the Greek names of countries in **us: Chersonesi domum habere** (Corn. Milt. 2). Compare § **232**, *Obs.* 3 and 4.

Obs. 2. Such a genitive rarely has an appositive expression subjoined, and then the ablative with **in** is used: **Milites Albae constiterunt, in urbe opportuna, munita, propinqva** (Cic. Phil. IV. 2). In a very few such cases the ablative without **in** is used: **Vespasianus Corinthi, Achajae urbe, nuntios accepit de Galbae interitu** (Tac. Hist. II. 1).[1] If **urbs or oppidum (insula)** with **in** precedes, the name of the town (or island) is in the ablative: **Cimon in oppido Citio mortuus est** (Corn. Cim. 3); **in insula Samo** (Svet. Oct. 26). (Likewise **in ipsa Alexandria**, with a pronoun or adjective. We also find **tota Tarracina**, Cic. de **Or. II. 59**, *in all Tarracina*, according to § **273**, *c.*)

Obs. 3. This idiom proceeds from the fact that the genitive singular of the first and second declension (in **i**) has a different origin from the genitive of the third declension, and at first, in addition to its other meanings, conveyed the notion of being in a place.

b. In the same way are used the genitives **domi**, *at home;* **humi**, *on the ground* (*to the ground*); with **belli** and **militiae** in conjunction with **domi**: —

Sedere domi. Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi (Cic. Off. I. 22). **Humi jacere, prosternere aliqvem humi. P. Crassi, L. Caesaris virtus fuerat domi militiaeqve cognita** (Cic. Tusc. V. 19). **Saepe imperatorum sapientia constituta est salus civitatis aut belli aut domi** (Cic. Brut. 73). (In other connections, we have **in bello, in militia.**)

Obs. 1. **Domi** in this signification may be combined with a genitive or a possessive pronoun: **Marcus Drusus occisus est domi suae. Clodius deprehensus est cum veste muliebri domi Caesaris.** (**Domi alienae.**) Otherwise it is expressed thus: **in domo aliqva; in domo casta; in domo**, *in the house* (not *at home*).

Obs. 2. For **humi** the poets also say **humo, in humo.** (Always as **in humo nuda**, when an adjective follows.)

Obs. 3. In the same way **animi** is employed in expressions which denote doubt and anxiety: **Exspectando et desiderando pendemus animi. Absurde facis, qvi te angas animi** (also **animo**). **Tot populos inter spem metumqve suspensos animi habetis** (Liv. VIII. 13). **Confusus atqve incertus animi** (Id. I. 7).

---

[1] [**Antiochiae, celebri qvondam urbe et copiosa, antecellere omnes ingenii gloria contigit** (Cic. pro Arch. poet. 3).]

h is expressed by the genitive
ssive pronouns (which repre-
–

s tua est; comitia tua (*which*
e (§ 256); **nulla tua epistola,**
is; cum magno meo dolore.
genitive may therefore stand in
.g. **Tuum, hominis simplicis,**
Cui nomen meum absentis
preces non putas profuisse?
ra respublica salva est (Cic.
estrā ipsorum causā. Hi ad
restiterunt (Cic. Cat. IV. 2).
), in particular, are often so con-

vestrum are often put with
indeed when **omnium** precedes;
Cic. de Or. III. 55), *your unani-*
Patria est communis omnium
erwise but rarely; e.g. **splendor**
13).

pronoun *ought* to be subjoined
an object in the genitive (ob-
singular of the corresponding
ostri, vestri: properly, *of my*
ating genitive; e.g.: —
ogo, ut rationem mei habeatis,
betis ducem memorem vestri,
adet me vestri. Grata mihi
a (Cic. ad Fam. XII. 17), *your*
ne. Multa solet veritas prae-

h contain the idea of an active
denote, with reference to whom
ered as a possessive genitive, and
n; e.g. **accusator tuus** (Cloe-
orem meum (Cic. ad Att. I. 16).
objective genitive, the idea of an
is the object, being put promi-
lait filium ad Caesarem, non
accusatorem mei (Cic. ad Att.
lain of me. **Omnis natura est**

servatrix sui (Id. Fin. V. 9), *strives to preserve itself*. With a few other words, too, the genitive may be differently understood, and therefore represented by pronouns in different ways: e.g. **imago mea**, *my picture*; and **imago mei**, *a picture of me* (*which represents me*). On the other hand, a possessive pronoun is rarely substituted for a clearly objective genitive: e.g. **meo desiderio** for **desiderio mei**, *from a longing for me*; **tuā fiduciā** for **fiducia tui** (Cic. Verr. V. 68). **Habere rationem suam** (Id. Off. I. 39 = **sui**).

Obs. 2. The genitives **mei, tui,** &c., may also be used instead of a possessive pronoun, to mark something emphatically, as belonging to the nature of a thing: **Pressa est tellus gravitate sui** (Ov. Met. I. 30), *by its weight* (*the weight peculiar to it*). Later writers sometimes carry this still further.

c. The partitive genitive of **nos, vos,** is represented (when a *number* is divided) by **nostrum, vestrum**: —

Magna pars nostrum; multi vestrum; uterqve nostrum; qvis vestrum ——? But if a partition of the human being is spoken of, the genitives, **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,** are employed; e.g. **Nostri melior pars animus est** (Senec. Qv. Nat. I., præf.).

Obs. **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are rarely used objectively for **nostri** and **vestri**: **Cupidus vestrum** (Cic. Verr. III. 96). **Custos urbis et vestrum** (Id. Cat. III. 12), *of the town and you, each individual of you*. To express partition (of a number) with the reflective pronoun, we must use **ex se** or **suorum** (*of this* or *their people*).

§ 298. *Appendix to Chapter V.* *a.* In such special relations as cannot be expressed by the genitive, a substantive, to limit the meaning of another substantive, may be connected with it by a preposition: **judicium de Volscis; voluntas totius provinciae erga Caesarem.** But the beginner must beware of using such constructions, where the preposition in English only connects one idea with the other in a general way; for, in such cases, the relation is expressed in Latin by a possessive or objective genitive; e.g. not **Livius in proemio ad bellum Punicum,** but **in proemio belli Punici.**

b. The referring of a preposition with its case to a single substantive may sometimes be obscure in Latin, in consequence of the want of a definite article and the free position of the words, because the definition may be also referred to the verb and the whole predicate, or it may give a clumsy character to the sentence. In such cases the construction with a preposition is avoided. But no ambiguity arises, and this construction is most frequently employed.

tive to which the words refer has already a geni-
pronoun with it, so that the preposition with its
the first definition as a second and more accurate
etween the principal substantive and the genitive
in Hispania res secundae (Cæs. B. C. II. 37):
is Hecatonis (Cic. Off. III. 23); caedes in
norum (Liv. IV. 32): omnes ante Socratem
I. 4). Ista mihi fuit perjucunda a proposita
. Brut. 85).

stantive and the definition annexed by the
their signification, be naturally and easily
a, as, for instance, verbal substantives with
kin to the signification of the verb contained
bstantives which denote a temper of mind, or
in, erga, adversus; names of persons and
in certain combinations, a), to denote their
lace of starting (with de and ex also, in a
or with cum and sine, to denote that which
i to or accompany; names of external objects,
defined by ad and in; and in some other cases,
the arrangement of the words, the preposition
stantive than the verb: Discessio ab omnibus
a vita (Cic. Tusc. I. 34); reditus in urbem;
Hispania, in Macedoniam); totius provin-
sarem; crudelitas in cives; contumeliae et
m Milesium (Cic. Verr. I. 34); auxilium ad-
o de plebe Romana, de schola; civis Ro-
anormitano; caduceator ab Antiocho (Liv.
a Gadibus; aliqvis de nostris hominibus
torbus cum imbecillitate; simulacrum Ce-
c. Verr. IV. 49); sine ratione animi elatio;
ratione negligo (Id. Tusc. II. 3); homo sine
(Id. pro Cael. 32); omnia trans Iberum,
n; insulam in lacu Prelio vendere (Cic.
idiarum a meis (Id. Somn. Scip. 3), *insidious
my friends*; omnis metus a vi atqve ira deo-
N. D. I. 17), *all fear in respect to, of* ——.
patribus (*over the patricians*) et favore plebis
).

biguity, a suitable participle may be introduced:
is factum; litterae Gadibus allatae; insula
octio delectatione carens; sometimes, too, a
ve may be employed: e.g. libri, qvi sunt de

natura deorum, or, **libri, qvos Cicero de natura deorum scripsit.** In other cases, an adjective is put instead of a preposition with its case. See § **300**, *Obs.* 3.

Obs. 2. Two connected limiting words, of which one is subordinate to the other, cannot be joined to a substantive by prepositions; we, therefore, cannot say, **simulacrum Cereris cum facibus in manibus**, but **faces manibus tenens.**

CHAPTER VI.

THE VOCATIVE.

§ 299. *a.* The Vocative is used when a person is called or spoken to, and is inserted in the sentence without any connection with the rest of the proposition: —

Vos, o Calliope, precor, aspirate canenti! (Virg. Æn. IX. 525), *Assist me, Calliope, thou and thy sisters!*

The interjection **o** is not inserted in prose, in customary addresses, or in calling to a person (**Credo ego vos, judices, mirari** (Cic.). **Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoria uti nescis. Adeste, amici!**) but only in exclamations of surprise, of joy, or of anger: **O dii boni, qvid est in hominis vita diu** (Cic. Cat. Maj. 19). **O tenebrae, o lutum, o sordes, o paterni generis oblite!** (Id. in Pis. 26). Compare § **236**, *Obs.* 1.

Obs. In the poets, **o** is often prefixed to the vocative, without any particular emphasis.

b. Limiting words may be added to the word which stands in the vocative according to the common rules: —

Primā dicte mihi summā dicende Camenā, Maecenas! (Hor. Ep. I. 1) *thou, Mœcenas! sung* (i.e. *whom I have sung*) *in my first song, and shall sing in my last.*

Obs. 1. In the poets, and in antiquated style, the nominative is sometimes found instead of the vocative: e.g. **Almae filius Majae!** (Hor. Od. I. 2, 43). **Vacuas aures mihi, Memmius, adhibe** (Lucr. I. 45). **Vos, o Pompilius sangvis** (Hor. A. P. 292). **Audi tu, populus Albanus** (Liv. I. 24).

Obs. 2. In some rare instances, a word in apposition in the nominative is added to the vocative; e.g. **Hoc tu (audes), succinctus patria qvondam, Crispine, papyro?** (Juv. IV. 24). Conversely, we sometimes meet with the vocative of a participle or adjective which would

c. In the same way are used **totus, solus, diversus** (*different ways*), **sublīmus** (*on high*), **freqvens, proximus**, as also **prudens** (*knowingly*), **sciens, imprudens, invitus**: **Philosophiae nos penitus totosqve tradimus** (Cic. Tusc. V. 2). **Soli hoc contingit sapienti** (*only to the wise man*). **Aqvila sublīmis abiit. Roscius erat Romae freqvens** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 6). **Consules in provincias diversi abiere. Manlius assedit proximus Laelio. Plus hodie boni feci imprudens qvam sciens ante hunc diem unqvam** (Ter. Hec. V. 2, 40). **Invitus discedo. (Dare alicui pecuniam mutuam.)**

Obs. 1. So, likewise, the relation between the direction of a movement, and the place where it occurs, is expressed by the adjectives **adversus, secundus, obliqvus**, joined with the name of the place: **in adversum collem subire** (*up the hill*); **secundo flumine navigare; obliqvo monte decurrere** (Liv. VII. 15), *obliquely down the mountain.*

Obs. 2. Other adjectives also, which denote relations of time and place, are used by the poets in apposition, instead of adverbs: **Aeneas se matutinus agebat** (Virg. Æn. VIII. 465). **Gnavus mane forum, vespertinus pete tectum** (Hor. Ep. I. 6, 20). **Domesticus otior** (Id. Sat. I. 6, 128) = **domi.**

Obs. 3. It is to be observed, that in not a few cases, where, in English, a substantive is defined by another substantive with a preposition, or a compound substantive is used, the definition is expressed, in Latin, by a derivative adjective, which denotes something that stands in a certain relation, consists of a certain material, belongs to something, &c.; e.g. **filius herilis, tumultus servilis** (*the rising of the slaves*), **bellum sociale, vincula ferrea, iter maritimum, pedestre, metus regius** (Liv. II. 1), *awe* (*entertained*) *of the king* (objective), **Hector Naevianus** (*the Hector of the poet Nævius*), **Hercules Xenophonteus**; and so frequently with proper names. Those adjectives should be particularly noticed which express the home, and place of residence: **Dio Syracusanus** (*of Syracuse*), **Hermodorus Ephesius**, &c. (far less frequently, **Cn. Magius Cremonā, Turnus Herdonius ab Aricia** (Liv. I. 50), and others); also, the place where a thing has happened: **clades Alliensis, pugna Cannensis.** In some cases, both forms are used: **poculum aureum** and **ex auro; pugna Leuctrica** and **pugna Lacedaemoniorum in Leuctris** (Cic. Div. II. 25). **Bellum servile** and **bellum servorum.** (Conversely, a genitive is sometimes found in Latin, where an adjective would be used in English; as, **domicilia hominum**, *human dwellings.*)

Obs. 4. It is rarely the case that any other adjectives are added to a proper name (in prose) than those which serve to discriminate several of the same name (e.g. **Africanus major, minor, Piso Frugi**, as a surname, **magnus Alexander**, Liv. VIII. 3), or express the native place

with a common noun put
ns, *the wise Plato*; **Capua,**
We find, also, **Illa severa**
e addition of a pronoun.
elves such expressions as
the like.) It is also un-
ins adjectives which are to
he whole class. Such ad-
prehensive generic term;
timid dove (of doves in

ion with an adjective de-
oneraria), an additional
new adjective; e.g. **navis**
ae eqvestres inauratae
nstead of **multae graves**
say, **multae et graves**
nen **multus** is followed by
or bad quality, or a cer-
simi atqve optimi viri

substantives in order to
by a particular quality.

l to designate men of a
arned; **boni,** *the good*;
cti, and in certain com-
ne singular, on the con-
ne context excludes all

bero qvidem digna est
mpetum benevolentiae
Plurimum in faciendo
m in judicando (Id. Or.

ely so employed.
sapiens (*the wise man*),
ner adjective is subjoined
il insipiente fortunato
fool favored by fortune.
learned noble. (*No man*
by **nemo doctus, qvis-**

qvam doctus, with the substantives **nemo** and **qvisqvam**, in the same way as **nemo Atheniensis, qvisqvam Romanus**; *a man of great learning*, **homo doctissimus**; *a true philosopher*, **homo vere sapiens**; and thus always, when the degree and character of a quality are to be specified.)

b. The whole class of objects of a certain character is expressed in Latin by the neuter plural: **bona**, *what is good* (*good things*); **mala**, *what is bad* (**bonum**, *a good, something good;* **malum**, *an evil, something bad*); **omnia pulchra**, *every thing beautiful;* **multa memorabilia**, *much that is remarkable;* **ubi plurima nitent**, *where the greater part is beautiful;* **omnia nostra**, *all that belongs to us.* **Omne pulchrum**, *every individual thing that is beautiful;* e.g.:—

Omne supervacuum pleno de pectore manat, Hor. A. P. 337; but never **multum memorabile**. (Compare what is said of the pronouns, § **312**, *b*.) The singular, on the contrary, is made use of when an idea is general, and not a whole class of several objects is to be understood: e.g. **verum**, *the truth*, **verum fateri, verum audire, investigatio veri** (but **vera nuntiare**, *to bring true intelligence;* **veritas**, *the quality of being true*); **natura, justi et aeqvi mater**, *the mother of justice and equity;* **multum, plurimum, tribuo huic homini.**

Obs. 1. Often, too, the periphrasis with **res** is made use of; **res bonae et honestae.** With adjectives, ambiguity may result in those cases in which the neuter is not distinguished from the other genders. The adjectives of the third declension are not often used in the way last mentioned (in the singular), except in the nominative or accusative. (**Mater justi**, but not **utilis.** Yet Livy says (XLII. 47), **Potior utilis qvam honesti cura.**)

Obs. 2. Concerning the neuter singular or plural of adjectives, with a genitive of the parts of a thing, see § **284**, *Obs.* 5.

Obs. 3. The neuter of adjectives is sometimes combined with prepositions into particular phrases and adverbial expressions: e.g. **esse in integro**, *to be undecided, so that one has his hands still free;* **de (ex) improviso**, *unexpectedly;* **de integro**, *afresh;* **sine dubio**, *without doubt* (*doubt*, subst. **dubitatio**); particularly with **ex**, but mostly in later writers: e.g. **ex facili** (= **facile**), **ex affluenti** (= **affluenter**).

c. Certain adjectives have acquired the full force of independent substantives, their masculine and feminine suggesting in general only the idea of a person, the neuter that of a thing, with a given quality; e.g. **amicus, inimicus, adversarius, amica** (§ **247**, *b*, *Obs.* 1) **bonum, malum, ludicrum**, *a play;* **simile**, *a likeness;* **inane**, *empty space.* With others, on the other hand, a particular

plus habet qvam molestiae. Hoc est hominis gloriae qvam scientiae studiosioris. Cui potius credam, qvam tibi? Donum specie qvam re majus. (Non Apollinis magis verum atqve hoc responsum est, Ter. Andr. IV. 2, 14). **Titius non tam acutus qvam Sejus est. Titium alia poena affecisti atqve Sejum.**

Obs. 1. Concerning the use of **ac**, see § **444**, *b*. The members are put in the same case, even if the sentence be an accusative with an infinitive: **Decet nobis cariorem esse patriam qvam nosmetipsos** (Cic. Fin. III. 19. **Patria nobis carior est qvam nosmetipsi**).

Obs. 2. Sometimes the word **qvam** with the second member of the comparison is put in juxtaposition with the first member before the comparative, to make the contrast more striking: **Ex hoc judicari potest, virtutis esse, qvam aetatis, cursum celeriorem** (Cic. Phil. V. 17). **Maris subita tempestas qvam ante provisa terret navigantes vehementius** (Id. Tusc. III. 22).

b. If the first member is governed by a word which does not also belong to the second member of the comparison, a new proposition must be formed, with a verb of its own (**sum**):—

Haec verba sunt Varronis, hominis doctioris, qvam fuit Claudius (Gell. X. 1). **Verres argentum reddidit L. Cordio, homini non gratiosiori, qvam Cn. Calidius est** (Cic. Verr. IV. 20). **Hoc est Titii, hominis non tam acuti, qvam Sejus est**

If, however, the first member is an accusative, this case is often retained, although the governing word cannot be repeated (attraction):—

Ego hominem callidiorem vidi neminem qvam Phormionem (Ter. Phorm. IV. 2, 1) = **qvam Phormio est. Patrem qvum fervet maxime, tam placidum reddo qvam ovem** (Ter. Ad. IV. 1, 18) = **qvam ovis est. Tibi, multi majori, qvam Africanus fuit, me, non multo minorem qvam Laelium, et in republica et in amicitia adjunctum esse patĕre** (Cic. ad Fam. V. 7) = **qvam Laelius fuit.**

Obs. 1. The examples under *a* show that we may always use the same case when the first member of the comparison is the subject, or when the adjective (the adverb in combination with an adjective or participle; e.g. **splendidius ornatus**) does not belong as an attribute or predicate to the first member itself, but to another word. If, on the contrary, the adjective or adverb belongs (either alone, or as part of a description; e.g. **majoris pretii, splendidius ornatus**) to the first member of the comparison, and this is not the subject, the governing word can very seldom be repeated; e.g. **Propemodum justioribus**

t a philosophia, qvam his (viz.
constituunt (Cic. Finn. I. 1).

s of the comparison are subjects, a
› of its own, if a difference of time
nitior ad custodiendam vitam
Cic. ad Q. Fr. II. 3). But such a
ctly expressed.

comparative (of an adjective or
nparison is a nominative or accu-
may be omitted and the second
):—

ıorte pejus (Cic. Phil. VIII. 10).
lo fuit (Liv. I. 22). Nihil est
ate. Qvid nobis duobus labori-
ɣvis — laboriosior? Nihil illo
citius arescit (Rhet. ad Her. II.
em Platone laudare possumus?
ivum sangvine viperino cautius
sangvinem viperinum.

ıe comparative as an adjective does
ıparison, but to another word: Tu
. ego.

ter the comparative of an adverb is
s of adjectives the ablative is more
e nominative and for the subject-
nfinitive) than for the object-accu-
instead of an object-accusative is
r usual with pronouns; Hoc nihil
ould be especially noticed, that the
ı the ablative, governed by a com-
l by a negative, when we should
apposition: Phidiae simulacra,
tius videmus (Cic. Orat. 8), *than*
, *the most perfect we see.* Punicum
ni gessere (Liv. XXXVIII. 53),
prosecuted (not maximum quod
orum quae Romani). Qvam is
ı the relative. (Pleonastic: Qvid
n omnes Segestae matronas et
. exportaretur ex oppido? (Cic.

Obs. 2. It is a rare license to put the ablative after the comparative when the latter stands in any other case than the nominative and accusative; **Pane egeo, jam mellitis potiore placentis** (Hor. Ep. I. 10, 11) = **qvam mellitae placentae sunt.**[1]

Obs. 3. The poets use this ablative also with **alius**; **Ne putes alium sapiente bonoqve beatum** (Hor. Ep. I. 16, 20).

Obs. 4. In order to express that something exceeds what is supposed or required, or does not correspond to it, the Latins employ the ablatives **spe, exspectatione, opinione, justo, solito, aeqvo, necessario** before a comparative, either of an adjective or adverb: e.g. **Opinione omnium majorem animo cepi dolorem** (Cic. Brut. 1). **Caesar opinione celerius venturus esse dicitur** (Cic. ad Fam. XIV. 23), *than had been expected.* **Amnis solito citatior** (Liv. XXIII. 19).

§ 305. If a magnitude, which is expressed either by a numeral or by a substantive which denotes a measure (e.g. **annus**, *a year*; **pars dimidia**, *half*; **digitus transversus**, *a finger-breadth*; &c.), is increased by **plus** or **amplius** (*more than*), or diminished by **minus** (*less than*), **plus, amplius,** or **minus,** with or without **qvam,** is added to the name of the magnitude, without any influence on its case, which remains the same which the context would require without these comparatives (**plus qvam triginta milites, plus triginta milites, cum militibus plus qvam triginta, cum militibus plus triginta**). But if this case be the nominative or accusative (**intersunt sex millia, habeo decem milites**), **plus, amplius,** or **minus,** may be put as the nominative or accusative, and take the name of the magnitude in the ablative (**interest amplius sex millibus, habeo plus decem militibus**); e.g.:—

a. **Caeduntur Hispani nec plus qvam qvattuor millia effugerunt** (Liv. XXXIX. 31). **Zeuxis et Polygnotus non sunt usi plus qvam qvattuor coloribus** (Cic. Brut. 18). **Caesar legem tulit, ne praetoriae provinciae plus qvam annum neqve plus qvam biennium consulares obtinerentur** (Cic. Phil. I. 8).

b. **Plus septingenti capti sunt** (Liv. XLI. 12). **Plus pars dimidia ex qvinqvaginta millibus hominum caesa est** (Id. XXXVI. 40). **Apes nunqvam plus unum regem patiuntur** (Sen. de Clem. I. 19). **Spatium est non amplius pedum sexcentorum** (Cæs. B. G. I. 38). **Plus dimidiati mensis cibaria** (Cic. Tusc. II. 16). **Tribu-**

---

[1] The ablative after a comparative, which belongs to a third substantive, is a very rare exception; C. **Caesar majorem senatu animum habuit** (Vell. Paterc. II. 61), = **qvam senatus.**

viginti vulneribus acceptis jacentem moribun- Id. pro Sest. 39). Qvinctius tecum plus annum inct. 12). With a different order: Decem haud rumentum (Tac. H. IV. 52. Cum decem haud um (Liv. XXVIII. 1).

› non amplius duobus millibus militum habuit oscius nunqvam plus triduo Romae fuit (Cic. nter hostium agmen et nostrum non amplius suum intererat (Cæs. B. G. I. 15).

mplius, plus, or minus, with a plural, stands for the out qvam, the verb is always put in the plural: Amnses.

i magis both signify *more*, but the former (like amquantity, the latter to the degree; the former correrative of *much*, the latter to that of *very*; magis is, an adverb of comparison with verbs, adjectives, and h verbs, however, plus is also used as an adverb (propni, *in a greater measure*); e.g. Vitiosi principes plus ccato nocent (Cic. Legg. III. 14). Fieri non m plus alterum diligat qvam se (Id. Tusc. III. ive, we rarely find such an expression as multum um with an adjective, but more frequently, mulhave *much intercourse with a person*; multum me ur, Cic. ad Att. XIV. 13). To show that a word n idea, plus is always employed: Animus plus Confitebor eos plus qvam sicarios esse (Cic. he other hand, magis (potius) timeo qvam spero. us signifies *as little*, when both members of the com: Scutum, gladium, galeam in onere nostri milinerant qvam humeros, lacertos, manus (Cic. n nascitur ex malo bonum, non magis qvam Ep. 87); but it also denotes *in no higher degree*, i.e. hen both are affirmed: Jus bonumqve apud vetemagis qvam natura valebat (Sall. Cat. 9); in the the word expressing the antithesis is often interposed

(with the measure of the difference in the ablative, both Uno plus Etruscorum cecidit (Liv. II. 7), *ide of the Etruscans*; and Unā plures tribus legem . 30), *one tribe more*.

ectives and adverbs, which denote a measure, tive (according to § 234, *a*), the simplest way of

enhancing or diminishing the given measure is by the addition of **plus, amplius,** or **minus,** with or without **qvam,** according to the preceding paragraph: —

Umbra non amplius qvattuor pedes longa (Plin. Hist. Nat. VI. 39). **Nix minus qvattuor pedes alta jacuit** (Liv. XXI. 61). **Minus qvinqve et viginti millibus longe ab Utica copiae aberant** (Cæs. B. C. II. 37). But we may also use the comparative of the adjective or adverb (*longer than four feet*, instead of *more than four feet long*), and add the word expressing the measure, either in the accusative, without **qvam,** according to § **234,** *a*, or in the ablative, if the adjective stands in the nominative or accusative: **Digitum non altior unum** (Lucr. IV. 415). **Gallorum copiae non longius millia passuum octo aberant** (Cæs. B. G. V. 53). **Palus non latior pedibus qvinqvaginta** (Id. ib. VII. 19). (**Qvinqvaginta pedibus latior** might also signify *fifty feet broader* than something else, according to § **270.**)

Obs. 1. With **natus** (so many years) *old*, we say either (according to the first form of expression), **natus plus, amplius, minus (qvam) triginta annos** (rarely in the ablative, **plus triginta annis**), or (according to the second form), **major (minor) qvam triginta annos natus** (Liv. XLV. 32), or (omitting **qvam**), **major triginta annos natus** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 14), or simply **major (minor) triginta annis** (without **natus**, Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 35).[1] (Distinct from **major (minor), natu,** *older* (*younger*) than another, and from **grandis natu, maximus natu.**)

Obs. 2. Concerning the way in which the degree of difference is expressed by the ablative with a comparative, see § **270,** with *Obs.* 1.

§ 307. **A comparison of two qualities, which are found in the same subject or action in an unequal degree, is denoted either by the positive with magis,** or by two comparatives; e.g.: —

Magis audacter qvam prudenter; consilium magis honestum qvam utile; L. Aemilii contio fuit verior qvam gratior populo (Liv. XXII. 38). **Non timeo, ne libentius haec in Clodium evomere videar qvam verius** (Cic. pro Mil. 29). **Bella fortius qvam felicius gerere** (Liv. V. 43).

§ 308. The comparative also serves to denote that the quality referred to exists in a considerable or too high a degree: —

---

[1] The following forms of expression are of less frequent occurrence: **major triginta annis natus; major triginta annis natu; major triginta annorum,** with the genitive of quality and the omission of **qvam.**

Es tu qvidem mihi carissimus, sed multo eris carior, si bonis praeceptis laetabere (Cic. Off. III. 33).[1] **Vir fortissimus et clarissimus L. Sulla. Optime valeo.** The exclusive signification is known either from the context or from the addition of a partitive genitive or a preposition (**optimus omnium, ex omnibus**).

Obs. 1. If the partitive genitive is of a different gender from the subject, the gender of the superlative should properly be always regulated by that of the genitive, because it denotes a single object of that class: **Servitus omnium malorum postremum est** (Cic. Phil. II. 44); but it is, notwithstanding, often regulated by that of the subject: **Indus est omnium fluminum maximus** (Cic. N. D. II. 52). **Dulcissime rerum!** (Hor. Sat. I. 9, 4).

Obs. 2. The exclusive signification of the superlative is expressed more strongly by the addition of **unus**, or **unus omnium**; e.g. **P. Scaevolam unum nostrae civitatis et ingenio et justitia praestantissimum audeo dicere** (Cic. Læl. 1). **Res una omnium difficillima. Miltiades et antiqvitate generis et gloria majorum unus omnium maxime florebat** (Corn. Milt. 1). The superlative (even when not exclusive) is increased in force by **longe, multo** (which is the measure of the difference between it and others); **multo formosissimus.** Concerning the superlative with **qvisqve**, see the Appendix on the pronouns, § **495**.

Obs. 3. In order to express the highest possible degree, either **qvam maximus** (**optimus**, &c.), **qvantus maximus**; with adverbs, **qvam maxime, qvantum maxime, ut maxime**, are combined with **possum**, or we have only (less definitely) **qvam maximus, qvam maxime**; **Jugurtha qvam maximas potest (qvam potest maximas) copias armat** (Sall. Jug. 48), *as many troops as he can*. **Hannibal, qvantam maximam vastitatem potest, caedibus incendiisqve efficit** (Liv. XXII. 3), *the greatest devastation he can*. **Tanta est inter eos, qvanta maxima potest esse, morum studiorumqve distantia** (Cic. Lael. 20). **Caesari te commendavi, ut diligentissime potui** (Id. ad Fam. VII. 17). — **Dicam qvam brevissime. Mihi nihil fuit optabilius, qvam ut qvam gratissimus erga te esse cognoscerer** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 5). **Vendere aliqvid qvam plurimo.**

Obs. 4. We should also notice the way in which comparison is expressed with the relative: **Tam sum mitis qvam qvi lenissimus** (viz. **est**; (Cic. pro Sull. 31). **Tam sum amicus reipublicae qvam qvi maxime** (Id. ad Fam. V. 2). **Te semper sic colam et tuebor ut qvem diligentissime** (sc. **colam**; Id. ib. XIII. 62).

---

[1] [**Qvum illa certissima sunt visa argumenta atqve indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manus, deniqve uniuscujusqve confessio, tum multo illa certiora, color, oculi, vultus, taciturnitas** (Cic. in Cat. III. 5).]

b. If a demonstrative pronoun, which does not refer to any individual substantive, denotes something that comprehends a plurality (e.g. the contents of a speech, a series of circumstances), it is put in the neuter plural (like adjectives, § **301,** *b*) : —

Ea, qvae pater tuus dicit, vera sunt. Haec omnia scio. Postqvam haec rex animadvertit, constituit abire. Qvae narras, mihi non placent (i.q. **ea, qvae narras**). (**Hoc,** *this one circumstance.*) The same holds of the relative pronoun, where it is used (copulatively) instead of the demonstrative; **Qvae qvum ita sint,** *since then this is so* (*since the circumstances are so*). (But of a single thing; **Qvod qvum ita sit.**)

§ 313. If a demonstrative pronoun is first put indefinitely as a subject or object (that, this), and then connected with a substantive by **sum,** or a verb that signifies to *name* or *esteem,* the pronoun takes the gender and number of the substantive (attraction) : —

Romae fanum Dianae populi Latini cum populo Romano fecerunt. Ea erat confessio, caput rerum Romam esse (Liv. I. 45). **Haec mea est patria** (Cic. Legg. II. 2). **Eas divitias, eam bonam famam magnamqve nobilitatem putabant** (Sall. Cat. 7). **Cum ducibus ipsis, non cum comitatu confligant. Illam enim fortasse virtutem nonnulli putabunt, hanc vero iniqvitatem omnes** (Cic. pro Balb. 27). (**Non amicitiae tales, sed conjurationes putandae sunt,** Id. Off. III. 10, *a thing of that kind* (*such a thing*) *is not to be regarded,* &c. **Nullam virtutem nisi malitiam putant,** Id. Legg. I. 18, *they consider nothing to be virtue.*)

Obs. The deviations from this are rare, and are generally the result of a particular effort, either to express a thing entirely indefinite (in the neuter; **Nec sopor illud erat,** Virg. Æn. III. 173), or to secure the more distinct conception of a person, which person is then described by means of a neuter substantive; **Haec (filia tua) est solatium, qvo reficiare** (Sen. ad Helv. 17).

§ 314. It may also be noticed, that Latin writers sometimes use a demonstrative pronoun (or a relative instead) *in agreement with* substantives, *in a suggestive sense,* instead of adding that which is suggested in the genitive case. The substantives in such cases usually denote an emotion of the mind: e.g. **hic dolor,** *this pain;* instead of **dolor hujus rei,** *pain on account of this thing.* **Cassivellaunus essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum eqvitum cum iis confligebat, atqve hoc metu** (*by the alarm thus occasioned*) **latius vagari prohibebat** (Cæs. B. G. V. 19). **Sed haec qvidem est perfacilis et perexpedita defensio** (Cic. de Finn. III. 11, i.q. **hujus rei**). (**Haec similitudo,** *something like this.*)

qvod: Si a vobis, id qvod non spero, deserar, tamen animo non deficiam (Id. Rosc. Am. 4).[1] The relative proposition is usually inserted before the predicate to which it refers.

c. The attraction spoken of in § **313**, between a demonstrative employed indefinitely, and the substantive following, holds good also with the relative; **Qvae apud alios iracundia dicitur, ea in imperio superbia atqve crudelitas appellatur** (Sall. Cat. 51, *what among others* —).

§ 316. If a relative which refers to a substantive going before has another substantive connected with it by means of the verb **sum**, or one of the verbs which signify *to name, to esteem*, the number and gender of the relative may be accommodated either to the substantive which precedes, or that which follows: —

Darius ad eum locum, qvem Amanicas Pylas vocant, pervenit (Curt. III. 20). **Thebae ipsae, qvod Boeotiae caput est, in magno tumultu erant** (Liv. XLII. 44).[2] The last is done when an observation is appended to a word already defined (a definite person or thing): **Cn. Pompejo, qvod imperii populi Romani lumen fuit, exstincto, interfectus est patris simillimus filius** (Cic. Phil. V. 14). **Justa gloria, qvi est fructus verae virtutis honestissimus** (Id. in Pis. 24). If, on the contrary, the idea is only defined by the relative clause, the relative, for the most part, agrees with the preceding word; **Flumen qvod appellatur Tamesis** (Cæs. B. G. V. 11), *a river, the river.*

Obs. In some few instances, the relative, even in the circumstances just described, agrees with the word which follows: e.g. **Animal hoc providum, acutum, plenum rationis et consilii, qvem vocamus hominem** (Cic. Legg. I. 7). (**Ex perturbationibus morbi conficiuntur, qvae vocant illi** *νοσήματα*, Id. Tusc. IV. 10, and **Alterum est cohibere motus animi turbatos, qvos Graeci** *πάθη* **nominant**, Id. Off. II. 5.)

§ 317. In the construction of a pronoun, more regard is sometimes had to the sense of the word to which it refers than to its grammatical form.

a. A relative often agrees with the personal pronoun which is embodied in a possessive, the genitive of the personal pronoun being represented by the possessive: **Vestra, qvi cum summa integritate**

---

[1] [**Magna, id qvod necesse erat accidere, perturbatio facta est** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 29).]

[2] [**Ea, qvae secuta est, hieme, qvi fuit annus Cn. Pompejo, M. Crasso Coss.** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 1).]

vixistis, hoc maxime interest (Cic. pro Sall. 28). **Vestra consilia accusantur, qvi mihi summum honorem et maximum negotium imposuistis** (Sall. Jug. 85).

b. Sometimes a pronoun in the plural follows a substantive in the singular, the thought being extended to a number of individual objects: **Constituerant, ut eo signo cetera multitudo conjurationis suum qvisqve negotium exseqveretur. Ea** (sc. **negotia**) **divisa hoc modo dicebantur,** &c. (Sall. Cat. 43). **L. Cantilius, scriba pontificis, qvos** (sc. **scribas pontificum**) **nunc minores pontifices appellant** (Liv. XXII. 57).

c. After collective substantives in the singular, the relative sometimes follows in the plural, having reference to the several individuals: **Caesar eqvitatum omnem, qvem ex omni provincia coactum habebat, praemittit, qvi videant, qvas in partes hostes iter faciant** (Cæs. B. G. I. 15). (But not in an explanatory parenthesis.) **Ex eo genere** and **ex eo numero** are often followed by the relative in the plural, and in the gender of the individual persons or things mentioned: **Unus ex eo numero, qvi ad caedem parati erant** (Sall. Jug. 35). **Amicitia est ex eo genere, qvae prosunt** (Cic. Finn. III. 21).

d. To a figurative appellation of a man, in which the natural gender is departed from, the relative is often added in the natural gender, the figure being dropped: **Duo importuna prodigia, qvos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat** (Cic. pro Sest. 17).

Obs. 1. Other deviations from the general rule are only inaccuracies of language; e.g. **Vejens bellum ortum est, qvibus Sabini arma conjunxerant** (Liv. II. 53), as if he had said **bellum cum Vejentibus.**

Obs. 2. Here it may also be observed, that after a demonstrative or indefinite pronoun **unde** may be put instead of **a qvo (qva)** and **a qvibus**, and **qvo** instead of **ad qvem (qvam, qvod)** and **ad qvos (qvas, qvae)**: e.g. **is, unde petitur,** *the person from whom a thing is (judicially) demanded, the defendant.* **Erat nemo, unde discerem** (Cic. Cat. M. 4) **Homo et domi nobilis et apud eos, qvo se contulit, gratiosus** (Id. Verr. IV. 18). So likewise **qva** sometimes stands for **per qvae, qvos**: e.g. **ex his oppidis, qva ducebantur** (Id. Verr. V. 26); and **ubi** for **in qvo.**

§ 318. The relative pronoun may be the subject or object of the proposition which is formed with it, or may stand in any other relation to it, and take the form or case which indicates its relation.

The relative pronoun represents the three persons; and if it is the subject, the verb agrees in person with the relative: —

Vos, qvi affuistis, testes esse poteritis, *you, who were present.*

On the other hand, —

Ii nostrum, or **ii vestrum, qvi affuerunt, testes esse possunt.**

After **is** also, as a predicate noun agreeing with a subject of the first or second person, the relative takes the same person: —

Non is sum, qvi glorier, *one who boasts.*

§ 319. An indefinite substantive, which the relative proposition defines, is sometimes drawn into the relative proposition, taking the same case with the relative: the relative proposition then precedes the demonstrative: —

Qvae cupiditates a natura proficiscuntur, facile explentur sine ulla injuria (Cic. Finn. I. 16), i.q. **eae cupiditates, qvae. Ad Caesarem qvam misi epistolam, ejus exemplum fugit me tibi mittere** (Cic. ad Att. XIII. 51, i.q. **ejus epistolae qvam**). **In qvem primum Heneti Trojaniqve egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur** (Liv. I. 1).

Obs. The poets do this also where the relative proposition follows the demonstrative, or at any rate the demonstrative pronoun: **Poeta id sibi negoti credidit solum dari, Populo ut placerent, qvas fecisset fabulas** (Ter. Andr. prol. 3). **Illi, scripta qvibus comoedia prisca viris est, hoc stabant, hoc sunt imitandi** (Hor. Sat. I. 10, 16). **Qvis non malarum, qvas amor curas habet, Haec inter obliviscitur** (Id. Ep. 2, 37, i.q. **malarum curarum, qvas —**). It is a still greater irregularity, when a substantive that should stand in the nominative takes the case of the relative, and yet retains its place before it: **Urbem, qvam statuo, vestra est** (Virg. Æn. I. 573), for **urbs, qvam.**

§ 320. When an antecedent noun with its relative clause is, in idea and form, new to the main proposition, and qualifies the same, or a single word of the same, after the manner of a noun in apposition in English, it is *almost always* drawn into the relative clause: —

Peregrinum frumentum, qvae sola alimenta ex insperato fortuna dedit, ab ore rapitur (Liv. II. 35), *the only nourishment which.* **Santŏnes non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, qvae civitas est in provincia** (Caes. B. G. I. 10). **Firmi et constantes amici eligendi sunt, cujus generis est magna penuria** (Cic. Læl. 17), *a class which is very rare.* (We rarely find a construction like the following: **Dictator dictus est Q. Servilius Priscus, vir, cujus providentiam in republica multis aliis tempestatibus ante experta civitas erat**, Liv. IV. 46).

celeritatem (Cic. N. D. II. 48); **Piso parum erat, a qvibus debuerat, adjutus** (Id. Phil. I. 4, i.q. **ab iis, a qvibus**); otherwise but seldom: e.g. in the dative in certain legal expressions (**Ejus pecuniae, qvi volet, petitio esto** = **ei, qvi volet**); or where **qvi** approaches to the signification of **siqvis**: **Xerxes praemium proposuit, qvi novam voluptatem invenisset** (Cic. Tusc. V. 7). If the demonstrative is emphatic (to give prominence to a particular person, thing, or class), it can never be omitted; **A me ii contenderunt, qvi apud me et amicitia et dignitate plurimum possunt** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 1).

§ 322. The nominative or accusative of an indefinite pronoun (one, some one, something) is left out before the relative, if persons or things of some particular nature or destination are spoken of in the most general terms; e.g.: —

Sunt, qvi ita dicant. Non est facile reperire, qvi haec credant. Habeo, qvod dicam, *something to say*. **Misi, qvi viderent,** *some, to see*. But **sunt qvidam, qvi,** *there are certain persons who* (compare §§ **363** and **365**).

§ 323. *a*. If two relative propositions are combined and referred to the same word, and if the relative which they contain is in different cases (**qvem rex delegerat et qvi populo gratus erat**), the second relative is sometimes omitted and supplied from the first, but only in the nominative and accusative: —

Eamne rationem seqvare, qva tecum ipse et cum tuis utare, profiteri autem et in medium proferre non audeas? (Cic. Finn. II. 23), *but which you do not venture*. **Bocchus cum peditibus, qvos Volux, filius ejus, adduxerat, neqve in priore pugna affuerant** (i.q. **et qvi in pr. p. non affuerant**), **postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt** (Sall. Jug. 101).

b. Sometimes, if the relative ought to stand first in the nominative and then in some other case, the demonstrative **is** takes the place of the second relative; **Omnes tum fere, qvi nec extra hanc urbem vixerant, nec eos aliqva barbaries domestica infuscaverat, recte loqvebantur** (Cic. Brut. 74).

Obs. 1. If the demonstrative and relative are governed by the same preposition, and the same verb is understood in the relative proposition which is expressed in the demonstrative, the preposition may be omitted before the relative: **In eadem causa** (*position*) **sumus qva vos. Me tuae litterae nunqvam in tantam spem induxerunt, qvantam aliorum** (Cic. ad Att. III. 19).

Obs. 2. If a relative which refers to a demonstrative pronoun (without a substantive) ought properly to be governed by an infinitive to be

PART SECOND.

ON THE NATURE AND MODE OF THE ASSERTION, AND THE TIME OF THE THING ASSERTED.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE KINDS OF PROPOSITIONS, AND THE MOODS IN GENERAL.

§ 325. A Proposition is either an *independent* and *leading proposition*, which is asserted simply by itself: e.g. **Titius currit**; or a *subordinate proposition*, which is not asserted by itself, but appended to another proposition, in order to complete and define the whole of it or some particular word in it: **Titius currit, ut sudet.** The leading proposition is sometimes incomplete without the addition of the subordinate: e.g. **Sunt qvi haec dicant. Non sum tam imprudens qvam tu putas.**

A leading proposition may have several which are subordinate; e.g. **Qvum hostes appropinqvarent, imperator pontem interscindi jussit, ut eos transitu prohiberet.** A subordinate proposition may again have another subordinate proposition attached to it; e.g. **Laborandum est in juventute, ut, qvum senectus advenerit, honeste otio frui possimus.**

A main proposition with its subordinate proposition (or propositions) forms a *compound proposition*, which, like a leading proposition standing alone, has a complete sense, at which the discourse can break off.

§ 326. Subordinate propositions are connected with the leading proposition, either by a conjunction (*conjunctional propositions*): e.g. **Haec scio, qvia adfui**; or by a relative (pronoun or adverb) (*relative propositions*): e.g. **Omnes, qvi adfuerunt, haec sciunt**; or by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, or particle), (*dependent interrogative propositions*): e.g. **Qvaero, unde haec scias**; or in a peculiar form with the verb in the infinitive (*infinitive propositions, the accusative with the infinitive*): e.g. **intelligis, me haec scire.**

lative subordinate propositions explain or define an
; proposition, but may, themselves, also express the
:riphrasis). The other subordinate propositions rep-
bject of the leading proposition (subjective proposi-
. **domum emisti, gratum mihi est**; or the object
some other word in the leading proposition (objec-
e.g. **Video te currere; operam dabo, ut res**
y denote different circumstances connected with it, so
elations similar to those which are expressed by the
ntive or by prepositions. But the difference of the
orresponds only in part to this division. The infini-
present either a subject or an object (§§ **394–398**, *a*),
rrogative propositions an object; in other cases, an
d by a conjunctional proposition (§ **371–376**). One
al propositions (with **qvod** to denote an existing rela-
r either represent a subject or object, or be used in
mstance (**in eo qvod**, *in that*). The rest of the con-
nate propositions, which express circumstances, are
o the different ideas, in relation to which they define
ition, into final (denoting a purpose), consecutive
ience), causal, conditional, concessive, temporal, and
s of time and mood), and comparative propositions,
by particular conjunctions. In so far as the temporal
ions are relative adverbs of time and mood (**qvam**,
poral and modal propositions have an affinity to the

a conjunctional proposition, containing a reason, con-
oncession, time, or condition, naturally precedes the
. is called the **protăsis**, and the main proposition is
ıodŏsis.

propositions refer by means of (demonstrative) ad-
positions, of which they express the reason, conse-
stated entirely independently as leading propositions;
ith **nam**, **itaqve**, &c.

ve proposition often contains not merely a peri-
rk simply subjoined, but stands in a relation to
sition, which is otherwise expressed by conjunc-
e design (who was to = that he), the reason
, &c. This is expressed by the mood of the verb.
following.

; the use of the relative instead of the demonstrative
ition with that which precedes it, see, in the chapter

on the combinations of propositions, § **448**. Concerning other peculiarities in the construction of relative propositions, see §§ **445** and **446**.

§ 328. Several propositions may be arranged one after the other, without standing in the relation of leading and subordinate propositions, by the aid of copulative, disjunctive, or antithetical conjunctions, and sometimes even without a conjunction (*co-ordinate* propositions): —

Et mihi consilium tuum placet et pater id vehementer probat. Mihi consilium tuum placet, sed pater id improbat. (Ego consilium probo, pater improbat.) (Neqve cur tu hoc consilium tam vehementer probes, neqve cur pater tantopere improbet, intelligo. The co-ordinate propositions are, therefore, either all leading propositions, or all subordinate propositions of *one* leading proposition.

§ 329. The proposition is conceived and expressed by the speaker in different ways with reference to the actual existence of the thing stated. Its contents are either stated as something that actually is or takes place: e.g. **Titius currit**; or as the will of the speaker: e.g. **curre, Titi**; or only as a conception: e.g. **Titius currit, ut sudet.** (It is not said that Titius perspires, but his perspiring is only conceived of and expressed as a design.)

The different ways in which a proposition is conceived, and besides this the relation of the subordinate to the leading proposition, are denoted in Latin by the three personal and definite moods, the Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive, in which the verb is referred to a definite subject (**oratio finita**). The relation of the subordinate proposition may also in some cases be expressed in Latin by using the verb in the indefinite form, the infinitive (**oratio infinita**).

Obs. By means of the participle, the substance of a subordinate proposition is expressed as a quality of the subject of the leading proposition.

§ 330. Subordinate propositions, when co-ordinate with each other, stand in the same relation to the leading proposition, and have the same mood (but not always the same tense).

Obs. 1. In one single case, however, two subordinate propositions in combination have different moods, because their contents are differently conceived (**non qvod — sed qvia**). See § **357**, *b*.

Obs. 2. Of two leading propositions which are combined, the one may sometimes be asserted unconditionally (in the indicative), the other doubtingly and hypothetically, or by way of concession (in the subjunc-

go neqve affirmare ausim. Neqve divelli a pereant sane, qvoniam sunt ita multi, ut eos ossit (Cic. in Cat. II. 10).

CHAPTER II.

ICATIVE AND ITS TENSES.

ative mood is that in which a thing is simply ly or negatively) or a question simply asked. n all propositions, both leading and subordinate, rules require another mood: —

r non venit. Num pater veniet? Qvando ve-ta sunt, commemorari tamen debent, qvod ad ent. Qvod domum emisti, gratum mihi est. , desistam.

ent (*direct*) question is one which constitutes an proposition. It expresses a wish that the whole rrogatively expressed should either be confirmed r denied (**Venitne pater?**), or that a single idea, rrogative pronoun or adverb, should be defined. rogative particles, see §§ **450–453**. Quite distinct ct or dependent question, which forms a subordi-oting the object of a proposition or idea; e.g. **qvae-isset.** See § **356.**

particularly noticed, that in a conditional sen-hing is or is not, in case another thing is or is ns (the leading proposition which is qualified, which expresses the qualification) are put in e condition (that a thing is or is not, in case is not) is expressed simply; i.e. without any neaning: —

m creavit, conservat etiam. Nisi hoc ita est, Si nullum jam ante consilium de morte Sex. nuntius ad te minime omnium pertinebat). Si nihil aliud fecerunt, satis praemii ha-

Obs. Such a sentence denotes only that such is the relation which obtains between the two propositions; but nothing is stated of the actual truth of their contents, when taken singly. The indicative is also retained when it is said that a thing holds equally good under different conditions, which is expressed by **sive — sive**: **Mala consvetudo est contra deos disputandi, sive ex animo id fit sive simulate** (Cic. N. D. II. 67). **Hoc loco libentissime utor, sive qvid mecum ipse cogito, sive aliqvid scribo aut lego** (Cic. Legg. II. 1).

§ 333. The thing asserted is either simply referred to one of the three leading tenses, the present, past, or future, or stated (mediately, relatively) with reference to a certain past or future point of time, as being at that time present (contemporary with it), or past, or future (**praesens in praeterito, praeteritum in praeterito, futurum in praeterito; praesens in futuro, praeteritum in futuro, futurum in futuro**). These relations of time are expressed partly by the simple tenses of the verbs (and by the passive compounds which correspond to the simple active forms), partly by a periphrasis by means of the future participle and **sum**, as follows:—

	Present.	Perfect.	Future.
	scribo	**scripsi**	**scribam**
In Praeterito.	**scribebam,** *I was writing (at that time).*	**scripseram,** *I had written.*	**scripturus eram (fui)** *I was (at that time) on the point of writing.*
In Futuro.	**scribam,** *I shall (then) write.*	**scripsero,** *I shall have written.*	**scripturus ero,** *I shall (then) be on the point of writing.*

Besides these a future thing is designated as *now* at hand (and referred to the present) in a particular way, by the periphrasis **scripturus sum.**

§ 334. The Present declares *that which now is*, comprising also what happens and exists at every time: e.g. **Deus mundum conservat**; and what is thought of as present, such as opinions and expressions in books, which are still extant: e.g. **Zeno aliter judicat. Praeclare hunc locum Cicero tractat in libris de natura deorum.** Sometimes the present is used instead of the perfect in narrations. See § **336.**

Obs. The present is often used of that which has endured for some time, and still continues: **Tertium jam annum hic sumus. Annum jam audis Cratippum** (Cic. Off. I. 1); especially with **jamdiu**

and jamdudum: Jamdiu ignoro, qvid agas (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 9). **In bonis hominibus ea, qvam jamdudum tractamus, stabilitas amicitiae confirmari potest** (Id. Læl. 22).

§ 335. *a.* The Perfect is used in Latin in *relating* and *giving information* of past occurrences both in continuous history and isolated notices of events (the *historical perfect*[1]):—

Caesar Galliam subegit. Illo anno duae res memorabiles acciderunt. Hostes qvum Romanorum trepidationem animadvertissent, subito procurrerunt et ordines perturbarunt. L. Lucullus multos annos Asiae provinciae praefuit (Cic. Acad. II. 1). **Qvum** (*at the time when*) **hoc proelium factum est, Caesar aberat.**

b. The perfect is also used to express a thing as done and completed, presenting a contrast to the present moment, at which the thing is no longer spoken of as continuing (the *perfect absolute*,[2] *definite*): e.g. **Pater jam vēnit** (*is already come*). **Is mos usqve ad hoc tempus permansit. Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium** (Virg. Æn. II. 325), *Ilium has been*, i.q. *is no more.* (**Perii!** *it is all over with me.*)

Obs. 1. If a thing be spoken of that is repeatedly or customarily done, the perfect is used in subordinate propositions, which express time, condition, or place (after **qvum, qvoties, simulac, si, ubi,** and indefinite relative expressions), if the action of the subordinate is to be supposed as antecedent to that of the leading proposition. (In English, the present is generally used.) **Qvum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum, nihil agere, me delectat** (Cic. de Or. II. 16), in English, *when I come.* **Qvum fortuna reflavit, affligimur** (Id. Off. II. 6). **Si ad luxuriam etiam libidinum intemperantia accessit, duplex malum est** (Id. ib. I. 34). **Qvocunqve aspexisti, ut furiae, sic tuae tibi occurrunt injuriae** (Id. Par. 2).[3] (If the leading proposition is in the preterite (imperfect), the subordinate is put in the pluperfect. See **§ 338**, *a*, *Obs.*)

Obs. 2. Concerning the perfect after **postqvam**, and similar particles, see **§ 338**, *b*.

Obs. 3. The perfect is sometimes found in the poets (in imitation of the Greek aorist), instead of the present, to express a thing that is *customarily done* (and has already often taken place): **Rege incolumi mens**

---

[1] In Greek the aorist is used in this signification.

[2] This is the same as the Greek perfect.

[3] In books the future perfect is sometimes improperly substituted for the perfect; e.g. **accesserit** for **accessit.**

omnibus una est; amisso rupere fidem constructaqve mella diripuere ipsae (Virg. Georg. IV. 212), of the bees.

Obs. 4. On the use of the perfects **odi, memini, novi,** in the signification of the present, see the Rules for the Inflection of Words, § **161** and § **142.** (**Svevi, consvevi,** *I am accustomed.*)

§ 336. In lively, connected narrative, past events are often spoken of as present, the present tense being employed instead of the perfect (the *historical present*): —

Ubi id Verres audivit, Didorum ad se vocavit ac pocula poposcit. Ille respondet, se Lilybaei non habere, Melitae reliqvisse. Tum iste continuo mittit homines certos Melitam; scribit ad qvosdam Melitenses, ut ea vasa perqvirant (Cic. Verr. IV. 18). **Exspectabant omnes, qvo tandem Verres progressurus esset, qvum repente proripi hominem ac deligari jubet** (Id. ib. V. 62).

Obs. 1. The poets sometimes use the historical present somewhat strangely in noticing a single event, and in relative propositions: **Tu prima furentem his, germana, malis oneras atqve objicis hosti** (Virg. Æn. II. 548), for **onerasti** and **objecisti. Cratera antiqvum (tibi dabo), qvem dat Sidonia Dido** (Id. ib. IX. 266), for **dedit.**

Obs. 2. When the particle **dum** denotes what happens *while* something else happens, and especially what happens, *because* something else happens (being occasioned by it), it is usually constructed with the present, although the action be past, and the perfect (sometimes the pluperfect) used in the leading proposition: **Dum haec in colloqvio geruntur. Caesari nuntiatum est, eqvites Ariovisti propius accedere** (Cæs. B. G. I. 46). **Dum obseqvor adolescentibus, me senem esse oblitus sum** (Cic. de Or. II. 4). **Ita mulier dum pauca mancipia retinere vult, fortunas omnes perdidit** (Id. Div. in Cæc. 17). **Dum elephanti trajiciuntur, interim Hannibal eqvites qvingentos ad castra Romana miserat speculatum** (Liv. XXI. 29). Yet the perfect may also be used (of an action), or the imperfect (of a condition. See § **337**): **Dum Aristo et Pyrrho in una virtute sic omnia esse voluerunt, ut eam rerum selectione exspoliarent, virtutem ipsam sustulerunt** (Cic. Finn. II. 13). **Dum Sulla in aliis rebus erat occupatus, erant interea qvi suis vulneribus mederentur** (Id. Rosc. Am. 32). When **dum** signifies *as long as*, it never has the present, except of actually present time; **Hoc feci, dum licuit** (Cic. Phil. III. 13).

§ 337. The Imperfect (**praesens in praeterito**) is used when we transfer ourselves in idea into a past time, and *describe* what was then present. It is therefore employed of *states* existing at a particu-

lar time, or *actions which were taking place at a given time* (still going on and not yet completed, while something else was happening), or of that which was *customary* at a certain time (with a certain person or thing), or *was often repeated*. (On the other hand, it is not used of isolated occurrences or in general historical statements of what formerly took place, or went on in a certain way, even in speaking of a thing that continued for a long time). **Qvo tempore Philippus Graeciam evertit** (an occurrence); **etiam tum Athenae gloria litterarum et artium florebant** (condition at the time specified; but **Athenae multa secula litterarum et artium gloria floruerunt** (notice of a fact); **Caesar consilium mutavit** (relation of a fact); **videbat enim, nihil tam exiguis copiis confici posse** (representation of his views at the time; **vidit enim** would signify *for he came to the conclusion*).

Regulus Carthaginem rediit neqve eum caritas patriae retinuit (notice of what did, and did not happen). **Neqve ignorabat** (i.e. at the time when he was returning, &c.), **se ad exqvisita supplicia proficisci, sed jusjurandum conservandum putabat** (Cic. Off. III. 27). **Qvum Verres ad aliqvod oppidum venerat, eadem lectica usqve in cubiculum deferebatur** (Cic. Verr. V. 11). **Romae qvotannis bini consules creabantur** (custom; but **qvamdiu Roma libera fuit, semper bini consules fuerunt**, notice of a fact). **Archytas nullam capitaliorem pestem qvam voluptatem corporis dicebat a natura datam** (Cic. Cat. M. 12); also, **dicere solebat**; on the contrary, **dicere solitus est**, *had a habit of saying*.[1] **In Graecia musici floruerunt, discebantqve id omnes** (Id. Tusc. I. 2), *and it was the custom that all learned music*. **Dicebat melius qvam scripsit Hortensius** (Id. Or. 38), *H. spoke better*, i.q. *was accustomed to speak better, than he has written, than he shows himself in his written speeches*. On the other hand, **qvam scribebat**, *than he was accustomed to write*. **Janua heri tres horas patuit**, but **heri, qvum praeterii, janua patebat**. **Putavi**, *I have thought*, or *I adopted the opinion*; **putabam**, *I was of opinion*.

Obs. 1. An action that was on the point of happening at a certain time (**futurum in praeterito**) is sometimes represented, by the imperfect, as already begun and proceeding; **Hujus deditionis ipse, qvi dedebatur, svasor et auctor fuit** (Cic. Off. III. 30), *who was thereby delivered up, whose surrender was in question*. The imperfect, when applied

[1] [The beginner will do well to notice, that the imperfect indicative in this sense is sometimes expressed in English by the auxiliary *would*, which is never to be translated by the subjunctive in Latin: *Socrates would say*, **Socrates dicebat**, or **dicere solebat**.]

to a thing that is spoken of as happening in time past, and not completely finished, may sometimes be rendered, in English, by *began to:* **Constitit utrumqve agmen et proelio sese expediebant** (Liv. XXI. 46). **Themistocli qvidam pollicitus est, se artem ei memoriae, qvae tum primum proferebatur, traditurum** (Cic. Acad. II. 1).

Obs. 2. Connected examples of the use and interchange of the perfect, the historical present, the imperfect, and the historical infinitive (according to § **392**), in narrative and description, may be seen, in Cic. Verr. IV. 18; and in Livy, III. 36–38.

§ 338. *a.* The Pluperfect (**praeteritum in praeterito**) is used of that which had already happened at a certain time past, or at the time when a certain action now past took place.

Dixerat hoc ille, qvum puer nuntiavit, venire ad eum Laelium (Cic. R. P. I. 12). **Qvum ego illum vidi, jam consilium mutaverat.**

Obs. With leading propositions in the imperfect of customary and repeated action, those subordinate propositions are put in the pluperfect which are in the perfect when the leading proposition is in the present, according to § **335**, *b*, *Obs.* 1: **Qvum ver esse coeperat, Verres dabat se labori atqve itineribus** (Cic. Verr. V. 10). **Alcibiades, simul ac se remiserat, luxuriosus, libidinosus, intemperans reperiebatur** (Corn. Alc. 1). **Si a perseqvendo hostes deterrere neqviverant, disjectos ab tergo circumveniebant** (Sall. Jug. 50). (Compare § **359**, on the subjunctive, in such subordinate propositions.)

b. When it is stated that two actions immediately followed each other, the perfect is used after the conjunctions **posteaqvam** or **postqvam, ubi, ut, simul atqve** or **ac** (or simply **simul**), **ut primum, qvum primum,** *as soon as;* inasmuch as we merely designate both actions as past, without expressing their mutual relation by the verb: —

Posteaqvam victoria constituta est ab armisqve recessimus, erat Roscius Romae freqvens (Cic. Rosc. Am. 6). **Pompejus, ut eqvitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit** (Cæs. B. C III. 94). **Simulac primum Verri occasio visa est, consulem deseruit** (Cic. Verr. I. 13).

Obs. 1. **Postqvam** is put with the pluperfect when it is intended to denote, not something that ensued immediately, but a transaction that occurred after the lapse of some time: e.g. **P. Africanus, posteaqvam bis consul et censor fuerat, L. Cottam in judicium vocavit** (Cic.

Div. in Cæc. 21); especially when a definite interval is specified; e.g. **Hannibal anno tertio postqvam domo profugerat, in Africam venit** (Corn. Hann. 8). **Post diem qvintum, qvam** (§ **276**, *Obs.* 6) **barbari iterum male pugnaverant, legati a Boccho veniunt** (Sall. Jug. 102) Otherwise, **postqvam** is rarely put with the pluperfect, — very rarely with the pluperfect subjunctive.[1]

Obs. 2. **Postqvam, ubi,** and **ut** are often put with the imperfect to show *a state of things that had come on, — to show that something occurred*, or *was accustomed to occur:* **Postqvam Eros e scena non modo sibilis, sed etiam convicio explodebatur, confugit in Roscii domum et disciplinam** (Cic. Rosc. Com. 11), *he was hissed off as often as he came on the stage*). **Postqvam id difficilius visum est, neqve facultas perficiendi dabatur, ad Pompejum transierunt** (Cæs. B. C. III. 60), *they found it difficult* (a single fact), *and there was no opportunity* (state of things).

Obs. 3. When **ubi** and **simulac** are used of a repeated action, they take the pluperfect. See the *Obs.* on *a*.

Obs. 4. After the particles mentioned in paragraph *b*, the historical present (§ **336**) may also be employed, if the action is conceived of as prolonged during the occurrence of the other action; **Postqvam perfugae murum arietibus feriri vident, aurum atqve argentum domum regiam comportant** (Sall. Jug. 76).

Obs. 5. The particles **anteqvam** and **priusqvam**, *before*, and **dum, donec**, *until*, are used with the perfect indicative, not with the **pluperfect: Anteqvam tuas legi litteras, hominem ire cupiebam** (Cic. ad Att. II. 7), often expressed in English, *before I had read your letter*. **Hispala non ante adolescentem dimisit, qvam fidem dedit, ab his sacris se temperaturum** (Liv. XXXIX. 10). **De comitiis, donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit** (Liv. XXIII. 31).[2] (Concerning the subjunctive with these particles, see the following chapter, § **360**.)

Obs. 6. The pluperfect **fueram** sometimes stands in the poets, and in a few instances in other writers, instead of the imperfect **eram: Nec satis id fuerat; stultus qvoqve carmina feci** (Ov. ex Pont. III. 3, 37). In some other verbs, from some peculiarity of signification, the pluperfect may seem to be used instead of the imperfect: e.g. **superfueram**, *I had remained over;* **consveveram**, *I had accustomed myself*.

§ 339. The Future (simple) denotes both a future action in general, and also that which will take place at a certain time to come **(praesens in futuro): Veniet pater. Illo tempore respublica**

---

[1] The pluperfect indic. occurs Sall. Jug. 44; subjunctive, Cic. pro Leg. Man. 4.

[2] [(**Petilini non ante expugnati sunt qvam vires ad ferenda arma deerant**, Liv. XXIII. 30, of a state of things which had come on).]

florebit. (The distinction therefore which exists between the perfect and imperfect as to the past, is not made with reference to the future.)

Obs. 1. In English, the expression of the future is commonly omitted in subordinate propositions, if it is found in the leading proposition; but this omission may not take place in Latin: **Naturam si seqvemur ducem numqvam aberrabimus** (Cic. Off. I. 28), in English, *If we follow*. **Profecto beati erimus, qvum, corporibus relictis, cupiditatum erimus expertes** (Id. Tusc. I. 19). **Hoc dum erimus in terris, erit caelesti vitae simile** (Id. ib. I. 31). (**Qvi adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiae fungatur officiis** (Id. Off. II. 13); where the futurity is indicated in the leading proposition by the exhortation.)[1] In English, too, the present is often used instead of the future in assurances and conjectures (e.g. *he is coming in three days*), a mode of speaking which is not usual in Latin, except where an action is referred to that is already partially commenced: **Tuemini castra et defendite diligenter, si qvid durius acciderit; ego reliqvas portas circumeo et castrorum praesidia confirmo** (Cæs. B. C. III. 94).

Obs. 2. Yet the present is used in Latin in some cases where we might expect the future: —

a. When one asks one's self what one must do or think (on the instant): **Qvid ago? Imusne sessum?** (Cic. de Or. III. 5). **Stantes plaudebant in re ficta; qvid arbitramur in vera facturos fuisse?** (Id. Læl. 7).

b. With **dum**, *until*, when a waiting (waiting for) is expressed: **Exspecto dum ille venit** (Ter. Eun. I. 2, 126). **Ego in Arcano opperior, dum ista cognosco** (Cic. ad Att. X. 3).

c. Usually with **anteqvam** and **priusqvam**, when it is said that something will happen before something else: **Anteqvam pro L. Murena dicere instituo, pro me ipso pauca dicam** (Cic. pro Mur. 1). **Sine** (*permit*), **priusqvam amplexum accipio, sciam, ad hostem an ad filium venerim** (Liv. II. 40). But also **Anteqvam de republica dicam ea qvae dicenda hoc tempore arbitror, exponam breviter consilium profectionis meae** (Cic. Phil. I. 1). (*Before something has happened*, is expressed by the future perfect.)

---

[1] [This rule, however, is not adhered to by the poets, where the present is met with in such combinations, especially after **ubi jam, quum jam**: —

(Libra ubi) medium luci atqve umbris jam dividit orbem,
Exercete, viri, tauros (Virg. G. I. 210).

Hoc etiam emenso quum jam decedit Olympo,
Profuerit meminisse magis (Id. ibid. 450).

Ipsa ego te, medios cum Sol accenderit aestus,
Cum sitiunt herbae, et pecori jam gratior umbra est,
In secreta senis ducam (Id. G. IV. 401).]

§ 340. By the Future Perfect (**praeteritum in futuro**) a future action is designated as already completed at a given future time: —

Qvum tu haec leges, ego illum fortasse convenero (Cic. ad Att. IX. 15), *I shall perhaps have spoken with him.* **Hic prius se indicarit, qvam ego argentum confecero** (Ter. Heaut. III. 3, 23), *will have betrayed himself before I have procured the money.* **Si (ubi) istuc venero, rem tibi exponam. Melius morati erimus, qvum didicerimus, qvid natura desideret** (Cic. Fin. I. 19). **De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, qvam illam excisam esse cognovero** (Id. Cat. M. 6). **Si plane occidimus ego omnibus meis exitio fuero** (Id. ad Q. Fr. I. 4), *I shall have been;* of the future result of what is past.

Obs. 1. In English, it is often not expressly asserted in the subordinate propositions, that one action precedes another, and the present is therefore frequently used where the future perfect must be employed in Latin; e.g. *When I come to you, I will* —. In Latin, the present may stand in a conditional proposition, although the leading proposition has the future, if an action that takes place precisely at the present moment is pointed out as the condition of a future result: e.g. **Perficietur bellum, si urgemus obsessos** (Liv. V. 4). **Moriere virgis, nisi signum traditur** (Cic. Verr. IV. 39). (If the action of the subordinate proposition is contemporary with that of the leading proposition, the simple future is made use of. See § **339**, *Obs.* 1.)

Obs. 2. If the future perfect stands both in the leading and subordinate propositions, it is intended to indicate that one action will be completed at the same time with the other: **Qvi Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit** (Cic. ad Fam. X. 19). **Vicerit enim Caesar, si consul factus erit** (Id. ad Att. VII. 15). **Pergratum mihi feceris, si de amicitia disputaris** (Id. Læl. 4). **(Tolle hanc opinionem; luctum sustuleris,** Id. Tusc. I. 13). By the use of the perfect in the leading proposition, that which is certain and secure is represented as if it had already taken place: **Si Brutus conservatus erit, vicimus** (Cic. ad Fam. XII. 6).

Obs. 3. In order to indicate more forcibly that the will (the power) precedes the action, **si voluero (potuero, licuerit, placuerit)** is sometimes put, when **si volam (potero,** &c.) might also be employed; e.g. **Plato, si modo interpretari potuero, his fere verbis utitur** (Cic. Legg. II. 18).

Obs. 4. In some few instances, the meaning of the future perfect approaches that of the simple future; e.g. in specifying a future result (what *will have* happened): **Multum ad ea, qvae qvaerimus, tua ista explicatio profecerit** (Cic. Finn. III. 4); or in signifying what will happen *while something else takes place*, or what *will* soon *be done*: **Tu invīta mulieres; ego accivero pueros** (Cic. ad Att. V. 1).

Clamor et primus impetus castra ceperit (Liv. XXV. 38). (The comic writers, especially Plautus, carry this still further.) We should particularly notice the use of **videro** (**videris**, &c.) of a thing which is postponed to another time, or left to another's consideration: **Qvae fuerit causa, mox videro** (Cic. Finn. I. 10). **Recte secusne, alias viderimus** (Id. Ac. II. 44). **Sed de hoc tu ipse videris** (Id. de Or. I. 58), *you yourself may look to this.* **Sitne malum dolor necne, Stoici viderint** (Id. Tusc. II. 18). (Of **odero** and **meminero**, see **§ 161.**)

§ 341. In order to express what is future with reference to a given time, the Latin writers employ (in the active) the future participle with such tenses of the verb **sum** as the signification requires; (periphrastic conjugation, § **116**).

This participle with the present **sum** (**futurum in praesenti**) is distinguished from the simple future by pointing out the future action as something which the subject is just on the point of doing, or now already resolved to do:—

Qvum apes jam evolaturae sunt, consonant vehementer (Varr. R. R. III. 16). **Bellum scripturus sum, qvod populus Romanus cum Jugurtha gessit** (Sall. Jug. 5). **Qvid timeam, si aut non miser post mortem aut etiam beatus futurus sum** (Cic. Cat. M. 19). **Sin una est interiturus animus cum corpore, vos tamen memoriam nostri pie inviolateqve servabitis** (Id. ib. 22). **Facite, qvod vobis libet; daturus non sum amplius** (Id. Verr. II. 29).

Obs. This form is always used in specifying the condition of an action which *is to* take place: **Me igitur ipsum ames oportet, si veri amici futuri sumus** (Cic. Finn. II. 26), *if we are to be true friends.* **Respersas manus sangvine paterno judices videant oportet, si tantum facinus (parricidium) crediturі sunt** (Id. pro Rosc. Am. 24).

§ 342. *a.* The part. fut. with **fui** (**futurum in praeteritо absolutum**) denotes that something was future (contemplated) at a time past:—

Vos cum Mandonio et Indibili consilia communicastis et arma consociaturi fuistis (Liv. XXVIII. 28), *were on the point of.* **Si illo die P. Sestius occisus esset, fuistisne ad arma ituri?** (Cic. pro Sest. 38), *were you prepared to?*

b. The part. fut. with **eram** (**futurum in praeterito**) signifies what was future and contemplated at a certain definite time, and by this means points out a situation, disposition, destination, &c., as it was at that time:—

Profecturus eram ad te, qvum ad me frater tuus venit. Sicut Campani Capuam, Tuscis ademptam, sic Jubellius et ejus milites Rhegium habituri perpetuam sedem erant (Liv. XXVIII. 28), *thought of retaining*. **Ibi rex mansurus erat, si ire perrexisset** (Cic. Div. I. 15).

Oss. The participle with **fueram** may denote what was in contemplation *before* a certain time: **Aemilius Paulus Delphis inchoatas in vestibulo columnas, qvibus imposituri statuas regis Persei fuerant, suis statuis victor destinavit** (Liv. XLV. 27); but it is used by the poets in precisely the same sense as with **eram**.

§ 343. The participle with **ero** (**futurum in futuro**) denotes that something will be in contemplation at a certain future time:—

Orator eorum, apud qvos aliqvid aget (*at a certain time is already speaking*), **aut acturus erit** (*shall have to speak*), **mentes sensusqve degustet oportet** (Cic. de Or. I. 52). **Attentos faciemus auditores, si demonstrabimus, ea qvae dicturi erimus** (*what we shall be on the point of saying*), **magna, nova, incredibilia esse** (Id. de Inv. I. 16).

Oss. In the passive, which has no participle with a future signification, we must express those relations of time which in the active are denoted by the part. fut., with **sum**, by giving a different turn to the sentence; e.g. by the impersonal **est in eo, ut**; **Erat in eo, ut urbs caperetur**, *was on the point of being taken*.

§ 344. The combination of the perf. part. with **sum**, which forms the perfect passive, may sometimes denote the condition in which a thing now is in consequence of a previous action; e.g. **Haec navis egregie armata est** (present of the accomplished condition). The corresponding form for the imperfect is the same which otherwise denotes the pluperfect: **Naves Hannibalis egregie armatae erant.** With **fui** a perfect is formed, which denotes that a thing has been (for some time) in a certain condition: **Bis deinde post Numae regnum Janus clausus fuit** (Liv. I. 19). **Leges, qvum qvae latae sunt, tum vero qvae promulgatae fuerunt** (Cic. pro Sest. 25), *both those which were brought forward, and those which remained* (for some time) *posted up for public inspection*. It is incorrect to use this form for the customary perfect (of an action).[1]

[1] [In many such passages **fuit** may be considered as a verb denoting existence, rather than the logical copula: **Literni monumentum monumentoque statua superim, posita fuit, qvam statuam tempestate dejectam nuper vidimus ipsi** (Liv. XXXVIII. 56). There *was* at Liternum a monument and a statue placed upon it, &c. The ed in German by the two auxiliaries **werden** and **seyn**, but cannot ted in English.]

Obs. 1. The part. perf. with **fueram** properly denotes (corresponding with the combination with **fui**) the pluperfect of a condition: e.g. **Arma, qvae fixa in parietibus fuerant, humi inventa sunt** (Cic. Div. I. 34); but it is also used instead of the usual pluperfect of the action: e.g. **Locrenses qvidam circumventi Rhegiumqve abstracti fuerant** (Liv. XXIX. 6). In the same way, **amatus ero** and **fuero** are used in the future perfect with the same meaning, but the first is to be preferred.

Obs. 2. The beginner must beware of using the Latin perf. pass. of a thing that is still taking place and going forward, although in English the verb *to be* is used with the participle as an adjective. *The king is loved* is expressed by **rex amatur.**

§ 345. The epistolary style in Latin has this peculiarity, that the writer often has in his eye the time when the letter will be read, and therefore, instead of the present and perfect, uses the imperfect and pluperfect, where the receiver would use these tenses, in reporting the substance of the letter, while referring it back to the time of writing: —

Nihil habebam, qvod scriberem; neqve enim novi qvidqvam audieram et ad tuas omnes epistolas rescripseram pridie; erat tamen rumor, comitia dilatum iri (Cic. ad Att. IX. 10. The receiver of the letter would repeat this as follows: **Tum, qvum Cicero hanc epistolam scripsit, nihil habebat, qvod scriberet; neqve enim novi qvidqvam audierat et ad omnes meas epistolas rescripserat pridie; erat tamen rumor,** &c.)

On the contrary, every thing which is said in general terms, and without particular reference to the time of composing the letter, must be put in the usual tense: —

Ego te maxime et feci semper et facio. Pridie Idus Februarias haec scripsi ante lucem (simply of the letter written thus far, which was afterwards continued; the receiver would say: **Haec Cicero scripsit ante lucem**); **eo die eram coenaturus apud Pomponium** (Cic. ad Q. Fr. II. 3). The other form, too, is frequently not used when it might have been adopted.

CHAPTER III.

HE SUBJUNCTIVE.

nctive a thing is asserted simply as *an idea* so that the speaker does not at the same time xisting; e.g. **curro, ut sudem.** In some kinds tions the subjunctive is also used of a thing erts as existing, in order to show that it is lf, but as a subordinate member of another **cucurri, ut vehementer sudarem.**[1] In the e subjunctive may be referred to two princi- *tical*, by which a thing not actually existing assumption; and the *optative*, by which a ur wish or will.

often use the auxiliary verbs *may, can, must,* ss that which in Latin is denoted by the sub- , therefore, the beginner must beware of using **oportet, volo**, which are only employed when a duty, a wish is actually intended (**rogavi, ut** *o away, to go away*. He must also avoid using **urum in praeterito**) contrary to Latin usage. **8**, *b*, in the following chapter.

nctive is used in sentences conditional of that *Obs.* 3) which is noticed *as not actual fact*, oposition of that which does not hold good, n a certain supposition, and in the subordi- ith **si, nisi, ni, si non, etiamsi**, of the sup- ed in the statement, but declared not actually ire § 332.)

l take place now or at a future time, or (con-) is supposed as taking place, is expressed by *ould have* taken place at a previous time, or that it has taken place, by the pluperfect: —

nctive originated from the first and proper use, in consequence from such subordinate propositions as express a simple concep- ng a purpose) to others which assert something actually ex- ing a result), because they agreed with the first in being con- eading proposition, and necessary to complete its signification. so transferred and applied in some cases, in others, on the con-

Sapientia non expeteretur, si nihil efficeret. Si scirem, dicerem. Si scissem, in qvo periculo esses, statim ad te advolassem. Si Metelli fidei diffisus essem, judicem eum non retinuissem (Cic. Verr. A. I. 10). **Nunqvam Hercules ad deos abisset, nisi eam sibi viam virtute munivisset** (Id. Tusc. I. 14). **Si Roscius has inimicitias cavere potuisset, viveret** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 6), *he would be still living*. **Necassem jam te verberibus, nisi iratus essem** (Id. R. P. I. 38), *if I had not been angry*.

The present subjunctive is employed when a condition that is *still possible* is assumed as occurring now or at some future time, while it is at the same time intimated that it will not actually occur: —

Me dies, vox latera deficiant, si hoc nunc vociferari velim (Cic. Verr. II. 21), which I can, but do not intend. **Ego, si Scipionis desiderio me moveri negem, mentiar** (Id. Læl. 3). (In English, the imperfect is often used in this case: *If I were to deny it, I should speak an untruth.*)

Obs. 1. The present is also often used instead of the imperfect of a thing which is no longer possible, and where there is no reference to the future, by a turn of rhetoric, where a thing is represented as if it might still take place: **Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias** (Ter. Andr. II. 1, 10), *put yourself a moment in my situation, you will then think otherwise.* **Haec si patria tecum loqvatur, nonne impetrare debeat?** (Cic. Cat. I. 8). (The present must in this case be used both in the leading and subordinate propositions.)

Obs. 2. In the same way, the imperfect is sometimes put instead of the pluperfect either in both propositions, or in the subordinate proposition, or (most rarely of all) in the leading proposition alone: **Cur igitur et Camillus doleret, si haec post trecentos fere et qvinqvaginta annos eventura putaret, et ego doleam, si ad decem millia annorum gentem aliqvam urbe nostra potituram putem?** (Cic. Tusc. I. 37). **Num tu igitur Opimium, si tum esses** (*suppose you had lived at that time*) **temerarium civem aut crudelem putares?** (Id. Phil. VIII. 4). **Non tam facile opes Carthaginis concidissent, nisi illud receptaculum classibus nostris pateret** (Id. Verr. II. 1). **Persas, Indos, aliasqve si Alexander adjunxisset gentes, impedimentum majus qvam auxilium traheret** (Liv. IX. 19). Such an imperfect, however, can only be put in the subordinate proposition (but is by no means always employed) when the action denoted by it is not considered as one that has happened and been completed *before* the other, but as accompanying it and continuing along with it, or sometimes as occurring repeatedly: **Haec si reipublicae causa faceres, in ven-**

dendis decumis essent pronuntiata, qvia tua causa faciebas, imprudentia praetermissum erat (Cic. Verr. III. 20). The imperfect is found in the leading proposition, or in both propositions (but not always), when one may imagine a repetition of the thing asserted (e.g. in attempts), or a continuing state (but not of a single event, which would have happened or not happened).

Obs. 3. The poets sometimes use the present subjunctive even instead of the pluperfect of a thing that would have happened at a previous time: **Spatia si plura supersint, transeat (Diores) elapsus prior** (Virg. Æn. V. 325).

Obs. 4. When the conditional statement of the protasis is contrary to a coming reality, the **futurum in praet.** (**essem** with the future part.) is used; **Paterer ni misericordia in perniciem casura esset** (Sall. Jug. 31, from **in perniciem cadet**) [*if pity were not going to result in ruin*, as it is]. On the periphrasis **casurus fuerim** for **occidissem** in the apodosis, see § 381.

c. Sometimes the supposition, which does not actually hold good, but on which the assertion is made, is not expressly indicated by a conditional clause, but pointed out in another way, or supplied from the context:—

Illo tempore aliter sensisses. Qvod mea causa faceres, idem rogo, ut amici mei causa facias. Neqve agricultura neqve frugum fructuumqve reliqvorum perceptio et conservatio sine hominum opera ulla esse potuisset (Cic. Off. II. 3), *if human labor had not been applied*. **Magnitudo animi, remota a communitate conjunctioneqve humana, feritas sit qvaedam et immanitas** (Id. ib. I. 44), *separated*, sc. *in case it were separated*. **Ludificari enim aperte et calumniari sciens non videatur** (Id. Rosc. Am. 20), *for he would* (in the case mentioned, which is only assumed) *not appear*, &c. **Si unqvam visus tibi sum in republica fortis, certe me in illa causa admiratus esses** (Id. ad Att. I. 16), viz. **si affuisses.**

§ 348. Sometimes, however, a proposition limited by a condition is put in the indicative, although it is shown by the subjunctive in the proposition containing the condition, that the latter is not actually fulfilled. This is done when the apodosis may be in a manner conceived of as independent of the protasis and valid in itself, either from brevity in the expression of the idea (ellipsis), or rhetorical liveliness in the diction. Such turns of speech are the following:—

a. By a periphrasis with the part. fut. and **fui** or **eram** (**futuram in** § 342), it is shown what a person was actually ready

to do in a certain case (that did not occur): **Si tribuni me triumphare prohiberent, Furium et Aemilium testes citaturus fui rerum a me gestarum** (Liv. XXXVIII. 47). **Illi ipsi aratores, qvi remanserant, relicturi omnes agros erant, nisi ad eos Metellus Roma litteras misisset** (Cic. Verr. III. 52). Here, the indicative is *always* employed.

b. The indicative is sometimes put to express that part of an action of which it may be said that it actually has taken place (or is taking place), while the condition applies to the completion and effect of the whole: **Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset** (Liv. II. 10. Compare *Obs.* 2). **Multa me dehortantur a vobis, ni studium reipublicae superet** (Sall. Jug. 31). So the imperf. indic. is put of a thing which was on the point of happening, and, on a certain condition, would have been completely effected: **Si per L. Metellum licitum esset, matres illorum, uxores, sorores veniebant** (Cic. Verr. V. 49). Sometimes also of a thing which has partly occurred already in the present time: **Admonebat me res, ut hoc qvoqve loco interitum eloqventiae deplorarem, ni vererer, ne de me ipso aliqvid viderer qveri** (Cic. Off. II. 19).

c. The imperfect indicative is often used of a thing which, in a certain case which does not actually hold, would, *at the present time*, be *right* and *proper*, or *possible* (**debebam, decebat, oportebat, poteram**, or **eram** with a gerundive or neuter adjective), as if to show the duty and obligation or possibility more unconditionally (especially when the idea of a thing which is otherwise and generally right is applied to a particular case): **Contumeliis eum onerasti, qvem patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas** (Cic. Phil. II. 38). **Si victoria, praeda, laus dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicae subvenire decebat** (Sall. Jug. 85). **Si Romae Cn. Pompejus privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 17). **Si mihi nec stipendia omnia emerita essent necdum aetas vacationem daret, tamen aeqvum erat me dimitti** (Liv. XLII. 34). **Si tales nos natura genuisset, ut eam ipsam intueri et perspicere possemus, haud erat sane, qvod qvisqvam rationem ac doctrinam reqvireret** (Cic. Tusc. III. 1). **Poterat utrumqve praeclare (fieri), si esset fides, si gravitas in hominibus consularibus** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 7). (But also: **Haec si diceret, tamen ignosci non oporteret,** Cic. Verr. I. 27, especially in opposition to something unconditional: **Cluentio ignoscere debebitis, qvod haec a me dici patiatur; mihi ignoscere non deberetis, si tacerem,** Cic. pro Cluent. 6.) In the same way, the perfect indicative is used of past time, instead of the pluperfect subjunctive: **Debuisti, Vatini, etiamsi falso venisses in suspicionem P. Sestio, tamen mihi**

ignoscere (Cic. in Vat. 1). **Si ita Milo putasset, optabilius ei fuit dare jugulum P. Clodio qvam jugulari a vobis** (Id. pro Mil. 11). **Deleri totus exercitus potuit, si fugientes persecuti victores essent** (Liv. XXXII. 12). (**Qvid facere potuissem, nisi tum consul fuissem? Consul autem esse qvi potui, nisi eum vitae cursum tenuissem a pueritia, per qvem pervenirem ad honorem amplissimum?** Cic. R. P. I. 6.)

Obs. When it is declared, without a condition, what might or ought to happen, or have happened, but does not happen, with **possum, debeo, oportet, decet, convenit, licet,** or **sum** with a gerundive, or **sum** with such adjectives as **aeqvum, melius, utilius, par, satis** (**satius est**), &c., the imperfect indicative is commonly used to represent present time, to describe that which does not happen, and the perfect and pluperfect indicative to represent the past: **Perturbationes animorum poteram morbos appellare; sed non conveniret ad omnia** (Cic. Finn. III. 10). **Ne ad rempublicam qvidem accedunt nisi coacti; aeqvius autem erat id voluntate fieri** (Id. Off. I. 9). **Oculorum fallacissimo sensu Chaldaei judicant ea, qvae ratione atqve animo videre debebant** (Id. Div. II. 43).[1] **Aut non suscipi bellum oportuit, aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani oportet** (Liv. V. 4). **Illud potius praecipiendum fuit, ut diligentiam adhiberemus in amicitiis comparandis** (Cic. Lael. 16). **Prohiberi melius fuit impediriqve, ne Cinna tot summos viros interficeret, qvam ipsum aliqvando poenas dare** (Id. N. D. III. 33). **Qvanto melius fuerat, promissum patris non esse servatum** (Id. Off. III. 25). **Catilina erupit e senatu triumphans gaudio, qvem omnino vivum illino exire non oportuerat** (Id. pro Mur. 25). (**Non modo unius patrimonium, sed urbes et regna celeriter tanta neqvitia devorare potuisset** (Id. Phil. II. 27), with the accessory signification, supposing it had had towns and kingdoms.) So, likewise, that which *might yet happen*, and its character, are expressed by the present indic.: **Possum perseqvi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum; sed ea ipsa qvae dixi, sentio fuisse longiora** (Cic. Cat. M. 16). **Longum est enumerare,** dicere, &c., *it would be tedious.* (**Possim, si velim.** § 347, *b.*)

d. A thing which might have occurred on a certain condition is represented, by a rhetorical emphasis of expression, as if it had already occurred, in order to show how near it was: **Perierat imperium, si Fabius tantum ausus esset, qvantum ira svadebat** (Sen. de Ir. I. 11); particularly in the poets: **Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum levasset** (Hor. Od. II. 17, 27).

---

[1] In the editions of Latin authors **debeam** is sometimes put incorrectly instead of **debebam.**

Obs. By the poets, and some later prose-writers (e.g. Tacitus), **eram** is sometimes used in a qualified proposition entirely in the sense of **essem**; **Solus eram, si non saevus adesset Amor** (Ov. Am. I. 6, 34).

e. Sometimes that which would happen in a possible assumed case (at variance with the real fact) is simply stated as something that will happen (fut. indic. for pres. subj.); **Dies deficiet, si velim paupertatis causam defendere** (Cic. Tusc. V. 35).

Obs. 1. What might almost have happened is expressed, in Latin, by the perf. indic. with **prope** or **paene** (as a thing that has been very near happening); **Prope oblitus sum, qvod maxime fuit scribendum** (Cæl. ap. Cic. ad Fam. VIII. 14).

Obs. 2. Sometimes, a conditional proposition belongs immediately to an infinitive, governed by the verb of the leading proposition, and is, for that reason alone, put in the subjunctive (according to § 369), without any influence on the leading proposition, which stands unconditionally in the indicative; **Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vita** (Cic. Finn. I. 19). In this way, **nisi** and **si non** with the subjunctive often follow **non possum** with the infinitive: e.g. **nec bonitas nec liberalitas nec comitas esse potest, si haec non per se expetantur** (Cic. Off. III. 33). **Caesar munitiones prohibere non poterat, nisi praelio decertare vellet** (Cæs. B. C. III. 44). The same holds of other conditional propositions, which do not contain a condition applying to the leading proposition, but complete an idea contained in it, which has the force of an infinitive or otherwise dependent proposition, so that the conditional clause belongs to the **oratio obliqva** (§ 369): e.g. **Metellus Centuripinis, nisi statuas Verris restituissent, graviter minatur** (Cic. Verr. II. 67 = **minatur, se iis malum daturum, nisi** ——. **Minatur** is stated absolutely without any condition). **Nulla major occurrebat res, qvam si optimarum artium vias traderem meis civibus** (Cic. de Div. II. 1; i.q. **nullam rem putabam majorem esse**). Sometimes, for the sake of brevity, a conditional proposition, in the subjunctive, is attached to a leading proposition which is expressed unconditionally; **Memini numeros, si verba tenerem** (Virg. Buc. IX. 45) = **et possem canere si.**

Obs. 3. When we have a conditional proposition in the indicative, expressing the conditional relation simply and without any accessory signification, the leading proposition may stand in the subjunctive for some other reason; e.g. because it contains a wish or a demand or a question with a negative signification, to indicate what is to happen (§ 351, § 353), or because it is a dependent question (§ 356): **Si stare non possunt, corruant** (Cic. Cat. II. 10). **Non intelligo qvamobrem, si vivere honeste non possunt, perire turpiter velint**

(Id. ib. II. 10). We should particularly remark the use of an indicative conditional proposition in connection with a wish or curse in solemn
aths: **Ne vivam, si scio** (Cic. ad Att. IV. 16).
itus sum (Id. ad Fam. XV. 9).

unctive is used in all propositions annexed by
rison, which state something that does not actu-
ly assumed for the sake of comparison (*as if;*
sitions of comparison): —

is testibus utor, qvasi res dubia aut obscura
sec. 4). **Me juvat, velut si ipse in parte laboris**
, ad finem belli Punici pervenisse (Liv. XXXI.
ortu sic jacent, tanqvam omnino sine animo
5). (Concerning the particles used, in such proposi-
Obs. 1, and *b*.)

the imperfect and pluperfect are required to ex-
merely assumed; but, in Latin, the subordinate is
ling proposition, and has the imperfect or pluperfect
g proposition belongs to past time. But the imper-
essing comparison with a thing which would hold
se, not actually occurring; **At accusat C. Cor-**
e valere debet, ac si pater indicaret (Cic. pro

ubjunctive is used of that which does not actually
ich, with an indefinite subject assumed for the
ke place, and would do so if the attempt were
s potentialis). Such a subject is expressed by
errogative pronoun, or by a relative periphrastic
subjunctive): —

n (*one might believe*). **Dicat (dixerit) aliqvis**
say). **Qvis credat? Qvis eum diligat, qvem**
ld love a person whom he hated? **Qvis diligit,** *Who*
t, cum illo actum esse praeclare? (Cic. Læl. 3.
will deny?) **Qvi videret, urbem captam diceret**
would have said. **Poterat Sextilius impune ne-**
redargueret? (Id. Finn. II. 17), *who could have*
thing which is now possible, the present or future.
hetical future, without its proper signification, see
is way; of past time, the imperfect.

the use of the second person of the verb in propo-
see § 370.

b. With definite subjects also, a thing which easily can and will happen when there is an occasion for it, is modestly and cautiously expressed in the subjunctive, most frequently in the first person, to denote that to which one is inclined. In the active the future perfect is here generally used (without its usual signification):—

Haud facile dixerim, utrum sit melius. Hoc sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim (*I might affirm, if the occasion should arise*), **eloqventiam esse rem unam omnium difficillimam** (Cic. Brut. 6). **At non historia cesserim Graecis, nec opponere Thucydidi Sallustium verear** (Quinct. X. 1, 101). **Themistocles nihil dixerit, in qvo Areopagum adjuverit** (Cic. Off. I. 22), *will not easily be able to adduce any thing.*

Obs. 1. We should particularly notice the following subjunctives of this class: **velim, nolim, malim,** by which a wish is modestly expressed (*I could wish, could wish not, would rather*): e.g. **velim dicas; velim ex te scire; nolim te discedere.** A wish, which one would entertain under other circumstances, but which cannot now be fulfilled, is expressed by **vellem, nollem, mallem**: e.g. **Vellem adesse posset Panaetius** (Cic. Tusc. I. 33). **Nollem factum.** (**Vellet,** *he could have wished*).

Obs. 2. Such a subjunctive may also be employed in a subordinate proposition, with a conjunction which is otherwise constructed with the indicative: **Etsi eum, qvi profiteri ausus sit, perscripturum se res omnes Romanas, in partibus singulis fatigari minime conveniat** (*would be highly unbecoming*), **tamen provideo animo, qvicqvid progredior, in vastiorem me altitudinem invehi** (Liv. XXXI. 1). **Camillus, qvamqvam exercitum assvetum imperio, qvi in Volscis erat, mallet, nihil recusavit** (Liv. VI. 9. The simple antithesis would have to be expressed by **etsi** and **qvamqvam** with the indicative, § **361,** *Obs.* 2).

Obs. 3. A conjecture respecting a thing which is actually the fact is not expressed by the subjunctive, except with the particle **forsitan,** *it may be that,* which, in the best writers, is almost always put with that mood; e.g. **Concedo; forsitan aliqvis aliqvando ejusmodi qvippiam fecerit** (Cic. Verr. II. 32).

§ 351. *a.* The subjunctive is used to express a wish, and (in the first person plural) mutual incitement or encouragement (*the optative*):—

Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint beati (Cic. pro Mil. 34). **Ne vivam, si tibi concedo, ut ejus rei cupidior sis, qvam ego sum** (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 23). **Vivas et originis hujus gaudia longa**

I. 46). **Imitemur majores nostros! Memineri-**
mus infimos justitiam esse servandam (Cic. Off.

ıctive is sometimes used instead of the imperative
d prohibitions. See what is said on this subject in
mperative, Chapter V.

the subjunctive thus used, the negation is expressed by
e § 456. Wishes are expressed still more strongly by
he particle **utinam** (**utinam ne**): e.g. **Utinam ego**
nicus adscriberer (Cic. Tusc. V. 22; the imperfect
ing which cannot happen). **Utinam ne Phormioni id**
tem incidisset (Ter. Phorm. I. 3, 5). **Utinam** is, in
ces, employed with a **non** following, which is closely
rb: **Haec ad te die natali meo scripsi, qvo utinam**
essem (Cic. ad Att. XI. 9). The expression **o, si** (with
is elliptical; **O mihi praeteritos referat si Juppiter**
n. VIII. 560).
ıe particles **dum, dummodo,** or **modo** alone (**modo**
vided that (**dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne**), a wish
ıexed to a proposition by way of condition or limita-
dum metuant. Gallia aeqvo animo omnes belli
dummodo repellat periculum servitutis (Cic. Phil.
a postposui, dummodo praeceptis patris parerem,
. XVI. 21). **Celeriter ad comitia tibi veniendum**
do ne qvid haec festinatio imminuat ejus gloriae
i sumus (Cic. ad Fam. X. 25). **Manent ingenia**
permaneat studium et industria (Id. Cat. M. 7).
rres impune haec emerit, modo ut bona ratione
r. IV. 5).
eginner may observe that an exhortation is often ex-
n, by a question with **qvin**, *why not?* **Qvin imus?**
Qvin tu urges occasionem istam? (Cic. ad Fam.

e imperfect and pluperfect, the subjunctive is used, in
imperative sense, of a thing which *ought to have been*
ıished from that which, according to a previous state-
dly been done: **Curio causam Transpadanorum**
cebat; semper autem addebat, Vincat utilitas rei-
ius diceret (*he should rather have said*), **non esse**
on esset utilis reipublicae, qvam qvum non utilem
qvam fateretur (Cic. Off. III. 22). **Saltem aliqvid**
traxisset (Id. Finn. IV. 20), *he should, at least, have*

deducted ——. **Frumentum ne emisses** (Id. Verr. III. 84), *you should not have bought any wheat.*

Obs. 5. Concerning the subjunctive in the continued **oratio obliqva**, for the imperative of the **oratio recta**, see § **404.**

§ 352. A permission, and an assumption or admission of a thing that is not actually so, or which one leaves undecided and will not contend about, are expressed by the subjunctive: —

Fruatur sane Gabinius hoc solatio (Cic. Provv. Cons. 7), *let Gabinius keep this comfort if he will.* **Vendat aedes vir bonus propter aliqva vitia, qvae ceteri ignorent; pestilentes sint et habeantur salubres; male materiatae sint, ruinosae; sed hoc praeter dominum nemo sciat; qvaero, si haec emptoribus non dixerit, num injuste fecerit** (Cic. Off. III. 13). **Malus civis, improbus consul, seditiosus homo Carbo fuit. Fuerit aliis** (*suppose he has been so to others*); **tibi qvando esse coepit?** (Id. Verr. I. 14). **Ne sint in senectute vires** (Id. Cat. M. II.), *let us assume that age has no powers.*

§ 353. The subjunctive is used in inquiries as to what is (or was) to be done, what shall be, or should have been done, especially when it is intended to indicate that something will *not* be done (has not been done): **Qvid faciam?** (*What am I to do?* i.q. *I can do nothing.*)

Utrum superbiam Verris prius commemorem an crudelitatem? (Cic. Verr. I. 47); **Quam te memorem, virgo?** (Virg. Æn. I. 327), *What shall I call you?* **Qvid hoc homine faciatis? aut ad qvam spem tam importunum animal reservetis?** (Cic. Verr. I. 16). **Qvid faceret aliud?** (Cic. de Or. III. 23), *What else was he to do?* **Haec qvum viderem, qvid agerem, judices? Contenderem contra tribunum plebis privatus armis?** (Cic. pro Sest. 19). **Qvid enumerem artium multitudinem, sine qvibus vita omnino nulla esse potest?** (Id. Off. II. 4) = **non enumerabo. Cur plura commemorem?** (But, **Cur haec commemoro?** of a thing which one is already actually doing.) **Qvidni meminerim?** (Cic. de Or. II. 67), *Why should I not remember?* (negation of **non memini**). Also in questions expressive of disapprobation, by which a thing is described as not to be thought of: **Qvaeso, qvid istuc consilii est? Illius stultitiā victă ex urbe rus tu habitatum migres?** (Ter. Hec. IV. 2, 13), *should you —?* **Ego te videre noluerim?** (Cic. ad Q. Fr. I. 3), *Can you suppose that I was unwilling to see you?*

Obs. In questions relating to something that is not to be thought of, an elliptical expression with **ut** is also used: **Egone ut te interpellem?**

(Cic. Tusc. II. 18) = **Fierine potest, ut, &c. Qvanqvam qvid t ulla res frangat? Tu ut unqvam te corriges?** (Id.

subjunctive is employed in all propositions that ct of a preceding verb or expression (*objective pro-t-clauses*), and are connected with it by the particles t **ne, ut non, qvin, qvominus,** *that not:* —

t **omnia floreant. Verres rogat et orat Dolabellam,** n **proficiscatur** (Cic. Verr. I. 29). **Precor, ne me** me **contineo, qvin involem in illum** (Ter. Eun. V. **est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus** Brut. 21).

and with what particle such propositions are to be formed appendix to this chapter. In some particular cases the omitted. See § 372, *b*, *Obs.* 4; § 373, *Obs.* 1; § 375, *a*,

subjunctive is used in all subordinate propositions, oined to another proposition, to express its purpose esult, and are connected with it by the particles **ut, ne (ut ne),** *that not;* **qvo,** *that so much;* **ut,** *so that; not;* **qvin,** *that not* (*without*). The subjunctive is er **ut (ut non)** in the signification *although* (even and **nedum,** *much less;* e.g.: —

ves servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus. Haec bo, ne me oblitum esse mandatorum tuorum putes. il aratur, sed novatur et iteratur, quo meliores fetus liores edere (Cic. de Or. II. 30). **Verres Siciliam perdidit, ut restitui in antiqvum statum nullo modo r. A. I. 4). In virtute multi sunt adsceusus; ut (*so* maxime excellat, qvi virtute plurimum praestet** (Id.

Nunqvam accedo, qvin abs te abeam doctior 7, 21). **Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda vol-** Pont. III. 4, 79). **Vix in ipsis tectis frigus vitatur, sit facile abesse ab injuria temporis** (*of the season;* VI. 8).

ning some peculiarities in the combination of these propo- he use of the conjunctions, see Chap. IX. § 440; con- ut ne, § 456 with *Obs.* 8.

e subjunctive are put all dependent interrogative e. all propositions which are connected with another

proposition by an interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by an interrogative particle, in order to designate the object of a verb, of a phrase, or of a single adjective or substantive: —

Qvaesivi ex puero qvid faceret, ubi fuisset. Incertum est, qvid qvaeqve nox aut dies ferat. Difficile dictu est, utrum hostes magis Pompeji virtutem pugnantes timuerint an mansvetudinem victi dilexerint (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 14). **Doleam, necne doleam, nihil interest** (Id. Tusc. II. 12). **Vides, ut** (*how*) **alta stet nive candidum Soracte** (Hor. Od. I. 9, 1). **Valetudo sustentatur notitia sui corporis et observatione, qvae res prodesse soleant aut obesse** (Cic. Off. II. 24).[1]

Obs. 1. Concerning the interrogative particles, see §§ **451–453.** The beginner must avoid confounding dependent questions with those relative clauses which in English begin with *what* (= *that, which*) ; e.g. *I give what I have,* **do, qvae habeo**; *I said what I knew* (*repeated all I knew*), **dixi, qvae sciebam. Dico, qvod sentio,** *I say what I think,* i.e. *what I say is my real opinion;* **dicam, qvid sentiam,** *I shall tell what I think,* i.e. *I shall state what my opinion is.*

Obs. 2. In dependent questions about a thing which *is to happen,* the notion *is to* is frequently not expressed by a separate word: **Vos hoc tempore eam potestatem habetis, ut statuatis, utrum nos semper miseri lugeamus** (*are to mourn*), **an aliqvando per vestram virtutem sapientiamqve recreemur** (Cic. pro Mil. 2). **Non satis constabat, qvid agerent** (Cæs. B. G. III. 14), *they did not rightly know what they were to do.*

Obs. 3. In the oldest poets (Plautus and Terence) a dependent interrogative proposition sometimes stands in the indicative: e.g. **si nunc memorare velim, qvam fideli animo et benigno in illam fui, vere possum** (Ter. Hec. III. 5, 21) ; in the later poets (Horace, Virgil) this is rare, in prose quite inadmissible. Sometimes a direct question is put after **dic** or **qvaero,** where an indirect one might have been employed: **Dic, qvaeso: Num te illa terrent, triceps Cerberus, Cocyti fremitus, travectio Acherontis ?** (Cic. Tusc. I. 5). Here it may also be observed, that the expression **nescio qvis** (**nescio qvomodo, nescio qvo pacto, nescio unde,** &c.) is often inserted in a proposition that is not interrogative, by way of parenthesis, or as a remark exclusively applying to a single word: **minime assentior iis, qvi istam nescio qvam indolentiam magnopere laudant** (Cic. Tusc. III. 6), *that — how shall I term it? — insensibility to pain.* **Licuit esse otioso Themistocli, licuit Epaminondae, licuit etiam mihi; sed, nescio qvomodo, inhaeret in mentibus qvasi seculorum qvoddam augurium futurorum** (Id. Tusc. I. 15).

---

[1] **Quid agis? — Quid agam? (sc. quaeris). Male.**

ing the mood of interrogative propositions in the
§ 405.

rdinate propositions, which specify a cause and a
of the particles **qvod** and **qvia**, *because*), or an
ıs of the particles **qvoniam, qvando**, *since*), are
ə indicative (if the speaker adduces the actual
occasion, according to his own views); but in
the reason (or occasion) is given according to
ıer party, who is represented as the agent in the
—

ıe ob eam causam expulsus est patria, qvod
ıstus esset? (Cic. Tusc. V. 36), *because he was too
his fellow-citizens?* **Bene majores acoubitionem
um, qvia vitae conjunctionem haberet, con-**
runt (Id. Cat. M. 13); in this passage the imperfect
reason alleged is agreeable to the view taken by the

a subjunctive is employed where the indicative
een made use of, because the reason assigned is
eaker himself also as the real one: —

qvia consules ad id locorum (*hitherto*) **prospere
us his cladibus commovebantur** (Liv. XXV. 22),
t the consuls were successful.

qvod (but not **qvia**), with a subjunctive, is used
ignify praise, blame, complaint, surprise, where we
the assertion of another: **Laudat Panaetius Afri-
it abstinens** (Cic. Off. II. 22). **Socrates accu-
orrumperet juventutem et novas superstitiones**
nct. IV. 4, 5). But if the speaker himself designates
ı actual fact as the ground of the complaint, &c., the
yed: **Qvod spiratis, qvod vocem mittitis, qvod
habetis, indignantur** (Liv. IV. 3).

aker may also express the reason of his own actions
if according to the views of another party, if he states
merly appeared to him, without expressly confirming
**hi semper Academiae consvetudo de omnibus
as partes disserendi non ob eam causam solum
r non posset, qvid in qvaqve re verisimile esset,
m qvod esset ea maxima dicendi exercitatio**

Obs. 2. Sometimes **qvod** is put with the subjunctive of a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, although not the circumstance that some one said or thought a thing, but the substance of what was said or thought, conveys the reason as given by another: **Qvum Hannibalis permissu exisset e castris, rediit paullo post, qvod se oblitum nescio qvid diceret** (Cic. Off. I. 13), *because, as he said, he had forgotten something*. **Multi praetores qvaestores et legatos suos de provincia decedere jusserunt, qvod eorum culpa se minus commode audire arbitrarentur** (Id. Verr. III. 58).

b. The subjunctive is employed, where it is intended to denote that the reason alleged is not the real and actual one: —

Nemo oratorem admiratus est, qvod Latine loqveretur (Cic. de Or. III. 14). In this way, particularly **non qvod (non ideo qvod non eo qvod)** or **non qvia** is put with the subjunctive, followed by **sed qvod (qvia)**, introducing the true motive: **Pugiles in jactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, non qvod doleant animove succumbant, sed qvia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur venitqve plaga vehementior** (Cic. Tusc. II. 23). **(Jactatum in condicionibus neqvicqvam de Tarqviniis in regnum restituendis, magis qvia id negare Porsena neqviverat Tarqviniis, qvam qvod negatum iri sibi ab Romanis ignoraret** (Liv. II. 13) = **non qvod — ignoraret, sed qvia — neqviverat)**. There are a few exceptions: **non qvia nasus nullus illis erat** (Hor. Sat. II. 2, 90).

Obs. For **non qvod (non qvia), non qvo**, *not that*, is also employed: **De consilio meo ad te, non qvo celandus esses, nihil scripsi antea, sed qvia communicatio consilii qvasi quaedam videtur esse efflagitatio ad coeundam societam vel periculi vel laboris** (Cic. ad Fam. V. 19). (Also **non qvo ——, sed ut** or **sed ne.**) For **non qvod (qvo) non**, we find also **non qvin**; e.g. **non tam ut prosim causis, elaborare soleo, qvam ne qvid obsim; non qvin enitendum sit in utroqve, sed tamen multo est turpius oratori nocuisse videri causae qvam non profuisse** (Cic. de Or. II. 72).

§ 358. The subjunctive is put after the particle **qvum**, when it denotes the *occasion* (*since*, **qvum** causal), or (with imperfects and pluperfects) the succession and order of events in historical narration (*when*): —

Qvum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare (Cic. Finn. I. 20). **Dionysius qvum in communibus suggestis consistere non auderet, contionari ex turri alta solebat** (Id. Tusc. V. 20). **Epaminondas qvum vicisset Lacedaemonios apud Mantineam atqve ipse gravi vulnere**

exanimari se videret, qvaesivit, salvusne esset clipeus (Id. Finn. II. 30).

If, on the other hand, an action is only referred to a certain time, so that **qvum** signifies *when*, with a present or future, or *at the time when*, the indicative is employed; though in speaking of past time the imperfect subjunctive is likewise admissible:—

Qvi injuriam non propulsat, qvum potest, injuste facit (Cic. Off. III. 18). **Qvum inimici nostri venire dicentur, tum in Epirum ibo** (Id. ad Fam. XIV. 3). **Res, qvum haec scribebam, erat in extremum adducta discrimen** (Id. ib. XII. 6). **Dionysius ea, qvae concupierat, ne tum qvidem, qvum omnia se posse censebat, conseqvebatur** (Id. Tusc. V. 20). **Qvum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius Gallorum factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Seqvani** (Cæs. B. G. VI. 12). **Zenonem, qvum Athenis essem, audiebam freqventer** (Cic. N. D. I. 21). **C. Caesar tum, qvum maxime furor arderet Antonii, firmissimum exercitum comparavit** (Id. Phil. III. 2). **Qvanto facilius abire fuit hosti, qvum procul abessemus, qvam nunc, qvum in cervicibus sumus** (Liv. XLIV. 39). With the other conjunctions of time, which denote the succession of actions, the indicative is made use of. See § **338**, *b*.

Obs. 1. The indicative is also used when **qvum** (**qvum interim**) connects an event with a time and circumstances previously mentioned: **Jam ver appetebat, qvum Hannibal ex hibernis movet** (Liv. XXII. 1). **Jam scalis egressi milites prope summa ceperant, qvum oppidani concurrunt, lapides, ignem, alia praeterea tela ingerunt** (Sall. Jug. 60). **Piso ultimas Hadriani maris oras petivit, qvum interim Dyrrachii milites domum, in qva eum esse arbitrabantur, obsidere coeperunt** (Cic. in Pis. 38). (So likewise, **Nondum centum et decem anni sunt, qvum de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est** (Id. Off. II. 21), *it is not yet one hundred and ten years, since a law* ——.)

Obs. 2. **Qvum** signifying *inasmuch as* stands with the indicative in the present and perfect: **Concedo tibi, ut ea praetereas, qvae, qvum taces, nulla esse concedis** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 19), *inasmuch as you are silent, by being silent*. **Praeclare facis, qvum Caepionis et Luculli memoriam tenes** (Id. Finn. III. 2); but with the subjunctive in the imperfect: **Munatius Plancus qvotidie meam potentiam criminabatur, qvum diceret, senatum, qvod ego vellem, decernere** (Cic. pro Mil. 5). After **laudo, gratulor, gratias ago, gratia est, qvum** is found with the indicative in the same sense as **qvod**, *that, because*; e.g. **Gratulor tibi, qvum tantum vales apud Dolabellam** (Cic. ad Fam. IX. 14).

Obs. 3. **Qvum** usually has the subjunctive when it expresses a kind of comparison, and especially a contrast, between the contents of the leading proposition and the subordinate (*while on the other hand, whereas, although*); **Hoc ipso tempore, qvum omnia gymnasia philosophi teneant, tamen eorum auditores discum audire qvam philosophum malunt** (Cic. de Or. II. 5). Hence also with **qvum — tum**, *as well — as*, when each member has its own verb, the first is often put in the subjunctive, to express a kind of comparison (between the general and the particular case, the earlier and the later, &c.); e.g. **Qvum multae res in philosophia neqvaqvam satis adhuc explicatae sint, tum perdifficilis et perobscura qvaestio est de natura deorum** (Cic. N. D. I. 1). **Sex. Roscius qvum omni tempore nobilitatis fautor fuisset, tum hoc tumultu proximo praeter ceteros in ea vicinitate eam partem causamqve defendit** (Id. Rosc. Am. 6). If only the connection between the two is to be expressed, the indicative is used: **Qvum ipsam cognitionem juris augurii conseqvi cupio, tum mehercule tuis incredibiliter studiis delector** (Cic. ad Fam. III. 9).

Obs. 4. We always have the subjunctive in **audivi (auditum est) ex eo, qvum diceret**, *I have heard him say*. So also the subjunctive is almost always found used after the phrase: **Fuit (erit) tempus (illud tempus, dies), qvum**, *there was once a time, there will come a time, when* (*such a time that*); also after the simple expression, **fuit, qvum**: **Illucescet aliqvando ille dies, qvum tu fortissimi viri magnitudinem animi desideres** (Cic. pro Mil. 26). **Fuit, qvum mihi qvoqve initium reqviescendi fore justum arbitrarer** (Id. de Or. I. 1).

§ 359. When an action that is often repeated (*every time that, as often as*) is expressed by **qvum**, or other conjunctions (**ubi, postqvam, qvoties, si**), or by indefinite relative words (**qvicunqve, ubicunqve, qvocunqve, in qvamcunqve partem, ut qvisqve**, *according as each*), with the verb in the imperfect or (more frequently, according to § **338**, *a*, *Obs.*) in the pluperfect, the older writers (Cicero, Cæsar, Sallust) commonly use the indicative; others, again, give the preference to the subjunctive: **Qvum ver esse coeperat, Verres dabat se labori atqve itineribus** (Cic. Verr. V. 10). **Qvamcunqve in partem eqvites impetum fecerant, hostes loco cedere cogebantur** (Cæs. B. C. II. 41). **Numidae si a perseqvendo hostes deterrere neqviverant, disjectos a tergo aut lateribus circumveniebant; sin opportunior fugae collis qvam campi fuerant, Numidarum eqvi facile evadebant** (Sall. Jug. 50). **Qvemcunqve lictor jussu consulis prehendisset, tribunus mitti jubebat** (Liv. III. 11). **Qvum** (*every time that*) **in jus duci debitorem vidissent, convolabant** (Id. II. 27). **Id fecialis ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eorum mittebat** (Liv. I. 32).

§ 360. The conjunctions **dum, donec,** and **qvoad,** signifying *until,* with **priusqvam** and **anteqvam,** are (according to the most regular usage) constructed with the indicative, when an action is simply expressed that has actually commenced or is commencing (*a*), but with the subjunctive, if a *design* is at the same time intimated (until something *can* be done), or an action which has not actually commenced (before something *can* be done, i.e. so that it is not done (*b*). Yet the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are also employed in simply indicating a point of time and an action which has really taken place (especially with **anteqvam, priusqvam,** in the historical style (*c*): the subjunctive is also found with **anteqvam** and **priusqvam,** in speaking of a thing which usually happens before something else happens (*d*).

a. **De comitiis, donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit** (Liv. XXIII. 31). **Haud desinam, donec perfecero** (Ter. Phorm. II. 3, 72). **Milo in senatu fuit eo die, qvoad senatus dimissus est** (Cic. pro Mil. 10). **Mecum deserta qverebar, dum me jucundis lapsam sopor impulit alis** (Prop. I. 3, 43).[1] **Non in hac re sola fuit ejusmodi, sed, anteqvam ego in Siciliam veni, in maximis rebus ac plurimis** (Cic. Verr. II. 47). **Non defatigabor anteqvam illorum ancipites vias rationesqve percepero** (Id. de Or. III. 36). **Epaminondas non prius bellare destitit, qvam urbem Lacedaemoniorum obsidione clausit** (Corn. Epam. 8).

b. **Iratis subtrahendi sunt ii, in qvos impetum conantur facere, dum se ipsi colligant** (Cic. Tusc. IV. 36), *until they (that they may) compose themselves.*[2] **Numidae, priusqvam ex castris subveniretur in proximos colles discedunt** (Sall. Jug. 54). **Anteqvam homines nefarii de meo adventu audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexi** (Cic. pro Planc. 41).

c. **Trepidationis aliqvantum elephanti edebant, donec qvietem ipse timor fecisset** (Liv. XXI. 28). **Paucis ante diebus, qvam Syracusae caperentur; Otacilius in Africam transmisit** (Id. XXV. 31).[3]

d. **Tragoedi qvotidie, anteqvam pronuncient, vocem cubantes sensim excitant** (Cic. de Or. I. 59). **Tempestas minatur anteqvam surgat** (Sen. Ep. 103).

Obs. 1. Concerning **exspecto dum, opperior dum,** with a present, see § **339,** *Obs.* 2. **Exspectare dum,** with the subjunctive, answers

---

[1] **Dum** is but rarely used in this signification; (**usqve ad eum finem, dum,** Cic. Verr. Act. I. 6).

[2] Here **dum** is employed, not **donec,** to indicate design.

[3] **Non ante (prius) . . . quam** always takes the perfect indicative.

nearly to the English *to expect, that* (with the indicative, *to wait, until*): **Exspectas fortasse, dum dicat, Patietur, perferet** (Cic. Tusc. II. 7). **Nolite exspectare, dum omnes obeam oratione mea civitates** (Id. Verr. II. 51). (Also **exspecto, ut: Nisi forte exspectatis, ut illa diluam, qvae Erucius de rebus commenticiis objecit,** Id. Rosc. Am. 29.)

Obs. 2. **Dum** and **donec** may also be constructed with the subjunctive in the signification *so long as*, when a design is expressed (so long, *while*, —i.e. *that* something *may* be done *in the mean time*); **Die inseqventi qvievere milites, dum praefectus urbis vires inspiceret.** (Otherwise, they always take the indicative; **Ti. Gracchus, P. F., tamdiu laudabitur, dum memoria rerum Romanarum manebit,** Cic. Off. II. 12.)

Obs. 3. Concerning **anteqvam** and **priusqvam** with the present, see § **339**, *Obs.* 2. The present indicative is put with these conjunctions even to express a thing that one wishes to prevent, that must not happen: **Dabo operam, ut istuc veniam anteqvam ex animo tuo effluo** (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 14).

Obs. 4. When **ante, citius,** or **prius qvam** is used, to denote what is impossible, or what is to be warded off at any cost, it is followed by the subjunctive (since the action is considered as *not* taking place): **Ante leves pascentur in aethere cervi, qvam nostro illius labatur pectore vultus** (Virg. B. I. 59). (**Zeno Magnetas dixit in corpora sva citius per furorem saevituros, qvam ut Romanam amicitiam violarent,** Liv. XXXV. 31.) So, likewise, after **potius qvam**; **Privabo potius Lucullum debito testimonio qvam id cum mea laude communicem** (Cic. Acad. II. 1).

§ 361. The subjunctive is annexed to the particle **qvamvis,** *though ever so much* (*how much soever*), and to **licet,** *although* (properly the verb **licet,** with an ellipsis of **ut**):—

Qvod turpe est, id, qvamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest (Cic. Off. III. 19). **Improbitas, licet adversario molesta sit, judici invisa est** (Quinct. VI. 4, 15).

Obs. 1. **Qvamvis** properly signifies *however much you will*, and the subjunctive by itself expresses the concession: Let it be concealed (§ **352**). **Qvantumvis** is used in the same way: **Ista, qvantumvis exigua sint, in majus excedunt** (Sen. Ep. 85). **Licet** is rarely used by good writers quite as a conjunction, but commonly as a verb with a permissive signification (*may*): **Fremant omnes, licet; dicam, qvod sentio** (Cic. de Or. I, 44), *they may all exclaim against it, yet I will*, &c.

Obs. 2. The contrast between what is asserted and something else, that actually does (or did) take place, is expressed by **qvanqvam** or **etsi** (more strongly, **tametsi**) with the indicative: **Romani qvanqvam itinere et proelio fessi erant, tamen Metello instructi obviam procedunt** (Sall. Jug. 53). **Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen fore id, qvod accidit, suspicabatur** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 31). **Tametsi vicisse debeo, tamen de meo jure decedam** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 27); (they take the subjunctive only when there is some other reason for it; e.g. according to § **350**, *b*, *Obs.* 2, or according to §§ **369, 370**). By **etsi** and (more frequently) **etiamsi** as conditional particles, it is expressed that a thing takes place even in a certain case, and under a certain condition. The indicative is employed (according to § **332**), when the condition is simply expressed (without being negatived): **Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt, qvod decet, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident** (Cic. Finn. II. 14). **Qvod crebro aliqvis videt, non miratur, etiamsi, cur fiat, nescit** (Cic. Div. II. 22); the subjunctive, when it is stated that the condition does not obtain: **Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi atqve in patria mallem, qvam in externis atqve alienis locis** (Cic. ad Fam, IV. 7). **Cur Siculi te defensorem habere nolint, etiamsi taceant, satis dicunt; verum non tacent** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 6. **Dicunt** in the indicative, according to § **348**, *b*), *they declare it* by their way of acting, *suppose even that they were silent*.

Obs. 3. The poets and later writers use **qvamvis** with the indicative for **qvamqvam**, *although* (of a thing which actually does take place), or **etiamsi**, *even if*; **Pollio amat nostram, qvamvis est rustica, Musam** (Virg. B. III. 84), which is very rare in the older prose-writers. On the other hand, they use **qvanqvam** with the subjunctive, instead of the indicative: **Nec vero Alcidem me sum laetatus euntem accepisse lacu, nec Thesea Pirithoumqve, dis qvanqvam geniti essent** (Virg. Æn. VI. 394). **Qvinctius, qvamqvam moveretur his vocibus, manu tamen abnuit, qvicqvam opis in se esse** (Liv. XXXVI. 34).

§ 362. *a*. Relative propositions (whether introduced by the relative pronoun or a relative adverb) take the indicative when they simply give a more precise but actually true definition of an idea of the leading proposition, or when they, by a periphrasis, which is equivalent to a simple noun, describe and specify an idea, concerning which some statement is made; e.g.: —

Demosthenes, qvi Athenis versabatur, clarissimus orator fuit. Ubi talia impune fiunt, vita omnium in periculo est. Num alii oratores probantur a multitudine, alii ab iis, qvi intelligunt (Cic. [redacted]t. 49), *by connoisseurs*.

The indicative is also employed in propositions beginning with an indefinite relative pronoun (§ 87) or adverb, which describe an idea (by periphrasis), but leave it indefinite so far as any individual person or thing, or the extent of its application, is concerned: —

Qvoscunqve de te qveri audivi, qvacunqve potui ratione, placavi (Cic. ad Q. Fr. I. 2). **P. Lentulus, qvidqvid habuit** (*whatever ability he possessed*), **qvantumcunqve fuit, id totum habuit e disciplina** (Id. Brut. 77). **Patria est, ubicunqve est bene** (Id. Tusc. V. 37). **Sed qvoqvo modo illud se habet, haec qverela vestra nihil valet** (Id. pro Lig. 7). **Utrum** (*whichever of the two*, it is indifferent whether it be one or the other) **ostendere potest, vincat necesse est** (Id. pro Tull. § 28).

Obs. We must notice, as an exception to this rule, that certain writers use the subjunctive after indefinite relatives, in order to express a repeated action. See § 359.

b. But in various cases the relative proposition takes the subjunctive, to denote either a mere conception of the mind (a thing not actually existing), or a particular relation between the contents of the relative proposition and the leading proposition. (Hence a relative with the subjunctive often has the same signification, which is expressed more definitely by means of a conjunction.)

§ 363. *a.* The subjunctive is employed, when the relative proposition expresses a *design* connected with the action mentioned in the leading proposition (*who is to = that he;* **qvi = ut is**) or a *destination* which a thing has (something that *may*, something to —): —

Clusini legatos Romam, qvi auxilium a senatu peterent, misere (Liv. V. 35). **Misi ad Antonium, qvi hoc ei diceret** (Cic. Phil. I. 5), *one who was to* ——. **Homini natura rationem dedit, qva regerentur animi appetitus** (Id. N. D. II. 12). **Sunt multi, qvi eripiunt aliis, qvod aliis largiantur** (Id. Off. I. 14), *who take from some to give to others*. **Germani neqve Druïdes habent, qvi rebus divinis praesint, neqve sacrificiis student** (Cæs. B. G. VI. 21). **Haec habui, de amicitia qvae dicerem** (Cic. Læl. 27), *this was what I had to say*. **Habes, qvod agas et qvo te oblectes** (*something to do and amuse yourself with*). **Non habet, unde solvat** (*he has not the means of paying*). **Dedi ei, ubi habitaret** (*a place to live in*). Compare § 365.

b. It should be particularly remarked, that the relative with the subjunctive is put after the adjectives **dignus, indignus, idoneus,** and sometimes after **aptus,** to express that of which a person is worthy, or for which he is qualified: —

n diu multumqve consideremus (qvae diu tur). Homines scelerati indigni mihi videum agerem. Gajus non satis idoneus visus dum committeretur. Nulla mihi videbatur le senectute loqveretur, qvam Catonis (Cic.

later prose-writers construct these adjectives also e active or passive voice, as the connection may **Horatius fere solus legi dignus est** (Quinct. r. **Fons rivo dare nomen idoneus** (Hor. Ep. (**Dignus, ut** (Liv.) is very rare.)

ihil) habeo (nihil est, non est) qvod (*I have nothing to* ——), we must distinguish the ex- *do not know*, with a dependent question; **De habeo** (Cic. ad Att. VII. 19).

r also notice the subjunctive, which is employed **qvamobrem, qvare,** when **causa, ratio, argu-** f similar import precedes (the reason for which ——). See § **372,** *b*, *Obs.* 6.

ctive is employed in relative propositions, plete idea of a certain quality and show how has the meaning of **ut** after **talis** (*one who*, —

otio talis animi, qvae noceat nemini (Cic. **ies humani ingenii tanta est, qvae penetrare** ic. II. 39). **Qvis potest esse tam aversus a omnia, qvae videmus, deorum immortalium** l (Id. Cat. III. 9). **Ego is sum, qvi nihil qvam meorum civium causa fecerim** (Id. ad **Non is es, Catilina, ut te unqvam pudor a** Cic. Cat. I. 9.) **L. Pinarius erat vir acer et orum reponeret** (Liv. XXIV. 37). **Syracu- qvi etiam occulta suspicari possent, habe- e piratarum, qvi securi ferirentur** (Cic. Verr. **liqvid, qvod ad rem pertineat** (Cic. Rosc. Am. *nature, that it* ——. **Num qvidqvam potest natura, qvae nihil nec acturа sit unqvam erit?** (Id. N. D. I. 41), *a being, that* ——, *a* ——. **In enodandis nominibus vos Stoici, laboratis** (Id. ib. III. 24), *to a pitiable degree.* ve: **Campani majora deliqverant, qvam qvi-** se § **308,** *Obs.* 1.)

Obs. 1. Such a relative proposition is connected either with a demonstrative word, which denotes a quality (e.g. **talis, tantus, ejusmodi, is**) or with a substantive of a generic signification (e.g. *a being which*, or **aliqvid, qvod**), or with an adjective characteristic, to define it more precisely. This subjunctive is sometimes also used in relative propositions which do not complete a conception already presented, but which contain a description themselves (by periphrasis), when we wish to express a general idea of a person or thing of a particular nature, constitution, or quality, and, at the same time, to draw attention to the bearings of this nature or quality on the statement in the main proposition: **Hoc non erat ejus, qvi innumerabiles mundos mente peragravisset** (Cic. Finn. II. 31), *was not becoming for a man, who* ——, *such a man, as*. **Qvi ex ipso audissent, qvum palam multis audientibus loqveretur, nefaria qvaedam ad me pertulerunt** (Cic. ad Att. XI. 8), *persons who* ——, *such persons, as*. **Qvi audiverant** would mean *those who* ——, *the particular persons who*. **At ille nescio qvi, qvi in scholis nominari solet, mille et octoginta stadia qvod abesset, videbat** (Cic. Ac. II. 25), *things which were distant, such things as were*. **Qvod aberat** would signify *some particular thing which was distant*.

Obs. 2. In a similar way, the subjunctive is used in relative propositions, which restrict to a certain defined class something that is stated in general terms; particularly, with **qvi qvidem** (*at least, who*) and **qvi modo** (*who only = if he only*): **Ex oratoribus Atticis antiqvissimi sunt, qvorum qvidem scripta constent** (so far, at least, as their writings are to be relied on as authentic), **Pericles et Alcibiades** (Cic. de Or. II. 22). **Xenocrates unus, qvi deos esse diceret, divinationem funditus sustulit** (Id. de Div. I. 3). **Servus est nemo, qvi modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis, qvi non audaciam civium perhorrescat** (Id. Cat. IV. 8). **Qvod sciam, qvod meminerim**, *so far as I know, remember* = **qvantum scio. Pergratum mihi feceris, si eum, qvod sine molestia tua fiat, juveris** (Id. ad Fam. XIII. 23, *so far as it can be done without inconvenience to yourself*. (But we also find, with the same signification, **Qvae tibi mandavi, velim cures, qvod sine tua molestia facere poteris**, Id. ad Att. I. 5.)

§ 365. After a general assertion, that there is or is not something, of which a certain relative proposition may be asserted (something of such a kind that the latter may be asserted of it), the relative proposition takes the subjunctive; thus the subjunctive stands after the expressions **est, qvi; sunt, reperiuntur, non desunt, qvi; exstitit, exstiterunt, exortus est, qvi (exortus est philosophus, qvi); habeo, qvi** (*one who*); **est, ubi** (*there are places where*); **nemo est, qvi; nihil est, qvod (qvis est, qvi ——?)**, &c.; e.g.:—

Sunt, qvi discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem (Cic. Tusc. I. 9). **Fuere, qvi crederent, M. Crassum non tilinae consilii fuisse** (Sall. Cat. 17). **In omnibus ctores viri reperti sunt, qvi suas cupiditates, qvam i copias vincerent** (Cic. ad Fam. XV. 4). **Nemo qvi se Demosthenis similem esse nolit** (Id. de Opt. **Qvod ex majore parte unamqvemqve rem appellari ibi id valeat** (Id. Tusc. V. 8), *there are cases, in which* **ratenus amicitiae dari venia possit** (Id. Læl. 17), *there to which* ——. **Nullas accipio litteras, qvas non statim a.**

be poets frequently use the indicative after such of these are affirmative; e.g. **est (sunt), qvi** (not after the nega- **nemo est, qvi**): **Sunt, qvos curriculo pulverem Olym- disse juvat** (Hor. Od. I. 1, 3). **Interdum rectum vulgus vi peccat** (Id. Ep. II. 1, 63). In good prose-writers, such rare (**Sunt, qvi ita dicunt, imperia Pisonis superba qvivisse pati**, Sall. Cat. 19), except where a definitive ljective of number is appended to the affirmative clause; lti (**sunt multi homines**), &c.; for, in this case, the sed as well as the subjunctive: **Sunt multi, qvi eripiunt iis largiantur** (Cic. Off. I. 14). **Nonnulli sunt in hoc aut ea, qvae imminent, non videant, aut ea, qvae mulent** (Id. in Cat. I. 12). **Duo tempora incide- aliqvid contra Caesarem Pompejo svaserim** (Id. Phil.

f a relative proposition belongs to a negative antece- something definite is predicated (as, nothing is a good), in the indicative, as being subjoined as a mere defini- **nil bonum est, qvod non eum, qvi id possidet, melio-** ic. Par. I. 4, *nothing, that does not make its possessor* d); or it may be appended in the subjunctive in the man- tioned: **Nihil bonum est, qvod non eum, qvi id pos- rem faciat**, *nothing is a good, there is no good which would ossessor better*. **Nemo rex Persarum potest esse, qvi gorum disciplinam peroeperit** (Cic. de Div. I. 41).

r **qvi non** after **nemo est, qvod non** after **nihil est,** may likewise be employed (§ **440**, *Obs.* 3). Where a nust necessarily be expressed (as it nearly always must, would have been in the accusative), either is must be hich is to be preferred) the relative retained (**qvem non,**

§ 366. Relative propositions are put in the subjunctive, when they are intended to express the reason of the leading proposition, so that **qvi** approaches to the signification of **qvum is.** (You are to do it, as *he who* can do it, i.q. since you can do it.)

Caninius fuit mirifica vigilantia, qvi suo toto consulatu somnum non viderit (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 30). **Miseret tui me, qvi hunc tantum hominem facias inimicum tibi** (Ter. Eun. IV. 7, 32). **Ut cubitum discessimus** (*when we were gone to bed*) **me, qvi ad multam noctem vigilassem, artior qvam solebat somnus complexus est** (Cic. Somn. Scip. 1). **O fortunate adolescens, qvi tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris** (Id. pro Arch. 10).

Obs. 1. In many cases, the choice rests with the speaker, whether he will expressly show, by the use of the subjunctive, that the relative proposition contains the reason, or whether he will simply add it in the indicative as an explanation. Thus, it may be said: **Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam, qvae mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, potionis et cibi sustulit** (Cic. Cat. M. 14); but he might also have said: **auxerit — sustulerit** (*since it has, because it has*).

Obs. 2. The assigning of the reason is strengthened by the expressions **utpote qvi, ut qvi** (*as one who*) or **praesertim qvi**[1] (*especially as one who*, i.q. *especially as he*), which are constructed with the subjunctive. **Qvippe qvi** (properly signifying *certainly, as one who* ——, *certainly, since he* ——) is constructed both with the subjunctive and, in some writers (Sallust, Livy), with the indicative: **Solis candor illustrior est qvam ullius ignis, qvippe qvi immenso mundo tam longe lateqve colluceat** (Cic. N. D. II. 15). **Animus fortuna non eget, qvippe qvae probitatem, industriam, aliasqve artes bonas neqve dare neqve eripere cuiqvam potest** (Sall. Jug. 1).

Obs. 3. The subjunctive is likewise employed in relative propositions, which contain an antithesis to the leading proposition (compare what is said of **qvum**, § **358**, *Obs.* 3): **Ego, qvi** (*although I*) **sero ac leviter Graecas litteras attigissem, tamen, qvum in Ciliciam proficiscens Athenas venissem, complures ibi dies sum commoratus** (Cic. de Or. I. 18). **Nosmetipsi, qvi Lycurgei** (*strict as Lycurgus*) **a principio fuissemus, qvotidie demitigamur** (Id. ad Att. I. 13).

§ 367. A relative proposition constituting a periphrasis may be put in the subjunctive with an hypothetical declaration of what will happen in case the existence of such a person or thing as that indicated in the periphrasis should be assumed; e.g.: —

---

[1] [**Praesertim qui nos non pugnando, sed tacendo superare potuerunt** (Cic. in Cat. III. 9).]

Haec et innumerabilia ex eodem genere qvi videat, nonne cogatur confiteri deos esse (Cic. N. D. II. 4), *if any one sees this, will he not be compelled?* **Qvi — videt, nonne cogitur ——?** *is not he who ed?* See § 350, *a*.

ive propositions stand in the subjunctive, when they it parts of an expression (of a thought, resolution, mentioned in the leading proposition as the expres- party, and do not contain an idea which the speaker s as his own: —

secrari eum solebat, qvi primus utilitatem a jure ic. Legg. I. 12), *who had first* ——; whom Socrates of as the author of this separation. **Nemo extulit ri ita dixisset, ut qvi adessent, intelligerent, qvid** Or. III. 14), *him, who* (i.q. *any one, because he*), *accord- ad so spoken* ——. **Pastus omnes libros, qvos fra- isset, mihi donavit** (Id. ad Att. II. 1), *which his ve left; which his brother, as he believed, had left.* sense, it would be: **qvos frater ejus reliqvit,** *which* **In Hispaniis prorogatum veteribus praetoribus exercitibus, qvos haberent** (Liv. XL. 18; expressed **senatusconsultum.**)

ought mentioned in the leading proposition may be the it be presented as one that he entertained at some other ant (*I called to mind*) **colles campiqve et Tiberis , sub qvo natus educatusqve essem** (Liv. V. 54). e is only a slight difference between a relative proposi- rt of another person's thought (in the subjunctive) and tion giving the speaker's own thought (in the indica- ores **natu nil rectum putant, nisi qvod sibi placue- l ipsis placuit.** (The subjunctive shows that they are process of thought which determines their judgment. *c, Obs.* 3, respecting **sui** and **suus.**)[1]

relative propositions (§ 368), so also the subjunctive er subordinate propositions, which supplement the leading proposition, and are, so to speak, parts of it. ice, in conditional propositions: **Rex praemium pro- um propositum est) si qvis hostem occidisset** (§ 348,

---

ısa allata, qvam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse ut sibi Caesaris voluntate discedere liceret (Caes. B. G. I. 39). he subjunctive instead of **qvae — necessaria esset** (*the reason which, him*). See § 357, *a*, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 3. Compare what is said of causal propositions, § **357**, *a.*) The subjunctive is for the same reason used in all subordinate propositions (whether relative or connected by conjunctions), which are added to complete an idea expressed by an infinitive, or a proposition standing in the subjunctive, or in the accusative with the infinitive, the contents of which subordinate proposition are asserted by the speaker not simply as an actual fact, but only as a constituent part of the idea stated in the infinitive or subjunctive (**oratio obliqva,** *indirect discourse*). If, on the other hand, a remark or explanation by the speaker himself (which may be omitted without prejudice to the leading idea) or a description of something that actually exists independently of the contents of the main proposition is introduced into the midst of a subjunctive or infinitive proposition, the indicative is employed.

a. **Potentis est facere qvod velit.** (**Homo potens facit qvod vult.**) **Non dubitavi id a te petere, qvod mihi esset omnium maximum maximeqve necessarium** (Cic. ad Fam. II. 6. **Id a te peto, qvod mihi est maximum.**) **Qvod me admones, ut me integrum, qvoad possim, servem, gratum est** (Id. ad Att. VII. 26. **Serva te integrum, qvoad poteris**). **Rogavit, ut, qvoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur** (Id. Div. I. 27. **Qvoniam mihi vivo non subvenisti, mortem meam ne inultam esse passus sis**). **In Hortensio memoria fuit tanta, ut, qvae secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, qvibus cogitavisset** (Id. Brut. 88. **Hortensius, qvae secum erat commentatus, ea verbis eisdem reddebat, qvibus cogitaverat**). **Mos est Athenis, laudari in concione eos, qvi sint in proeliis interfecti** (Id. Or. 44). **Si luce qvoqve canes latrent, qvum deos salutatum aliqvi venerint, crura iis suffringantur, qvod acres sint etiam tum, qvum suspicio nulla sit** (Id. Rosc. Am. 20. The actual occurrence would be thus expressed: **canes latrant, qvum deos salutatum aliqvi venerunt**, and, **crura iis suffringuntur, qvod acres sunt etiam tum, qvum suspicio nulla est**). **Et earum rerum, qvibus abundaremus, exportatio, et earum, qvibus egeremus, invectio nulla esset, nisi his muneribus homines fungerentur** (Id. Off. II. 3. **Earum rerum, qvibus abundamus, exportatio nulla est.** The excess and deficiency also form a part of the hypothesis: *Even if we had a superabundance of any thing, it could not be exported* ——).

b. **Apud Hypanam fluvium, qvi ab Europae parte in Pontum influit** (observation of the narrator himself), **Aristoteles ait, bestiolas qvasdam nasci, qvae unum diem vivant** (part of the assertion of Aristotle (Id. Tusc. I. 39). **Qvis potest esse tam aversus a vero,**

a, qvae videmus (*the whole of this visible uni-*
ortalium potestate administrari (Cic. in Cat.

ses, a relative clause may either contain an inde-
be an existing class of persons or things, or sim-
a thought to which reference has already been
efficit, ut ea, qvae ignoramus, discere, et ea,
ocere possimus (Cic. N. D. II. 59). Here **ea,**
ea, qvae scimus are designated as two existing
it might also have been expressed: **ut ea, quae**
st ea, qvae sciamus, alios docere possimus,
or *known to us.* If, when the leading proposi-
general idea is expressed in such a subordinate
present, but in the imperfect, it is thereby shown
ught in the main proposition, and dependent on
ussit, qvae ad bellum necessaria essent; but,
nas, ceteraqve, qvae in bello necessaria sunt,

ians not unfrequently use the indicative irregu-
locutions and definitions, which are yet naturally
erstood as parts of a thought quoted as another's:
mum se tertium et octogesimum agere, et in eo
militasse (Liv. III. 71. **In eo agro, de qvo**
Mario magna atqve mirabilia portendi harus-
, qvae animo agitabat, fretus dis ageret (Sall.
vae animo agitas, fretus dis age!) In other
is rarely retained in such propositions: **Tertia**
nti quisque se ipse facit, tanti fiat ab amicis

specially noticed, that the particle **dum** is often
later writers, with the historical present (§ **336,**
ve, though the proposition is a part of another
ch is expressed in the infinitive: **Dio, hospes,**
idisse jacentes, dum sanctis patriae legibus
t. Tusc. I. 42). (More accurately: **Video, dum**
cere, dictum esse a me paullo obscurius, Cic.

, second subordinate proposition is, for the sake of
more fully, added to a subjunctive clause which
other's thought, nor of a general idea expressed
clause, for instance, expressing time or cause with
es, the added subordinate clause is not unfre-
ive, although the substance of it might have been

expressed in the indicative as something actually true: **De his rebus disputatum est qvondam in Hortensii villa, qvae est ad Baulos qvum eo postridie venissemus, qvam apud Catulum fuissemus** (Cic. Acad. II. 3).

§ 370. Besides the rules which have thus far been given for the subjunctive, it is particularly to be noticed, that the *second* person singular of the subjunctive is used of an assumed person representing a single indefinite subject (*some one, one*), which is imagined, and, so to speak, addressed, in order to express something indefinite. In leading propositions, this form is found only in conditional discourse, in potential expressions, and questions concerning that which can and will happen (§§ **350** and **353**); but in subordinate propositions, with conjunctions and in relative propositions (with **qvi** or an indefinite relative), and in commands and prohibitions (see on the imperative, Chap. V.):—

Aeqvabilitatem conservare non possis, si aliorum naturam imitans omittas tuam (Cic. Off. I. 31. Of definite subject, it would be, **conservare non possumus, si omittimus.**) **Dicas (credas, putes) adductum propius frondere Tarentum** (Hor. Ep. I. 16, 11) = **dicat aliqvis**). **Qvem neqve gloria neqve pericula excitant, neqvicqvam hortere** (Sall. Cat. 58). **Crederes victos esse** (Liv. II. 43), *one might have believed they were conquered.* (Concerning the imperfect, see § **350**, *a.*) **Tanto amore possessiones suas amplexi tenebant, ut ab iis membra divelli citius posse diceres** (Cic. pro Sull. 20). **Ut sunt, qvi urbanis rebus bellicas anteponant, sic reperias multos, qvibus periculosa consilia qvietis splendidiora videantur** (Id. Off. I. 24). **Ubi istum invenias, qvi honorem amici anteponat suo?** (Id. Læl. 17. Of an actual subject: **Ubi eos inveniemus, qvi opes amicitiae non anteponant?** (Id. ibid.) **Bonus segnior fit, ubi negligas** (Sall. Jug. 31). If not in the second person, it would be expressed, **ubi negligitur**). **Qvum aetas extrema advenit, tum illud, qvod praeteriit, effluxit; tantum remănet, qvod virtute et recte factis consecutus sis** (Cic. Cat. M. 19 = **consecuti sumus, consecutus aliqvis est**). **Conformatio sententiarum permanet, qvibuscunqve verbis uti velis** (Id. de Or. III. 52 = **utimur**).

Obs. 1. A conditional proposition of this kind in the subjunctive does not require the subjunctive in the leading proposition: **Mens qvoqve et animus, nisi tanqvam lumini oleum instilles, exstinguuntur senectute** (Cic. Cat. M. 11); except when the conditional proposition contains a merely imaginary case, in which something would occur: **Si constitueris te cuipiam advocatum in rem praesentem esse ven-**

erim graviter aegrotare filius coeperit, non sit ion facere, qvod dixeris (Cic. Off. I. 10), *assuming* ——, *it would then* ——.

very seldom inserted when the second person is em- y (e.g. **Virtutem necessario gloria, etiamsi tu id qvitur**, Cic. Tusc. I. 38); on the other hand, **te, tui,** fer to such a subject. In the same way, to denote assumed subject, **te** is put in the accusative with the he assumed object of a judgment (see § **398**, *a*); e.g. **dimonium victoriae certius, qvam, qvos saepe vinctos ad supplicium duci videre** (Cic. Verr.

APPENDIX TO CHAPTER III.

SES IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE, AND OF THE PARTICLES USED WITH THEM.

ɔe idea of an action or condition as the object of a ay be expressed not only by a proposition in the also by the infinitive (accusative with the infini- junctive propositions of this class are formed with according to the nature of the predicate in the n, rules will here be given for the use of these of the particles proper to each. (Those cases in is expressed by an accusative with the infinitive, one, will be treated of in the sixth chapter.) Gen- n object is expressed by a proposition in the sub- ll verbs and phrases which signify an effort or te that something happens.

, an infinitive is very often used where an object-clause would occur in Latin.

oposition with **ut** is subjoined to all those verbs , in one way or another, signify *to bring about* an *labor*, to *contribute*, to *interest one's self*, to bring it

cio, perficio, conseqvor, asseqvor, adipiscor, im- consvetudo, natura fert: (*b*) oro, rogo, peto, lagito, postulo, curo, video (*look to it, that*), pro-

video, prospicio, svadeo, persvadeo, censeo (*to advise*), **hortor, adhortor, moneo, admoneo, permoveo, adduco, incito, impello, cogo, impero, mando, praecipio, dico** (*to say to a person, that he is to* ——), **scribo, mitto** (*to write to any one, send to any one, bring orders to any one, that he is to* —), **edico, concedo, permitto** (**sino**), **statuo** (*to determine that some one is to*), **constituo, decerno, volo** (*to wish, that some one* ——), **nolo, malo, opto** (*that some one* ——), **studeo** (*to exert one's self, endeavor that some one* ——), **nitor, contendo, elaboro, pugno, id ago, operam do, legem fero, lex est, senatus consultum fit, auctor sum, consilium do, magna cupiditas est** (*a vehement longing that something should take place*), &c. **Sol efficit, ut omnia floreant. Cura, ut valeas. Rogavi, ut proficiscerentur. Dolabella ad me scripsit, ut qvam primum in Italiam venirem** (Cic. ad Att. VII. 1). **Elaborandum est, ut nosmet ipsi nobis mederi possimus** (Id. Tusc. III. 3). **Multi tum qvum maxime fallunt, id agunt, ut boni viri esse videantur** (Id. Off. I. 13).

Obs. It may be observed of the particle **ut** (**uti**), that it has its root in the same interrogative and relative pronominal stem from which **uter, ubi,** &c., are derived, and therefore originally signifies *how*, or (relatively) *as* (§ **201**, 5). From *how* is deduced the signification *that*, as applied to express a purpose and the object of the verb (to exert one's self, how one may attain a thing), and from the relative usage partly the signification *as soon as* (**ut veni, abiit**), partly that of *so that* (just as the pronoun **qvi** acquires the signification of *so that he*). Then the original signification is still further lost, so that the word only marks out a proposition indefinitely and generally as the object or complement of another (with verbs of happening).

b. If the object is expressed negatively (to bring it about, to exert one's self, that a thing may *not* happen), the particle **ne** is used instead of **ut** (also **ut—ne**). **Peto, non ut aliqvid novi decernatur, sed ne qvid novi decernatur** (Cic. ad Fam. II. 7). **Vos adepti estis, ne qvem civem metueretis** (Id. pro Mil. 13). After the verbs which signify to bring about, to effect, **ut non** is also made use of. See on this § **456**, with *Obs.* 3.

Obs. 1. We should remark the expression **videre, ne**, *to look to it, that not, to see whether perhaps not*. **Vide, ne mea conjectura sit verior** (Cic. pro. Cluent. 35). Hence, **vide ne** has sometimes nearly the signification of *I fear, that*.

Obs. 2. Those verbs that signify *to wish* that a thing may happen (**volo,** &c., **placet**, *it is determined*, sometimes **studeo, postulo**), govern also an accusative with the infinitive: **Volo te hoc scire.** See § **396.** **Volo** (**nolo, malo**) is commonly used with the subjunctive without **ut**

only in short and unambiguous expressions (see *Obs.* 4), otherwise with
nd infinitive: **Qvid vis faciam?** (Ter. Eun. V. 9, 24).
eriamur? (Virg. B. III. 28). **Tu ad me de rebus**
oas velim (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 13). (More rarely:
respondeas, Cic. in Vat. 6). **Sino,** *to let, permit,*
ame way; e.g. **sine, vivam** (rarely, **ut vivam**); other-
finitive (§ **390**) or the accusative with the infinitive

h some of those verbs which signify *to influence others to*
e action is sometimes expressed by the infinitive alone,
, and particularly **cogo.** See § **390.** Some may be
with the gerund: **Impello aliqvem ad faciendum ali-**

r those verbs which denote a wish, combined with an
others (particularly, *to advise, to beg, to persuade*), and
xo (but with these exceptions, not after **facio** and the
gnify *to effectuate, to obtain*) **ut** may be omitted, and the
e employed, if the construction is free from ambiguity,
subjunctive stands near the governing verb: **Dic veniat.**
ri sis. Sine te exorem (Ter. Andr. V. 3, 30). **Caesar**
at, Remos reliqvosqve Belgas adeat atqve in officio
s. B. G. III. 11). **Albinus Massivae persvadet,**
tirpe Masinissae sit, regnum Numidiae ab senatu
g. 35). **Jugurtha oppidanos hortatur, moenia de-**
id. 56).

e of the verbs and phrases here mentioned have, at the
ther signification, in which they denote *an opinion*, or
an opinion; and then they govern an accusative with the
tatuo, *to assume;* **decerno,** *to determine, decide;* **volo,**
f philosophical *dicta*); **contendo,** *to maintain;* **con-**
persvadeo, *to make a person believe;* **moneo,** *to remind*
l so is); **efficio (conficio),** *to make out, prove;* **cogo,** *to*
good; **adducor,** *to be induced to believe;* **auctor sum,**
. **concedo, non esse miseros, qvi mortui sunt** (Cic.
icaearchus vult efficere, animos esse mortales (Id.
t **concedo, contendo, efficio, adducor,** and a few simi-
are, in consequence of their original signification, also
Ex qvo efficitur, ut, qvod sit honestum, id sit solum
Tusc. V. 15; but also **Ex qvo efficitur, honestate una**
ri beatam, Id. ibid.). **Facio,** signifying *to represent a*
y a thing, has an accusative with the infinitive, or the
le in apposition to the object (as, **induco aliqvem**
Isocratem Plato admirabiliter in Phaedro laudari

fecit (Cic. de Opt. Gen. Or. 6). **Xenophon Socratem disputantem facit, formam dei qvaeri non oportere** (Id. N. D. I. 12). **Polyphemum Homerus cum ariete colloqventem facit ejusqve laudare fortunas, qvod, qva vellet, ingredi posset, et qvae vellet, attingeret** (Id. Tusc. V. 39). **Fac**, *suppose*, *assume*, always has the accusative with the infinitive; e.g. **Fac, qvaeso, qvi ego sim, esse te** (Cic. Fam. VII. 23). (**Facio**, with an accusative with the infinitive, in the signification *to cause*, is poetical: **Nati me coram cernere letum fecisti**, Virg. Æn. II. 538).

Obs. 6. After the words **causa, ratio**, and **argumentum**, and phrases of a similar signification, the object is expressed by a proposition with one of the particles **qvare, qvamobrem, cur** (*reason*, *why*, i.e. *reason to*). We have also simply **est** (**nihil est, qvid est**) **cur** (**qvamobrem, qvare, qvod**), *one has reason* (*no reason*): **Multae sunt causae qvamobrem hunc hominem cupiam abducere** (Ter. Eun. I. 2, 65). **Qvid fuit causae, cur in Africam Caesarem non seqverere?** (Cic. Phil. II. 29.) **Nihil affert Zeno, qvare mundum ratione uti putemus** (Id. N. D. III. 9), *no reason why we should believe*. **Qvid est cur tu in isto loco sedeas?** (Id. pro Cluent. 53.) **Non est, qvod invideas istis, qvos magnos felicesqve populus vocat** (Senec. Ep. 94). (Very rarely, **causa est, ut.**)[1]

§ 373. With verbs and phrases, which denote in general that a thing happens or is going on, is on the point of happening, a proposition with **ut** is used, to signify what happens, &c.; thus with **fit, futurum est, accidit, contingit, evenit, usu venit, est** (*it is the case, that*) **seqvitur, restat, reliqvum est, relinqvitur, superest, proximum est** (*the next action, the next thing is*) **extremum est, prope est, longe abest, tantum abest.** (In negative propositions **ut non**, and not **ne**, is employed: see § **456**, with *Obs.* 3.)

Accidit, ut illo tempore in urbe essem. Saepe fit, ut ii, qvi debeant (*owe us money*), **non respondeant ad tempus** (Cic. ad Att. XVI. 2). **Si haec enuntiatio vera non est, seqvitur, ut falsa sit** (Id. de Fat. 12). **Restat, ut doceam, omnia, qvae sint in hoc mundo, hominum causa facta esse** (Id. N. D. II. 61). **Proximum est, ut doceam, deorum providentia mundum administrari** (Id. ib. II. 29). **Propius nihil est factum qvam ut Cato occideretur** (Id. ad Qv. Fr. I. 2, 5). (So also: **Servilius ad id, qvod de pecu-**

[1] **Magna causa absolutionis Fonteji est, ne qva insignis huic imperio ignominia suscipiatur** (Cic. pro Font. 12). A weighty reason for acquitting Fonteius is, that no signal disgrace be incurred (i.e. the wish to avoid, etc. —. A proposition expressing a purpose, like: **suscipienda bella sunt ob eam causam ut sine injuria vivatur**, Cic. Off. I. 11).

s non dixerat, adjiciebat (*added this proceeding*), **ut ne lem militum haberet**, Liv. II. 27.)

e we should also notice the expressions **necesse est** and *ecessary*, which are constructed sometimes with the sub- ıt **ut** (**necesse est, ut** is rare), sometimes with the accu- ıitive: **Leuctrica pugna immortalis sit necesse est** 10). **Corpus mortale interire necesse est. Ex one efflorescat oportet oratio** (Cic. de Or. I. 6). to signify duty, always has the accusative with the infini- a definite subject, it is expressed thus: **necesse est ire,** (Concerning **licet** with the subjunctive, see § **389,**

en **seqvitur** denotes a logical conclusion, it may have the the infinitive, but is generally constructed with **ut**. **Con-** ignifying *I succeed*, and **restat** (*it remains*) are also, by ater writers, constructed with the simple infinitive: **Non contingit adire Corinthum** (Hor. Ep. I. 17, 36). (The more usual construction: **Thrasybulo contigit, ut pa-** t, Corn. Thras. 1.)

: verb **accedit**, *to this is to be added* (by which the hearer ome circumstance yet remaining), is either similarly con- t, or it is followed by an indicative proposition with **qvod** e circumstance (compare § **398**, *b*): **Ad Appii Claudii ıccedebat etiam, ut caecus esset** (Cic. Cat. M. 6). **d patrem plus etiam, qvam tu scis, amo** (Id. ad (If a circumstance is stated, not as actually existing, ıditional and assumed, **qvod** cannot stand, but only **ut**; **llud qvoqve accedet, ut dives sit reus, difficillima** n the other hand, there is no variation in the construction *add the circumstance, that* ——). (Concerning **exspecto**, *Obs.* 1).

ıbstantive or pronoun with **sum**, which suggests that ens or is to happen, is followed by a proposition with hat the preceding noun or pronoun refers to, and how self: —

mmune vitium in magnis liberisqve civitatibus, ut e comes sit (Corn. Chabr. 3). **Mos est hominum, ut n pluribus rebus excellere** (Cic. Brut. 21). **Cultus ptimus, ut** (*consists in this, that*) **eos semper pura, inte- a mente veneremur** (Id. N. D. II. 28). **Altera est res ıg required is**) **ut res geras magnas et arduas plenas-** (Id. Off. I. 20). **Fuit hoc in M. Crasso, ut existimari um hominum prudentiam Graecis anteferre** (Id. de

Or. II. 1). **Adhuc in hac sum sententia, nihil ut faciamus, nisi qvod Caesar velle videatur** (Id. ad Fam. IV. 4). **In eo est, ut proficiscar.**

Obs. 1. Such expressions as **mos est, cultus est optimus** (without a pronoun) are sometimes also completed by a simple infinitive: **Virginibus Tyriis mos est gestare pharetram** (Virg. Æn. I. 336).

Obs. 2. If a judgment is pronounced concerning the character of an action that is only supposed (not declared as of actual occurrence) by means of an adjective with **sum**, or some equivalent phrase, as **aeqvum est, optimum est**, &c., **magna laus est** (*it is a very meritorious thing*), **qvi probari potest?** (*how can it be approved of?*) **qvam habet aeqvitatem?** (*what fairness is there in it?*) the subject is expressed either by an infinitive alone or an accusative with the infinitive (§ **398**, *a*). Yet such propositions are also found with **ut**, when it is intended to denote, at the same time, the reality or falsity, possibility or impossibility of the action; e.g. **Non est verisimile, ut Chrysogonus horum servorum litteras adamarit aut humanitatem** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 41). **Qvid tam inauditum qvam eqvitem Romanum triumphare? Qvid tam inusitatum qvam ut, qvum duo consules fortissimi essent, eqves Romanus ad bellum maximum pro consule mitteretur?** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 21). **Magnificum illud etiam Romanisqve gloriosum ut Graecis de philosophia litteris non egeant** (Id. Div. II. 2).

§ 375. *a.* A proposition with **ne** is put after those verbs, which in themselves express a hindering and resisting force (working to *prevent* a thing from happening); as, **impedio, prohibeo, deterreo, obsisto, obsto, officio, repugno, intercedo, interdico, teneo** (*to withhold*, **teneo me, contineo**), **tempero, recuso, caveo** (*to avoid doing a thing, to take measures, that so and so may not* —), &c.: —

Impedior dolore animi, ne de hujus miseria plura dicam (Cic. pro Sull. 33). **Pythagoreis interdictum erat, ne faba vescerentur** (Id. Div. I. 30). **Histiaeus Milesius obstitit, ne res conficeretur** (Corn. Milt. 3). **Regulus, ne sententiam diceret, recusavit** (Cic. Off. III. 27). **Cavebam, ne cui suspicionem darem** (Id. ad Fam. III. 12).

Obs. 1. **Cave** is often used without **ne**: **Cave putes, cave facias.** (Sometimes **recuso**, *to refuse*; and **caveo**, *to avoid*, take the infinitive: **Cave id petere a populo Romano, qvod jure tibi negabitur** (Sall. Jug. 64). (**Caveo, ut** ——, *to take care that, make arrangements that* ——.)

Obs. 2. **Impedio** and **prohibeo** often have the infinitive (§ **390**): **Me et Sulpicium impedit pudor a Crasso hoc exqvirere** (Cic. de Or. I. 35). **Num igitur ignobilitas sapientem beatum esse prohi-**

bet? (When, on the other hand, these verbs are constructed with **ne**, the accusative is seldom retained. We find **pudor impedit, ne exqviram**, but less frequently, **me impedit, ne exqviram.**)

b. To those verbs and phrases, which signify *to hinder* and *to be a hindrance* (**impedio, prohibeo, officio, obsto, obsisto, deterreo, teneo**, and **per me fit, per me stat,** *it is chargeable to me*, **moror, in mora sum**, &c.), the objective proposition with **qvominus** (literally, *that so much the less*) may be subjoined: —

Hiemem credo adhuc prohibuisse, qvominus de te certum haberemus (Cic. ad Fam. XII. 5). **Caesar cognovit, per Afranium stare, qvominus dimicaretur** (Cæs. B. C. I. 41). **Hanc ego causam, qvominus novum consilium capiamus, imprimis magnam puto** (Sall. Cat. 51), of a reason against a thing. **Qvominus** is used in the same way after other verbs, which either by themselves signify resistance, or acquire such a meaning from the context (e.g. **pugno**, *to contend that —— not*), and are qualified by a negative (**non, vix**) or take the form of a question which implies a negative; e.g. **Non recusabo, qvominus omnes mea scripta legant** (Cic. Finn. I. 3). **Hoc fecisti, ne pupillo tutores consulerent, qvominus fortunis omnibus everteretur** (Id. Verr. III. 7).

c. After verbs and phrases, which signify *to resist* and *detain from*, or *to omit* (**praetermitto**, and expressions which acquire this meaning from the context, especially **facio** and **causa est**), *to delay*, as **cunctor, exspecto**, as well as after **abest, dubito**, and **dubium est, qvin**, *that not*, is used to designate the object, *when the negative force of the verb or phrase is cancelled by being qualified by a negative or by taking the interrogative form:* —

Vix me contineo, qvin involem in illum (Ter. Eun. V. 2, 20). **Non possumus, qvin alii a nobis dissentiant, recusare** (Cic. Ac. II. 3). **Facere non potui, qvin tibi et sententiam et voluntatem declararem meam** (Id. ad Fam. VI. 13). **Clamabant, exspectari diutius non oportere, qvin ad castra iretur** (Cæs. B. G. III. 24). **Haud multum abfuit, qvin Ismenias interficeretur** (Liv. XLII. 44). **Qvid est causae, qvin decemviri coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere** (Cic. de Leg. Agr. II. 27). **Agamemno non dubitat, qvin brevi sit Troja peritura** (Id. Cat. M. 10). **Non erat dubium, qvin Helvetii plurimum possent** (Cæs. B. G. I. 3). **Dubitare qvisqvam potest, qvin hoc multo sit honestius?**

Obs. 1. Some verbs, therefore [compare *b* and *c*], even when they are not qualified by a negative, are followed by **qvominus** and **ne** interchangeably (**prohibeo ne** and **qvominus**); and some verbs, when

qualified by a negative, are followed by either **qvominus** or **qvin** (e.g. **non recuso, qvominus** and **qvin**); but **qvin** often stands where **qvominus** would be inadmissible. But after the verbs which properly signify *to hinder* and *forbid* (**impedio, prohibeo, intercedo,** and **interdico**), **qvominus** is regularly used, **qvin** scarcely ever; after those which signify *to omit* (**absum** and **dubito**), only **qvin**. **Qvin** alone is sometimes used when the preceding proposition is qualified by some word expressing limitation (**paullum, perpauci, aegre**), instead of a negative; e.g. **Paullum abfuit, qvin Fabius Varum interficeret** (Cæs. B. C. II. 35). (So also **Dubita, si potes, qvin,** i.q. **dubitare non potes, qvin**). Instead of **facere non possum, qvin,** *I cannot refrain from* (**fieri non potest, qvin**), we may also say **ut — non** (§ **372,** *b*, and § **373**): **Fieri non potest, ut, qvem video te praetore in Sicilia fuisse, eum tu in tua provincia non cognoveris** (Cic. Verr. II. 77).

Obs. 2. Of the verb **dubito**, it is to be observed, that, when used affirmatively, it is always followed by an indirect question: (**dubito an, dubito an non.** See § **453**). After **non dubito** (**dubium non est**), we find also, in some writers (Cornelius, Livy), an accusative with the infinitive, instead of **qvin**. (**Non dubitabant, deletis exercitibus, hostem ad oppugnandam urbem venturum,** Liv. XXII. 55.) **Non dubito** (**qvis dubitat?**) with an infinitive (**non dubito facere, dicere,** &c.), signifies *I have no scruple, do not hesitate.* Yet in this signification, too, it is sometimes put with **qvin**; e.g. **Nolite dubitare, qvin uni Pompejo credatis omnia** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 23).

Obs. 3. **Qvin** is rarely found with negative verbs, which express an opinion and explanation (**non nego, qvis ignorat**), instead of the accusative with the infinitive: **Qvis ignorat, qvin tria Graecorum genera sint** (Cic. pro Flacc. 27), instead of **tria Graecorum genera esse.**

Obs. 4. **Qvin** is derived from the old relative and interrogative ablative **qvi** and the negative particle, and consequently its primitive signification is *how not* (*so that not*). Hence arises the signification *why not?* (**qvin imus ?** § **351,** *Obs.* 3); and from this again the signification *yes, indeed* (*why not, indeed?*).

§ 376. After verbs and phrases of fearing, the thing feared (that, which is *not* wished for) is distinguished by **ne** (in English *that*) and the thing wished for (which, it is feared, will not happen) by **ut** (in English *that not*) or **ne non** (*that not*), **ne nullus,** &c.: —

Vereor, ne pater veniat (*I fear that my father will come*); **vereor, ut pater veniat** (*that he will not come*); **vereor** (**non vereor**), **ne pater non veniat. Pavor ceperat milites, ne mortiferum esset vulnus Scipionis** (Liv. XXIV. 42). **Omnes labores te excipere**

video; timeo, ut sustineas (Cic. ad Fam. XIV. 2). **Vereor, ne consolatio nulla possit vera reperiri** (Id. ibid. VI. 1). **Non vereor, ne tua virtus opinioni hominum non respondeat** (Id. ibid. II. 5). **Senatores suos ipsi cives timebant, ne Romana plebs metu perculsa pacem acciperet** (Liv. II. 9); in this example, an accusative object also depends on **timeo.** In the same way, **ne** or **ne non** stands after **periculum** (*danger that, that not*): **Periculum est, ne ille te verbis obruat** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 14). **Nullum periculum est, ne locum non invenias.**

Obs. **Metuo, timeo, vereor,** *to be afraid (not have the courage) to do a thing, to shrink from doing it,* are followed by the infinitive; as, **vereor facere.** But in good prose only **vereor** is so used: **Vereor te laudare praesentem** (Cic. N. D. I. 21). (**Timeo** and **metuo** are rarely found with the accusative and infinitive, with the signification, to expect with apprehension that something will happen.)

CHAPTER IV.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 377. The tenses are in general distinguished and expressed in the subjunctive in the same way as in the indicative, both by the simple forms and by those compounded with participles (**amatus sim,** &c.), so that we shall here only notice what is peculiar to the way of expressing time in the subjunctive: —

Pater aberat. Qvum (*since, because*) **pater abesset, eram in timore. Pater profecturus erat. Qvum pater profecturus esset** (*was on the point of departing*), **valde occupatus eram. Paene cecidi. Vides, qvam paene ceciderim. Audivit aliqvid. Audiverit aliqvid, legerit** (Cic. de Or. II. 20), *he must have heard and read something.* **Qvis putare potest, plus egisse Dionysium tum, qvum eripuerit civibus suis libertatem, qvam Archimedem, qvum sphaeram effecerit** (Id. R. P. I. 17 = **Nihilo plus egit Dionysius tum, qvum eripuit c. s. l, qvam Archimedes, qvum sphaeram effecit.**)

Obs. 1. The difference between **amatus sim** and **amatus fuerim** is like that between **amatus sum** and **amatus fui**; § **344. Amatus fuissem** is also put for **amatus essem,** as **amatus fueram** for **amatus eram.**

Obs. 2. The imperfect **forem** (§ **108,** *Obs.* 3) is employed in the same signification as **essem,** especially in conditional propositions (*would be*)

and those expressive of a purpose (**ut foret, ne foret, qvi foret**). In the compound tenses (**amatus forem, amaturus forem**) many writers (Sallust, Livy, the poets) use **forem** exactly like **essem**; e.g. **Gaudebat consul, qva parte copiarum alter consul victus foret, se vicisse** (Liv. XXI. 53). (Cicero does not use it at all in the compound tenses; and elsewhere very rarely.)

§ 378. *a.* The present subjunctive is in many instances employed, when the thing represented is properly future, partly because the relation of time is sufficiently evident from the nature and construction of the subjunctive proposition, partly because we do not in idea accurately distinguish between the present and the future (as in assumptions, wishes, &c.). Hence the subjunctive has no simple form of the future in the active, and no future at all in the passive.

1. Thus the present is used in leading propositions in the subjunctive, namely, in conditional propositions (§ **347**, *b*), in potential propositions relating to a thing which can or is to be done (§ **350** and § **353**), and in wishes (§ **351**). For examples, see the paragraphs referred to. But in potential propositions the future perfect is sometimes employed as a hypothetical future. See § **350** and § **380**.

2. Propositions which denote a design and object are also expressed with the present (the effect being conceived of as contemporaneous with the act of the main proposition). See the examples in §§ **354** and **355**, with § **371** and the following.

Consequently, if past time be spoken of, the imperfect is used (and not the **futurum in praeterito**): **Rogabat frater, ut cras venires** (not **venturus esses**). See examples elsewhere.

Obs. After **non dubito qvin**, and those phrases which denote the relation of one proposition to another in the most general way (**est, seqvitur, accidit**) the future is employed to express what will happen at a future time: **Non est dubium, qvin legiones venturae non sint** (Cic. ad Fam. II. 17). (But in familiar language the present is also made use of: **Hoc haud dubium est, qvin Chremes tibi non det gnatam**, Ter. Andr. II. 3, 17); [as in English: *It is clear enough, that you don't get the old man's daughter*, instead of *will not get*].

3. Dependent questions, hypothetical propositions of comparison (**qvasi**, &c.), and propositions expressing a result, are put in the present, as in English, when the leading proposition is in the future and the subordinate proposition contemporaneous with it (when it

does not belong to a still more distant future): **Qvum ad illum venero, videbo, qvid effici possit. Sic in Asiam proficiscar, ut Athenas non attingam.**

4. Wherever in the **oratio obliqva** a leading proposition in the future is accompanied by a subordinate in the subjunctive, which in the **oratio recta** would stand in the future indicative (§ 339, *Obs.* 1) the latter is put in the present: —

Negat Cicero, si naturam seqvamur ducem, unqvam nos aberraturos (= Si naturam seqvemur ducem, nunqvam aberrabimus).

b. In the other kinds of subordinate propositions (in which the connection itself does not show that the subordinate proposition belongs to future time), the periphrasis of the future participle with the verb **sum**, which has here precisely the sense of a simple future, is made use of in the active: —

Scire cupio qvando frater tuus venturus sit. In eam rationem vitae nos fortuna deduxit, ut sempiternus sermo hominum de nobis futurus sit (Cic. ad Q. Fr. I. 1. c. 13). **Non intelligo, cur Rullus qvemqvam tribunum intercessurum putet, qvum intercessio stultitiam intercessoris significatura sit, non rem impeditura** (Id. de Leg. Agr. II. 12). In the passive, another turn must be given to the expression: e.g. **Qvaero, qvando portam apertum iri putes. Ita oecidi, ut nunqvam erigi possim** (*that I shall never rise*).

§ 379. The future perfect of the subjunctive is in the active like the perfect, and is expressed in the passive (in subordinate propositions) by the perfect subjunctive (so that only the preterite sense appears in the verb, while its futurity is ascertained from the leading proposition): —

Adnitar, ne frustra vos hanc spem de me conceperitis (Liv. XLIV. 22), *that you shall not have conceived this hope in vain.* **Roscius facile egestatem suam se laturum putat, si hac indigna suspicione liberatus sit** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 44; independently expressed: **facile feram, si — liberatus ero**). **Caesar magnopere se confidere dicit, si colloqvendi cum Pompejo potestas facta sit, fore, ut aeqvis condicionibus ab armis discedatur** (Cæs. B. C. I. 26; **si potestas facta erit discedetur**).

If past time be spoken of (after a leading proposition in the preterite), the pluperfect is used in the same way, to denote an action which was to be completed before another: —

Promisi me, qvum librum perlegissem, sententiam meam dicturum esse (*when I had read = when I should have read*). **Divicō cum Caesare agit, Helvetios in eam partem ituros atqve ibi futuros, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atqve esse voluisset** (Cæs. B. G. I. 13). **Dicebam, qvoad metueres, omnia te permissurum, simulac timere desisses, similem te futurum tui** (Cic. Phil. II. 35). (In English the imperfect alone is often employed; *where Cæsar settled them, should settle them*, &c., the completion of the one action before the other not being noted so accurately:)

§ 380. The future perfect subjunctive in the active voice is employed in hypothetical and modest statements of that which is possible; not, however, in the proper signification of that mood and tense, but merely as a hypothetical future or present (to which the present corresponds in the passive and in deponent verbs). See § **350**, and, with respect to the use of the second person, § **370**. It stands likewise in prohibitions as a simple future or present; **ne dixeris**, *do not say*. See Chap. V.

Obs. In conditional propositions in the second person, this future signifies (more distinctly, however, than the present), that a case is named which is now for the first time to be conceived of. This future is found in a few phrases only instead of the present subjunctive after **ut** or **ne** (*that not*); e.g. **ut sic dixerim**, and that never in the best writers (Qvinct. I. 6, 1).

§ 381. The periphrasis of the future participle and **fuerim** (**futurum in praeterito**) is used in a conditional proposition instead of the pluperfect subjunctive, if the proposition is a subordinate one, which on some other account would have had the subjunctive; e.g. after **ut**, after **qvum** (causal), or as a dependent question. (Its hypothetical character is then shown by the periphrasis, *on the point of* —. Compare what is said under the indicative in § **342**, and § **348**, *a*.)

Qvum haec reprehendis, ostendis, qvalis tu, si ita forte accidisset, fueris illo tempore consul futurus (Cic. in Pis. 7). (As an independent question: **Qvalis tu, si ita forte accidisset, consul illo tempore fuisses?**) **Virgines eo cursu se ex sacrario proripuerunt, ut, si effugium patuisset, impleturae urbem tumultu fuerint** (Liv. XXIV. 26). If the leading proposition be in the preterite, the pluperfect is employed in a dependent question: **Apparuit, qvantam excitatura molem vera fuisset clades, qvum vanus rumor tantas procellas excivisset** (Liv. XXVIII. 24).

In the passive, where this form is not found, other modes of expression are made use of; for it rarely happens that the subjunctive of the simple pluperfect is used, both on account of the hypothetical nature of the sentence and also for some other reason. The imperfect subjunctive, on the other hand, can, at one and the same time, be used hypothetically, and form an indirect question, or follow **ut**, etc.: —

Hi homines ita vixerunt, ut, qvidqvid dicerent, nemo esset, qvi non aeqvum putaret (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 41).

Obs. In those cases where the perfect indicative is used in an independent sentence, according to § **348**, *b* and *e*, and *Obs.* 1 and 2, the perfect is retained in the subjunctive: **Tanta negligentia castra custodiebantur, ut capi potuerint, si hostes aggredi ausi essent** (= **capi, castra potuerunt**).

§ 382. The time of a subjunctive subordinate proposition is determined by referring to the time of the leading proposition.[1] The past time is therefore expressed in the subordinate proposition by the perfect, when the leading proposition belongs to the present or the future; but if the latter itself belongs to past time, the imperfect (**praesens in praeterito**) or pluperfect (**praeteritum in praeterito**) is employed in the subordinate proposition: —

Video (videbo), qvid feceris. Qvis nescit, qvanto in honore apud Graecos musica fuerit? (not **esset**, although in the direct assertion or question it would be: **Magno in honore musica apud Graecos erat**; or, **Qvanto in honore musica apud Gr. erat?**) **Vidi (videbam, videram) qvid faceres. Videbam (vidi, videram), qvantum jam effecisset. Nemo est, qvi hoc nesciat; nemo erat (futurus erat), qvi nesciret; nemo futurus est, qvi nesciat. Eo fit, ut milites animos demittant. Eo factum est, ut milites animos demitterent.**

If the nearest leading proposition be an accusative with an infinitive, notice must be taken whether it is dependent on a verb in the preterite (so that the present infinitive is the **praesens in praeterito**, and the future infinitive the **futurum in praeterito**): —

Indignum te esse judico, qvi haec patiaris. Indignum te esse judicavi, qvi haec paterere. Negavi me unqvam commissurum esse, ut jure reprehenderer.

---

[1] This rule, with the inferences drawn from it, is commonly termed the rule for the sequence of the tenses (**consecutio temporum**).

Obs. 1. We should here notice that the historical present, so far as the propositions depending on it (or depending on a present infinitive which belongs to it) are concerned, is treated sometimes as an actual present, sometimes as a perfect (which it virtually is): **Tum demum Liscus proponit, esse nonnullos qvorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qvi privati plus possint, qvam ipsi magistratus** (Cæs. B. G. I. 17). **Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius qvam consverat, ad exercitum proficiscitur** (Id. ib. IV. 6). Sometimes, with some want of exactness, the two constructions are united: **Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, qvi dicerent, sibi esse in animo iter per provinciam facere, propterea qvod aliud iter nullum haberent; rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat** (Cæs. B. G. I. 7). (Concerning the transition to the present after the preterite in a long **oratio obliqva**, see § **403**, *b*.)

Obs. 2. Where the assertions and opinions of older writers or schools are mentioned in the present, the discourse or narrative sometimes proceeds in such forms as the preterite would have called for if it had been made use of; e.g. **Chrysippus disputat, aethera esse eum, qvem homines Jovem appellarent** (Cic. N. D. I. 15; instead of **appellent**). But this occurs chiefly in propositions which are separated from the leading proposition in a continuous **oratio obliqva** (§ **403**, *b*).

Obs. 3. After **ut**, signifying *so that*, **qvin, qvi non** (*but that, without*), in propositions expressing a result, the perfect is sometimes used (instead of the imperfect), although the leading proposition belongs to past time, if the statement in the subordinate proposition is conceived and expressed generally as a distinct historical fact, not merely with reference to the main transaction or to a certain particular point of time: **Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pecuniae invexit, ut unius imperatoris praeda finem attulerit tributorum** (Cic. Off. II. 22), *that the booty has put an end to imposts* (for all time following, up to the present moment). **Verres in itineribus eo usqve se praebebat patientem atqve impigrum, ut eum nemo unqvam in eqvo sedentem viderit** (Cic. Verr. V. 10), *that no one has seen him even on a single occasion;* **videret** would signify that no one ever then saw him = was accustomed to see him. **Thorius erat ita non timidus ad mortem, ut in acie sit ob rempublicam interfectus** (Cic. Finn. II. 20), *was so little afraid of death that he* (*as we know*) *fell*. This construction is often found, when a single historical fact is represented as the consequence of some general quality which has been described. Some historians occasionally use this perfect, even in cases where the imperfect would be more usual (especially Cornelius Nepos).

Obs. 4. Isolated instances of deviation from the rule result from an inaccuracy of expression; e.g. **Video igitur multas esse causas, qvae**

istum impellerent (Cic. Rosc. Am. 33; **fuisse** was at the time in the speaker's mind). **Pugna indicio fuit, qvos gesserint animos** (Liv. VII. 33; the author was thinking that he had used **est** in the preceding clause). **Qvae fuerit hesterno die Cn. Pompeji gravitas in dicendo, . . . perspicua admiratione declarari videbatur** (Cic. pro Balb. 1; **fuerit**, as if it was to be followed by **memoria tenetis**.)

§ 383. After a leading proposition in a past tense (as well as after the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in hypothetical sentences) dependent questions and propositions expressing a purpose (**ut, ne, qvi** for **ut, is**) or object regularly take a past tense also, and are expressed in the imperfect, although their import may hold good also at the present or at all times (in which case the present is often used in English): —

Tum subito Lentulus scelere demens, qvanta conscientiae vis esset, ostendit (Cic. Cat. III. 5), *how great the power of conscience is.* **Qvemadmodum officia ducerentur ab honestate, satis explicatum arbitror libro superiore** (Id. Off. II. 1), *how duties are derived.* **Haec Epicurus certe non diceret, si, bis bina qvot essent, didicisset** (Id. N. D. II. 18), *how much twice two is.* **Haec non, ut vos excitarem, locutus sum, sed ut mea vox officio functa consulari videretur** (Id. Cat. IV. 9). **Vos adepti estis, ne qvem civem metueretis** (Id. pro Mil. 13), *that you have not to fear.* **Sic mihi perspicere videor, ita natos esse nos, ut inter omnes esset societas qvaedam** (Id. Lael. 5). (On the other hand: **Multos annos in causis publicis ita sum versatus, ut defenderim multos, laeserim neminem** (Id. Div. in Cæc. 1), of the whole conduct, as it now appears. To express a result as it exists only at the present time, the present tense is necessarily employed: **Siciliam Verres ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiqvum statum nullo modo possit** (Cic. Verr. Act. I. 4).

Obs. 1. So also with **qvum**, the reason is often expressed in the imperfect as one that existed *at that time* (*in that case*), although it may also hold good now: **Hoc scribere, praesertim qvum de philosophia scriberem, non auderem, nisi idem placeret Panaetio** (Cic. Off. II. 14), *especially as I am writing about philosophy, especially in a philosophical work.*

Obs. 2. Yet a dependent question, a proposition expressing a purpose or object, sometimes stands in the present after a perfect (not after an imperfect), when this perfect represents the present state of affairs, and a condition which has commenced, rather than the nature and character of the previous action: **Etiamne ad subsellia cum ferro atqve telis venistis, ut hic eum aut juguletis aut condemne-**

tis? (Cic. Rosc. Am. 11), *Are you come here into court?* —— **Generi animantium omni est a nature tributum, ut se, vitam, corpusqve tueatur** (Id. Off. I. 4). **Tueretur** would denote the design of Nature, when she created living beings. (**Exploratum est omnibus, qvo loco causa tua sit,** Cic. Verr. V. 63. Here **esset** could not stand, since **exploratum est mihi** has only a present signification, *I know*. **Qvales viros creare vos consules deceat, satis est dictum,** Liv. XXIV. 8. Here, too, the present alone is admissible, because the action referred to is yet to come.)

Obs. 3. When the perfect (according to § **335**, *b*, *Obs.* 1) denotes only the action that takes place on each several occasion, it is followed by the present in a proposition expressing a purpose: **Qvum misimus qvi afferat agnum, qvem immolemus, num is mihi agnus affertur, qvi habet exta rebus accommodata?** (Cic. Div. II. 17).

Obs. 4. Sometimes, the tense of a dependent proposition is governed rather inaccurately, not by the leading proposition, but by some remark in another tense which is inserted between the leading and subordinate propositions; e.g. **Idem a te nunc peto, qvod superioribus litteris** (sc. **petivi**), **ut, si qvid in perditis rebus dispiceres, qvod mihi putares faciendum, me moneres** (Cic. ad Att. XI. 16). **Curavitqve Servius Tullius, qvod semper in republica tenendum est, ne plurimum valeant plurimi** (Id. R. P. II. 22).

CHAPTER V.

THE IMPERATIVE.

§ 384. The Imperative expresses a request, a command, a precept, or an exhortation. The present imperative is employed, when the request, the command, &c., is stated with reference to the present time or without reference to a definite time or condition; the future (which has a form for the third person as well as the second), when the request or command is stated with express reference to the time following or some particular case that may occur: it is consequently employed in laws and where the style of laws is imitated: —

Vale, O Jupiter, serva, obsecro, haec nobis bona (Ter. Eun. V. 8, 19). **Patres conscripti, subvenite misero mihi, ite obviam injuriae** (Sall. Jug. 14). **Fac venias. Facite, judices, ut recordemini**

qvae sit temeritas multitudinis (Cic. pro Flacc. 24) = **recordamini, judices. Cura, ut valeas. Rem vobis proponam; vos eam suo, on nominis pondere penditote** (Cic. Verr. IV. 1), *then estimate it.* **Qvum valetudini tuae consulueris, tum consulito navigationi** (Id. ad Fam. XVI. 4). **Regio imperio duo sunto iiqve consules apellantor** (Id. Legg. III. 3). **Servus meus Stichus liber esto** (in wills). **Non satis est, pulchra esse poëmata; dulcia sunto, et, qvocunqve volent, animum auditoris agunto** (Hor. A. P. 99). **Esto** (*Be it so!*).

Obs. The second person of the future indicative is sometimes used for the second person of the imperative, in order to express a firm conviction that the command or direction will be complied with, especially in familiar language: **Si qvid acciderit novi, facies, ut sciam** (Cic. ad Fam. XIV. 8), *you will inform me.*

§ 385. A command, exhortation, demand, request, or counsel, is often (except in the language of the laws) expressed in the third person by the subjunctive. So also in the second person, of a subject which is only assumed: —

Aut bibat aut abeat! (Cic. Tusc. V. 41). **Status, incessus, vultus, oculi teneant decōrum** (Id. Off. I. 35). **Injurias fortunae, qvas ferre neqveas, defugiendo relinqvas** (Id. Tusc. V. 41), *one must escape by flight.*

Obs. The subjunctive is rarely so used of a definite second person (mostly only in the poets): **Si sciens fallo, tum me, Juppiter optime maxime, pessimo leto afficias** (Liv. XXII. 53), *then mayest thou* ——. **Si certum est facere, facias; verum ne post conferas culpam in me** (Ter. Eun. II. 3, 97).

§ 386. In laws a prohibition is expressed by the future imperative with **ne** (**neve** = **et ne, vel ne**). With this exception, the subjunctive is employed in prose in prohibitions and requests of a negative form (**ne, nemo, nihil,** etc.), in the present tense (or the future perfect) when the verb is in the third person; and when the verb is in the second person in the active voice the future perfect is used, and in the passive the perfect is preferred (rarely the present): —

Nocturna sacrificia ne sunto (Cic. Legg. II. 9). **Borea flante, ne arato, semen ne jacito** (second person, Plin. H. N. XVIII. s. 77). **Puer telum ne habeat.** (**Capessite rempublicam, neqve qvemqvam ex aliorum calamitate metus ceperit,** Sall. Jug. 85.) **Hoc facito, hoc ne feceris** (Cic. Div. II. 61). **Nihil ignoveris, nihil gra-**

tiae causa feceris, misericordia commotus ne sis (Id. pro Mur. 31). **Illum jocum ne sis aspernatus** (Id. ad Q. Fr. II. 12). **Ne transieris Iberum; ne qvid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis** (Liv. XXI. 44). (**Scribere ne pigrēre,** *be not negligent in writing*, Cic. ad Att. XIV. 1). The poets use also the present imperative: **Ne saevi** (Virg. Æn. VI. 544).

Obs. 1. The second person of the present subjunctive active is found in prohibitions, which are directed only to an assumed subject: **Isto bono utare, dum adsit; qvum absit, ne reqviras** (Cic. Cat. M. 10); otherwise but rarely, and only in the oldest poets (**Verum ne post conferas culpam in me,** Ter. Eun. II. 3, 97).

Obs. 2. A prohibition is also often expressed by the imperative **noli** or **nolito**: e.g. **Noli putare, Brute, qvenqvam uberiorem ad dicendum fuisse, qvam C. Gracchum** (Cic. Brut. 33). **Si insidias fieri libertati vestrae intelligetis, nolitote dubitare eam consule adjutore defendere** (Id. de Leg. Agr. II. 6). (**Cave facias.**)

CHAPTER VI.

THE INFINITIVE AND ITS TENSES.

§ 387. The Infinitive expresses the idea of a verb in general (with the distinctions of tense, **dicere, dixisse,** &c.), but without applying that idea to a definite subject, to form a proposition with it.

Obs. In that kind of subordinate propositions, which is called the accusative with the infinitive, the infinitive is indeed combined with a definite subject, and so far forms a proposition with it, but without the distinctions of person, or (so far as the simple infinitive is concerned) of number or gender which characterize the subject.

§ 388. *a.* The infinitive stands as the subject of a proposition, when an act or state, taken in an indefinite and absolute sense, has something predicated of it; and with the verb **sum**, it is used as the predicate of another infinitive:—

Bene sentire recteqve facere satis est ad bene beateqve vivendum (Cic. ad Fam. VI. 1; **bene sentire recteqve facere puto satis esse ad bene vivendum**). **Apud Persas summa laus est fortiter venari** (Corn. Alc. 11). **Semper haec ratio accusandi fuit honestissima, pro sociis inimicitias suscipere** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 19).

Invidere non cadit in sapientem (Cic. Tusc. III. 10). **Nihil aliud est (nihil aliud puto esse) bene et beate vivere nisi recte et honeste vivere** (Cic. Par. I. 3). (**Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis,** Cic. ad Att. XIII. 28. **Qvibusdam totum hoc displicet philosophari,** Id. Finn. I. 1). It is less frequently used as the simple object of a verb: **Beate vivere alii in alio, Epicurus in voluptate ponit** (Cic. Finn. II. 27).

Obs. It is, however, unusual to make the infinitive the subject of a proposition (treating it, in all respects, like a substantive), unless the verb of the proposition is **sum**, or some one of those which (like **cadit, displicet**) approximate to the impersonal verbs. (**Hos omnes eadem cupere, eadem odisse, eadem metuere, in unum coëgit,** Sall. Jug. 31; better, **eaedem cupiditates, eadem odia, iidem metus in unum coëgerunt.**)

b. An adjective or substantive, which is connected as a predicate noun, or by way of apposition with an infinitive used thus indefinitely (without a subject), is always put in the accusative (§ **222,** *Obs.* 1), and so also the participle, when the compound form of the infinitive is used: —

Consulem fieri magnificum est. Magna laus est, tantas res solum gessisse. Ad virtutem non est satis vivere obedientem legibus populorum. Praestat honeste vivere qvam honeste natum esse. Divitias contemnere, comparantem cum utilitate communi, magni animi est (Cic.), *when one compares.*

Obs. 1. The infinitive is not used appositively to define an undefined substantive; thus, we do not find **labor legere**, but **labor legendi.** See §§ **286** and **417.** (An infinitive, however, may be added in apposition to a substantive which is defined by an adjective: **Demus nobis acerbam necessitudinem, pariter te errantem et illum sceleratissimum perseqvi** (Sall. Jug. 102), *a hard necessity, namely* ——; but this, too, is rare; and by far the most common construction is **acerbam necessitudinem perseqvendi.**)

Obs. 2. To such an infinitive, a subordinate proposition may be subjoined in the third person singular of the active voice, without a definite subject, — the same subject being understood, to which the infinitive might be referred (in English, *one*): **Neqve mihi praestabilius qvidqvam videtur qvam posse dicendo hominum voluntates impellere, qvo velit, unde autem velit, deducere** (Cic. de Or. I. 8), *whither one will.* **Nulla vox inimicior amicitiae reperiri potuit qvam ejus, qvi dixit, ita amare oportere, ut si aliqvando esset osurus** (Id. Læl. 16.)

§ 389. Verbs which, from the nature of their signification, call for a second act by the same person (a second verb with the same subject), are followed by the infinitive of that second verb. Such verbs are those which designate a wish, power, duty, custom, inclination, purpose, beginning, continuation, cessation, neglect, &c.; as:—

Volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo, conor, nitor, contendo (**tento**, poet. **amo, qvaero**), **possum, qveo, neqveo** (poet. **valeo**), **audeo** (poet. **sustineo**), **vereor** (poet. **metuo, timeo**), **gravor, non dubito, scio, nescio, disco, debeo, soleo, adsvesco, consvevi, statuo, constituo, decerno, cogito, paro, meditor, instituo, coepi, incipio, aggredior, pergo, persevero, desino, intermitto, maturo** (*to hasten*), **cesso, occupo** (*to hasten to anticipate another in doing a thing*), **recordor, memini, obliviscor, negligo, omitto, supersedeo, non curo** (*I do not like*, poet. **parco, fugio**); further the (wholly or partially) impersonal verbs **libet, licet, oportet, decet, placet, visum est** (*it seemed good to me, I resolved*), **fugit** (**me**, *I neglect*), **pudet, poenitet, piget, taedet**, and the expressions **necesse est, opus est.** The infinitive is likewise put after some phrases of similar import; e.g. **habeo in animo, in animo est, consilium est** (**cepi**), **certum est, animum induco,** *prevail upon one's self* (also **in animum induco**). **Vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria uti nescis** (Liv. XXII. 51). **Antium me recipere cogito. Oblitus sum tibi hoc dicere. Visum est mihi de senectute aliqvid ad te scribere** (Cic. Cat. M. 1). **Pudet** (**me**) **haec fateri. Certum est** (**mihi**) **deliberatumqve omnia audacter libereqve dicere** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 11). **Tu animum poteris inducere contra haec dicere?** (Id. Div. I. 13). **Nemo alteri concedere in animum inducebat** (Liv. I. 17).

Obs. 1. Those verbs which denote a determined purpose are found also with **ut**: **Athenienses statuerunt, ut urbe relicta naves conscenderent** (Cic. Off. III. 11). In like manner, we find both **animum induco facere**, and **ut faciam.** So also with **opto**: **Phaeton optavit, ut in currum patris tolleretur** (Cic. Off. III. 25), and **Optat arare caballus** (Hor. Ep. I. 14, 43). (**Merui, ut honorarer**, like **impetro**, and **honorari.**) Concerning the infinitive or the genitive of the gerund, in some phrases consisting of a substantive and **sum**, see § **417**, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. The poets use the infinitive after some verbs which, when used figuratively, denote inclination and effort, but which, in prose, have no such meaning; e.g. **ardeo, trepido** (**ardet abire fuga**, Virg. Æn. IV. 281). They also use the infinitive after some verbs which are elsewhere followed by **ut** or **ne** to express the purpose (compare § **419**). **Hoc acrius omnes** (**apes**) **incumbent generis lapsi sarcire ruinas**

(Virg. G. IV. 248). Otherwise, **ad ruinas sarciendas, ut ruinas sarciant.** Isolated expressions of this kind are found, here and there, in prose; e.g. **Conjuravere nobilissimi cives patriam incendere** (Sall. Cat. 52).

Obs. 3. The infinitive may follow the participle **paratus**, *ready*: **paratus frumentum dare (ad frumentum dandum)**; so likewise (chiefly in the poets, and in the style of a later period), **contentus, svetus assvetus, insuetus.**

Obs. 4. With **volo, nolo, malo, cupio, opto,** and **studeo,** an accusative (of the pronoun) with the infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the simple infinitive (as, in stating what one wishes that another should do, see § **396**), the whole circumstance, which is the object of the will and desire, being conceived rather as a distinct thing in itself (most frequently with **esse,** or a passive infinitive); e.g. **Sapientem civem me et esse et numerari volo** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 9). **Cupio me esse clementem; cupio in tantis reipublicae periculis me non dissolutum videri** (Id. Cat. I. 2). A similar construction is found with **postulo: Ego qvoqve a meis me amari postulo** (Ter. Ad. V. 4, 25); and with **constituo,** *to engage, promise* (§ **395**, *Obs.* 3). (**Patior appellari sapiens,** for **patior me appellari sapientem,** according to the rule given in § **396,** is poetical.)

Obs. 5. **Licet,** too (though the instances are rare) is found constructed with the accusative and infinitive (according to § **398**, *a*): **Non licet me isto tanto bono uti** (Cic. Verr. V. 59). (In familiar language, and that style in which it is imitated, **licet** and **licebit** are also used with the subjunctive, **ut** being omitted. § **361**, *Obs.* 1.)

§ 390. The infinitive is subjoined to the verbs **doceo, assuefacio, jubeo, veto, sino, arguo, insimulo,** to denote what one teaches, orders, forbids, or allows a person to do, or accuses him of doing; it may likewise be subjoined to the verbs **cogo (subigo), moneo,**[1] **hortor (dehortor), impedio,** and **prohibeo,** which otherwise have an objective proposition in the subjunctive with **ut,** &c. (§§ **372** and **375**). The infinitive is also added to the passive of these verbs (and to **deterreor,** *to be deterred*).

Docebo Rullum posthac tacere (Cic. Leg. Agr. III. 2). **Num sum etiamnum vel Graece loqvi vel Latine docendus?** (Id. Finn. II. 5). **Herus me jussit Pamphilum observare. Consules jubentur** (*receive orders*; **jussi sunt,** *received orders*) **exercitum scribere. Caesar legatos ab opere discedere vetuerat. Nolani muros per-**

[1] [Non illa qvisqvam me nocte per altum
Ire, neqve ab terra moneat convellere funem (Virg. Georg. I. 456).]

tasqve adire vetiti sunt (Liv. XXIII. 16). **Improbitas nunqvam respirare eum sinit** (Cic. Finn. I. 16). **Accusare non sum situs** (Id. pro Sest. 44). **Insimulant hominem fraudandi causa discessisse** (Id. Verr. II. 24). **Roscius arguitur patrem occidisse. Num te emere venditor coëgit? Qvum vitâ sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare** (Cic. Finn. I. 20). **Prohibiti estis pedem in provincia ponere** (Cic. pro Lig. 8).

Obs. 1. The verbs **jubeo, veto, sino,** have, in this construction, the name of the one who receives the command, &c., as their object, although, in other circumstances (without the infinitive), they could not take this object. The object of the verb is subject as regards the infinitive (**jubeo te salvum, salvam, vos salvos, salvas esse**; hence, in the passive, **jubeor salvus esse**). (**Sino** is also used with the subjunctive, with or without **ut.** § **372**, *b*, *Obs.* 2.)

Obs. 2. **Jubeo** with **ut,** or with the subjunctive without **ut,** is rare, when it means *to order:* **Magoni nuntiatum ab Carthagine est, senatum jubere, ut classem in Italiam trajiceret** (Liv. XXVIII. 36). So also **veto ne,** or **qvominus** is rarely met with.[1] (**Jubeo alicui, ut faciat,** or **alicui, faciat,** is found only in later writers.)

Obs. 3. If, with **jubeo** and **veto,** the person to whom a thing is commanded or forbidden is not specified, a simple infinitive may follow: **Hesiodus eadem mensura reddere jubet, qva acceperis, aut etiam cumulatiore, si possis** (Cic. Brut. 4). **Desperatis etiam Hippocrates vetat adhibere medicinam** (Id. ad Att. XVI. 15). But it is more usual, when the infinitive has an object, to express the purport of the command or prohibition in the passive by an accusative with the infinitive. See § **396.**

Obs. 4. The poets and later writers sometimes use other verbs, which express an influence over others, and govern the accusative with the infinitive, instead of taking the subjunctive with **ut: Quid dolens** (*from what provocation*) **regina deum insignem pietate virum tot adire labores impulit?** (Virg. Æn. I. 9). **Sollicitor nullos esse putare deos** (Ov. Am. III. 9, 36), *I am tempted* ——. **Fuere, qvos pavor nando etiam capessere fugam impulerit** (Liv. XXII. 6). **Amici Neronem orabant cavere insidias** (Tac. Ann. XIII. 13).

Obs. 5. The infinitive is occasionally used instead of **ut** (chiefly in the poets or later writers), with some verbs which govern the dative, and denote an influence over others to induce them to an action; e.g. with **svadeo, concedo, permitto, impero: Imperavi egomet mihi omnia assentari** (Ter. Eun. II. 2, 21). **Servis qvoqve pueros hujus**

---

[1] [**Vetabo sub îsdem sit trabibus** (Hor. Od. III. 2, 26).]

aetatis verberare concedimus (Curt. VIII. 26). Hence, in the passive: **De republica, nisi per concilium, loqvi non conceditur** (Cæs. B. G. VI. 20).

Obs. 6. The poets use the infinitive with **do** and **reddo**, *to give to a person to*, i.q. *give a person the power to* ——: **Grajis dedit ore rotundo Musa loqvi** (Hor. A. P. 323). Hence, in the passive (in the later prose-writers, also): **Qvantum mihi cernere datur**, *so far as it is given me to see, so far as I can see* (Plin. Ep. I. 10). (**Adimam cantare severis**, Hor. Ep. I. 19, 9.) (**Celso gaudere et bene rem gerere refer**, *wish Celsus joy and prosperity*, Id. Ep. I. 8, 1, after a Greek usage).

§ 391. In the poets (and, in some cases, in the later prose-writers), the simple infinitive is found, instead of a case of the gerund after adjectives, and instead of the supine, both of the active and passive voice. See § **419**, § **411**, *Obs.* 2; and § **412**, *Obs.* 3.

Obs. The infinitive stands after a preposition in the phrase **interest inter**; e.g. **Aristo et Pyrrho inter optime valere et gravissime aegrotare nihil prorsus dicebant interesse** (Cic. Finn. II. 13). (**Nihil praeter plorare**, Hor. Sat. II. 5, 69, *nothing but* ——.)

§ 392. The present infinitive is often used in a peculiar way in narration instead of the imperfect indicative, when the writer passes from the relation of events to the description of a state of things that has suddenly taken place and begun, and of recurring actions and emotions that follow in rapid succession (*the historical infinitive*). The proposition remains otherwise unaltered, precisely as if the indicative had been employed. Usually several such infinitives are found in succession.

Circumspectare tum patriciorum vultus plebeji (*then the plebeians began to search*) **et inde libertatis captare auram, unde servitutem timuerant. Primores patrum odisse** (*hated*) **decemviros, odisse plebem; nec probare, qvae fierent, et credere haud indignis accidere** (Liv. III. 37). (**Odisse** has a present signification.) **Hoc ubi Verres audivit, usqve eo commotus est, ut sine ulla dubitatione insanire omnibus videretur. Qvia non potuerat eripere argentum, ipse a Diodoro erepta sibi vasa optime facta dicebat; minitari absenti Diodoro, vociferari palam, lacrimas interdum vix tenere** (Cic. Verr. IV. 18). This construction is even found after **qvum, qvum interim, qvum tamen**, if the time at which a particular state of things took place or appeared has been previously specified: **Pusis Auruncis, victor tot intra paucos dies bellis Romanus promissa consulis fidemqve senatus expectabat, qvum Appius, et insita**

superbia animo, et ut collegae vanam faceret fidem qvam asperrime poterat, jus de creditis pecuniis dicere (Liv. II. 27), *when Appius suddenly began* ——. **Jamqve dies consumptus erat, qvum tamen barbari nihil remittere, atqve, uti reges praeceperant, acrius instare** (Sall. Jug. 98). **Patres ut . . .. credere, ita malle** (Liv. III. 65).

Obs. The infinitive, thus used, presents to the hearer or reader a picture of a transient state of things, or of a rapid succession of acts, without separating the acts from each other, or referring them to any particular time.

§ 393. If to an infinitive, which refers to a preceding word as its subject, a predicate substantive or adjective, or a word in apposition, is added, then this predicate or appositive word agrees in case with the subject.

a. If therefore an infinitive, depending on one of the verbs named in § **389** or on the passive of those named in § **390**, is connected with a subject which is in the nominative case, then the added substantive or adjective is put in the nominative: —

Cupio esse clemens. Bibulus studet fieri consul. Habeo in animo solus proficisci. (Sustinuit conjux exsulis esse viri, Ov. Trist. IV. 10, 74, *she endured to be.*) **Jubemur securi (securae) esse.**

b. If the infinitive belongs to an accusative (after the verbs mentioned in § **390**, and after an impersonal verb with the accusative), the added word is put in the accusative: —

Coëgerunt eum nudum saltare. Pudet me victum discedere.

c. If the infinitive belongs to a dative, the added word is also put in the dative: —

Hannibal nihil jam majus precatur deos, qvam ut incolumi cedere atqve abire ex hostium terra liceat (Liv. XXVI. 41). **In republica mihi negligenti esse non licet** (Cic. ad Att. I. 17). **Qvo tibi, Tilli, sumere depositum clavum fieriqve tribuno?** (Hor. Sat. I. 6, 25. Compare § **239.**) **Nec fortibus illic profuit armentis nec eqvis velocibus esse** (Ov. Met. VIII. **553**). **(Mediocribus esse poëtis non homines, non di concessere,** Hor. A. P. 372. See § **390,** *Obs.* 5.)

Obs. 1. An infinitive with the accusative is, however, occasionally found after **licet** with the dative (as if the infinitive had no definite subject, § **388,** *b*); e.g. **Civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum** (Cic. pro

Balb. 12). The accusative must be employed when the dative is not actually expressed, although it may be understood: **Medios esse** (*to be neutral*) **jam non licebit** (Cic. ad Att. X. 8).

Obs. 2. If a verb, which otherwise governs the dative, is used without the dative, for the sake of making the expression indefinite (e.g. licet, *one can*), then the word connected with the infinitive must be in the accusative: **Haec praescripta servantem** (*if one observes*), **licet magnifice, graviter, animoseqve vivere** (Cic. Off. I. 26). So also, when the infinitive is constructed with **est alicujus**. See § **388**, *b*, the last example.

§ 394. A subject stands in the accusative having an infinitive as its predicate, in order to present the proposition so expressed as an idea, which is the object of an assertion or judgment; e.g. **Hominem ire**, *that the man goes* [or, *that the man should go*]; **Caesarem vicisse**, *that Cæsar has conquered* [or, *that Cæsar should have conquered*]. This construction is called *the accusative with the infinitive*. If, in the completed proposition of which the accusative with the infinitive forms a part, the subject and object might be confounded (both being in the accusative), this must be avoided; e.g. by making the proposition passive; as, **Ajo hostes a te vinci posse**; rather than **ajo te hostes vincere posse**; but the sense and connection (together with the arrangement of the words) usually obviate any ambiguity.

An accusative with the infinitive may be dependent on (governed by) another proposition of the same form: **Milonis inimici dicunt, caedem, in qva P. Clodius occisus est, senatum judicasse, contra rempublicam esse factam** (Cic. pro Mil. 5).

§ 395. An accusative with the infinitive is put after verbs and phrases, which denote a knowledge and opinion that a thing is or takes place, or a declaration that a thing is or takes place (**verba sentiendi** and **declarandi**), and expresses what is thought or said: —

Thus after **video, audio, sentio, animadverto, scio, nescio,** &c., **intelligo, perspicio, comperio, suspicor,** &c., **disco, doceo** (*to inform one that* ——), **persvadeo** (*convince one that* ——), **memini,** &c., **credo, arbitror,** &c., **judico, censeo, duco; spero, despēro, colligo, concludo** (*infer*), **dico, affirmo, nego, fateor, narro, trado, scribo, nuntio, ostendo, demonstro, significo, polliceor, promitto, minor, simulo, dissimulo,** &c., **appāret, ellĭcet, constat, convĕnit** (*it is agreed that* ——), **perspicuum, certum, credibile est,** &c., **communis opinio**

est, fama est, spes est, auctor sum (*to assure*), **testis sum, certiorem aliqvem facio** (*to inform a person that* ——), &c.; e.g.:—

Sentit animus se sua vi, non aliena moveri. Platonem Cicero scribit Tarentum ad Archytam venisse. Ex multis rebus intelligi potest (**concluditur**), **mundum providentia divina administrari. Dejotărus tuum hostem esse duxit suum** (Cic. pro Dej. 5). **Spero me propediem istuc venturum esse. Caesar pollicetur, se iis auxilio futurum. Fama est, Gallos adventare. Qvem putas tibi fidem habiturum? (Qvaesivi ex te, qvem putares tibi fidem habiturum). Qvando haec acta esse dicis?**

Obs. 1. Such a proposition may also connect itself with a substantive which means *opinion, judgment*, &c., either in apposition, when a pronoun agreeing with the substantive points to the next proposition, or when the substantive, by its connection with the rest of the proposition to which it belongs, acquires the force of a **verbum sentiendi**, &c.; e.g. **Hunc sermonem mandavi litteris, ut illa opinio, qvae semper fuisset, tolleretur, Crassum non doctissimum, Antonium plane indoctum fuisse** (Cic. de Or. II. 2). **Atqve etiam subjiciunt se homines imperio alterius de causis pluribus; ducuntur enim aut benevolentia aut beneficiorum magnitudine aut spe, sibi id utile futurum** (Id. Off. II. 6). So, likewise, an accusative with the infinitive may be added as an apposition to a pronoun which, from the connection, comes to signify *opinion, judgment*, &c.; e.g. **Posidonius graviter et copiose de hoc ipso, nihil esse bonum, nisi qvod honestum esset, disputavit** (Cic. Tusc. II. 25).

Obs. 2. Some few verbs, which are not properly **verba sentiendi** or **declarandi**, sometimes acquire such a meaning, in certain combinations; e.g. **mitto**, *to apprise any one by a messenger* (**Fabius ad collegam misit, exercitu opus esse, qvi Campanis opponeretur**, Liv. XXIV. 19), **defendo**, *to allege;* **purgo**, *to say by way of excuse, that;* **interpretor**, *to state, by way of explanation, that.* (**Stoicis placet, omnia peccata paria esse**, *the Stoics assume* ——.) Concerning **concedo**, &c., with the accusative and infinitive, or **ut**, see § **372**, *Obs.* 5. Concerning **dubito, non dubito**, § **375**, *c*, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 3. The beginner must notice, that verbs which signify *to hope, to promise*, and *to threaten*, and are commonly used, in English, with a simple present infinitive, when the leading and the dependent verb have the same subject (e.g. *he promised to come, I hope to see him, I threatened to go away*), must be followed, in Latin, by the accusative with the infinitive: **promittebat, se venturum; spero, me eum visurum; minabar, me abiturum.** The verbs **spero** and **polliceor** are found sometimes (but rarely) with the infinitive alone, instead of the accusative with the infinitive: e.g. **Magnitudine poenae reliqvos deterrere sperans** (Cæs.

B. C. III. 8); for **se deterriturum.**[1] (**Spero nostram amicitiam non egere testibus**, said of a thing present.) (**Nego facere**, poetical, *to refuse to do.*)

Obs. 4. Concerning **duco, existimo, judico, puto**, with two accusatives without an infinitive, see § **227**, *c.*

Obs. 5. **Audio te contumeliose de me loqvi**, *I hear* (*learn*) *that you speak contemptuously of me*; **audivi te ipsum dicere**, *I heard you say, was witness that you said* (also, **audivi**, and **audivi ex te, quum diceres**, *I heard the assertion from you*); **audivi te dicentem**, *I heard you speak* (*make a speech*). (**Video pueros ludere; vidi pueros magno studio ludentes.**)

Obs. 6. The contents of the infinitive proposition are sometimes briefly pointed to beforehand by a neuter pronoun; e.g. **Illud negare potes, te de re judicata judicasse?** (Cic. Verr. II. 33); or by **ita** or **sic**; e.g. **Sic enim a majoribus nostris accepimus, praetorem qvaestori suo parentis loco esse oportere** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 19). (**Zeno ita definit, perturbationem esse aversum a ratione animi motum**, *gives the definition that passion* ——; **Zeno ita definit, ut perturbatio sit aversa a ratione animi commotio**, *defines passion in such a way, that it is, according to this definition* ——, Cic. Tusc. IV. 21, compared with Off. I. 27.)

Obs. 7. The person or thing concerning which something is asserted in the accusative with the infinitive is not often introduced into the leading proposition with the preposition **de**, but is found only in the infinitive proposition. Therefore, we should not say, **De Medea narrant, eam sic fugisse** ——, but **Medeam narrant sic fugisse** ——; not **de Crasso scribit Cicero, nihil eo laetius fuisse**, but **Crasso Cicero scribit nihil laetius fuisse**; not **Cornelius de qvo narrasti, eum Athenas profectum esse** (*of whom you related, that he was* ——, but **qvem narrasti Athenas profectum esse.** Yet the second form is also found, (1) where such a compression of the sentence would not be easy; e.g. **De hoc Verri dicitur, habere eum perbona toreumata** (Cic. Verr. IV. 18, because the passive **dicor** is only used personally, in the signification *it is said* (generally) *of me*, and does not admit of a dative); or, (2) where the attention is first drawn generally to the thing to be mentioned; e.g. **De Antonio, jam ante tibi scripsi, non esse eum a me conventum** (Cic. ad Att. XV. 1), *as to what relates to A.*——. We must also notice such expressions as the following in questions which are interrupted, and then continued by a new question: **Qvid censes (censetis, putamus) hunc ipsum S. Roscium? qvo studio et**

[1] [**Ad eum legati veniunt, qvi pollicentur obsides dare, atqve imperio populi Romani obtemperare** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 21). **Ad eum legati venerunt, qvi se ea qvae imperasset facturos pollicerentur** (Id. IV. 22).]

qva intelligentia esse in rusticis rebus (Cic. Rosc. Am. 17; also, **qvid censes S. Roscium, nonne summo studio esse et summa intelligentia ——?**), where the accusative already points to the infinitive construction.

Obs. 8. It is less customary in Latin than in English to insert a **verbum sentiendi** or **declarandi** with **ut**, *as*, as a subordinate proposition; and it is preferable to make such a verb the leading proposition with an accusative with the infinitive depending upon it. (**Verrem narrant ——**, rather than **Verres, ut narrant; Socratem Plato scribit ——**, rather than **Socrates, ut Plato scribit.**) Yet we frequently find **ut opinor**, or simply **opinor, credo, ut audio**, employed parenthetically.

§ 396. An accusative with the infinitive is put after those verbs which denote a wish that something should happen, or the enduring or allowing it (**verba voluntatis**); namely, **volo, nolo, malo, cupio, opto, studeo, postulo, placet, sino, patior**, with **jubeo, impero, prohibeo, veto** (*to command, forbid, that something should be done*); e.g.:—

Majores corpora juvenum firmari labore voluerunt (Cic. Tusc. II. 15). **Tibi favemus, te tua virtute frui cupimus** (Id. Brut. 97). **Senatui placet, Crassum Syriam obtinere** (Id. Phil. XI. 12). **Nullos honores mihi decerni sino** (Id. ad Att. V. 21). **Verres hominem corripi jussit. Caesar castra vallo muniri vetuit. Delectum haberi prohibebo** (Liv. IV. 2). **Non hunc in vincula duci imperabis?** (Cic. Cat. I. 11).

Obs. 1. These verbs also take after them a proposition with **ut** (**prohibeo** with **ne** or **qvominus, veto** with **ne**), but **jubeo** (§ **390**, *Obs.* 2), **patior**, and **veto**, very rarely. (Sometimes writers pass from the accusative with the infinitive to the other construction: **Placuit creari decemviros sine provocatione, et ne qvis eo anno alius magistratus esset**, Liv. III. 32.) Concerning **cupio me clementem esse** for **cupio esse clemens**, see § **389**, *Obs.* 4. Later writers and the poets put also an accusative with the infinitive (passive) after **permitto** (with the dative), and after verbs of *entreating, commanding*, &c., which, in the best writers, always have **ut**; e.g. **praecipio, mando, interdico, oro, precor: Otho corpora cremari permisit** (Tac. H. I. 47). **Caligula praecepit, triremes itinere terrestri Romam devehi** (Svet. Cal. 47).

Obs. 2. After **volo** (**nolo, malo, cupio**), an accusative with the infinitive of the perf. pass. is often used in the signification *will have a thing done* = will that something should be done; e.g. **Sociis maxime lex consultum esse vult** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 6). (Often simply **consul-**

tum volo, without **esse**: **Legati Sullam orant, ut Sex. Roscii famam et filii innocentis fortunas conservatas velit**, Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 9.)

Obs. 3. **Jubeo, sino, veto, prohibeo,** and **impero**, take only a passive infinitive, or **esse** with a subject accusative; since, if it is active, we find **jubeo (veto) aliqvem facere**, with a simple infinitive (§ **390**), and **impero alicui ut faciat** (e.g. **Nonne lictoribus tuis imperabis, ut hunc in vincula ducant?**). From **jubeo, veto, prohibeo, impero hunc occidi**, a new phrase may be formed in the passive, when the person who commands or forbids is not specified (nom. with the infinitive. See § **400**): **Hic occidi jubetur, vetatur, prohibetur, imperatur**; e.g. **Jussus es renuntiari consul** (Cic. Phil. II. 32), *it was ordered that you should be proclaimed consul.* **In lautumias Syracusanas, si qvi publice custodiendi sunt, etiam ex ceteris oppidis Siciliae deduci imperantur** (Id. Verr. V. 27). **Ad prohibenda circumdari opera Aeqvi se parabant** (Liv. III. 28). (Such expressions are distinct from **jubeor, prohibeor, facere**; § **390**.)

Obs. 4. The verb **censeo**, *to think, vote for, advise*, has various constructions, which may be here noticed: **Censeo Carthaginem esse delendam** (*I think that Carthage must* —— i.e. *vote for it*). **Censeo bona reddi** (*I vote, will, that the property should be restored*, as with **jubeo**). **Antenor censet belli praecidere causam** (Hor. Ep. I. 2, 9), *votes for cutting off;* in the poetical and later style for **praecidendam esse** or **praecidi**. **Censeo, ut perrumpas**, *I advise you to break through* (**censeo, perrumpas**).

§ 397. An accusative with the infinitive is put with those verbs which denote satisfaction, dissatisfaction, or surprise at the existence of a thing (**verba affectuum**), such as **gaudeo, laetor, glorior, doleo, angor, sollicitor, indignor, qveror, miror, admiror, fero** (*to be resigned to a thing*), **aegre, moleste fero.** Yet **qvod** (with the indicative or subjunctive, according to § **357**) may also be employed with these verbs, in order to denote more the *reason* of the feeling: —

Gaudeo id te mihi svadere, qvod ego mea sponte feceram (Cic. ad Att. XV. 27). **Nihil me magis sollicitabat, qvam non me, si qvae ridenda essent, ridere tecum** (Id. ad Fam. II. 12). **Miror, te ad me nihil scribere** (Id. ad Att. VIII. 12). **Varus promissa non servari qverebatur. (Laetor, qvod Petilius incolumis vivit in urbe**, Hor. Sat. I. 4, 98. **Scipio qverebatur, qvod omnibus in rebus homines diligentiores essent qvam in amicitiis comparandis**, Cic. Læl. 17). **Irascor amicis, cur me funesto properent arcere**

veterno (Hor. Ep. I. 8, 10), *I am angry with my friends, asking, in thought, why they* ——.

§ 398. *a.* An accusative with the infinitive is used with the impersonal verbs which signify propriety or desirableness (**oportet, decet, convenit, expedit, nihil attinet, interest, refert**), and with other impersonal expressions consisting of **sum** and a substantive or adjective (as, **opus, necesse, utile, rectum, turpe, fas, tempus, mos, nefas, facinus,** etc.), by means of which a similar judgment is passed on the nature of an act or relation, while it is neither asserted nor suggested that the act or relation really exists: —

Qvos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos nondum voce vulnero (Cic. Cat. I. 4). **Accusatores multos esse in civitate, utile est, ut metu contineatur audacia** (Id. Rosc. Am. 20). **Omnibus bonis expedit, salvam esse rempublicam** (Id. Phil. XIII. 8). **Tempus est, nos de illa perpetua jam, non de hac exigua vita cogitare** (Id. ad Att. X. 8). **Facinus est, civem Romanum vinciri** (Id. Verr. V. 66). **Haec benignitas etiam reipublicae utilis est** (= **utile est**), **redimi e servitute captos, locupletari tenuiores** (Id. Off. II. 18).

Obs. 1. Concerning the use of **ut** in propositions which are the object of a judgment, see § **374**, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. **Oportet,** *it is necessary*, and **necesse est** are also constructed with a subjunctive without **ut**; § **373**, *Obs.* 1. If it is not said who has to do a thing, the infinitive alone is employed (§ **388**: **ex malis eligere minima oportet,** Cic. Off. III. 1); but the proposition is often altered into an accusative with the infinitive passive: **Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est** (Cic. ad Att. XIII. 25).

Obs. 3. By an inaccuracy of expression, a simple infinitive (active) and an accusative with the infinitive (passive) are sometimes combined in *one* judgment: **Proponi oportet, qvid afferas, et id qvare ita sit, ostendere** (Cic. de Or. II. 41).

b. If on the other hand it is intended to show that a thing (a circumstance, a relation of things) actually exists, and at the same time a judgment or remark is made and uttered concerning it, the thing spoken of is expressed by a proposition with **qvod** (*that*, the circumstance that; with the indicative, if the mood of the leading proposition does not, according to § **369**, require the subjunctive). Such a proposition with **qvod** (of a real fact) is often connected with a pronoun (**hoc, illud, id, ea res,** &c.) which points to it; sometimes, too, with a substantive in the way of apposition (to explain it): —

Eumeni inter Macedones viventi multum detraxit, qvod alienae erat civitatis (Corn. Eum. 1). **Multa sunt in fabrica mundi admirabilia, sed nihil majus qvam qvod ita stabilis est atqve ita cohaeret ad permanendum, ut nihil ne excogitari qvidem possit aptius** (Cic. N. D. II. 45). **Non ea res me deterruit, qvominus ad te litteras mitterem, qvod tu ad me nullas miseras** (Id. ad Fam. VI. 22). **Percommode factum est** (cadit), **qvod de morte et de dolore primo et proximo die disputatum est** (Id. Tusc. IV. 30). **Non pigritia facio, qvod non mea manu scribo** (Id. ad Att. XVI. 15), *that I do not write with my own hand does not proceed from laziness;* but, **pigritia factum est, ut ad te non scriberem,** *my laziness caused me not to write to you;* § **373. Hoc uno praestamus vel maxime feris, qvod exprimere dicendo sensa possumus** (Id. de Or. I. 8). **Aristoteles laudandus est in eo, qvod omnia, qvae moventur, aut natura moveri censet aut vi aut voluntate** (Id. N. D. II. 16). **Pro magnitudine injuriae proqve eo, qvod summa respublica in hujus periculo tentatur** (Id. Rosc. Am. 51), *in proportion to the circumstance, that.* **Me una consolatio sustentat, qvod tibi nullum a me amoris, nullum pietatis officium defuit** (Id. pro Mil. 36), *one consolation, namely, that.* (So also, **accedit, qvod.** See § **373,** *Obs.* 3. **Praeterqvam qvod,** *except that.* **Praetereo, mitto, qvod,** *I passed by the circumstance, that, say nothing of it, that* ——.

Obs. 1. In saying, **Utile est, Gajum adesse,** we only express an opinion, in general, that the presence of Gaius is (will be) useful, but we do not say that he is actually present. If we say, on the other hand, **Ad multas res magnae utilitati erit, qvod Gajus adest,** we make it known that Gaius is present, and judge of the consequences of this fact. By the first form, however (the accusative with the infinitive), the presence of Gaius is not denied: it may, therefore, be sometimes employed for the other, especially when a feeling produced by some particular circumstance is, at the same time, indicated (compare § **397**): **Nonne hoc indignissimum est, vos idoneos habitos, per qvorum sententias id asseqvantur, qvod antea ipsi scelere asseqvi consverunt?** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 3.) **Te hilari animo esse et prompto ad jocandum, valde me juvat** (Id. ad Q. Fr. II. 13).

Obs. 2. The leading proposition often contains, not a direct judgment or assertion *concerning* that which stands in the proposition with **qvod,** but an observation which is occasioned by and refers to it, so that **qvod** signifies *as to the fact that;* e.g. **Qvod autem me Agamemnonem aemulari putas, falleris** (Corn. Epam. 5). **Qvod scribis, te, si velim, ad me venturum, ego vero te istic esse volo** (Cic. ad Fam. XIV. 3). **Qvod autem deinde dicit,** *but as to the fact that he proceeds to say,* or, in briefer, but nearly equivalent English, *but if he proceeds to say.*

Obs. 3. Of **qvod** (with the subjunctive), instead of the accusative with the infinitive after **verba sentiendi** and **declarandi**, only solitary examples are found, and those in the later writers.

Obs. 4. Instead of a judgment expressed in a distinct proposition by an adjective and **sum**, followed by the accusative and infinitive, or by a proposition with **qvod**, an adverb alone is occasionally made use of: **Utrum impudentius Verres hanc pecuniam a sociis abstulit an turpius meretrici dedit an improbius populo Romano ademit?** (Cic. Verr. III. 36). **Utilius starent etiam nunc moenia Phoebi** (Ov. Her. I. 67) = **utilius erat stare**, &c.

§ 399. An accusative with the infinitive sometimes stands without a governing proposition, in order to express surprise and complaint, that a thing happens or may happen, mostly with the interrogative particle **ne** (to denote inquiry and doubt): —

Me miserum! Te, ista virtute, fide, probitate, in tantas aerumnas propter me incidisse! (Cic. ad Fam. XIV. 1). **Adeone hominem esse infelicem qvemqvam, ut ego sum!** (Ter. Andr. I. 5, 10). *That a man can be so unfortunate as I am!* **Mene incepto desistere victam?** (Virg. Æn. I. 37).[1]

Obs. (On §§ **395–399.**) The beginner should accurately compare and distinguish the different ways in which the subordinate propositions, which, in English, are introduced by the conjunction *that*, are expressed in Latin, and, after putting aside those, in which *that* denotes a design or a consequence (*in order that*, *so that*), he must observe that the object of an effort or action is expressed by objective propositions with the subjunctive (see the appendix to Chap. III.); the object of an opinion, knowledge, declaration, or feeling, on the other hand, by the accusative with the infinitive; and a circumstance concerning which a judgment is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive, when a judgment is stated in general, or by a proposition with **qvod**, when the relation is denoted as actually existing.

§ 400. *a.* Instead of an impersonal passive of a verb of *saying*, *relating*, *informing*, or of *thinking*, *believing*, *finding*, or of *commanding* or *forbidding* (see § **396**, *Obs.* 3), or of the verb **videtur**, *it seems*, *appears*, followed by an accusative with the infinitive (e.g. **dicitur, patrem venisse**), another mode of expression is used, the subject of the infinitive proposition being made the nominative subject of the passive verb, and the infinitive being subjoined to com-

---

[1] In the following exclamation we have the infinitive only: **Tantum laborem capere ob talem filium!** (Ter. Andr. v. 2, 27.)

plete the idea and the proposition.[1] (In this case every word, which is annexed to the infinitive, becomes nominative according to § 393) :—

Lectitavisse Platonem studiose Demosthenes dicitur (Cic. Brut. 31). **Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur** (narratur, fertur). **Oppugnata** (sc. **esse**) **domus Caesaris per multas noctis horas nuntiabatur** (Cic. pro Mil. 24). **Luna solis lumine collustrari putatur** (Id. Div. II. 43). **Regnante Tarqvinio Superbo in Italiam Pythagoras venisse reperitur** (Id. R. P. II. 15). **Malum mihi videtur esse mora. Videris mihi** (*it appears to me that you*) **satis bene attendere. Videor mihi** (or simply **videor**) **Graece luculenter scire** (*it seems to me, that I* ——, *I believe that I* ——). **Visus sum mihi animos auditorum commovere.**

Obs. Even in an observation inserted parenthetically with **ut** (*as it seems*), **videor** is, almost always, referred personally to the subject spoken of: **Ego tibi, qvod satis esset, paucis verbis, ut mihi videbar, responderam** (Cic. Tusc. I. 46). **Philargyrus tuus omnia fidelissimo animo, ut mihi qvidem visus est, narravit** (Id. ad Fam. VI. 1).

b. With verbs, however, of *saying* or *thinking* (but not with **jubeor, vetor, prohibeor,** or **videor**), the impersonal form of expression is more usual in the *compound* tenses :—

Traditum est, Homerum caecum fuisse (Cic. Tusc. V. 39) ; and with the gerundive with **sum**, it is almost always used : **Ubi tyrannus est, ibi dicendum est, plane nullam esse rempublicam** (Id. R. P. III. 31). (**Julius Sabinus voluntaria morte interisse creditus est**, Tac. Hist. IV. 67.)

Obs. In the simple tenses, **dicitur, traditur, existimatur,** &c., are rarely used impersonally with an accusative with the infinitive : e.g. **Eam gentem traditur fama Alpes transisse** (Liv. V. 33) ; but **nuntiatur** and **dicitur** are so employed when followed by a dative : **Non dubie mihi nuntiabatur, Parthos transisse Euphratem** (Cic. ad Fam. XV. 1) ; **nuntiatur** also without a dative : **Ecce autem repente nuntiatur, piratarum naves esse in portu Odysseae** (Id. Verr. V. 34). With **videtur** (**mihi**), the accusative with the infinitive is employed very rarely (with **jubetur**, &c., never).

c. The personal form of expression is also sometimes used instead of the impersonal in the passive of other verbs, which do not signify *to speak* or *to think* in general, but denote a more peculiar and

[1] This form is usually, but improperly, styled the nominative with the infinitive.

special kind of declaration, or knowledge; as, **scribor, demonstror, audior, intelligor,** &c.; e.g.:—

Bibulus nondum audiebatur esse in Syria (Cic. ad Att. V. 18), *as yet nothing was heard of B.'s being in Syria.* **Scutorum gladiorumqve multitudo deprehendi posse indicabatur** (Id. pro Mil. 24). **Ex hoc dii beati esse intelliguntur** (Id. N. D. I. 38). **Pompejus perspectus est a me toto animo de te cogitare** (Id. ad Fam. I. 7). But, in these cases, the impersonal form is the more usual.

Obs. The poets and later writers extend this usage farther than the earlier prose-writers; e.g. **Colligor placuisse,** for **colligitur** (*it is inferred*) **me placuisse** (Ov. Am. II. 6, 61). **Suspectus fecisse** (Sall.), **compertus fecisse** (Liv.). (**Hi fratres in suspicionem venerant suis civibus fanum expilasse Apollinis,** i.e. **putabantur,** Cic. Verr. IV. 13. **Liberatur Milo non eo consilio profectus esse, ut insidiaretur Clodio,** i.e. **demonstratur,** Id. pro Mil. 18.)

d. When a statement of the words or opinion of another is commenced in this way, and then continued through several infinitive propositions (§ **403,** *b*), the latter take the accusative with the infinitive: **Ad Themistoclem qvidam doctus homo accessisse dicitur eiqve artem memoriae pollicitus esse se traditurum; qvum ille qvaesisset, qvidnam illa ars efficere posset, dixisse illum doctorem, ut omnia meminisset** (Cic. de Or. II. 74).

§ 401. If the subject in an accusative with the infinitive is a personal or reflective pronoun, which corresponds to the subject of the leading verb (**dico, me esse; dicit, se esse**), this pronoun (particularly **me, te, se,** more rarely **nos, vos**) is sometimes left out with **verba declarandi** and **putandi**; but this must be looked on as an irregularity: **Confitēre, ea spe huc venisse, qvod putares hic latrocinium, non judicium futurum** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 22) = **te venisse. Qvum id nescire Mago diceret, nihil facilius scitu est, inqvit Hanno** (Liv. XXIII. 13) = **se id nescire.** This is done, more especially when an accusative with the infinitive is dependent on another with the same subject: **Licet me existimes desperare ista posse perdiscere** (Cic. de Or. III. 36) = **me ista posse perdiscere.** With the future infinitive active, this omission occurs very frequently in the historians, in which case **esse** is also generally omitted: **Alcon, precibus aliqvid moturum ratus, transiit ad Hannibalem** (Liv. XXI. 12) = **se moturum. Ne nocte qvidem turba ex eo loco dilabebatur, refracturosqve carcerem minabantur** (Id. VI. 17). (On the contrary, it is hardly ever found with the perfect infinitive passive.)

Obs. 1. When, in a continued **oratio obliqva** (§ **403,** *b*), several accusatives with the infinitive have **se** for their subject, it is often omitted.

Obs. 2. It is important to discriminate between this and the occasional omission, before the infinitive, of a personal or demonstrative pronoun which does not refer to the subject of the leading proposition, when it may be easily ascertained from the connection, and from the previous mention of it: **Petam a vobis, ut ea, qvae dicam, non de memet ipso, sed de oratore dicere putetis** (Cic. Or. III. 20). **Valerius dictatura se abdicavit. Apparuit causa plebi, suam** (sc. **plebis**) **vicem indignantem magistratu abisse** (Liv. II. 31).

Obs. 3. The poets, in some few instances, put a simple infinitive with the nominative, as in Greek, instead of the accusative with the infinitive, when it has the same subject as the main proposition: **Vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse paratus** = (**se paratum esse** Hor. Ep. I. 7, 22). (**Sensit medios delapsus in hostes** = **se delapsum esse** Virg. Æn. II. 377.)

§ 402. *a*. Propositions subordinate to the accusative and infinitive retain the customary form of the **oratio finita**. Yet the accusative with the infinitive is used in them if they are relative propositions, in case the relative only continues the thought, so that it might be changed to a demonstrative with or without **et**: **Postea autem Gallus dicebat ab Eudoxo Cnidio sphaeram** (*a celestial globe*) **astris coelo inhaerentibus esse descriptam, cujus omnem ornatum et descriptionem sumptam ab Eudoxo, Aratum extulisse versibus** (Cic. R. P. I. 14). It might also read: **esse descriptam; ejus omnem ornatum**, &c. **Marcellus, qvum Syracusas cepisset, reqvisivisse dicitur Archimedem illum, qvem qvum audisset interfectum, permoleste tulisse** (Cic. Verr. IV. 58) = **et, qvum audisset interfectum, permoleste tulisse.** (So also, **Jacere tam diu irritas sanctiones, qvae de suis commodis ferrentur, qvum interim de sangvine et supplicio suo latam legem confestim exerceri**, for **et interim**, Liv. IV. 51. But such examples, with relative conjunctions, are very unusual.)[1]

b. If one subject of a proposition is compared with another (by **qvam, atqve**, or **idem qvi, tantus qvantus**, and similar expressions), so that the same verb obviously belongs to both (e.g. **Iisdem rebus commoveris, qvibus ego**, sc. **commoveor**), and the leading proposition is an accusative with the infinitive, the second subject is also put in the accusative, although its verb should be, strictly speaking, understood with it in a finite mood, because the governing verb (on which the accusative with the infinitive depends) cannot be applied to this member of the

[1] **Porsena prae se ferebat, qvemadmodum, si non dedatur obses, pro rupto se foedus habiturum, sic deditam inviolatam ad suos remissurum** (Liv. II. 13) = **prae se ferebat, si non dedatur obses, se — habiturum, deditam contra**, &c. **Admonemus, cives nos eorum esse et, si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere** (Id. IV. 3).

proposition: **Suspicor, te eisdem rebus qvibus me ipsum commoveri** (Cic. Cat. M. 1); properly, **qvibus ipse commoveor. Antonius ajebat, se tantidem frumentum aestimasse, qvanti Sacerdotem** (Id. Verr. III. 92); properly, **qvanti Sacerdos aestimasset.** (Attraction. Compare § **303**, *b*.)

c. If two propositions, each of which has its own verb, are compared by a comparative with **qvam**, and the leading proposition passes over into the accusative with the infinitive, the subordinate proposition sometimes takes the same form: **Num putatis dixisse Antonium minacius qvam facturum fuisse?** (Cic. Phil. V. 8.) **Affirmavi qvidvis me potius perpessurum qvam ex Italia exiturum** (Id. ad Fam. II. 16). **Consilium dicebant specie prima melius fuisse qvam usu apparituram** (Liv. IV. 60). This, however, is rare, especially when (as in the last example) the subjunctive should stand in the **oratio recta** after **qvam** (according to § **360**, *Obs*. 4), which mood is then commonly retained: **Certum habeo, majores qvoqve qvamlibet dimicationem subituros fuisse potius qvam eas leges sibi imponi paterentur** (Liv. IV. 2).

§ 403. *a*. An accusative with the infinitive is often put without being governed directly by a **verbum sentiendi** or **declarandi,** where a person is mentioned immediately before in such a way, that a speech, an opinion, or a resolution is ascribed to him, and the purport of his speech or opinion, or the reasoning on which he acts, is now alleged, so that one may supply in one's mind, *he says* (said), *he thinks* (thought), or some equivalent expression: —

Regulus in senatum venit, mandata exposuit: sententiam ne diceret, recusavit; qvamdiu jurejurando hostium teneretur, non esse se senatorem (Cic. Off. III. 27), *for* (he thought and said), *so long as he was bound by the oath exacted from him by the enemy, he was no senator*. **Romulus legatos circa vicinas gentes misit, qvi societatem connubiumqve novo populo peterent; Urbes qvoqve, ut cetera, ex infimo nasci; deinde, qvas sua virtus ac dii juvent, magnas opes sibi magnumqve nomen facere,** &c. (Liv. I. 9. This is the language which Romulus desired the ambassadors to hold.) This use of the accusative with the infinitive, in which the speaker or writer adduces not his own expressions and thoughts, but those of others, is specially called **oratio obliqva,** as distinguished from the **oratio directa.**

Obs. 1. Sometimes the name **oratio obliqva** is used of every grammatical way of expressing the thought of a third party. See § **369.**

Obs. 2. Sometimes the transition to this accusative with the infinitive takes place very abruptly, no indication being given by any particular

t the expressions or ideas of another person are introduced; **dicuit adolescens: haud dubie videre aliqva impedimenta consulem, qvae sibi non apparerent** (Liv. XLIV. 36). s a negative verb precedes, from which an affirmative idea aks) is to be supplied: **Regulus reddi captivos negavit esse os enim adolescentes esse et bonos duces, se jam con-enectute** (Cic. Off. III. 27).

he same way entire speeches or discussions of other per-their views are often cited in a series of accusatives with .tive, the first of which is either directly governed by a ɔut in the way above mentioned under *a* (continuous **oratio** . With reference to this it is to be noticed, that a speech ent belonging to past time, and connected with a verb in ɔrite, should regularly be continued as depending on the the subordinate propositions being thus required to stand perfect or pluperfect. Yet a transition to the present may e, the leading verb understood being thought of as if it historical present (*he says*, &c.). If the **oratio obliqva** th a historical present, it is continued in the present, but (according to § **382**, *Obs.* 3) be changed to the preterite. s of such a continuous **oratio obliqva** (some of them ex-he variations above noticed in the tenses of the subordinate ɔns) may be found in Cæsar in the first book of the Gallic ɹps. 13, 14, 17, 18, 20, 31, 35, 36, 44, 45, and in Livy in ɔook, Chaps. 50, 53; in the second book, Chap. 6, &c.

That which, in the **oratio directa**, was expressed in the im-or in the subjunctive with the force of a command or prohibi-xpressed, in the **oratio obliqva**, by the subjunctive; and in y, that the present of the former becomes the imperfect of the *y should, he said* = you shall; *they were not to believe* = you ɔ believe): **Sin bello perseqvi perseveraret, reminiscere-nae virtutis Helvetiorum. Qvare ne committeret, ut is calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet** (Cæs. B. G. I. ɔello perseveras, reminiscitor pristinae virtutis Helveti-ɣvare ne commiseris, ut ——.) **Burrus praetorianos nihil progeniem Germanici ausuros respondit; perpetraret promissa** (Tac. Ann. XIV 7 = **perpetret Anic.**). The ay, however, be retained, if the first governing verb is the his-esent, or if the narrative is changed to the historical present: **torix perfacile esse factu dicit frumentationibus Roma-**

nos prohibere aeqvo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaqve incendant (Cæs. B. G. VII. 64) = **aeqvo modo animo vestra ipsi frumenta corrumpite.**

§ 405. *a.* Questions which occur in the **oratio directa** in the indicative are expressed in the **oratio obliqva** by the accusative with the infinitive, if, in the **oratio directa**, they stood in the first or third person, but in the subjunctive, if the second person was there made use of, in which case the present or perfect of the direct discourse is regularly changed to the imperfect and pluperfect. (Yet the present may be retained here also, according to § **403**.) If the question in the **oratio directa** is asked in the first person, then the speaker is commonly represented, in the **oratio obliqva**, by the reflective pronoun **se**; but this may be omitted (especially if the same subject is found also in the preceding propositions), so that the first and third persons are only distinguished by the context (as in the **oratio obliqva** in English all three are expressed by *he, they*) : **Qvid se vivere, qvid in parte civium censeri, si, qvod duorum hominum virtute partum sit, id obtinere universi non possint?** (Liv. VII. 18 = **qvid vivimus, qvid in parte civium censemur?**) **Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum memoriam deponere posse?** (Cæs. B. G. I. 14; with the omission of **se** = **si** — **volo, num** — **possum?**) **An qvicqvam superbius esse qvam ludificari sic omne nomen Latinum?** (Liv. I. 50) = **an qvicqvam superbius est? Scaptione haec assignaturos putarent finitimos populos?** (Liv. III. 72) = **putatis? Qvid de praeda faciendum censerent?** (Liv. V. 20) = **censetis?**

Obs. Exceptions to this, where questions of the first and third person are put in the subjunctive, or questions of the second person in the infinitive, are rare.

b. Questions which, in direct discourse, are put in the subjunctive, (§ **350**, *a*, and § **353**) retain the subjunctive (usually with an alteration of the tense) : **Qvis sibi hoc persvaderet?** (Cæs. B. G. V. 29) = **qvis sibi hoc persvadeat? Cur fortunam periclitaretur?** (Id. B. C. I. 72) = **cur fortunam pericliter?**

§ 406. In the infinitive the three leading tenses are distinguished as in the indicative: **Dico eum venire, venisse, venturum esse; dico eum decipi, deceptum esse, deceptum iri.** In the tenses compounded with **esse** this word is often omitted, whether the infinitive has an accusative or a nominative connected with it: **Victum me video. Facturum se dixit. Hannibal deceptus errore locorum traditur.**

§ 407. The perfect infinitive designates the action as finished and complete: **Poteras dixisse** (Hor. A. P. 328), *you might have already*

Bellum ante hiemem perfecisse possumus (Liv. XXXVII. *may have finished the war*; but little differing from **perficere mus.** In this signification, the perfect infinitive occasionally stands n with **satis est, satis habeo, contentus sum,** where the present l in English, and particularly with the expressions **poenitebit, it, pigebit, juvabit, melius erit,** to signify what will follow the tion of the action expressed by the infinitive: **Proinde qviesse elius?** (Liv. III. 48).

. 1. With **oportuit, decuit, convēnit, debueram, oportuerat,** hen used for the purpose of telling what ought to have been done , *Obs.* 1), the perfect infinitive is often employed in the active and nly in the passive, and in the latter usually without **esse: Tuno fiesse** (Liv. XXX. 44). **Ego id, qvod jampridem factum portuit, certa de causa nondum facio** (Cic. Cat. I. 2). **Adoti morem gestum oportuit** (Ter. Ad. II. 2, 6).

. 2. In the poets, the perfect infinitive active is sometimes used ie Greek aorist) for the present infinitive, but only as a simple re after a verb (especially after **verba voluntatis et potestatis**), subject (§ **386**, *a*), nor in the accusative with the infinitive: **Frandentes opaco Pelion imposuisse Olympo** (Hor. Od. III. 4, **Immanis in antro bacchatur vates, magnum si pectore possussisse deum** (Virg. Æn. VI. 77). (In the earlier style, **volo** tructed in prohibitions with the perfect infinitive; e.g. **consules unt, ne qvis qvid fugae causa vendidisse vellet,** Liv. X. 17).

08. *a*. There is no special form of the infinitive to represent the ect (so that after a leading verb in the present or future the imperlicative of direct discourse always becomes the perfect infinitive: at **illum, qvoties filium conspexisset, ingemuisse** = **inebat, qvoties filium conspexerat**), nor the pluperfect in the voice. In the passive, the perfect participle is used with **fuisse,** he indicative with **fui** or **eram,** to express a condition (imperfect condition); e.g. **Dico Luculli adventu maximas Mithridatis omnibus rebus ornatas atqve instructas fuisse urbemqve norum obsessam esse ab ipso rege et oppugnatam vehemene** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 8) = **copiae ornatae atqve instructae urbeqve obsidebatur.** In this way, too, the pluperfect of an may sometimes be expressed; e.g. **nego litteras jam tum scripsse.** (But it is never used for the conditional pluperfect in the tive. See § **409.**)

n the accusative with the infinitive, *after a governing verb in the me* (as well as after the historical present), the present, perfect, ure infinitive are used of a thing which, at the time indicated in

the leading proposition, was present, past, or future, consequently as the imperfect, pluperfect, and **futurum in praeterito**; **Dicebat, dixit, dixerat, se timere** (*that he feared, was afraid*), **se timuisse, deceptum esse** (*that he had feared, had been deceived*), **se venturum esse, deceptum iri** (*that he would come, should be deceived*).

Obs. 1. The perfect infinitive must always stand after a perfect, when something is designated that was past at the time of the leading proposition, though the pluperfect may not be used in English; e.g. **Multi scriptores tradiderunt, regem in praelio adfuisse** (*have related, that the king was present*).

Obs. 2. The present infinitive is commonly used after the perfect **memini** (which has the signification of a present), when a past transaction is spoken of, of which one has been an actual witness, and which one calls to mind (as if the signification were, *I noticed, when the transaction took place, that* ——): **Memini Catonem anno ante, qvam est mortuus, mecum et cum Scipione disserere** (Cic. Læl. 3). **L. Metellum memini puer** (*I remember from the years of my boyhood*) **ita bonis esse viribus extremo tempore aetatis, ut adolescentiam non reqvireret** (Id. Cat. M. 9). On the other hand, the perfect infinitive is always used of a thing of which one has not been an actual witness: **Memineram C. Marium, qvum vim armorum profugisset, senile corpus paludibus occultasse** (Cic. pro Sest. 22); and the perfect may also stand in the first case, if the object be merely to contrast the thing remembered with the present, and to avoid ambiguity: **Meministis me ita initio distribuisse causam** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 42; this might also have been expressed by **distribuere**). So also with **memoria teneo** (Cic. Philipp. VIII. 10, and Verr. V. 16).

§ 409. To represent the conditional pluperfect subjunctive, the part. fut. with **fuisse** is employed in the infinitive of the active voice (**facturus fuisse**, corresponding to **facturus fui**; § **342**. Compare § **348**, *a*, and § **381**): —

Num Gn. Pompejum censes tribus suis consulatibus, tribus triumphis laetaturum fuisse, si sciret se in solitudine Aegyptiorum trucidatum iri? (Cic. Div. II. 9). In the passive, the periphrasis **futurum fuisse, ut** (*it would have happened, that*) is made use of: **Theophrastus moriens accusasse naturam dicitur, qvod hominibus tam exiguam vitam dedisset; nam si potuisset esse longinqvior, futurum fuisse, ut omnes artes perficerentur** (Cic. Tusc. III. 28). (**Platonem existimo, si genus forense dicendi tractare voluisset, gravissime et copiosissime potuisse dicere**, Cic. Off. I. 1, because it would be expressed, in the **oratio recta, Plato potuit**, according to § **348**, *c*.)

Obs. The conditional imperfect subjunctive may be expressed after a preterite by the future infinitive as the **futurum in praeterito** (in the passive, by **futurum esse** or **fore, ut**): **Titurius clamabat, si Caesar adesset, neqve Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos (= cepissent), neqve Eburones tanta cum contemptione nostra ad castra venturos esse (= venirent,** Cæs. B. G. V. 29). But the transition to the **oratio obliqva** after a preterite usually involves the change of the imperfect into the pluperfect, or at least permits that change; e.g. **Si ditior essem, plus darem = dixit se, si ditior esset, plus daturum fuisse.**

§ 410. For the fut. infin., both in the active and passive voice, a periphrasis with **fore** (sometimes **futurum esse**), **ut** (**amem** or **amer**, *that it will happen, that* —), is often made use of; e.g. **Clamabant homines, fore, ut ipsi sese dii immortales ulciscerentur** (Cic. Verr. IV. 40); especially in verbs, which want the supine and the future participle: —

Video te velle in coelum migrare; spero fore, ut contingat id nobis (Cic. Tusc. I. 34).

Obs. 1. The infinitive **posse** is also usually employed where one might have expected the future (*will be able*), especially after **spero**: **Roscio damnato, sperat Chrysogonus se posse, qvod adeptus est per scelus, id per luxuriam effundere** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 2).

Obs. 2. **Fore** with the part. perf. corresponds to the future perfect (in passive and deponent verbs): **Carthaginienses debellatum mox fore rebantur** (Liv. XXIII. 13), *that they should soon have terminated the war*. **Hoc dico, me satis adeptum fore, si ex tanto in omnes mortales beneficio nullum in me periculum redundarit** (Cic. pro Sull. 9).

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE SUPINE, GERUND, AND GERUNDIVE.

§ 411. The first (active) Supine, in **um**, is used after verbs which signify motion (e.g. **eo, venio, aliqvem mitto**), to express the design with which the motion takes place, and is constructed with the case of its verb: —

Legati in castra Aeqvorum venerunt qvestum injurias (Liv. III. 25). **Fabius Pictor Delphos ad oraculum missus est sciscitatum**

qvibus precibus deos possent placare (Id. XXII. 57). **Lacedaemonii senem sessum receperunt** (Cic. Cat. M. 18), *to sit among them*.

Obs. 1. We also find: **Dare alicui aliqvam nuptum** (*to give in marriage to any one*). **Eo perditum, eo ultum**, have almost the same meaning; as, **perdo, ulciscor** (*I go to destroy*).

Obs. 2. That which is expressed by the supine may also be indicated by **ut, ad, causa (qverendi causa)**, or by the participle future (§ **424**, *Obs.* 5). The poets sometimes use the simple infinitive, instead of this supine: **Proteus pecus egit altos visere montes** (Hor. Od. I. 2, 7).

§ 412. The second supine, in **u**, is used with adjectives, to denote that the quality they express is attributed to the subject of the proposition in reference to a certain action, performed upon it (consequently in a passive signification): —

Hoc dictu qvam re facilius est. Honestum, turpe factu (*to do, if one does it*). **Uva peracerba gustatu** (*to taste*). **Qvid est tam jucundum cognitu atqve auditu qvam sapientibus sententiis gravibusqve verbis ornata oratio?** (Cic. de Or. I. 8).

Obs. 1. Some few adjectives, especially **facile, difficile**, and **proclive**, stand in the neuter with a supine, even when they properly refer to an active infinitive as their subject, and are followed by a proposition which ought to depend on this infinitive: **Difficile dictu est, qvanto opere conciliet homines comitas affabilitasqve sermonis** (Cic. Off. II. 14) = **dicere ad calamitatum societates, non est facile inventu** (= **invenire**), **qvi descendant** (Id. Læl. 17). In the same way, **fas** and **nefas** are also used: **Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem** (Cic. Cat. M. 5).

Obs. 2. The supine rarely stands with **dignus, indignus**; e.g. **Nihil dictu dignum** (Liv. IX. 43) = **Nihil dignum, qvod dicatur.**

Obs. 3. **Ad** (*with regard to*) with the gerund is often used in the same signification as the second supine, particularly after **facilis, difficilis, jucundus**; e.g. **Res facilis ad intelligendum**, *easy to understand*. **Verba ad audiendum jucunda** (Cic. de Or. I. 49). In the poets and later writers, we find such constructions as the following with the infinitive: **facilis legi**, *easy to read*. **Cereus in vitium flecti** (Hor. A. P. 161).

§ 413. The Gerund (which has only the oblique cases) is used to express the meaning of the present infinitive active (that is, the absolute meaning of the verb), when the infinitive ought to stand in some particular case (not the nominative); e.g. **studium obtempe-**

randi legibus (see the following sections). If the verb governs the accusative, then in place of the gerund and the accusative governed by it (e.g. **consilium capiendi urbem**; **perseqvendo hostes**, *by pursuing the enemy*) the word so governed may be put in the case of the gerund with the gerundive for its adjective (**consilium urbis capiendae**; **perseqvendis hostibus**), so that the substantive and gerundive together represent the action as taking place in reference to the person or thing named in the substantive. If the gerund would have to be governed by a preposition, the expression with the gerundive is used always with the accusative, and almost always with the ablative; thus, **ad placandos deos** (not **ad placandum deos**), **in victore laudando** (not **in laudando victorem**).[1] The dative also of the gerund with an accusative (**esse onus ferendo**, for **oneri ferendo**) is very unusual.

Obs. 1. In all other cases (the genitive and the ablative without a preposition), the choice between the gerund with an accusative and the gerundive is determined by euphony and perspicuity, or the mere pleasure of the writer. Some writers, therefore, retain the gerund far more frequently than others, who (as, Cicero and Cæsar) prefer using the gerundive. Yet the gerund is mostly retained when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun; e.g. **studium aliqvid agendi**, **falsum fatendo** (*by confessing something that is false*), **cupiditas plura habendi**, — except where the neuter singular denotes an abstract idea; **studium veri inveniendi** (*of discovering the truth*).

Obs. 2. In the earlier writers, we occasionally meet with a remarkable irregularity; the accusative plural, which should be governed by a gerund in the genitive (e.g. **facultas agros latronibus condonandi**), being turned into the genitive, as if the gerundive were to be employed (**agrorum condonandorum**), while the gerund itself still remains unaltered: **Agitur, utrum M. Antonio facultas detur opprimendae reipublicae caedis faciendae bonorum, diripiendae urbis, agrorum suis latronibus condonandi** (Cic. Phil. V. 3).

§ 414. *a.* The infinitive, partly from its own nature, and partly from the usage of the language, cannot occur in all those relations to other words, in which an actual substantive would be placed. Hence the cases of the gerund (and of the gerundive used for it) are not always found where the same cases of a substantive would be employed.

---

[1] In the published editions of Latin authors, such expressions as **ad levandum fortunam** for **ad levandam fortunam**, and the like, are inaccuracies of the press.

Obs. In a very few instances, a gerund, or a substantive having a gerundive agreeing with it, is put in apposition with a substantive word, whose construction is such as would be regular for a gerund: **Nunqvam ingenium idem ad res diversissimas, parendum atqve imperandum, habilius fuit** (Liv. XXI. 4). **Non immemor ejus, qvod initio consulatus imbiberat, reconciliandi animos plebis** (Id. II. 47).

b. The accusative of the gerund (or of the gerundive combined with a substantive) occurs only after a preposition, very frequently **ad**, less frequently **inter**, *during* (an action), and **ob**: —

Breve tempus aetatis satis longum est ad bene honesteqve vivendum (Cic. Cat. M. 19). **Natura animum ornavit sensibus ad res percipiendas idoneis** (Id. Finn. V. 21). **Tuis libris nosmet ipsi ad veterum rerum memoriam comprehendendam impulsi sumus** (Id. Brut. 5). (**Facilis ad intelligendum.** See § **412**, *Obs.* 3.) **Cicero inter agendum nunqvam est destitutus scientia juris** (Quinct. XII. 3, 10). **T. Herminius inter spoliandum corpus hostis veruto percussus est** (Liv. II. 20). **Flagitiosum est ob rem judicandam pecuniam accipere** (Cic. Verr. II. 32).

Obs. It is only in isolated unusual constructions that the gerund (or gerundive) stands after **ante, in, circa**; e.g. **Qvae ante conditam condendamve urbem traduntur** (Liv. præf.), *what is handed down from the times before the city was built*, or *in building*. **Conferre aliqvid in rempublicam conservandam atqve amplificandam** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 16; usually, **ad**).

§ 415. The dative of the gerund or gerundive (which latter is almost always found where the gerund, if used, would govern an accusative, § **413**) is employed after verbs and phrases which may have for their remote object an action that is in progress (as, **praeesse, operam dare, diem dicere, locum capere,** *to fix a time, a place, for the doing of something*); and after adjectives which denote a fitness and adaptation for a certain action or destination: —

Praeesse agro colendo (Cic. Rosc. Am. 18). **Meum laborem hominum periculis sublevandis impertio** (Id. pro Mur. 4). **Consul placandis dis dat operam** (Liv. XXII. 2). **Ver ostendit fructus futuros; reliqva tempora demetendis fructibus et percipiendis accommodata sunt** (Cic. Cat. M. 19). **Genus armorum aptum tegendis corporibus** (Liv. XXXII. 10). **Area firma templis porticibusqve sustinendis** (Id. II. 5), *firm enough to* ——. **Animis natum inventumqve poĕma juvandis** (Hor. A. P. 377). (But after such adjectives, **ad** with the accusative of the gerund is more frequently employed.)

The dative of the gerund also expresses a destination in official appellations (especially with compounds of **vir**); e.g. **decemviri legibus scribendis**; **curator muris reficiendis**; and after **comitia**: —

Valerius consul comitia collegae subrogando habuit (Liv. II. 8).

Obs. 1. We should especially notice **esse** with the dative of the gerund (**esse solvendo**) or gerundive, signifying *to be in a condition to, able to, capable of* (particularly of payments and pecuniary obligations): **Tributo plebes liberata est, ut divites conferrent, qvi oneri ferendo essent** (Liv. II. 9). **Experiunda res est, sitne aliqvi plebejus, ferendo magno honori** (Id. IV. 35). (The same construction occurs with **sufficere**.)

Obs. 2. Some writers occasionally employ the dative of a substantive with the gerundive after other expressions also, to denote a destination and purpose; e.g. **His avertendis terroribus in triduum feriae indictae** (Liv. III. 5). **Non exercitus, non dux, scribendo exercitui erat** (Id. IV. 43). **Germanicus Caecinam cum qvadraginta cohortibus distrahendo hosti ad flumen Amisiam misit** (Tac. Ann. I. 60).

§ 416. The ablative of the gerund or gerundive stands sometimes as an ablative of the means and instrument, sometimes after the prepositions **in, ab, de, ex.**

Homines ad deos nulla re propius accedunt qvam salutem hominibus dando (Cic. pro Lig. 12). **Volscus stando et vigiliis fessus erat** (Liv. II. 65). **Omnis loqvendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus et poëtis** (Cic. de Or. III. 10). **Tempus absumere legationibus audiendis. In voluptate spernenda virtus vel maxime cernitur** (Id. Legg. I. 19). **Aristotelem non deterruit a scribendo amplitudo Platonis** (Id. Or. I.). **Primus liber Tusculanarum disputationum est de contemnenda morte** (Id. Div. II. 1). **Summa voluptas ex discendo capitur** (Id. Finn. V. 18).

Obs. 1. Sometimes, the ablative of the gerundive and gerund denotes rather the *way and manner*, the modal relation shown by the identity of time, [as, in English, by the word *while*, "lest *while* ye gather up the tares, ye root up the wheat, also," for which might be substituted, "lest by gathering up the tares," &c., which comes very near the gerundive expression]: **Qvis est enim, qvi nullis officii praeceptis tradendis philosophum se audeat dicere?** (Cic. Off. I. 2, *who, while he teaches no rules of duty*). **L. Cornelius, complexus Appium, non, cui simulabat, consulendo, diremit certamen** (Liv. III. 41), *while he*

did not consult for the interests of the person for whose interests he pretended to consult.

Obs. 2. The ablative of the gerund (or gerundive) is very rarely governed by a verb, an adjective, or the preposition **pro**: **Appius non abstitit continuando magistratu** (Liv. IX. 34). **Contentus possidendis agris** (Id. VI. 14), *content with possessing the lands*; usually, **possessione agrorum. Pro omnibus gentibus conservandis aut juvandis maximos labores suscipere** (Cic. Off. III. 5). (**Nullum officium referenda gratia magis est necessarium**, Id. Off. I. 15, as the ablative after the comparative.)

Obs. 3. Since the preposition **sine** is never used with the gerund, the beginner may here notice the different ways in which *without*, followed by a verbal noun, is rendered in Latin. That which does not happen, when spoken of as something contemporaneous, is expressed by the participle present, either in apposition to the subject or the object, or in the form of the ablative absolute; what does not happen or has not happened, previously, by the participle perfect: **Miserum est nihil proficientem angi** (Cic. N. D. III. 6). **Nihil adversi accidit non praedicente me** (Id. ad Fam. VI. 6). **Romani non rogati Graecis auxilium offerunt** (Liv. XXXIV. 23). **Consul, non exspectato auxilio collegae, pugnam committit. Natura dedit usuram vitae tanqvam pecuniae, nulla praestituta die** (Cic. Tusc. I. 39). A condition precedent is expressed by **nisi**: **Haec dijudicari non possunt, nisi ante causam cognoverimus** (sometimes, **Haec dijudicare non poterimus nisi melius de causa edocti**, or, **nisi causa ante cognita.** See § **424**, *Obs.* 4; § **428**, *Obs.* 2.) To express a necessary consequence or a necessarily accompanying circumstance, **ut non** or **qvin** is employed, according to § **440**, *a*, *Obs.* 3; or **qvi non**: **nihil ab illis tentatur, de qvo non ante mecum deliberent.** In some cases, a connection by a copulative conjunction may convey the same meaning: **Fieri potest, ut recte qvis sentiat, et id, qvod sentit, polite eloqvi non possit** (Cic. Tusc. I. 3), *without being able to express his ideas with elegance.*

§ 417. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive stands after substantives and adjectives as an objective genitive (§§ **283** and **289**); after substantives which denote the quality of an act, and, further, after substantives, as a defining genitive (**genitivus definitivus**, e.g. **verbum monendi** = the word **monere**, see § **286**) to define a generic word by a specific word of the same class: —

Cum spe vincendi abjecisti etiam pugnandi cupiditatem (Cic. ad Fam. IV. 7). **Parsimonia est scientia vitandi sumptus supervacuos aut ars re familiari moderate utendi** (Sen. de Benef. II. 34).

Ita nati factiqve sumus, ut et agendi aliqvid et diligendi aliqvos et referendae gratiae principia in nobis contineremus (Cic. Finn. V. 15). **Germanis neqve consilii habendi neqve arma capiendi spatium datum est** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 14). **Potestas mihi data est augendae dignitatis tuae** (Cic. ad Fam. X. 13). **Voluntas, consvetudo aliqvid faciendi. Vestis frigoris depellendi causa reperta primo est** (Id. de Or. III. 38). **Sp. Maelius in suspicionem incidit regni appetendi** (Id. pro Mil. 27, *suspicion of aiming at* ——; **regni appetiti**, *of having aimed at* ——). **Cicero auctor non fuit Caesaris interficiendi** (Id. ad Fam. XII. 2). **Principes civitatis non tam sui conservandi qvam tuorum consiliorum reprimendorum causa Roma profugerunt** (Id. Cat. I. 3; = **se conservandi.** For **se** the genitive **sui** is put in the neuter, according to § **297**, *b*, if the gerundive is used, and that whether **se** be the singular or the plural). **Maxima illecebra est peccandi impunitatis spes** (Id. pro Mil. 16; the genitive with **illecebra**, according to § **283**, *Obs.* 3). **Peritus nandi. Valde sum cupidus in longiore te ac perpetua disputatione audiendi** (Cic. de Or. II. 4). **Neuter sui protegendi corporis memor erat** (Liv. II. 6). **Difficultas navigandi. Arrogantia respondendi**, *in replying.* **Triste est nomen ipsum carendi** (Cic. Tusc. I. 36), *the word "to want."* (**Duo sunt genera liberalitatis, unum dandi beneficii, alterum reddendi**, Id. Off. I. 15. Compare § **286**, *Obs.* 2.)

Obs. 1. The genitive of the gerund is not governed by verbs (**oblitus sum facere, pudet me facere**).

Obs. 2. Some few substances, which may be constructed with the genitive of the gerund, may acquire, in conjunction with **est**, the force of an impersonal expression (*will, inclination, &c.*), after which the infinitive is employed (§ **389**). Thus, we find **Tempus est abire** (but **tempus committendi praelii**, *a favorable time for giving battle*): **nulla ratio est ejusmodi occasionem amittere** (Cic. pro Cæc. 5); **consilium est** (*my plan is* = **decrevi**) **exitum exspectare.** (The following is more unusual: **Ii, qvibus in otio vel magnifice vel molliter vivere copia erat**, Sall. Cat. 17 = **licebat.**) In the same way, **consilium capio** usually stands with the infinitive; e.g. **Galli consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere** (Cæs. B. G. VII. 26), sometimes also **consilium ineo.** (The following is the usual construction: **M. Lepidus interficiendi Caesaris consilia inierat**, Vell. II. 88; and in the passive it is exclusively employed: **Inita sunt consilia urbis delendae**, Cic. pro Mur. 37.) Sometimes, also, the meaning of such a phrase gives occasion to the addition of a proposition with **ut**; e.g. **Subito consilium cepi, ut, anteqvam luceret, exirem** (Cic. ad Att. VII. 10. Compare § **373** and § **389**, *Obs.* 1.) Concerning the use of

the infinitive instead of the genitive of the gerund by the poets, see § 419.

Obs. 3. **Ad** is, in a few instances, employed after certain phrases (e.g. **facultatem dare, afferre, locum, signum dare, aliqva** or **nulla est ratio**) instead of the genitive of the gerund governed by the substantive; e.g. **Oppidum magnam ad ducendum bellum dabat facultatem** (Cæs. B. G. I. 38); the more usual construction would be **ducendi belli. Si Cleomenes non tanto ante fugisset, aliqva tamen ad resistendum ratio fuisset** (Cic. Verr. V. 34). **Ne haec qvidem satis vehemens causa ad objurgandum fuit** (Ter. Andr. I. 1, 123).

Obs. 4. The genitive of a substantive and gerundive is sometimes subjoined to the verb **sum**, to denote the purpose which a thing serves (or that to which it belongs, somewhat like the genitive, explained in § 282): **Regium imperium initio conservandae libertatis atqve augendae reipublicae fuerat** (Sall. Cat. 6). **Tribuni plebis concordiam ordinum timent, qvam dissolvendae maxime tribuniciae potestatis rentur esse** (Liv. V. 3).

Obs. 5. In a few writers (especially those of a later period), **causā** is sometimes omitted after the genitive of a gerund or a substantive and gerundive; e.g. **Germanicus in Ægyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antiqvitatis** (Tac. A. II. 59). Perhaps this idiom has originated in a genitive, which was added to a substantive, in order to define it; e.g. **Marsi miserunt Romam oratores pacis petendae** (Liv. IX. 45).

§ 418. Sometimes the gerund is employed less accurately, so as to have the appearance of a passive signification, inasmuch as it either (especially in the genitive) merely designates the action of the verb in general, and so takes the place of a substantive (e.g. **movendi** for **motūs**), or is referred in idea to some other agent than the grammatical subject of the proposition:—

Multa vera videntur neqve tamen habent insignem et propriam percipiendi notam (Cic. Acad. II. 31), *mark of recognition, mark by which they can be known.* **Antonius hostis judicatus, Italia cesserat; spes restituendi nulla erat** (Corn. Att. 9) = **restitutionis** or **fore, ut restitueretur. Jugurtha ad imperandum Tisidium vocabatur** (Sall. Jug. 62), *that they might give him orders.* **Annulus in digito subtertenuatur habendo** (Lucr. I. 313), *by our wearing it.* (**Facilis ad intelligendum.** See § **412**, *Obs.* 3. **Signum recipiendi**, *for retreat* = **se recipiendi**, Cæs. B. G. VII. 52.)

§ 419. The poets often use the simple infinitive after substantives (with **est**), adjectives, and (more rarely) verbs, when the prose usage

would require the gerund either in the genitive, or governed by **ad** or **in**: —

Si tanta cupido est bis Stygios innare lacus, bis nigra videre Tartara (Virg. Æn. VI. 134) = **innandi — videndi. Summa eludendi occasio est mihi nunc senes et Phaedriae curam adimere argentariam** (Ter. Phorm. V. 6, 3). **Pelides cedere nescius** (Hor. Od. I. 6, 6) = **cedendi. Avidus committere pugnam** (Ov. Met. V. 75). **Audax omnia perpeti gens humana** (Hor. Od. I. 3, 25) = **ad omnia perpetienda. Nos numerus sumus et fruges consumere nati** (Id. Ep. I. 2, 27). **Fingit equum magister ire, viam qua monstret eques** (Id. ib. 65). **Non mihi sunt vires inimicos pellere tectis** (Ov. Her. I. 109) — **ad inimicos pellendos. Durus componere versus** (Hor. Sat. I. 4, 8) — **in versibus componendis. (Equus, quem candida Dido esse sui dederat monumentum et pignus amoris,** i.q. **ut esset,** Virg. Æn. V. 572.)

§ 420. The gerundive (of transitive verbs) denotes something that must be done (is to be done): **Vir minime contemnendus (virum minime contemnendum, viro minime contemnendo,** &c., through all the cases): **Vires haud spernendae. Cognoscite aliud genus imperatorum, sane diligenter retinendum et conservandum** (Cic. Verr. V. 10). In combination with the verb **sum** (in all the simple tenses of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive) the gerundive denotes that a certain action *is to be done* (must be done, is proper and necessary). If a definite subject be spoken of, to whom the action is a duty (who has to do it), this subject is put in the dative (§ **250**, *b*): —

Ager colendus est, ut fruges ferat. Fortes et magnanimi sunt habendi, non qui faciunt, sed qui propulsant injuriam (Cic. Off. I. 19). **Tria videnda sunt oratori, quid dicat et quo quidque loco et quomodo** (Cic. Or. 14). **Credo rem aliter instituendam** (sc. **esse**). **Provideo multas mihi molestias exhauriendas fore** (*that I shall have to endure*). **Quaero, si hostis supervenisset, quid mihi faciendum fuerit** (corresponding to **faciendum fuit**, in the indicative; § **348**, *c*).

Obs. After a negation, and particularly after **vix**, the gerund or gerundive sometimes takes the modified signification of that which may be done: **Vix ferendus dolor** (Cic. Finn. IV. 19). **Vix credendum erat** (Cæs. B. G. V. 28), *it was hardly credible* (impersonally. See § **421**.) In the poets and later writers, **videndus** is sometimes found even without a negation, signifying *visible* (*to be seen*), and the like.

§ 421. *a.* From intransitive verbs (which otherwise have no gerundive) the neuter of the gerundive is used with **est** (**sit, esse,** &c.) as an impersonal phrase (like **venitur, ventum est**; § **218,** *c.*, compare § **97**), to signify that the action must be done. The subject which has to do something is expressed by the dative, as with the ordinary gerundive and the impersonal phrase governs the same case as the verb (dative, ablative, or genitive):—

Nunc est bibendum. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. Obtemperandum est legibus. Utendum erit viribus. Obliviscendum tibi injuriarum esse censeo.

Obs. 1. If the verb governs the dative, two datives may come together; e.g. **Aliqvando isti principes et sibi et ceteris populi Romani universi auctoritati parendum esse fateantur** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 22). But this is rather avoided. Instead of the dative of the agent, the ablative with **ab** is used in a very few instances; e.g. **Aguntur bona multorum civium, qvibus est a vobis consulendum** (Id. ib. 2).

Obs. 2. The verbs **utor, fruor, fungor, potior,** have the proper gerundive, although they govern the ablative; e.g. **Rei utendae causa. Non paranda solum sapientia sed fruenda etiam est** (Cic. Finn. I. 1); but, in this construction with the verb **sum,** the impersonal form is more usual (**utendum est viribus**).[1]

b. The earliest writers sometimes form such an impersonal phrase from transitive verbs, and let an accusative follow; e.g. **Mihi hac nocte agitandum est vigilias** (Plaut. Trin. IV. 2, 27), instead of **mihi hac nocte agitandae sunt vigiliae. Aeternas poenas in morte timendum est** (Lucr. I. 112). In good prose-writers, this is very unusual.

§ 422. The gerundive is subjoined to the object, or in the passive, to the subject of certain verbs, which signify *to give, to transfer, to make over, to take, to obtain* (**do, mando, trado, impono, relinqvo, propono, accipio, suscipio,** &c.), in order to specify it as the design and purpose of the action, that something should be done to the object or subject (to give a person a thing to keep, i.q. that it may be kept):—

Antigonus Eumenem mortuum propinqvis sepeliendum tradidit (Corn. Eum. 13). **Demus nos philosophiae excolendos** (Cic. Tusc. IV. 38). **Laudem gloriamqve P. Africani tuendam conservandamqve suscepi** (Id. Verr. IV. 38). **Loco (conduco) opus faciendum, vectigal fruendum,** *to let* (*contract for*) *the execution of a*

[1] **Gloriandus** (Cic. Tusc. v. 17); **obliviscendus** (Hor.).

work, to farm the revenue. **Eqvorum qvattuor millia domanda eqvitibus divisa sunt** (Liv. XXIV. 20). So also with the verb **curo**, *to have a thing done:* **Caesar pontem in Arari faciendum curat** (Cæs. B. G. I. 13). **Conon muros Athenarum reficiendos curavit** (Corn. Con. 4), *had the walls of Athens rebuilt.* (**Edicendum curo, ut,** *I have it proclaimed, that.*)

Obs. 1. The poets here use the present infinitive active (as is often the case in English); e.g. **Tristitiam et metus tradam protervis in mare Creticum portare ventis** (Hor. Od. I. 26, 1). In prose, we find **Do (ministro) alicui bibere,** *give one to drink* (without an accusative). **Jussit ei bibere dare.**

Obs. 2. We sometimes find such expressions as **deligere, proponere sibi aliqvos ad imitandum** (Cic. de Or. III. 31, instead of **imitandos**), the verb being taken in its absolute sense.

Obs. 3. Though it is allowable to say **habeo aedem tuendam,** *the keeping up of the temple is intrusted to me,* yet **habeo statuendum, dicendum,** &c., *I have to decide, must decide* (for **statuendum mihi est**), is a later idiom. (We must also notice **habeo** with the infinitive of **dico**, and of similar verbs; as, **scribo, polliceor,** in the signification *I can:* **Haec fere dicere habui de natura deorum** (Cic. N. D. III. 39), *that is what I had to say, could say.* **De republica nihil habui ad te scribere,** Id. ad Att. II. 22).

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE PARTICIPLES.

§ 423. A Participle, after the manner of an adjective, but with the distinctions of time, present, past, and future, describes a person or thing as doing or suffering something, or as being in a certain state. The active participles, which represent the person or thing as acting, govern the case of their verb; and all participles may themselves be qualified by subordinate propositions or otherwise, just as the verb of an independent proposition may be qualified by words or clauses introduced into the predicate:—

Venit Gajus ad me qverens valde miserabiliter de injuria sibi a fratre suo illata.

§ 424. *a.* The present and perfect participles are used instead of a relative clause, like an adjective, to qualify a substantive. In such

a case the participle does not bring forward any circumstance bearing on the main proposition (see § **425**): **carbo ardens; legati a rege missi. Ordo est recta qvaedam collocatio, prioribus seqventia annectens** (Qvintil. VII. 1, 1). A participle may likewise be used substantively in place of a relative clause; **dormiens = is, qvi dormit.** But this is done only where no ambiguity can result from it, where there is nothing to lead to the supposition that the participle bears on the main proposition as in § **425**, most of the cases being in the plural, and very few in the nominative or accusative singular (compare § **301**, *a*). A further definition (by cases, adverbs, prepositions, &c.) is not often subjoined to a participle that stands substantively, in any case only a very short and perspicuous one: —

Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui (Cic. Div. I. 30). **Nihil difficile amanti puto** (Id. Or. 10). **Uno et eodem temporis puncto nati** (*persons who are born*) **dissimiles et naturas et vitas habent** (Id. Div. II. 45). **Romulus vetere consilio condentium urbes asylum aperit** (Liv. I. 8) = **eorum, qvi urbes condunt** or **condiderunt. Male parta male dilabuntur** (Cic. Phil. II. 27). **Clodius omnium ordinum consensu pro reipublicae salute gesta rescinderat** (Id. pro Mil. 32) = **ea, qvae omnium — gesta erant. Imperaturus omnibus eligi debet ex omnibus** (Plin. Paneg. 7).

b. The participle present and perfect are often used to express not only or chiefly, that the substantive is *now* doing something or that something has been done to it *before*, but a certain quality and a certain state in general, so that the participle acquires precisely the nature of an adjective; e.g. **domus ornata, vir bene de republica meritus. Animalia alia rationis expertia sunt, alia ratione utentia** (Cic. Off. II. 3), *rational.* Consequently many participles admit of degrees of comparison (see § **62**), and in this case the present participle of transitive verbs generally has the genitive instead of the accusative (§ **289**, *a*).

Obs. The future participle cannot be used with the simple force of an adjective, except in the particular instance when a relation of time is conceived of as a general property of a thing; as, **futurus**, *future*, **anni venturi.**

c. The participle perfect of many verbs has assumed in the neuter gender precisely the signification of a substantive, and is treated as such; e.g. **peccatum, pactum, votum.** Some participles, particu-

larly **dictum, factum,** and **responsum,** are used in a substantive signification, sometimes precisely as substantive (**praeclarum factum, fortia facta, ex alterius improbo facto**), and sometimes as participles combined with adverbs; e.g. **recte facta, facete dictum, alterius bene inventis obtemperare** (Cic. pro Cluent. 31), especially if there is also an adjective or possessive pronoun: —

Multa Catonis et in senatu et in foro vel provisa prudenter vel acta constanter vel responsa acute ferebantur (Cic. Læl. 2).

§ 425. By means of the participles the description of a contemporary, past, or future action, connected with the main action, is added appositively to a substantive (or equivalent word) of the leading proposition; the participles thus serving not only to fix the relative time of the main action, but also its manner and circumstances, such as the motive, occasion, contrast, condition (design). Such relations and circumstances are often expressed in English by subordinate propositions with conjunctions (while, during, if, after, since, because, although), or by phrases with prepositions. The participles are therefore well adapted to impart smoothness and brevity to the style, especially as they may be annexed not only to the subject of the leading proposition (which is most usual), but also to the object, either direct or remote, or to a genitive: —

Aër effluens huc et illuc ventos efficit (Cic. N. D. II. 39). **Omne malum nascens facile opprimitur; inveteratum fit plerumqve robustius** (Id. Phil. V. 11), *at its birth, — when it has grown older.* **M.' Curio ad focum sedenti Samnites magnum auri pondus attulerunt** (Id. Cat. M. 16). **Valet apud nos clarorum hominum memoria etiam mortuorum** (Id. pro Sest. 9). **Valerium hostes acerrime pugnantem occidunt** (*while fighting*). **Miserum est nihil proficientem angi** (Cic. N. D. III. 6), *without doing any good.* **Dionysius tyrannus cultros metuens tonsorios candenti carbone sibi adurebat capillum** (Id. Off. II. 7), *for fear of.* **Risus saepe ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenere neqveamus** (Id. de Or. II. 38), *although we wish it.* **Dionysius tyrannus Syracusis expulsus Corinthi pueros docebat** (Id. Tusc. III. 12), *after he had been expelled, after his expulsion.* **Claudius audendum aliqvid improvisum rebatur, qvod coeptum non minorem apud cives qvam hostes terrorem faceret, perpetratum in magnam laetitiam ex magno metu verteret** (Liv. XXVII. 43). **Romani non rogati Graecis ultro adversus Nabin auxilium offerunt** (Id. XXXIV. 23). **Qvis hoc non intelligit, Verrem absolutum tamen ex manibus populi**

Romani eripi nullo modo posse? (Cic. Verr. I. 4), *even if he should be acquitted.* **Magna pars hominum est, qvae navigatura de tempestate non cogitat** (Sen. de Tranq. An. 11), *when they are to sail.*[1]

Obs. 1. It should here be observed, that in Latin the past time has no active participle (except in deponents and half-deponents, and the few verbs given in § **110**, *Obs.* 3), and that the present and future have no passive participle.

Obs. 2. Two actions which are contemporaneous or following in close succession, one of which, as a circumstance accompanying the other, is expressed in Latin by the participle, are often connected in English by *and:* **Caesar celeriter aggressus Pompejanos ex vallo deturbavit** (Cæs. B. C. III. 67). **T. Manlius Torqvatus Gallum, cum qvo provocatus manum conseruit, in conspectu duorum exercituum caesum torqve spoliavit** (Liv. VI. 42) = **cecidit et spoliavit. Patrimonium Sex. Roscii domestici praedones vi ereptum possident** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 6). (We should notice also the repetition of the preceding verb in the participle: **Romani qvum urbem vi cepissent captamqve diripuissent, Carthaginem petunt**, Liv. XXII. 20, *when they had conquered the town, and then plundered it.* **Romulus Caeninensium exercitum fundit fugatqve; fusum perseqvitur**; Id. I. 10).

Obs. 3. A relative or interrogative proposition may also be expressed in a participial form; a participle which governs a relative or interrogative pronoun, or is defined by it, being added to the subject or object of a proposition (but rarely to another word): **Insidebat in mente Phidiae species pulchritudinis eximia qvaedam, qvam intuens ad illius similitudinem artem et manum dirigebat** (Cic. Or. 2), *looking to which he* ——, i.q. *to which he looked and* ——. **Cogitate, qvantis laboribus fundatum imperium, qvanta virtute stabilitam libertatem una nox paene delerit** (Id. Cat. IV. 9).

Obs. 4. Instead of a complete subordinate proposition, a participle is sometimes connected by the particle **nisi**, when a negation precedes, in order to express an exception or negative condition: **Non mehercule mihi nisi admonito venisset in mentem** (Cic. de Or. II. 42) = **nisi admonitus essem.** In the same way, a participle is sometimes connected (but, in general, only in the later writers, from the time of Livy) by **qvanqvam, qvamvis, qvasi, tanqvam, velut**, or **non ante (prius) qvam**, to denote a contrast or comparison, or to fix

---

[1] **Est apud Platonem Socrates, qvum esset in custodia publica, dicens Critoni suo familiari, sibi post tertium diem esse moriendum** (Cic. de Div. I. 25), *Socrates is introduced in Plato, we read in Plato of Socrates, as saying to his friend Crito.* (**Dicens** denoting the manner, not **est dicens** for **dicit.**)

the time of the action, which is otherwise expressed by a subordinate proposition, introduced for the purpose: **Caesarem milites, qvamvis recusantem, ultro in Africam sunt secuti** (Svet. Jul. 70). **Saguntini nullum ante finem pugnae qvam morientes fecerunt** (Liv. XXI. 14) = **qvam mortui sunt. Rubos fessi pervenimus utpote longum carpentes iter** (Hor. Sat. I. 5, 94) = **utpote qvi carperemus**, § **396**, *Obs.* 2. (On the other hand, the combination of a participle with the preposition **sine**, in phrases like the following, — "without a corresponding benefit," — is not admissible in Latin. On the proper mode of expressing this, see § **416**, *Obs.* 3.)

Obs. 5. The participle future commonly stands in the older writers (Cicero, Cæsar, Sallust), only in combination with the verb **sum**, to express certain relations of time connected with the action (**futurus** also as a pure adjective). In the later writers, it serves, like the other participles, to denote circumstances and relations, sometimes in the signification *if* or *when*, sometimes (more frequently) to signify a design, or a prospect of something: **Perseus, unde profectus erat, rediit, belli casum de integro tentaturus** (Liv. XLII. 62). **Horatius Cocles ausus est rem plus famae habituram ad posteros qvam fidei** (Id. II. 10). **Hostes carpere multifariam vires Romanas, ut non suffecturas ad omnia aggressi sunt** (Liv. III. 5), *thinking that they would not* ——. **Neqve illis judicium aut veritas** (erat), **qvippe eodem die diversa pari certamine postulaturis** (Tac. H. I. 32). It is also employed by the same writers as a concise mode of expressing a whole conditional proposition, which should have been subjoined to the preceding: **Martialis dedit mihi qvantum potuit, daturus amplius, si potuisset** (Plin. Ep. III. 21) = **et dedisset amplius.**

§ 426. Sometimes a substantive is used with the perfect participle in such a way, that we have to think not so much of the person or thing itself in its specified circumstances, as of the action performed on the subject considered in itself substantively; e.g.: —

Rex interfectus, *the (perpetrated) murder of the king.* (Like the gerundive, especially in the genitive, with this difference, that the gerundive does not designate the action as completed.) **L. Tarqvinius missum se dicebat, qvi Catilinae nuntiaret, ne eum Lentulus et Cethegus deprehensi terrerent** (Sall. Cat. 48), *that the arrest of L. and C. should not alarm him.* **Pudor non lati auxilii patres cepit** (Liv. XXI. 16). **Sibi qvisqve caesi regis expetebat decus** (Curt. IV. 58). **Regnatum est Romae ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos qvadraginta qvattuor** (Liv. I. 60), *from the foundation of the city to its liberation.* **Ante Capitolium incensum** (Id. VI. 4). **Major ex civibus amissis dolor qvam laetitia fusis hostibus fuit**

(Liv. IV. 17), *at the loss of citizens*. **Tiberius militem ob surreptum e viridario pavonem capite puniit** (Svet. Tib. 60). (This form is particularly employed, in order to obtain a concise mode of expression, when the corresponding verbal substantive is not in use; e.g. from **condere, interficere, nasci.**)

Obs. 1. Livy uses, in this way, even the participle of an intransitive verb standing by itself in the neuter with an impersonal signification: **Tarqvinius Superbus bellica arte aeqvasset superiores reges, nisi degeneratum in aliis huic qvoqve laudi offecisset** (Liv. I. 53), *the circumstance that he had degenerated in other respects, his other degeneracy*.[1]

Obs. 2. Concerning the participle perfect in the ablative with **opus est**, see § **266**, *Obs*.

§ 427. **Habeo** in combination with a participle passive perfect of verbs of insight or determination (the participle being either used appositively with the object of the verb, or standing alone in the neuter) forms a kind of periphrastic perfect active, which at the same time indicates the present condition; **habeo aliqvid perspectum** having not merely the force of **perspexi**, but signifying, that I now have this insight into a thing, and that it stands before me clearly investigated: —

Si Curium nondum satis habes cognitum, valde tibi eum commendo (Cic. ad Fam. XIII. 7). **Tu si habes jam statutum, qvid tibi agendum putes, supersedeto hoc labore itineris** (Id. ad Fam. IV. 2). **Verres deorum templis bellum semper habuit indictum** (Id. Verr. V. 72), *was always at open war with the temples*.

Obs. The periphrasis **factum (rem factam) dabo** for **faciam** is archaic.

§ 428. A participle combined with a subject and put in the ablative is annexed to another proposition in the way described in § **277** as an *ablative absolute*, to show that the main action takes place at the same time with the action expressed in the participle (present), or after it (perfect), or while it is to take place (future), and by these means to indicate the time of the main action, the occasion of it, the way in which it is performed, a contrast, a condition, &c. The participle in the *ablative absolute* may be limited and qualified by cases, propositions, and adverbs, just as the proposition for

---

[1] **Notum, furens qvid femina possit** (Virg. Æn. V. 6), *the knowledge what* —. Sometimes an adjective is used instead of a participle: **vix una sospes navis ab hostibus** (Hor. Od. I. 37, 13).

which this ablative is substituted might have been qualified by the same: —

Homerus fuit et Hesiodus ante Romam conditam, Archilochus regnante Romulo (Cic. Tusc. I. 1). **Qvaeritur, utrum mundus** (*the firmament*) **terra stante circumeat, an mundo stante terra vertatur** (Sen. Q. N. VII. 2). **Perditis rebus omnibus, tamen ipsa virtus se sustentare potest** (Cic. ad Fam. VI. 1). **Caesar homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciendi, non temperaturos ab injuria existimabat** (Cæs. B. G. I. 7), *if* (*in case that*) *the permission should be given them* ——. **Parumper silentium et qvies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante** (Liv. IV. 18).

Obs. 1. Ablatives absolute are not commonly used, when the person or thing which should form their subject occurs in the main proposition as the subject, object, or remote object; for, in that case, the participle is introduced in agreement with that subject or object: **Manlius caesum Gallum torqve spoliavit**, not **Manlius, caeso Gallo, eum torqve spoliavit**; still less, **Manlius Gallum, caeso eo, t. sp. Hosti cedenti instandum est** (not, **hoste cedente, ei instandum est**). Sometimes, however, ablatives absolute are found in such cases, in order to draw a more marked distinction between the contents of the participial and those of the leading proposition, and to indicate more prominently the order of events or the relation they bear to each other: **Vercingetorix, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit** (sc. **eos**) (Cæs. B. G. VII. 4). **Nemo erit, qvi credat, te invito, provinciam tibi esse decretam** (Cic. Phil. XI. 10) = **tibi invito provinciam e. d. (Se judice nemo nocens absolvitur**, Juv. XIII. 3, *before his own judgment-seat*.) For the same reason the ablative absolute is generally made use of, where the subject of the participle stands in the genitive in the leading proposition: **M. Porcius Cato vivo qvoqve Scipione allatrare ejus magnitudinem solitus erat** (Liv. XXXVIII. 54). **Jugurtha fratre meo interfecto regnum ejus sceleris sui praedam fecit** (Sall. Jug. 14).

Obs. 2. Ablatives absolute, like a simple participle (see § **424**, *Obs.* 4) may sometimes be subjoined with **nisi**, when a negation precedes, to point out an exception: **Nihil praecepta atqve artes valent nisi adjuvante natura** (Qvinct. Prooem. § 26) = **nisi qvum adjuvat natura. Regina apum non procedit foras nisi migraturo agmine** (Plin. H. N. XI. 17) = **nisi qvum agmen migraturum est.** So likewise ablatives absolute may be connected with the sentence in which they stand by **qvanqvam, qvamvis** or **qvasi, tanqvam, velut**, or **non ante (prius) qvam: Caesar, qvanqvam obsidione Massiliae summaqve frumentariae rei penuria retardante, brevi tamen omnia subegit** (Svet. **Jul.**

34). **Albani, velut diis qvoqve simul cum patria relictis, sacra oblivioni dederant** (Liv. I. 31) = **velut si deos . . . reliquissent.** But this construction rarely occurs in the earlier writers, with whom indeed it is almost entirely confined to **quasi: Verres, qvasi praeda sibi advecta, non, praedonibus captis, si qui senes ac deformes erant, eos in hostium numero ducit** (Cic. Verr. V. 25).

Obs. 3. Ablatives absolute of the participle future are rare, and not met with in the older writers. (Compare § **425**, *Obs.* 5.)

Obs. 4. Ablatives absolute in the passive, with a leading proposition in the active, usually denote an action proceeding from the subject of the leading proposition, unless the name of an agent with **ab** is added to the passive participle; e.g. **Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit.** In this case the leading subject sometimes stands between the two ablatives: e.g. **His Caesar cognitis milites aggerem comportare jubet** (Cæs. B. C. III. 62). (**C. Sempronius causa ipse pro se dicta damnatur,** Liv. IV. 44; i.q. **qvum ipse causam pro se dixisset.**) Sometimes the ablatives absolute express something that has happened with reference to the leading subject: **Hannibal, spe potiundae Nolae adempta, Acerras recessit** (Liv. XXIII. 17). **Aedui Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere** (Cæs. B. G. I. 11, *after their fields had been already plundered*).

Obs. 5. To the participle in the ablative absolute it is not usual to add other ablatives, which might lead to a sacrifice of euphony or perspicuity; indeed, long and complicated propositions in general are not often expressed in this way. Another participle is rarely added as an adjective in the ablative absolute; e.g. **Defosso cadavere domi apud T. Sestium invento, C. Julius Sestio diem dixit** (Liv. III. 33). Writers generally endeavor to avoid such a concurrence of two participles. (**Eumene pacatiore invento,** Liv. XXXVII. 45. See § **227**, *Obs.* 4.)[1]

Obs. 6. Occasionally **tum (tum vero, tum deniqve)** follows the ablative absolute, in order emphatically to indicate that its action is antecedent to the act expressed by the leading verb, and is its basis or condition: **Hoc constituto, tum licebit otiose ista qvaerere** (Cic. Finn. IV. 13). **Sed confecto proelio, tum vero cerneres, qvanta animi vis fuisset in exercitu Catilinae** (Sall. Cat. 61).

Obs. 7. The ablative absolute can also take a relative or interrogative form, the subject in it being a relative, or the question of a sentence applying only to some accompanying circumstance: **Id habes a natura ingenium, qvo exculto summa omnia facile asseqvi possis** (*by the*

---

[1] **The following complicated construction occurs in Liv. I. 46: conciliata plebis voluntate agro capto ex hostibus viritim diviso.**

cultivation of which). **Qva freqventia omnium generum proseqvente creditis nos Capua profectos?** (Liv. VII. 30). **Qvaerunt, qvo admonente hoc mihi in mentem venerit.**

§ 429. Sometimes the ablative of a participle perfect stands alone impersonally in the same way as the ablative of a substantive and participle in combination, followed by a dependent proposition (accusative with the infinitive, interrogative proposition, or **ut**). (So in particular **audito, cognito, comperto, intellecto, nuntiato, edicto, permisso**, and sometimes a few others.) **Alexander, audito, Darium movisse ab Ecbatanis** (*had set out from Ecbatana*), **fugientem inseqvi pergit** (Curt. V. 35). **Consul, statione eqvitum ad portam posita, edictoqve, ut, qvicunqve ad vallum tenderet, pro hoste haberetur, fugientibus obstitit** (Liv. X. 36).[1]

Obs. 1. Sometimes a participle stands alone without any thing depending on it: **Tribuni militum, non loco castris ante capto, non praemunito vallo, nec auspicato, nec litato, instruunt aciem** (Liv. V. 38). (Compare the adverbs **auspicato, consulto**, &c. § **198**, *a*, *Obs.* 2.)

Obs. 2. In the ablative absolute the subject may be left out and understood, if it is an indefinite or demonstrative pronoun, which has a relative corresponding to it: **Additur dolus, missis, qvi magnam vim lignorum ardentem in flumen conjicerent** (Liv. I. 37). (**Caralitani, simul ad se Valerium mitti audierunt, nondum profecto ex Italia, sua sponte ex oppido Cottam ejiciunt**, Cæs. B. C. I. 30, where **eo** has to be supplied from the context.)

§ 430. As the methods of indicating that a second act introduced into a sentence is only a qualification of the main proposition are various (by a subordinate proposition with a conjunction, by a participle in agreement with some word in the proposition, and by the ablative absolute), it is usual, when a long series of circumstances is to be given, to vary the syntax, the participial constructions being either subjoined to the subordinate proposition (the protasis) to explain and define it, or entering into the leading proposition: —

Consul, nuntio circumventi fratris conversus ad pugnam, dum se temere magis qvam caute in mediam dimicationem infert, vulnere accepto, aegre ab circumstantibus ereptus, et suorum animos turbavit et ferociores hostes fecit (Liv. III. 5). Yet a series of ablatives absolute is occasionally employed to express circumstances which follow in succession (e.g. Cæs. B. G. III. 1). This

[1] **Incerto is found as an equivalent expression for qvum incertum esset in Livy XXVIII. 36.**

depends on the greater or less care which the writer has for variety and precision of expression.

§ 431. *a.* The participle denotes the time with reference to the leading verb of the proposition, so that, if this be in the preterite, the participle present has the signification of the imperfect (**praesens in praeterito**), the participle perfect that of the pluperfect (**praeteritum in praeterito**), and the participle future that of the **futurum in praeterito**, and this must also be borne in mind in specifying time in subordinate propositions depending on a participle. (**Haec omnia Titius pridem mutavit me probante**, signifies, therefore, *with my approbation at the time*, not *which I now approve.*)

b. The participle perfect of deponents or half-deponents is not unfrequently joined to the subject instead of the participle present (imperfect) to indicate the motive, occasion, or manner of the main action (since) : —

Fatebor me in adolescentia, diffisum ingenio meo, qvaesisse adjumenta doctrinae (Cic. pro Mur. 30). **Caesar, iisdem ducibus usus, qvi nuntii venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios subsidio oppidanis mittit** (Cæs. B. G. II. 7). **Ego copia et facultate causae confisus, vide, qvo progrediar** (Cic. pro Rosc. Com. 1). Yet this occurs chiefly in the historical style, where the leading proposition is in the perfect or historical present, or in those cases where the present participle is not in use (**ratus, solitus**).

Obs. 1. With these exceptions there are but few instances of the participle perfect inaccurately used attributively with the force of a present: **Melior tutiorqve est certa pax qvam sperata victoria** (Liv. XXX. 30) = **qvae speratur.** *So called* is never expressed in Latin by **ita dictus**, but by **qvi dicitur, qvi vocatur, qvem vocant.**

Obs. 2. In some writers (Livy and those of a later period) we occasionally find ablatives absolute formed with the participle perfect to express a circumstance which does not precede, but accompanies or follows the main action: **Volsci inermes oppressi dederunt poenas, vix nuntiis caedis relictis** (Liv. IV. 10), *so that scarcely* ——. **Hannibal totis viribus aggressus urbem momento cepit, signo dato, ut omnes puberes interficerent** (Id. XXI. 14). **Suetonius Paullinus biennio prosperas res habuit, subactis nationibus firmatisqve praesidiis** (Tac. Agric. 14), *while he subdued nations.*

CHAPTER IX.

COMBINATION OF COORDINATE AND SUBORDINATE PROPOSITIONS, AND THE USE OF THE CONJUNCTIONS FOR THIS PURPOSE. THE INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE PARTICLES.

§ 432. The Coordination of Propositions (§ **328**) is denoted by copulative, disjunctive, and adversative conjunctions.

§ 433. The COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS are **et, qve** (which is affixed to the end of a word), **ac** (**atqve**), and (combined with a negation) **nec, neqve**, *and not*. **Et** simply connects two coordinate words or propositions, without any additional signification whatever; while **qve** rather marks the second member as a supplement to the first, and as a continuation or enlargement of it; e.g.:—

Solis et lunae reliqvorumqve siderum ortus; de illa civitate totaqve provincia. Pro salute hujus imperii et pro vita civium proqve universa republica (Cic. pro Arch. 11). **Prima seqventem honestum est in secundis tertiisqve consistere. Tu omnium divinarum humanarumqve rerum nomina, genera, causas aperuisti, plurimumqve poetis nostris, omninoqve Latinis et litteris luminis et verbis attulisti** (Cic. Acad. I. 3). **Mihi vero nihil unqvam populare placuit, eamqve optimam rempublicam esse duco, qvam hic consul constituit** (Id. Legg. III. 17).[1] It is therefore often employed to connect two notions which are to be considered as a connected whole (**senatus populusqve Romanus**, but **Caesare et Bibulo consulibus**, of the two consuls considered as equal), or with two words, which express only one leading idea (**jus potestatemqve habere**). (In many cases no distinction is made: **noctes et dies, noctes diesqve. Rerum divinarum et humanarum scientia**, Cic. Off. I. 43; **omnium divinarum humanarumqve rerum consensio**, Id. Lael. 6). **Ac** (which only stands before consonants) or **atqve** (before consonants and (vowels) puts forward the second member somewhat more forcibly in comparison with the first as distinct from it and equally important (**omnia honesta atqve inhonesta**, *the unbecoming no less than the becoming:* **omnium rerum, divinarum atqve humanarum, vim, naturam, causasqve nosse**, Cic. de Or. I. 49). Yet this accessory signification is often not to be recognized, especially with the shorter form **ac**, which is used

[1] Examples of a series of such additions and continuations may be seen in Cicero, Legg. I. 23, and Phil. IX. 7.

for variety with **et**, if one of the two connected members is again subdivided: **Magnifica vox et magno viro ac sapiente digna** (Cic. Off. III. 1). Concerning **neqve**, see § **458**.

Obs. 1. **Et** is sometimes employed as an adverb for **etiam**, *also*; but in the earlier writers, it, for the most part, occurs only in certain combinations; e.g. **simul et, et nunc (sed et)**, &c.

Obs. 2. If a negative proposition is followed by an affirmative, in which the same thought is expressed or continued, **qve, et**, or **ac**, is employed in Latin, where in English we use *but*: **Socrates nec patronum qvaesivit ad judicium capitis nec judicibus supplex fuit, adhibuitqve liberam contumaciam, a magnitudine animi ductam** (Cic. Tusc. I. 29). **Tamen animo non deficiam, et id, qvod suscepi, qvoad potero, perferam** (Id. pro Rosc. Am. 4). **Nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 35).

§ 434. The omission of the copulative conjunctions (Asyndeton)[1] occurs in Latin in quick and animated discourse, not only where there are three or more members, but even with two: —

Aderant amici, propinqvi (Cic. Verr. I. 48). **Adsunt, qveruntur Siculi universi** (Id. Div. in Cæc. IV.). So occasionally, in speaking of colleagues in office: **Cn. Pompejo, M. Crasso consulibus**; in examples: **In feris inesse fortitudinem saepe dicimus, ut in eqvis, in leonibus** (Id. Off. I. 16); in contrasts, which embrace a whole class of subjects: **prima, postrema; fanda, nefanda; aedificia omnia, publica, privata; ultro, citro**; and in certain expressions of judicial official language, when two words are put together for greater accuracy: **qvicqvid dare facere oportet: aeqvum bonum**, *right and justice*. **Qvi damnatus est, erit**, *he who has been or shall be condemned*.

Obs. 1. In an enumeration of three or more perfectly coordinate words, we may either connect each of them with the preceding by a conjunction, if we wish to give a certain prominence to each (Polysyndeton),[2] or omit the conjunction entirely: **summa fide, constantia, justitia; monebo, praedicam, denuntiabo, testabor**;[3] or omit it between the first members, and annex **qve** to the last: **summa fide, constantia, justitiaqve** (but we must avoid, in this case, using **et, ac**, or **atqve**, unless with a desire to mark the last member as distinct from the rest). So also **alii, ceteri, reliqvi**, stand at the end of an enumeration without a conjunction (**honores, divitiae, cetera**) or with **qve**, rarely with

---

1 ἀσύνδετος, *unconnected*.

2 πολυσύνδετος, *connected in many ways*.

3 As in the above example, four words thus united without conjunctions are often made up of two pair of words which are either nearly connected or mutually contrasted.

et; and we always find **postremo, deniqve**, not **et postremo, et deniqve**. (**Sibi liberisqve et genti Numidarum**, where the two first ideas are more nearly connected.)

Obs. 2. The place of a copulative conjunction may be supplied, in animated discourse, by repeating, in each member of the sentence, a word common to all (Anaphora): **Si recte Cato judicavit, non recte frumentarius ille, non recte aedium pestilentium venditor tacúit** (Cic. Off. III. 16). **Nos deorum immortalium templa, nos muros, nos domicilia sedesqve populi Romani, aras, focos, sepulcra majorum defendimus** (Id. Phil. VIII. 3). Another conjunction may be repeated in the same way: **Si loca, si fana, si campum, si canes, si eqvos consvetudine adamare solemus, qvantum id in hominum consvetudine facilius fieri poterit?** (Cic. Finn. I. 20). **Nec tamen omnes possunt esse Scipiones aut Maximi, ut urbium expugnationes, ut pedestres navalesqve pugnas, ut bella a se gesta, ut triumphos recordentur** (Id. Cat. M. 5). **Promisit, sed difficulter, sed subductis superciliis, sed malignis verbis** (Sen. de Benef. I. 1).

Obs. 3. We cannot, in Latin, subjoin an illative adverb (**itaqve, igitur, ergo**) to a copulative particle (as in English, *and therefore, and consequently*); we must therefore say **propterqve eam causam**, and the like.

§ 435. *a.* Both members of a combination are rendered prominent by **et — et**, *both — and*, for which **qve — et** and **qve — qve** are occasionally employed in some writers.

Obs. 1. **Qve — et** connect only single words, not propositions: e.g. **Legatiqve et tribuni** (Liv. XXIX. 22), **seqve et ducem** (and that not in all writers, e.g. in Cicero); **qve — qve** (also not found in all writers) are used with a double relative proposition: **Qviqve Romae qviqve in exercitu erant** (Liv. XXII. 26) = **et qvi — et qvi**; but otherwise, they rarely occur in prose, and only to connect single words, the first of which is a pronoun: **Meqve regnumqve meum** (Sall. Jug. 10). **Et — qve** are only found as a loose way of connecting two propositions: **Qvis est, qvin intelligat, et eos, qvi haec fecerint, dignitatis splendore ductos immemores fuisse utilitatum suarum, nosqve, qvum ea laudemus, nulla alia re nisi honestate duci?** (Cic. Finn. V. 22).

Obs. 2. Concerning **neqve — et, et — neqve**, see § **468**, *c.*

Obs. 3. **Qvum — tum**, *both — and* (concerning the mood, when **qvum** forms a subordinate proposition, see § **358**, *Obs.* 3). **Tum — tum** always signifies *at one time, at another time*, as also **modo — modo, nunc — nunc**, more rarely in prose **jam — jam**. (With these, and similar partitive phrases, a copulative particle is never used.) Less usual expressions are **qva — qva** (of two single words): e.g. **qva consules,**

qva exercitum hostes increpabant; and **simul — simul**, which last approaches, in signification, to **partim — partim**: e.g. **increpare simul tumultum, simul ignaviam militum.**

Obs. 4. It may here be observed, that when a general description is followed by something more special, no such particle as the English *namely* is used in Latin: **Veteres philosophi in qvattuor virtutes omnem honestatem dividebant, prudentiam, justitiam, fortitudinem, modestiam** (*namely, prudence, justice*, &c.). If an explanation is added in a new proposition, **nam** and **enim** are made use of; e.g. **tres enim sunt causae**, *there are namely three causes*. The word **nempe** signifies *surely* (*is it not so?*), and expresses our conviction that what we say will not be denied.

§ 436. The Disjunctive Conjunctions are **aut, vel** (**ve**, attached to a word), **sive.** Two words which are essentially different in meaning are separated by **aut**: —

Officia omnia aut pleraqve servantem vivere (Cic. Finn. IV. 6). **Nihil aut non multum (non multum aut nihil omnino; semel aut non saepe).**

The simple **aut** is therefore particularly used in questions which imply an objection or a negative, or in expressing sentiments of disapprobation, when we wish to separate the ideas, and to keep them distinct: —

Ubi sunt ii, qvos miseros dicis, aut qvem locum incolunt? (Cic. Tusc. I. 6). **Qvid est majus aut difficilius qvam severitatem cum misericordia conjungere? Homines locupletes et honorati patrocinio se usos aut clientes appellari mortis instar putant** (Cic. Off. II. 20). (Concerning **aut** after a negative, see § **458**, *c*, *Obs.* 2.) **Vel** denotes a distinction, which is of no importance, or relates only to the choice of an expression; e.g. **A virtute profectum vel in ipsa virtute positum** (Cic. Tusc. II. 20); in the earlier writers especially, when a more suitable expression is added (also, **vel potius; vel dicam; vel, ut verius dicam; vel etiam**).[1]

An unimportant distinction or one of name only is likewise expressed by **ve**, either with subordinate accessory ideas of the leading proposition, or (which is more usual) in subordinate propositions: —

---

[1] **Aut eloqventiae nomen relinqvendum est** (Cic. de Or. II. 2), *or even* —; **vel concidat omne caelum, omnisqve natura consistat necesse est** (Id. Tusc. I. 28.)

Post hanc contionem duabus tribusve horis optatissimi nuntii venerunt (Cic. Phil. XIV. 6). **Timet, ne qvid plus minusve qvam sit necesse dicat** (Cic. pro Flacco. 5; **si plus minusve dixero**). **Non satis est judicare, qvid faciendum non faciendumve sit** (Id. Finn. I. 14). **Aut — aut** repeated denotes an opposition, in which the members exclude one another, or at least are considered as distinct and separate: **Omne enuntiatum aut verum aut falsum est; aut omnino aut magna ex parte. Aut inimicitias aut labores aut sumptus suscipere nolunt** (Cic. Off. I. 9). **Vel — vel** denotes such a distinction, that the things distinguished may, nevertheless, be connected (*partly — partly*), or it is indifferent (with reference to what is asserted) which is chosen, or such as properly relates only to a difference of expression: **Postea, vel qvod tanta res erat, vel qvod nondum audieramus Bibulum in Syriam venisse, vel qvia administratio hujus belli mihi cum Bibulo paene est communis, qvae ad me delata essent, scribenda ad vos putavi** (Cic. ad Fam. XV. 1). **Nihil est tam conveniens ad res vel secundas vel adversas qvam amicitia** (Id. Læl. 5). **Una atqve altera aestas vel metu vel spe vel poena vel proemiis vel armis vel legibus potest totam Galliam sempiternis vinculis adstringere** (Cic. Prov. Cons. 14). (**Ve — ve** has the same signification in the poets.)

Obs. **Vel** has also the signification *even*, especially with superlatives: e.g. **vel optime; fructus vel maximus. Per me vel stertas licet** (Cic. Acad. II. 29). It is used also in citing examples (*for example, particularly*): **Raras tuas qvidem sed svaves accipio litteras; vel, qvas proxime acceperam, qvam prudentes!** (Cic. ad Fam. II. 13). **Qvam sis morosus vel ex hoc intelligi potest, qvod.**

Sive (seu) stands not only in the signification of **vel si**, *or if*, as a conditional conjunction (§ **442**, *b*), but also as a mere disjunctive conjunction, when it denotes a distinction which is not essential, or of importance. **Nihil perturbatius hoc ab urbe discessu sive (seu) potius turpissima fuga** (Cic. ad Att. VIII. 3). **Ascanius florentem urbem matri seu novercae reliqvit** (Liv. I. 3). (In the best writers, when used singly, it is generally found with **potius**, in correction of what has been previously said.) With **sive — sive** (by which, however, only nouns and adverbs, and not verbs, can be connected with this signification), it is left undecided which member is the right one, as a thing of no importance, so far as the purport of the sentence is concerned: **Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium, qvae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit** (Cæs. B. G. I. 12).

§ 437. The Adversative Conjunctions are **sed, autem, verum (vero, ceterum), at.** Yet it is to be remarked that these words

often serve to introduce a new independent proposition without any grammatical connection, properly so called.

Obs. **Autem** and **vero** do not stand at the beginning of a proposition, but after a word, or two closely connected words, as, for example, a preposition with its case (**de republica vero**); **autem**, even after several, which cannot be well separated.

a. **Sed** denotes something which alters, limits, or sets aside what goes before (and corresponds on the whole most nearly to the English *but*): —

Ingeniosus homo, sed in omni vita inconstans. Non contentio animi qvaeritur, sed relaxatio. Saepe ab amico tuo dissensi, sed sine ulla ira. (**Non qvod —, sed qvia; non modo — sed**, &c.) In transitions it is employed where one leaves a subject and does not mention it further: **Sed haec parva sunt; veniamus ad majora. Ego a Qvinto nostro non dissentio; sed ea, qvae restant, audiamus** (Cic. Legg. III. 11).

b. With **autem**, on the contrary, we only add something that is different from the preceding; and it denotes an opposition which does not set aside what goes before, or serves simply to add an observation or to continue the discourse: —

Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat (Cic. Off. III. 9). **Mens mundi providet, primum ut mundus qvam aptissimus sit ad permanendum, deinde ut nulla re egeat, maxime autem, ut in eo eximia pulchritudo sit** (Id. N. D. II. 22). **Orationes Caesaris mihi vehementer probantur; legi autem complures** (Id. Brut. 75). **Nunc, qvod agitur, agamus; agitur autem, liberine vivamus an mortem obeamus** (Id. Phil. XI. 10). **Est igitur homini cum deo rationis societas; inter qvos autem ratio, inter eos etiam recta ratio communis est** (Id. Legg. I. 7).

c. **At** emphatically calls the attention to something different and opposed (*on the other hand*), and connects it with what goes before rather as an independent proposition: —

Magnae divitiae, vis corporis, alia omnia hujusmodi brevi dilabuntur; at ingenii egregia facinora immortalia sunt (Sall. Jug. 2). **At** is frequently employed to introduce in a new proposition an objection started by one's self or another, or the answer to an objection (*yes, but*): **At memoria minuitur** (Cic. Cat. M. 7), *certainly, but it is said that the memory is impaired.* **Nisi forte ego vobis cessare nunc videor, qvod bella non gero. At senatui, qvae sint gerenda, praescribo, et qvomodo** (Id. ib. 6). (This signification is still

stronger in **at enim, at vero.**) **At** often stands too in the signification *yet, however* (at least, after conditional propositions): **Si se ipsos illi nostri liberatores e conspectu nostro abstulerunt, at exemplum reliqverunt** (Cic. Phil. II. 44). **Res, si non splendidae, at tolerabiles (at tolerabiles tamen, attamen tolerabiles).** **At** is also to be noticed in interrogative exclamations subjoined to a sentence: **Una mater Cluentium oppugnat. At qvae mater!** (Cic. pro Cluent. 70). **Aeschines in Demosthenem invehitur. At qvam rhetorice! qvam copiose!** (Id. Tusc. III. 26). And in prayers and wishes that break out suddenly: **At te di deaeqve perduint!** (Ter. Hec. I. 2, 59).

Obs. **Atqvi** denotes an objection and assurance (pretty much the same as *yes, but indeed*); in conclusions it signifies *but now* (*further*): **Qvod si virtutes sunt pares, paria etiam vitia esse necesse est. Atqvi pares esse virtutes facillime perspici potest** (Cic. Par. III. 1. **Autem** is likewise sometimes used in this sense).

d. **Verum** has nearly the same signification as **sed** (e.g. **sed etiam** and **verum etiam,** and in transitions: **Verum de his satis dictum est**), but somewhat more decidedly corrects what has gone before. **Ceterum** is used by some writers (Sallust, Livy) instead of **sed,** or **verum,** in many, but not in all combinations (e.g. not **ceterum etiam**). **Vero** contains properly an assurance and confirmation (certainly), but stands as a conjunction, when that which follows is asserted and maintained still more strongly than that which precedes, particular emphasis falling on the word before **vero**: —

Musica Romanis moribus abest a principis persona, saltare vero etiam in vitio ponitur (Corn. Epam. 1); or, **saltare vero multo etiam magis,** or **saltare vero ne libero qvidem dignum judicatur. Tum vero furere Appius** (historical infinitive), *but then Appius became quite raving.* In the same way we find **neqve vero,** *and (but) also not, and that not:* **Est igitur causa omnis in opinione, nec vero aegritudinis solum, sed etiam reliqvarum omnium perturbationum** (Cic. Tusc. III. 11). **Vero** may likewise be added to **qvum — tum,** to emphasize the truth of a statement: **Pompejus qvum semper tuae laudi favere mihi visus est, tum vero, lectis tuis litteris, perspectus est a me toto animo de te ac de tuis commodis cogitare** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 7).

Obs. An adversative conjunction is often omitted, when the subjects of two propositions are brought into contrast by the different things predicated of them; or when the *same* thing *differently* qualified is predicated of them. The same omission occurs between two subordinate propositions which are coordinate with each other, provided their mutual relation is sufficiently obvious without the conjunction: **Opinionum commenta delet**

dies, naturae judicia confirmat (Cic. N. D. II. 2). **Opifices in artificiis suis utuntur vocabulis nobis incognitis, usitatis sibi** (Id. Finn. III. 2). **Qvum primo Galli tantum avidi certaminis fuissent, deinde Romanus miles ruendo in dimicationem aliqvantum Gallicam ferociam vinceret, dictatori neutiqvam placebat fortunae se committere adversus hostem iis animis corporibusqve, qvorum omnis in impetu vis esset, parvā eădem langvesceret morā** (Liv. VII. 12). **Qvid est, qvamobrem abs te Q. Hortensii factum non reprehendatur, reprehendatur meum** (Cic. pro Sull. 1).

§ 438. Sometimes two coordinate propositions, whether connected by means of **autem** and **vero**, or standing together without any conjunction, must be understood to combine their meaning in such a way, that they together only make one assertion. The sense might therefore be expressed (and often is expressed in English) by subordinating the one proposition to the other by means of a conjunction. This form of expression is made use of, when, in order to prove something, we seek to draw attention to the agreement or difference, compatibility or incompatibility, of two propositions, and the combined propositions are either expressed interrogatively (rarely in the negative), or attached to a leading proposition which points to the combination of the two as incongruous or absurd.

Qvid igitur? Hoc pueri possunt, viri non poterunt? (Cic. Tusc. II. 14). **Cur igitur jus civile docere semper pulchrum fuit, ad dicendum si qvis acuat aut adjuvet in eo juventutem vituperetur?** (Id. Or. 41), *if therefore it was always a creditable thing —, why should any one be censured —?* **Est profecto divina vis, neqve in his corporibus atqve in hac imbecillitate nostra inest qviddam, qvod vigeat et sentiat, et non inest in hoc tanto naturae tam praeclaro motu** (Id. pro Mil. 31), *and if there is something in our bodies that lives and feels, it cannot be supposed that there is not*, &c.). **Qvid causae est, cur Cassandra furens futura prospiciat, Priamus sapiens idem facere non qveat?** (Id. Div. I. 39). **Neminem oportet esse tam stulte arrogantem, ut in se rationem et mentem putet inesse, in caelo mundoqve non putet** (Id. Legg. II. 7). A double question of this kind is often connected with what precedes by **an** (*or — ?* § **453**): **An ex hostium urbibus Romam ad nos transferri sacra religiosum fuit, hinc sine piaculo in hostium urbem Vejos transferemus?** (Liv. V. 52).

§ 439. (Subordinate Combination). Concerning the conjunctions with which objective propositions are formed in the subjunctive, see the Appendix to Chap. III. of this Part (§ **371** and the following);

concerning propositions with **qvod** to denote a relation actually subsisting, see § **398**, *b*.

Obs. 1. (*Attraction*). In object-clauses with conjunctions, or in dependent questions, we sometimes find this irregularity, that a substantive (or pronoun), that ought to be the subject in the object-clause, is drawn into the leading proposition, either as the object of the verb or as the subject, in case the verb would otherwise stand impersonally (as intransitive or in the passive voice). In good prose, however, this *Attraction* is very rare, and is found after an active verb only where the writer at first contemplated another turn of expression, and afterwards added the subordinate proposition: **Istuc, qvidqvid est, fac me, ut sciam** (Ter. Heaut. I. 1, 32). **Simul vereor Pamphilum, ne orata nostra neqveat diutius celare** (Id. Hec. IV. 1, 60) = **ne Pamphilus. Qvae timebatis, ea ne accidere possent, consilio meo ac ratione provisa sunt** (Cic. de Leg. Agr. II. 37), instead of **provisum est. Nam sangvinem, bilem, pituitam, ossa, nervos, venas, omnem deniqve membrorum et totius corporis figuram videor posse dicere, unde concreta et qvomodo facta sint** (Id. Tusc. I. 24). **Nosti Marcellum, qvam tardus et parum efficax sit** (Cael. Cic. ad Fam. VIII. 10).

Obs. 2. Where by the pronouns **hic** and particularly **ille**, a fact related to the main proposition is referred to, which fact is soon to be stated, the statement often follows in an independent proposition with **enim** or **nam** instead of a proposition with **qvod**: **Atqve etiam illa concitatio declarat vim in animis esse divinam. Negant enim sine furore qvemqvam poëtam magnum esse posse** (Cic. de Div. I. 37). **Sed illa sunt lumina duo, qvae maxime causam istam continent. Primum enim negatis fieri posse**, &c. (Id. Acad. II. 33).

§ 440. *a*. A proposition expressing a result may either be connected with a demonstrative word preceding, which signifies a measure or degree (**sic, ita, adeo, tam, tantus, talis, is**, &c.) or be annexed without any such correlative word. We should notice the use of **qvam ut** after a comparative, signifying (*greater*) *than that, too* (*great*) *to*. (Also, **qvam qvi**, § **308**, *Obs.* 1.)

Obs. 1. **Tantum abest, ut — ut** (not **ut potius**): **Tantum abest, ut amicitiae propter indigentiam colantur, ut ii, qvi propter virtutem minime alterius indigeant, liberalissimi sint atqve beneficentissimi** (Cic. Lael. 14). Sometimes, after **tantum abest, ut**, the second proposition is put independently, instead of being connected by **ut** as a proposition expressing a result. **Tantum abfuit, ut inflammares nostros animos; vix somnum tenebamus** (Cic. Brut. 87).

Obs. 2. Both an object-clause with **ut** and a result may sometimes stand with the same leading proposition: **At ceteris forsitan ita petitum sit, ut dicerent, ut utrumvis salvo officio facere se posse arbitrarentur** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 1).

Obs. 3. **Ut non** (*in such a way, that — not*) is used after a negative proposition to denote a necessary and inevitable consequence (*not — without*); e.g. **Ruere illa non possunt, ut haec non eodem labefacta motu concidant** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 7). The same meaning is expressed by **qvin**; e.g. **Nunqvam accedo, qvin abs te abeam doctior** (Ter. Eun. IV. 7, 21). **Qvin**, *that not* (see § **375**, *c*, *Obs.* 4), is generally employed after negative assertions (**nemo, nihil est**, &c.), and after questions which have a negative force (**qvis est**, &c.), to express what holds universally without any exception: **Nihil est, qvin male narrando possit depravari** (Ter. Phorm. IV. 4, 16) = **qvod non. Nullus est cibus tam gravis, qvin is die et nocte concoqvatur** (Cic. N. D. II. 9) = **qvi non. Hortensius nullum patiebatur esse diem qvin aut in foro diceret aut meditaretur extra forum** (Id. Brut. 88). **Nunqvam tam male est Siculis, qvin aliqvid facete et commode dicant** (Id. Verr. IV. 43).

Obs. 4. **Ut** takes the signification of *although, even suppose that*, from first signifying, "even if we suppose the case *that*;" the proposition is therefore a result, and is expressed negatively with **ut non**: **Ut qvaeras omnia, qvomodo Graeci ineptum appellent, non reperies** (Cic. de Or. II. 4). **Verum ut hoc non sit, tamen praeclarum spectaculum mihi propono** (Id. ad Att. II. 15).

Obs. 5. **Qvo**, *that so much* (= **ut eo**), is used when a comparative follows (**qvo facilius**, *that so much more easily = that the more easily*). In a few cases, it is equivalent to a simple **ut**, or has the meaning *that thereby*; e.g. **Deos hominesqve testamur, nos arma neqve contra patriam cepisse neqve qvo pericula aliis faceremus** (Sall. Cat. 33). **Qvare**, also, is sometimes used to signify either *that by those means*, or (*so*) *that on that account*: **Permulta sunt, qvae dici possunt, qvare intelligatur, summam tibi fuisse facultatem maleficii suscipiendi** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 33).

Obs. 6. A proposition denoting a design sometimes indicates, not the object of the leading proposition given, but the design with which the statement is made, the proposition on which it really depends being omitted for the sake of brevity: **Senectus est natura loqvacior; ne ab omnibus eam vitiis videar vindicare** (Cic. Cat. Maj. 16), *which I mention, that I may not*, &c. A similar omission is sometimes found with **si, qvoniam, qvandoqvidem**; e.g. **Qvandoqvidem est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, qvod minis neqvisti, trecenti conjuravimus principes juventutis Romanae, ut in te**

hac via grassaremur (Liv. I. 12), *that you may*, &c., *I will tell you, three hundred of us*, &c.

§ 441. Concerning the causal conjunctions (which indicate either a proper cause, or simply an occasion and some general relation which constitutes the motive for an action; **qvod, qvia, qvum, qvoniam**, more forcibly expressed **qvoniam qvidem, qvando, qvandoqvidem**), nothing further is to be observed in a grammatical point of view (with reference to the form of the proposition) than what has been laid down above in Chap. III. (§§ **357, 358**) concerning the mood of propositions so connected. On the conjunctions of time, and the form of the propositions which they connect, see, also, Chapters II. and III. (§§ **358, 359, 360**).

Obs. We may also notice **ut** in the signification of *since:* **Ut illos libros edidisti, nihil a te postea accepimus** (Cic. Brut. 5); also, **Annus est, qvum (ex qvo) illum vidi.**

§ 442. *a.* Of the Conditional Conjunctions it is to be observed, that **si** in descriptions and narratives sometimes designates rather each repeated occasion (as often as, every time that), than a condition (§ **359**). The limitations of its meaning are more precise in the expressions **si modo, si qvidem**, *if indeed* (sometimes nearly causal, *since*), **si maxime**, *if ever so much;* **si forte**, *if by chance;* **si jam**, *if now;* **ita si**, *under the condition, in case that.* Sometimes a proposition has two conditions annexed to it, the one more general (more remote), and the other more special (proximate):—

Si qvis istorum dixisset, qvos videtis adesse, in qvibus summa auctoritas est, si verbum de republica fecisset, multo plura dixisse, qvam dixisset, putaretur (Cic. Rosc. Am. 1). (For the arrangement, compare § **476**, *b;* and concerning **si** as an interrogative particle, see below, § **451**, *d.*)

Obs. 1. **Tum**, or (more forcibly) **tum vero** (*then, indeed*), is sometimes used in the apodosis, where a circumstance is to be marked emphatically or contrasted with others: **Si id actum est, fateor me errasse qvi hoc maluerim; sin autem victoria nobilium ornamento atqve emolumento reipublicae debet esse, tum vero optimo et nobilissimo cuiqve meam orationem gratissimam esse oportet** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 49). **Haec si et ages et senties, tum eris non modo consul, sed magnus etiam consul** (Id. ad Fam. X. 6). (**Si — at**, see § **437**, *c.*)

Obs. 2. In animated discourse, instead of a protasis with **si**, the condition is sometimes enunciated in an independent proposition, and that which would have been the apodosis follows also in a distinct proposition. In such cases, the indicative is used (sometimes in an interrogative form), when a thing is spoken of, which actually occurs now and then, or perhaps will occur, its real existence being here neither affirmed nor denied; otherwise, the subjunctive, as relating to an imaginary assumption (§ **352**): **De paupertate agitur, multi patientes pauperes commemorantur; de contemnendo honore, multi inhonorati proferuntur** (Cic. Tusc. III. 24). **Rides, majore cachinno concutitur; flet, si lacrimas conspexit amici** (Juv. III. 100). **Roges me** (*suppose you were to ask me*) **qvalem deorum naturam esse ducam, nihil fortasse respondeam; qvaeras, putemne talem esse, qvalis modo a te sit exposita, nihil dicam mihi videri minus** (Cic. N. D. I. 21). **Dares hanc vim M. Crasso, ut digitorum percussione heres posset scriptus esse, qvi re vera non esset heres, in foro, mihi crede, saltaret** (Id. Off. III. 19). In a real protasis of a hypothetical sentence, on the contrary, **si** is only omitted by the poets in some few passages, where the connection and the form of the verb make the relation sufficiently obvious: **Tu qvoqve magnam partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes** (Virg. Æn. VI. 30).

Obs. 3. In order to show that a certain conseqence does not follow from a particular condition or relation, the negative precedes the conditional proposition: **Non, si Opimium defendisti, Carbo, idcirco te isti bonum civem putabunt** (Cic. de Or. II. 40). (**Non, si ——, idcirco non**, *it does not follow, that — not* —— § **460**.)

b. **Sin** (as well as **sin autem**) stands for **si** to signify *but if, if, on the other hand*, either after another protasis with **si**, or without any such preceding it: —

Si plane a nobis deficis, moleste fero; sin Pansae assentari commodum est, ignosco (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 12). **Luxuria qvum omni aetati turpis tum senectuti foedissima est; sin autem etiam libidinum intemperantia accessit, duplex malum est** (Id. Off. I. 34). **Sive** stands for **vel si**, *or if;* e.g. **Postulo, sive aeqvum est, oro** (Ter. Andr. I. 2, 19) = **vel, si aeqvum est, oro**, as it is also expressed. **Sive — sive** repeated, with a common apodosis, signifies *whether — or* (§ **332**, *Obs.*). But **sive — sive** may stand in such a way, that each **sive** forms the protasis to a distinct apodosis, when two cases are put, and the consequence assigned to each (a dilemma): **Sive enim ad sapientiam perveniri potest, non paranda solum ea, sed fruenda etiam est; sive hoc difficile est, tamen nullus est modus investi-**

gandi veri (Cic. Finn. I. 1). (In English, this can only be distinguished by a periphrasis from **si — sin**: *For one can either attain wisdom or not; in the first case*, &c.)

Obs. For **sive volo, sive nolo**, the expression **velim, nolim** (*suppose I were willing, suppose I were unwilling = whether I wish it or not*) is also used in familiar language.

c. A negative condition is expressed by **nisi**, *if not* (*unless*), in such a way as to exclude the case in which a thing does not occur; while, when this condition is wanting, it does or would occur, does, or would do so. (**Ni** is antiquated, but occurs in certain expressions of legal phraseology and of daily life, and in some few other instances; e.g. **ita; ni ita est.** For **nisi** we sometimes find **nisi si**, *except if, except in case that.*) **Si non**, with an emphasis on the negation, is used only where **non** is united with the following verb so as to form one negative idea (*not to do, not to be*), which is put forward in opposition to the affirmative notion, so that the case in which a thing holds, or will hold, is negatively expressed: —

Glebam commosset in agro decumano Siciliae nemo, si Metellus hanc epistolam non misisset (Cic. Verr. III. 18), *if Metellus had omitted to send this letter.* **Fuit apertum, si Conon non fuisset** (*if it had not been for Conon*), **Agesilaum Asiam Tauro tenus regi erepturum fuisse** (Corn. Con. 2). **Aeqvitas tollitur omnis, si habere suum cuiqve non licet** (Cic. Off. II. 22), *if hindrances are laid in the way of every man's keeping his own.*

In most cases **nisi** may also be here used, with a slight difference; e.g. **Nisi Conon fuisset**; yet not always; e.g. **Si feceris id, qvod ostendis, magnam habebo gratiam; si non feceris, ignoscam** (Cic. ad Fam. V. 19). In the signification *though not —, yet*, we never have **nisi**, but **si non** (also **si minus**, chiefly where there is no separate verb attached); e.g. **Si mihi republica bona frui non licuerit, at carebo mala** (Cic. pro Mil. 34). **Cum spe, si non bona, at aliqva tamen vivere. Hoc si minus verbis, re confiteri cogitur** (Cic. de Fat. 10). *If not*, without a verb, in opposition to something going before, is expressed by **si (sin) minus**, more rarely **si non**: **Si id assecutus sum, gaudeo; sin minus, hoc me tamen consolor, qvod posthac nos vises** (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 1). **Si qvid novisti rectius istis, candidus imperti; si non, his utere mecum** (Hor. Ep. I. 6, 67).

Obs. 1. **Nisi forte**, *unless perchance, except on the supposition that*, connects a limitation and exception with the foregoing: **Nemo fere saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit** (Cic. pro Mur. 6). An ironical or

taunting conjecture is often added in this way: **Non possum reperire qvamobrem te in istam amentiam incidisse arbitrer, nisi forte id egisti** (*unless, perchance, this was your object*), **ut hominibus ne oblivisci qvidem rerum tuarum male gestarum liceret** (Cic. Verr. III. 80). (**Nisi vero** is always ironical.)

OBS. 2. **Nisi** is subjoined to negatives and questions with a negative sense with the signification of *but* or *except:* **Qvod adhuc nemo nisi improbissimus fecit, posthac nemo nisi stultissimus non faciet** (Cic. Verr. III. 94). **Qvem unqvam senatus civem nisi me** (= **praeter me**) **nationibus exteris commendavit?** (Id. pro Sest. 60). **Nunqvam vidi animam rationis participem in ulla alia nisi humana figura** (Id. N. D. I. 31). **Nihil aliud fecerunt nisi rem detulerunt** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 37). In this way, **non** and **nisi** often belong to one phrase (*not — except, only*), but in the best writers they are usually separated by their position: **Primum hoc sentio, nisi in bonis viris amicitiam esse non posse** (Cic. Læl. 5).

OBS. 3. After a negative proposition (or one which has a negative force), **nisi** (**nisi tamen**) introduces an exception (*only, only so much, yet*) *:* **De re nihil possum judicare; nisi illud mihi persvadeo, te, talem virum, nihil temere fecisse** (Cic. ad Fam. XIII. 73). **Plura de Jugurtha scribere dehortatur me fortuna mea, et jam antea expertus sum, parum fidei miseris esse. Nisi tamen intelligo, illum supra, qvam ego sum, petere** (Sall. Jug. 24). (**Nisi qvod,** *except in so far as*, occurs also after affirmative propositions: **Tusculanum et Pompejanum valde me delectant; nisi qvod me aere alieno obruerunt,** Cic. ad Att. II. 1).

§ 443. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS are those which denote some opposing circumstance, notwithstanding which the leading proposition is true, and may signify, either simply that we allow such circumstance to be assumed, or that we actually assert it as a fact; such are **qvamvis, licet, qvanqvam, etsi, tametsi** (**tamenetsi**), **etiamsi,** usually employed when the concessive proposition comes first, with **tamen** following. See § **361,** with the Observations. (**Ut,** *suppose even, even if;* see § **440,** *a, Obs.* 4. **Qvum,** *whereas, while on the other hand;* see § **358,** *Obs.* 3.) Of these, **qvanqvam, etsi,** and **tametsi** (most frequently **qvanqvam**) are also so used, that they do not indicate a subordinate proposition, but annex a remark by which the preceding statement is limited and corrected, in an independent form as a leading proposition (*however, and yet, certainly, although*) : —

Qvanqvam non summus ignari, multos studiose contra esse dic-turos. Qvanqvam qvid loqvor? Qvanqvam qvis ignorat, tria m esse genera? (This is often done when the preceding ought is broken off as useless or superfluous). **Etsi persa-t qvodam modo tacite dat ipsa lex potestatem defen-**ic. pro Mil. 4), *yet it is superfluous to argue that the law must give way to higher considerations, for the law itself* ——. **m qvi optime dicunt, tamen, nisi timide ad dicendum , et in exordienda oratione perturbantur, paene impu-identur. Tametsi id accidere non potest** (Cic. de Or.

ater writers combine concessive particles without a verb of not only with participles (see § **424**, *Obs.* 4, § **428**, *Obs.* 2), with adjectives, and other words used to qualify a pro-e.g. **Cicero immanitatem parricidii, qvanqvam per se um, tamen etiam vi orationis exaggerat** (Quint. IX. 2, 53, **[vam per se manifesta est**). In the earlier writers, **qvamvis** ind with an adjective, in the signification *though ever so*; e.g. **here carerem, qvamvis parvis Italiae latebris contentus** Cic. ad Fam. II. 16).

The COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS are of two kinds.

esemblance (as, in the same way as) is expressed by the parti-**ti** (**ut — ita, item**; which also signify *as, for example*), **sicut,** so signifying *for example*), **ceu** (in the poets, and later prose-**tanqvam** (also signifying *as if*, see *Obs.* 1), **qvasi** (*as if*, ame *Obs.*); also, **qvemadmodum,** in the comparison of two ns (rarely, **qvomodo**). (**Prout,** *in proportion as*; **pro eo, ro eo, qvantum** ——.)

. **Tanqvam** rarely (and **qvasi** still more rarely) denotes a n of two things, both of which are stated as actual facts **partium in republica tanqvam in scena optimarum,** Cic. 56, *an actor, who plays the best part in the state, as well as* ge. **Tanqvam poetae boni solent, sic tu in extrema parte tui diligentissimus esse debes,** Id. ad Q. Fr. I. 1. *c*, 16). se, the idea is generally expressed by **ut, sicut, qvemadmo-**ta. A hypothetical proposition, which is only assumed for the mparison (*as if*, § **349**) is expressed by **tanqvam** or **tanqvam si** (**ut si**, rarely **velut** alone) and **qvasi. Qvasi** (**qvasi vero**) larly used, when in derision, or to correct an erroneous suppo-state what is *not* the case: **Qvasi ego id curem!** *As if I that!* **Qvasi vero haec similia sint (non multum interest)!**

(**Perinde**, or **proinde qvasi**, **perinde tanqvam**; *in the same way as if*, **perinde ac si**).[1]

Obs. 2. **Qvasi** stands before a word, to signify that it is used to express a thing figuratively, and by way of approximation; e.g. **Servis respublica qvaedam et qvasi civitas domus est** (Plin. Ep. VIII. 16). **Qvasi morbus qvidam, qvasi qvoddam vinculum.**)

Obs. 3. A comparison by means of **ut — ita (sic)** is often made use of, in order to draw attention to a difference, and to limit the first member by the second, with the signification *certainly — but (on the other hand)*: **Ut errare potuisti (qvis enim id effugerit?) sic decipi te non potuisse, qvis non videt?** (Cic. ad Fam. X. 20). **Consul ut fortasse vere, sic parum utiliter in praesens certamen respondit** (Liv. IV. 6). On the use of **ut — ita** with **qvisqve**, see § **495.** **Ita** (with a wish) — **ut** is used in oaths (*so truly ——, as*): **Ita me dii ament, ut ego nunc non tam mea causa laetor qvam illius** (Ter. Heaut. IV. 1, 8); the wish may also be inserted in the affirmation as a parenthesis, without **ut**: **Saepe, ita me dii juvent, te auctorem consiliorum meorum desideravi** (Cic. ad Att. I. 16). (Compare **peream, si ——** § **348**, *Obs.* 4.)

Obs. 4. Notice the form of expression in the following: **Ajunt hominem, ut erat furiosus, respondisse**, &c. (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 12, where the adjective is introduced into the clause expressing comparison, *raging as he was* = **qvo erat furore**, not **hominem furiosum, ut erat**).

Obs. 5. Where an example is added to confirm what precedes, this is not put, as in English, in a demonstrative form (*so, for example, your father lately told me*), but relatively with **ut (velut)**: **Ut nuper pater tuus mihi narravit ——.**

b. **Qvam** and **ac (atqve)** are used as conjunctions which merely connect the members of a comparison, without themselves expressing similarity (or equality). **Qvam** stands after **tam** (*so — as*), after comparatives and words with a comparative signification, as **ante, post, supra, malo, praestat.** **(Dimidius, multiplex qvam.)** **Ac**, which is also a simple copulative conjunction, has the signification of *as, than*, &c., with adjectives and adverbs which denote similarity or dissimilarity (equality or inequality); namely, **similis, dissimilis, similiter, par, pariter, aeqve, juxta, perinde** or **proinde, contrarius, contra, alius, aliter, secus, pro eo** (*in proportion as*), and sometimes after **idem, talis, totidem**, for **qvi, qvalis, qvot** (§ **328**,

[1] **Perinde ac** instead of **perinde ac si**, and **sicut** instead of **velut si**, are rare expressions.

b) ; also in combination with **si (perinde, similis, similiter, pariter, juxta, idem ac si,** *as if*) : —

Amicos aeqve ac semetipsos diligere oportet. Date operam, ne simili utamur fortuna atqve antea usi sumus (Ter. Phorm. Prol. 38). **Similiter facis, ac si me roges, cur te duobus contuear oculis** (Cic. N. D. III. 3). **Aliter, atqve ostenderam, facio** (Id. ad Fam. II. 3). **Longe alia nobis, ac tu scripseras, narrantur** (Id. ad Att. XI. 10). **Non dixi secus, ac sentiebam** (Id. de Or. II. 6). **Philosophia non proinde, ac de hominum vita merita est, laudatur** (Id. Tusc. V. 2). **Cornelii filius Sullam accusat, idemqve valere debet, ac si pater indicaret** (Id. pro Sull. 18).

Obs. 1. **Aeqve, juxta, proinde, contra,** and **secus,** are also, but less frequently, constructed with **qvam. Alius, aliter,** may stand with **qvam,** if the proposition in which they occur is negative, or interrogative with a negative sense, and sometimes under other circumstances, in the later writers (from Livy, downwards) : **Agitur nihil aliud in hac causa, qvam ut nullum sit posthac in re publica publicum consilium** (Cic. pro Rab. perd. 2). **Cavebo, ne aliter Hortensius, qvam ego velim, meum laudet ingenium** (Id. Verr. I. 9). **Jovis epulum num alibi qvam in Capitolio fieri potest?** (Liv. V. 52). **Te alia omnia, qvam qvae velis, agere moleste fero** (Plin. Ep. VII. 15). Instead of **nihil (qvid) aliud qvam,** we often find **nihil (qvid) aliud nisi** ; e.g. **Bellum ita suscipi debet, ut nihil aliud nisi pax qvaesita videatur** (Cic. Off. I. 23). (See § **442,** *c*, *Obs.* 2.)

Obs. 2. Instead of **similis, similiter, proinde ac si,** we also find **similis, similiter, proinde ut si, tanqvam si, qvasi.**

Obs. 3. A copulative clause may occasionally supply the place of a comparative ; e.g. **Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur et legati ab Aeduis et a Treviris veniebant** (Cæs. B. G. I. 37), *at one and the same time Cæsar received these orders and ambassadors came* ——. **Et** is very rarely found after **alius,** and other words, where it cannot be understood as purely copulative.

Obs. 4. In the poets, and later writers, the word expressing comparison is sometimes repeated, without a conjunction : **Aeqve pauperibus prodest, locupletibus aeqve** (Hor. Ep. I. 1, 25).

§ 445. The use of relative propositions in Latin has some peculiarities.

A relative proposition may again have a subordinate proposition appended to it, to which it stands in the relation of a leading proposition ; e.g. **Ut ignava animalia, qvae jacent torpentqve, si cibum iis suggeras.** If, then, the relative refers to the same per-

son or thing (as the demonstrative) in the subordinate proposition (like **iis** in the above example), the relative may be incorporated in the proposition which was subordinate to it, but now takes the lead of it, and may have its case determined by the new construction (so that in the leading proposition a demonstrative is to be supplied from the subordinate): —

Ut ignava animalia, qvibus si cibum suggeras, jacent torpentqve (Tac. Hist. III. 36); just as one may say, **Ignavis animalibus si cibum suggeras, jacent torpentqve**). **Is enim fueram, cui qvum liceret majores ex otio fructus capere qvam ceteris, non dubitaverim me gravissimis tempestatibus obvium ferre** (Cic. R. P. I. 4) = **qvi qvum mihi liceret ——, non dubitaverim.**

In the next place a connection may be formed by a relative pronoun between a leading and subordinate proposition (a protasis and apodosis), in which the relative pronoun belongs *exclusively* to the subordinate proposition (without being at the same time understood as a demonstrative in the leading proposition). Propositions thus connected are expressed in English either by resolving the relative into a demonstrative (which belongs to the subordinate proposition) and a conjunction (belonging to the leading proposition) or by a circumlocution; sometimes the subordinate proposition may be rendered by an infinitive or a substantive with a preposition: —

Ea svasi Pompejo, qvibus ille si paruisset, Caesar tantas opes, qvantas nunc habet, non haberet (Cic. ad Fam. VI. 6) = **ut, si ille iis paruisset, Caesar tantas opes habiturus non fuerit,** &c. **Noli adversus eos me velle ducere, cum qvibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiam reliqvi** (Corn. Att. IV.) = *against those with whom I was so unwilling to bear arms against you, that I left Italy for that very reason.* **Ea mihi dedisti, qvae ut conseqverer, qvemvis laborem, suscepturus fui,** *the very thing for the attainment of which I,* &c. **Populus Romanus tum ducem habuit, qvalis si qvi nunc esset, tibi idem, qvod illis accidit, contigisset** (Cic. Phil. II. 7).

In this way two relatives sometimes come together in the same sentence (in different cases), when its subordinate proposition is already relative for some other reason: —

Epicurus non satis politus est iis artibus, qvas qvi tenent, eruditi appellantur (Cic. Finn. I. 7, *the possessors of which are called learned,* or, *the possession of which procures one the appellation of learned*). **Infima est condicio et fortuna servorum, qvibus, non**

male praecipiunt, qvi ita jubent uti ut mercenariis (Id. Off. I. 13). **(Ea mihi eripere conantur qvae, si adempta fuerint, nulla dignitatis meae conservandae spes relinqvitur = qvibus ademptis,** § **428,** *Obs.* 7).

§ 446. A relative clause is in a peculiar manner introduced into or placed before a proposition, to show the relation of this proposition to some quality or characteristic of the person or thing spoken of in the proposition. This quality, or characteristic, is mentioned in the relative clause, of which it is usually the subject, with **sum**; but it sometimes forms a genitive or ablative of quality with the relative, and as such qualifies the subject of the main proposition: —

Si mihi negotium permisisses, qvi meus amor in te est, confecissem (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 2), *such is my love to you.* **Spero, qvae tua prudentia et temperantia est, te jam, ut volumus, vivere** (Id. ad Att. VI. 9). **Qva es prudentia, nihil te fugiet** (Id. ad Fam. XI. 3). **Ajax, qvo animo traditur** (sc. **fuisse**), **millies oppetere mortem qvam illa perpeti maluisset** (Id. Off. I. 31). (The same sense may be expressed by **pro**: **Tu pro tua prudentia, qvid optimum factu sit, videbis,** Cic. ad Fam. X. 27).

Obs. **Qvantus** is sometimes used in the same way: **Qvanta ingenia in nostris hominibus esse video, non despero fore aliqvem aliqvando, qvi existat talis orator, qvalem qvaerimus** (Cic. de Or. I. 21), *considering the great abilities which* ——. **Illis, qvantum importunitatis habent, parum est impune male fecisse** (Sall. Jug. 31).

§ 447. Where in English the subject of a proposition is described by means of the verb *to be*, and a superlative, or an ordinal numeral, or a substantive with an adjective, followed by a relative clause, in Latin only a simple proposition is used, while the superlative, or ordinal, is used appositively: —

Primum omnium Sejum vidimus, *the first man we saw was Sejus.* **Hoc firmissimo utimur argumento** (or **ex argumentis, qvibus utimur, firmissimum hoc est,** with the relative proposition referring to the whole class; not **argumentum firmissimum, qvo utimur, hoc est**). **Caesar explorat, qvo commodissimo itinere vallem transire possit** (Cæs. B. G. V. 49). **Non contemnendus hic hostis advenit,** *it is no contemptible enemy that is coming here.*[1]

---

[1] **Charilaus fuit, qvi ad Publium Philonem venit et tradere se ait moenia statuisse** (Liv. VIII. 25), i.e. *there was a certain Charilaus there: he came* —: not, *It was Charilaus, who* (**Charilaus ad Philonem venit**).

§ 448. The Latins often use the relative pronoun, not to connect a subordinate proposition, but as a demonstrative, in order to continue the discourse in a new proposition, so that **qvi** stands for **is**, while it at the same time connects the proposition with the preceding, almost like **et is** (never, therefore, where **et** or some other particle of transition is actually made use of.) But this can only be done when no emphasis rests on the pronoun (on account of an antithesis or the like). **Qvi** may also be used in this way in a protasis, and in combination with such conjunctions as mark a protasis; e.g. **qvi qvum** (= **et qvum is**). In the same way are employed the relative particles **qvare, qvamobrem, qvapropter, qvocirca** (*and therefore*): —

Caesar eqvitatum omnem mittit, qvi videant, qvas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qvi, cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum eqvitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt (Cæs. B. G. I. 15). **Postremo insidias vitae hujusce Sex. Roscii parare coeperunt, neqve arbitrabantur se posse diutius alienam pecuniam domino incolumi obtinere. Qvod hic simulatqve sensit, de amicorum cognatorumqve sententia Romam confugit** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 9), *as soon as he observed this*. **Qvae qvum ita sint, nihil censeo mutandum** (*now this being the state of the case*).

Obs. 1. Sometimes such a relative refers more freely to a person or thing not named in the words which immediately precede it, but suggested by the connection, and mentioned not long before; e.g. **Ad illam qvam institui, causam frumenti ac decumarum revertar. Qvi qvum agros maximos per se ipsum depopularetur, ad minores civitates habebat alios qvos immitteret** (Cic. Verr. III. 36, of Verres, whose conduct is the subject of the whole passage).

Obs. 2. In Latin, neither an adversative conjunction (**autem, vero**) nor one that expresses a conclusion (**igitur, ideo**) can be attached to the relative. Yet **sed qvi** is used in opposition to a preceding adjective (but in this case the **sed** connects the adjective with the omitted antecedent of **qvi**): **Vir bonus, sed qvi omnia negligenter agat.** But if a compound proposition begins with a relative clause, the conjunction which belongs to the leading proposition is drawn into it: **Qvae autem (igitur) cupiditates a natura proficiscuntur, facile explentur** = **Eae autem (igitur) cupiditates, qvae,** &c.

§ 449. **Qvod** (properly the neuter of the relative pronoun) sometimes stands before a conjunction belonging to a subordinate proposition which begins a period, to denote the connection of the thought with the preceding, especially before **si** and **nisi** (**qvod si**, *now if*,

and if, but if, **qvod nisi**), but also before **etsi, qvia, qvoniam,** and **utinam**: —

Qvod si corporis gravioribus morbis vitae jucunditas impeditur, qvanto magis animi morbis impediri necesse est? (Cic. Finn. I. 18), *and if* —. **Coluntur tyranni duntaxat ad tempus. Qvod si forte ceciderunt, tum intelligitur, qvam fuerint inopes amicorum** (Id. Læl. 15), *but if they fall* ——. **Qvodsi illinc inanis profugisses, tamen ista tua fuga nefaria, proditio consulis tui scelerata judicaretur** (Id. Verr. I. 14), *now even if* ——. **Qvod nisi Metellus hoc tam graviter egisset atqve illam rem imperio prohibuisset, vestigium statuarum Verris in tota Sicilia nullum esset relictum** (Id. ib. II. 66). **Qvod etsi ingeniis magnis praediti qvidam dicendi copiam sine ratione conseqvuntur, ars tamen est dux certior qvam natura** (Id. Finn. IV. 4), *and even if* ——. **Qvod qvia nullo modo sine amicitia firmam et perpetuam jucunditatem vitae tenere possumus, idcirco amicitia cum voluptate connectitur** (Id. ib. I. 20). In other cases, when **qvod** stands before **qvum** and **ubi**, it has its original signification as a relative pronoun (in the place of the demonstrative) in such a way that that which is briefly indicated by the pronoun is afterwards expressed more definitely by an accusative with the infinitive (according to § **395**, *Obs.* 6), by which means the pronoun becomes superfluous: e.g. **Criminabatur etiam M. Pomponius L. Manlium, qvod Titum filium, qvi postea est Torqvatus, appellatus ab hominibus relegasset et ruri habitare jussisset. Qvod qvum audisset adolescens filius, negotium exhiberi patri, accurrisse Romam dicitur** (Cic. Off. III. 31), *when the son observed this, that* ——.[1]

§ 450. A direct question, in which no interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective, or adverb is used, may be put without any particle, which marks its interrogative character, if it is asked with an expression of doubt and surprise; a question expressed affirmatively implying that the answer is expected in the negative, and *vice versa*: —

Tantimal eficii crimen probare te, Eruci, censes posse talibus viris, si ne causam qvidem maleficii protuleris? (Cic. Rosc. Am. 26). **Ut omittam vim et naturam deorum, ne homines qvidem censetis, nisi imbecilli essent, futuros beneficos et benignos fuisse?** (Id. N. D. I. 44). **Clodius insidias fecit Miloni?** (Id. pro Mil. 22). **Rogas?** (Id. ib. 22), *Can you ask?* **Infelix est Fabri-**

[1] The first-mentioned use of **qvod** is traced in a similar manner.

cius, qvod rus suum fodit? (Sen. de Prov. 3). **Qvid? non sciunt ipsi viam, domum qva redeant?** (Ter. Hec. III. 2, 25). **Non pudet philosophum in eo gloriari, qvod haec non timeat?** (Cic. Tusc. I. 21).

A single dependent question (not disjunctive) must always be distinguished by an interrogative particle.[1]

§ 451. The particles which serve to designate a single question are **ne** (attached to the end of a word), **num** (**numne, numnam, numqvid, ecqvid**), with a negative **nonne** (**si,** *whether*). (Concerning **an** and **utrum** see under the head of the disjunctive question, §§ **452, 453.**)

a. **Ne,** when affixed to a verb, denotes a question in general, without any accessory signification (affirmative or negative): **Venitne pater?** Yet it sometimes implies (in direct questions) an affirmation, so that it has nearly the same force as **nonne: Videmusne (videsne), ut pueri ne verberibus qvidem a contemplandis rebus perqvirendisqve deterreantur?** (Cic. Finn. V. 18). **Estne Sthenius is, qvi omnes honores domi suae magnificentissime gessit?** (Id. Verr. II. 46). If, on the other hand, **ne** is attached to another word than the verb, its effect is to express surprise, sometimes a doubt: **Apollinemne tu Delium spoliare ausus es? Illine tu templo tam sancto manus impias afferre conatus es?** (Cic. Verr. I. 18). (It rarely has this force with a verb: **Potestne, Crasse, virtus servire?** Id. de Or. I. 52). In dependent questions, this accessory signification is lost sight of, and it is rendered in English by *whether:* **Qvaero de Regillo Lepidi filio, rectene meminerim, patre vivo mortuum,** Cic. ad Att. XII. 24.)[2]

b. **Num,** in direct questions, almost always implies that a negative reply is expected; in dependent propositions, it only asks the question (*whether*). The doubt is expressed somewhat more strongly by **numne** (with the addition of the enclitic **ne**): **Num negare audes?** (Cic. in Cat. I. 4). **Num facti Pamphilum piget? Num ejus color pudoris signum usqvam indicat?** (Ter. Andr. V. 3, 6). **Numne, si Coriolanus habuit amicos, ferre contra patriam arma illi cum Coriolano debuerunt? Num Viscellinum amici regnum appetentem debuerunt adjuvare?** (Cic. Læl. 11). (**Num qvid vis?** *Have you any commands?* without a negative signification.) **Legati speculari jussi sunt,**

---

[1] The following is a direct question: **Dic mihi: Lysippus eodem aere, eadem temperatione, ceteris omnibus centum Alexandros ejusdemmodi facere non posset** (Cic. Acad. II. 26): *Tell me; could not Lysippus —?*

[2] **Ain' tu? Ain' vero?** *Do you say so? What do you say?*

num sollicitati animi sociorum a rege Perseo essent (Liv. XLII. 19). The simple interrogative phrase is strengthened by the addition of **qvid** (in the accusative, according to § **229**, *b*): **Numqvid duas habetis patrias?** (Cic. Legg. II. 2). **Scire velim, numqvid necesse sit esse Romae** (Id. ad Att. XII. 8). The same is expressed, in familiar language, by **numnam** (as in **qvisnam, numqvisnam**).

Obs. **Ecqvid** also stands as a mere interrogative particle, when we draw a person's attention to something: **Qvid est, Catilina? Ecqvid attendis? Ecqvid animadvertis horum silentium?** (Cic. in Cat. I. 8). (**Qvid venis?** *Why do you come?*)

c. **Nonne** expresses a question to which an affirmative answer is expected, an appeal being made to that which the person addressed must admit and acknowledge: **Qvid? canis nonne similis lupo?** (Cic. N. D. I. 35). **Si qvi rex, si qva natio fecisset aliqvid in civem Romanum ejusmodi, nonne publice vindicaremus? non bello perseqveremur?** (Id. Verr. V. 58). (In this way, where there are repetitions, **nonne** often stands only in the first clause): **Qvaesitum ex Socrate est, Archelaum, Perdiccae filium, nonne beatum putaret** (Cic. Tusc. V. 12).

Obs. By a question with **nonne**, a certainty is expressed, that a thing *is* so, by a question with **non** (see above) surprise, that a thing *is not* so (does not take place), and a doubt of the possibility of its being denied: **Nonne meministi, qvid paullo ante dixerim?** (*Do you not remember? You remember, surely,* ——.) **Tu hoc non vides?** (*Do you really not see this?*) Yet **nonne** is sometimes found where we should expect simply **non.**

d. **Si** sometimes stands in dependent questions, in the signification *whether:* **Visam, si domi est** (Ter. Heaut. I. 1, 118; with the indicative instead of the subjunctive). **Philopoemen qvaesivit, si Lycortas incolumis evasisset** (Liv. XXXIX. 50). Yet this is rare in prose, except with **exspecto**, and with verbs which designate an attempt (**experior, tento, conor**), after which it is the conjunction commonly used: **Ser. Sulpicius non recusavit, qvominus vel extremo spiritu, si qvam opem reipublicae ferre posset, experiretur** (Cic. Phil. IX. 1). **Tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset** (Liv. I. 57). From this it comes that even where no such verb has preceded, **si** is put with the subjunctive of **possum** (**volo**) following, to express a design and an attempt (*whether perhaps, to try whether perhaps*): **Hostes circumfunduntur ex omnibus partibus, si qvem aditum reperire possint** (Cæs. B. G. VI. 37) **Hannibal etiam de industria Fabium irritat, si forte accensum tot cladibus sociorum detrahere ad aeqvum certamen possit** (Liv. XXII. 13).

§ 452. In a DISJUNCTIVE question, by which we ask which of two (or more) opposed members is affirmed or denied, the first member is distinguished by **utrum** or **ne**; yet this sign may be omitted (especially where the antithesis is short and obvious), and the question expressed solely by the tone. The second (and remaining) members are distinguished by **an** (**anne**), or (especially in dependent questions, the first member of which has no such sign) by **ne**.

(**Ne — ne** is rare, and found chiefly in the poets: **utrum — ne**, very rare.) *Or not* is expressed by **annon** or **necne**. **Utrum nescis, qvam alte ascenderis, an id pro nihilo habes?** (Cic. ad Fam. X. 26). **Utrum Milonis corporis an Pythagorae tibi malis vires ingenii dari?** (Id. Cat. M. 10). **Permultum interest, utrum perturbatione aliqvà animi an consulto fiat injuria** (Id. Off. I. 8). **Utrum hoc tu parum meministi, an ego non satis intellexi, an mutasti sententiam?** (Id. ad Att. IX. 2). **Vosne L. Domitium an vos L. Domitius deseruit?** (Cæs. B. C. II. 32). **Qvaeritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliqvos expetatur** (Cic. de Or. III. 29). **Sortietur an non?** (Id. Prov. Cons. 15). **Deliberabatur de Avarico, incendi placeret an defendi** (Cæs. B. G. VII. 15). **Refert, qvi audiant orationem, senatus an populus an judices** (Cic. de Or. III. 55). **In incerto erat, vicissent victine essent** (Liv. V. 28). **Nihil interesse putant valeamus aegrine simus** (Cic. Finn. IV. 25). **Qvi teneant oras, hominesne feraene, qvaerere constituit** (Virg. Æn. I. 308). **Dicamne huic, an non dicam?** (Ter. Eun. V. 4, 46). **Qvaeritur, Corinthiis bellum indicamus an non** (Cic. Inv. I. 12). **Sunt haec tuà verba necne?** (Id. Tusc. III. 18). **Utrum vultis patri Flacco licuisse istam pecuniam capere necne?** (Id. pro Flacc. 25). **Dii utrum sint, necne sint, qvaeritur** (Id. N. D. III. 7). **Demus beneficium, necne, in nostra est potestate** (Id. Off. I. 15).

OBS. 1. **Utrum** (from **uter**, *which of two*) shows at once the number of alternatives (but is also used when there are more than two members). It is strengthened by affixing **ne** to the nearest word which the question emphasizes: **Est etiam illa distinctio, utrum illudne non videatur aegre ferendum, ex qvo suscepta sit aegritudo, an omnium rerum tollenda omnino aegritudo** (Cic. Tusc. IV. 27). In the poets, we also find **utrumne** in one word.

OBS. 2. From this we must distinguish **utrum** as a pronoun, with which the two members following with **ne — an** are in apposition: **Aeqvum Scipio dicebat esse Siculos cogitare, utrum esset illis utilius, suisne servire, an populo Romano obtemperare** (Cic. Verr.

IV. 33). (**Utrum**, employed in a simple question, instead of **num**, **is a very rare irregularity.**)

§ 453. **An** stands not only in the second member of a disjunctive question, but also in such simple questions as are used to complete and emphasize what immediately precedes; when it is asked what must be the case *otherwise* (i.e. if there is some objection to be made to what goes before); or, what must be the case *then* (i.e. if some idea involved in what goes before is confirmed), or when a question is itself answered under the form of a question, or some conjecture respecting what is asked is added in the interrogative form (in which case **an** sometimes takes the meaning of **nonne**):—

Epicurus voluptatem sensus titillantem nimis etiam novit, qvippe qvi testificetur, ne intelligere qvidem se posse, ubi sit aut qvod sit ullum bonum praeter illud, qvod sensibus et corpore capiatur. An haec ab eo non dicuntur? (Cic. Finn. II. 3), *Or does he not say this?* **Qvasi non necesse sit, qvod isto modo pronunties, id aut esse aut non esse. An tu dialecticis ne imbutus qvidem es?** (Id. Tusc. I. 7), *Or have you not learned even the first principles of dialectics?* **Sed ad haec, nisi molestum est, habeo, qvae velim. An me, inqvam, nisi te audire vellem, censes haec dicturum fuisse?** (Id. Finn. I. 8), *Do you, then, believe that ——?* **Qvid ais? an venit Pamphilus?** (Ter. Hec. III. 2, 11), *What say you? is Pamphilus come?* **Qvid dicis? an bello fugitivorum Siciliam virtute tua liberatam?** (Cic. Verr. V. 2). **Qvando autem ista vis evanuit? an postqvam homines minus creduli esse coeperunt?** (*was it not from the time when?* Id. Div. II. 57).[1] The signification *or?* is strengthened by **vero**: **An vero dubitamus, qvo ore Verres ceteros homines inferiore loco solitus sit appellare, qvi ob jus dicendum M. Octavium poscere pecuniam non dubitarit?** (Cic. Verr. I. 48), *Or can we doubt —— ?*

A double question, which involves an inference, § **438**, is often so connected by **an** or **an vero**. In other simple questions **an** is not used, except in the later writers and the poets in dependent questions; e.g. **Reges dicuntur torqvere mero, qvem perspexisse laborant, an sit amicitia dignus** (Hor. A. P. 436).[1] **Qvaeritur, an providentia mundus regatur** (Qvinct. III. 5, 6). From this, however, we must except the usage of **an** in the signification *whether not* (*whether not perhaps*, inclining to an affirmation) after **haud scio, nescio, dubito, du-**

---

[1] **Numqvid duas habetis patrias? an est una illa patria communis?** (Cic. Legg. II. 2; not disjunctive, but first a simple question: *have you perhaps —?* and then it is added: *is not rather —?*)

bium, incertum, est, and sometimes after other expressions which denote uncertainty (**delibero, haesito**): **Qvae fuit unqvam in ullo homine tanta constantia? Constantiam dico? Nescio an melius patientiam possim dicere** (Cic. pro Lig. 9). **Aristotelem excepto Platone haud scio an recte dixerim principem philosophorum** (Id. Finn. V. 3). **Est id qvidem magnum atqve haud scio an maximum** (Id. ad Fam. IX. 15). **Dubito an Venusiam tendam et ibi exspectem de legionibus** (Id. ad Att. XVI. 5). **Moriendum certe est, et id incertum, an hoc ipso die** (Id. Cat. M. 20). **Qvi scis, an prudens huc se projecerit?** (Hor. A. P. 462), *how do you know whether he has not perhaps —?* The expressions **haud scio an, nescio an,** acquire therefore the signification *perhaps*, and denote a suspicion that a thing *is*. A doubt whether a thing is, is expressed by the addition of negatives: **Contigit tibi, qvod haud scio an nemini** (Cic. ad Fam. IX. 14). **Hoc dijudicari nescio an nunqvam, sed hoc sermone certo non potest** (Id. Legg. I. 21). **Atqve haud sciam an ne opus qvidem sit, nihil unqvam deesse amicis** (Id. Læl. 14), *whether it is on the whole even to be wished.*[2] **Anne** (with the enclitic **ne**) is not often used, aud in prose only in the second part of a double question: **Interrogatur, tria pauca sint, anne multa** (Cic. Acad. II. 29).

Obs. 1. **An** is sometimes used without an express question, to denote an uncertainty and wavering between two conceptions (*or perhaps, it is uncertain whether — or*): **Themistocles, qvum ei Simonides an qvis alius artem memoriae polliceretur, Oblivionis, inqvit, mallem** (Cic. Finn. II. 32). **Ea suspicio, vitio orationis an rei, haud sane purgata est** (Liv. XXVIII. 43) = **incertum, vitio orationis an rei.**

Obs. 2. From disjunctive questions we must carefully distinguish questions concerning two (or more) different but not opposed members, connected by **aut,** to both (or all) of which an answer in the negative is anticipated: **Qvid ergo? solem dicam aut lunam aut coelum deum?** (Cic. N. D. I. 30). **Num me igitur fefellit? aut num Antonius diutius sui potuit esse dissimilis?** (Id. Phil. II. 36).

§ 454. An answer is expressed affirmatively by **etiam, ita,** *yes;* or (with emphatic affirmation) by **vero** (rarely **verum**), *yes, certainly;* **sane** (**sane qvidem**), *yes indeed, yes willingly;* or by merely repeating the verb with which the question is expressed. We may also combine the verb with **vero,** or **vero** and a pronoun, which denotes the subject in the question. A negative answer is ex-

---

[1] The poets occasionally employ even **an — an** in a disjunctive interrogation: Virg. Æn. X. 680; Ov. Met. X. 254.

[2] **Nescio an** is used in later writers, without thus approximating to an assertion: **Nescio an noris hominem, qvamqvam nosse debes** (Plin. Ep. VI. 21).

pressed by **non, minime** (emphatically by **minime vero**). An answer conveying a correction (*no, on the other hand; much rather*) is indicated by **imo** (**imo vero**):—

Aut etiam aut non respondere (Cic. Acad. II. 32). **Dices, habeo hic, qvos legam, non minus disertos. Etiam; sed legendi semper occasio est, audiendi non semper** (Plin. Ep. II. 3).—**Qvidnam? inqvit Catulus; an laudationes? Ita, inqvit Antonius** (Cic. de Or. II. 10. **Ita vero; ita est; ita prorsus**).—**Fuisti saepe, credo, qvum Athenis esses, in scholis philosophorum. Vero, ac libenter qvidem** (Id. Tusc. II. 11). **Facies? Verum** (Ter. Hęaut. V. 3, 11). **Visne locum mutemus et in insula ista sermoni reliqvo demus operam sedentes? Sane qvidem** (Cic. Legg. II. 1).—**Fierine potest? Potest. Qvaesivi, fierine posset. Ille posse respondit.**—**Dasne, aut manere animos post mortem aut morte ipsa interire? Do vero** (Cic. Tusc. I. 11). **Qvaero, si haec emptoribus venditor non dixerit aedesqve vendiderit pluris multo, qvam se venditurum putarit, num injuste fecerit? Ille vero, inqvit Antipater** (Id. Off. III. 13).—**Cognatus aliqvis fuit aut propinqvus? Non** (Id. Verr. II. 43. **Non fuit**). **Num igitur peccamus? Minime vos qvidem** (Cic. ad Att. VIII. 9). **An tu haec non credis** (*Do you then not believe this?*) **Minime vero** (Id. Tusc. I. 6). (**Non faciam**, *no, that I will not do.*)—**Causa igitur non bona est? Imo optima** (Id. ad Att. IX. 7). **Qvid? si patriam prodere conabitur pater, silebitne filius? Imo vero obsecrabit patrem, ne id faciat** (Id. Off. III. 23). **Vivit? Imo vero etiam in senatum venit** (Id. in Cat. I. 1).

Obs. 1. Since **vero** only gives emphasis, it may also be employed in propositions, which assure us of the negative of a thing that has been doubted, where it may be translated by *no:* **Ego vero tibi non irascor, mi frater** (*no, I am not angry with you*).

Obs. 2. Where the motive or explanation of an affirmation or denial is immediately subjoined with **enim**, the affirmation or denial is often not expressed by any specific word: **Tum Antonius, Heri enim, inqvit, hoc mihi proposueram, ut hos abs te discipulos abducerem** (Cic. de Or. II. 10), *yes, for*—. (**Siqvidem**—, *yes, if*—.)

§ 455. Negative Particles. The usual word by which a thing is stated negatively is **non**, *not*. **Haud**, *not*, originally signifies a negation somewhat less definite, yet there is often no distinction to be observed in the meaning; but in good prose **haud** is commonly not used with verbs (except in the expression **haud scio an**), but only with adjectives and adverbs (e.g. **haud mediocris, haud spernendus, haud procul, haud sane, haud dubie**, *certainly*.

doubtless), and in some of the best writers (Cicero, Cæsar) it is rarely met with even in this combination; in other authors it occurs more frequently. *Scarcely, almost not*, is expressed by **vix**.

Obs. 1. Where the negation is opposed to an affirmation, **haud** is not used even with adverbs; we can only say, **non tam — qvam, non modo — sed, non qvo — sed.**

Obs. 2. **Neqvaqvam**, *by no means;* **neutiqvam**, *in no wise* (rare in prose); **haudqvaqvam**, *by no means* (**homo prudens et gravis, haudqvaqvam eloqvens**, Cic. de Or. I. 9).

Obs. 3. **Non**, in connection with a verb, often signifies *to omit to*. Hence comes the expression **non possum** with **non** and an infinitive; *I cannot omit to, I cannot do otherwise than* (= **facere non possum, qvin**): **Non potui non dare litteras ad Caesarem** (Cic. ad Att. VIII. 2). **Non poteram in illius patriae custodis tanta suspicione non metu exanimari** (Id. pro Mil. 24). **Tuum consilium nemo potest non maxime laudare** (Id. ad Fam. IV. 7).

Obs. 4. **Nihil** (*nothing*), *in no respect, in no wise* (§ **229** *b*), is sometimes put with verbs in the place of **non**: **Ea species nihil terruit eqvos** (Liv. IV. 33), *struck no terror into the horses*. **Do vita beata nihil repugno** (Cic. N. D. I. 24). **Nihil necesse est ad omnes tuas litteras rescribere** (Id. ad Att. VII. 2). This is rarely done with adjectives: **Plebs Ardeatium, nihil Romanae plebi similis, in agros optimatium excursiones facit** (Liv. IV. 9). (**Nonnihil molesta haec sunt mihi**, Ter. Ad. I. 2, 62).

Obs. 5. In familiar speaking and writing, and in imitations of the same, **nullus** is sometimes used, in apposition to the subject, instead of **non**, occasionally with an intensive signification (*not at all*): **Sextus ab armis nullus discedit** (Cic. ad Att. XV. 22). **Haec bona in tabulas publicas nulla redierunt** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 44), *were not entered at all*. **Multa possunt videri esse, qvae omnino nulla sunt** (Id. Acad. II. 15), *do not exist at all*. (On the other hand, we have always **industria non mediocris**, *no small industry*, if the negation applies to the adjective; but **nemo magnus homo, nulla magna virtus invidiam effugit**.)

§ 456. A negation which denotes a will, wish, or design, is expressed by **ne**. **Ne** is consequently used in wishes (with the subjunctive, § **351**), in exhortations to assume a thing (§ **352**), in prohibitions and warnings (in the imperative or subjunctive, § **386**), in object-clauses after verbs which denote an activity or an effort and wish (§ **372**, *b*, and § **375**), and in propositions denoting a purpose (§ **355**); while, on the contrary, **ut non** is employed in proposi-

tions expressing a result, and in those object-clauses which are treated of in §§ **373** and **374**. In object-clauses after verbs denoting a wish and effort (§ **372**, but not after such as denote an agency employed in hindering a thing, § **375**) and in propositions denoting a purpose, **ut — ne** is often employed instead of **ne**, by which is expressed first of all the object or design in general, and afterwards the negation: —

Trebatio mandavi, ut, si tu eum velles ad me mittere, ne recusaret (Cic. ad Fam. IV. 1). **Sed ut hic, qvi intervenit, ne ignoret, qvae res agatur, de natura agebamus deorum** (Id. N. D. I. 7).

When the negation in a final proposition or object-clause is expressed in English by a negative pronoun or pronominal adverb (*that none*, &c.) the negation is expressed in Latin by the particle, which is followed by an affirmative pronoun (**ne qvis, qvid, ullus, necubi, neqvando**): —

Edictum est, ne qvis injussu consulis castris egrederetur. Also in prohibitions, **ne qvis faciat, ne qvid feceris**, is more frequent than **nemo faciat, nihil feceris** (especially in the language of the law).

Obs. 1. **Ne** is the shortest form of the negative particle. It is seen in **ne — qvidem**, in **neqve, nescio**, &c.

Obs. 2. In some passages, chiefly in the poets, **non** is found instead of **ne** with the subjunctive to express a prohibition or a summons; e.g. **Non sint sine lege capilli** (Ov. A. A. III. 133).

Obs. 3. In object-clauses after verbs which signify *to bring to pass*, *to effect*, especially after **facio** and **efficio**, **ut non** is also made use of (**ut nemo, nihil, nusqvam**, &c.). **Ex hoc efficitur, non ut voluptas ne sit voluptas, sed ut voluptas non sit summum bonum** (Cic. Finn. II. 8). In like manner **non** without **ut** is used after **velim, vellem** (§ **350**, *b*, *Obs.* 1): **Vellem tua te occupatio non impedisset** (Id. ad Att. III. 22).

Obs. 4. **Ut ne** (occasionally **ne**), signifying *so that*, is used when precaution, forethought, or restriction is to be indicated, especially with **ita** preceding: **Minucius sciebat, ita se rem augere oportere, ut ne qvid de libertate deperderet** (Cic. Verr. II. 30). **Danda opera est ut etiam singulis consulatur, sed ita, ut ea res aut prosit aut certe ne obsit reipublicae** (Id. Off. II. 21). (**Ita admissi sunt in urbem, ne tamen iis senatus daretur**, Liv. XXII. 61.)

§ 457. **Ne — qvidem** (separated by the emphatic and antithetical word) signifies *also not* (*as little as the preceding*, or *as any thing else*): —

Postero die Curio milites in acie collocat. Ne Varus qvidem dubitat copias producere (Cæs. B. C. II. 33). **Si non sunt** (*in case they do not exist*), **nihil possunt esse; ita ne miseri qvidem sunt** (Cic. Tusc. I. 6). It most frequently gives prominence to the object of the negation, and signifies *not even:* **Ne matri qvidem dixi. Ne cum Caesare qvidem egi. Ac ne illud qvidem vobis negligendum puto, qvod mihi ego extremum proposueram** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 7; also **et ne — qvidem**).

A short subordinate proposition, or a conjunction and the most important word of the subordinate proposition, often stand between **ne** and **qvidem**: —

Ne qvantum possumus qvidem cogimur (Cic. Cat. M. 11). **Neqve contra rempublicam neqve contra jusjurandum ac fidem amici causa vir bonus faciet, ne si judex qvidem erit de ipso amico** (Id. Off. III. 10).

Obs. The later writers (from and after Livy and Ovid) put **nec** in the same signification as **ne — qvidem: Non inutilem puto hanc cognitionem; alioqvi nec tradidissem** (Qvinct. V. 10, 119). **Esse aliqvid manes et subterranea regna, nec pueri credunt** (Juv. II. 152).

§ 458. *a.* A negation connected with a copulative particle (*and not*) is usually expressed by **neqve, nec** (which is therefore a negative conjunction, not a mere adverb): —

Caesar substitit neqve hostes lacessivit. De Qvinto fratre nuntii tristes nobis nec varii venerant (Cic. ad Att. III. 17).

Where a negative pronoun or pronominal adverb follows a copulative particle in English (*and no one, and no where, and never*), it is expressed in Latin by **neqve** with an affirmative pronoun or adverb (**neqve qvisqvam, qvidqvam, ullus, usqvam, unqvam**).

Horae cedunt et dies et menses et anni, nec praeteritum tempus unqvam revertitur (Cic. Cat. M. 19).

Obs. 1. Sometimes, however, **et non** is employed, when the negation is blended, as it were, into one idea with some particular word following, and the whole treated as coordinate with what goes before: **Patior, judices, et non moleste fero** (Cic. Verr. I. 1; here **non** qualifies **moleste**, and the whole expression of satisfaction, **non moleste fero**, is connected by **et** with **patior**). **Demetrius Syrus, vetus et non ignobilis dicendi magister** (Id. Brut. 91). **Habebit igitur lingvam deus et non loqvetur** (Id. N. D. I. 33), *and will yet be dumb*. In the same way, **et nemo, et nullus**, &c., **nullusqve, nihilqve**, &c., are also used: **Domus temere et nullo consilio administratur** (Cic. Inv.

I. 34). **Nihil hominem, nisi qvod honestum decorumqve est, aut admirari aut optare oportet, nulliqve neqve homini neqve fortunae succumbere** (Id. Off. I. 20). **Eo simus animo ut mori-endi diem nobis faustum putemus nihilqve in malis ducamus qvod sit a diis constitutum** (Id. Tusc. I. 49). **Ac non, et non,** are particularly employed in the signification *and not rather* (when a correction is subjoined to a conditional, interrogative, or ironical expression): **Nam si qvam Rubrius injuriam suo nomine ac non impulsu tuo fecisset, de tui comitis injuria qvestum ad te venissent** (Cic. Verr. I. 31). **Qvasi vero isti, qvos commemoras, propterea magistratus ceperint, qvod triumpharant, et non, qvia commissi sunt iis magistratus, re bene gesta triumpharint** (Id. pro Planc. 25). **C. Antonius, tanqvam extruderetur a senatu in Macedoniam ac non contra prohiberetur proficisci, cucurrit** (Id. Phil. X. 5). (Where, on the contrary, an erroneous opinion negatived is placed in contrast with that which is correct, it is usual to employ **non** — not **et non**, or **sed non**: **Haec morum vitia sunt, non senectutis** (Cic. Cat. M. 18).

Obs. 2. Sometimes even the copulative particle, which connects a second independent proposition with a preceding one, has combined with it the negative, which properly belongs to a clause subordinate to that second proposition: **Consules in Hernicos exercitum duxerunt, neqve inventis in agro hostibus, Ferentinum, urbem eorum, vi ceperunt** (Liv. VII. 9) = **et, qvum hostes in agro non invenissent, urbem** ——. **Hostes deustos pluteos turrium videbant, nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant** (Cæs. B. G. VII. 25) = **et animadvertebant, non facile** ——. (The poets even allow the **et** which belongs to **ait** or **inqvit** to coalesce with a negative belonging to the words quoted: **Neqve, ait, sine numine vincit,** Ov. Met. XI. 263, = **et ait, Non sine n. v.**)

b. **Neqve** is used instead of a simple **non**, when a negative proposition is connected by **enim, tamen, vero** (**neqve enim**, *for not*; **neqve tamen**, *yet not, and yet not*; **neqve vero**, *but not, and not, also not*). Yet we sometimes find **non enim**, rarely **non tamen**, by which the negation acquires greater emphasis. (**Nam — non** only when the negative is intimately connected with a word following. **Neqve enim — neqve**, and **nam neqve — neqve.**)

c. The combination of two or more negative members into one unity is denoted by **neqve — neqve** (**nec — nec, neqve — nec, nec — neqve**), *neither — nor*; e.g. **neqve bonus neqve malus; neqve consilium mihi placet neqve auctor probatur.** The second member may be made more prominent by the addition of **vero**: —

Secundum genus cupiditatum Epicurus nec ad potiendum difficile esse censet nec vero ad carendum (Cic. Tusc. V. 33).

The combination of an affirmative and negative member is denoted by **et — neqve**, *both — and not*; **neqve — et**, *both not — and* (less frequently **neqve — qve**): —

Intelligitis, Pompejo et animum praesto fuisse neqve consilium defuisse (Cic. Phil. XIII. 6). **Patebat via et certa nec longa** (Id. ib. XI. 2). **Voluptates agricolarum nec ulla impediuntur senectute et mihi ad sapientis vitam proxime videntur accedere** (Id. Cat. M. 15). **Homo nec meo judicio stultus et suo valde prudens** (Id. de Or. I. 39). **(Ex qvo intelligitur, nec intemperantiam propter se esse fugiendam temperantiamqve expetendam, non qvia voluptates fugiat, sed qvia majores conseqvatur,** Id. Finn. I. 14.)

Obs. 1. Instead of **et — ne**, we may employ **et — et non**, when the **non** (as in *a*, *Obs.* 1) is intimately combined with a word following, so as to form one idea with it: **Manlius et semper me coluit diligentissime et a nostris studiis non abhorret** (Cic. ad Fam. XIII. 22). **Assentior tibi, et multum facetias in dicendo prodesse saepe et eas arte nullo modo posse tradi** (Id. de Or. II. 56). **Multa aliorum judicio et facienda et non facienda nobis sunt** (Id. Off. I. 41), when **neqve** could, by no means, be used.

Obs. 2. If a negative (**non**, **neqve**, *and not*, or a negative pronoun, or **nego**, **nolo**) belongs to two connected words, and stands before them both, these are often themselves connected by a negative, so that the negative is repeated: **Non enim solum acuenda nobis neqve procudenda lingva est, sed complendum pectus maximarum rerum copia et varietate** (Cic. de Or. 30), in English, *we must not only whet and sharpen the tongue.* **Minora dii negligunt nec agellos singulorum nec viticulas perseqvuntur** (Id. N. D. III. 35), *and do not mind the fields and vines of individuals.* **Agrum in his regionibus meliorem neqve pretii majoris nemo habet** (Ter. Heaut. I. 1, 12). In this example, by a rare exception, the common negative is near the end of the sentence. In prose, the connection by a copulative particle is used only when the ideas are completely blended: **Nulla res tanta ac tam difficilis est, qvam Q. Catulus non consilio regere possit** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 20). **Nec tantum moerorem ac luctum senatui mors P. Clodii afferebat, ut nova qvaestio constitueretur** (Id. pro Mil. 5). (The poets are more free; yet it is very unusual for a new proposition, which the negative should also qualify, to be connected by **et** or **qve**.) On the other hand, the second member may be connected by **aut** or **ve**: **Neqve enim mari**

venturum aut ea parte virium dimicaturum hostem credebant (Liv. XXI. 17). **Non recito ubivis coramve qvibuslibet** (Hor. Sat. I. 4, 73). (Also **nec — nec — aut**: **Eqvites hostibus neqve sui colligendi neqve consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt**, Cæs. B. G. V. 17.) But the addition of a second proposition, which is also negative by a simple **aut**, is rare, and poetical: **Nec te hinc comitem asportare Creüsam fas (est) aut ille sinit superi regnator Olympi** (Virg. Æn. II. 778). **Aut — aut** also follows after a negative: **Ante id tempus nemo aut miles aut eqves a Caesare ad Pompejum transierat** (Cæs. B. C. III. 61). **Consciorum nemo aut latuit aut fugit** (Liv. XXIV. 5). **Nondum aut pulsus remorum strepitusqve alius nauticus exaudiebatur aut promontoria classem aperiebant** (Id. XXII. 19).

§ 459. For **et ne** or **aut**, following **ne**, **neve** and **neu** are made use of: —

Hominem mortuum in urbe neve sepelito neve urito (Cic. Legg. II. 23). **Opera dabatur, ne qvod iis colloqvium inter se neve qvae communicatio consilii esset** (Liv. XXIII. 34). **Caesar milites cohortatus est, uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo** (Cæs. B. G. II. 21).

Neve — neve repeated (like **neqve — neqve**) is used in prohibitions (it is, however, of rare occurrence): —

Neve tibi ad solem vergant vineta cadentem neve inter vites corulum sere (Virg. G. II. 298); and in dependent propositions with **ut** preceding (**ut neve — neve**): **Peto a te, ut id neve in hoc reo neve in aliis reqviras** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 9).

Obs. We find, however, solitary examples of **nec**, instead of **neve**: **Teneamus eum cursum, qvi semper fuit optimi cujusqve, neqve ea signa audiamus, qvae receptui canunt** (Cic. R. P. I. 2). **Nec hoc pertimueris** (Cic.). **Haec igitur lex in amicitia sanciatur, ut neqve rogemus res turpes neqve faciamus rogati** (Id. Læl. 12). In the poets, **neve** is also used instead of **et ne**, in such a way that the **et** belongs to another proposition (as in the case of **neqve**, § **458**, *a*, *Obs.* 2): **Neve foret terris securior arduus aether, affectasse ferunt regnum caeleste Gigantas** (Ov. Met. I. 151).

§ 460. Two negatives coming together do away with the negative signification. If the negative particle be placed immediately before a negative word, the *universal* negation alone is set aside, and there results an *indefinite* affirmation: thus, **nonnemo**, *not no one = some one, some few;* **nonnullus, nonnihil, nonnunqvam,**

sometimes. If, on the other hand, **non** belongs to a predicate, and this (negative) predicate is asserted of a negative subject, there results a *universal* affirmation; no one does it not (omits to do it) = all without exception do it: so **nemo non, nullus non,** *all;* **nihil non,** *every thing;* **numqvam non,** *always;* **nusqvam non,** *everywhere.*

Nemo Arpinas non Plancio studuit (Cic. pro Planc. 9). **Nulli non ad nocendum satis virium est** (Sen. Ep. 105). **Achilles nihil non arroget armis** (Hor. A. P. 122), *let Achilles claim every thing.* (Concerning **non possum non,** see § **455,** *Obs.* 3.)

Obs. 1. The particles **nec non** do not stand together in good prose simply as a substitute for **et,** or as a connective between two single words; but they are used to carry on the idea, by adding, that a certain other thing cannot (can also not) be denied: **Nec hoc Zeno non vidit, sed verborum magnificentia est delectatus** (Cic. Finn. IV. 22), *and this also did not escape the observation of Zeno, but —.* **Neqve vero non omni supplicio digni P. Claudius, L. Junius consules, qvi contra auspicia navigarunt** (Cic. Div. II. 33), *and therefore the consuls P. C. and L. J. cannot but be deserving of the severest punishment.* **Nec enim is, qvi in te adhuc injustior, qvam tua dignitas postulabat, fuit, non magna signa dedit animi erga te mitigati** (Id. ad Fam. VI. 1). Inferior writers and the poets use **nec non** also in immediate juxtaposition (**Nec non et Tyrii — convenere,** Virg. Æn. I. 707) and for the connection of two single words (*and also*).

Obs. 2. Two negatives do not destroy one another, if either (*a*) a proposition begins with a general negation, and a single idea is then brought prominently forward by **ne — qvidem,** or if (*b*) a general negation precedes, and is then repeated distributively with the single terms: **Non enim praetereundum est ne id qvidem** (Cic. Verr. I. 60). **Epicurus, qvid praeter voluptatem sit bonum, negat se posse ne suspicari qvidem** (Id. Fin. II. 10). **Sic habeas, nihil mehercule te mihi nec carius esse nec svavius** (Id. ad Att. V. 1; this might also have been expressed according to § **458,** *c, Obs.* 2, **aut carius aut svavius**). **Nemo unqvam neqve poeta neqve orator fuit, qvi qvenqvam meliorem qvam se putaret** (Id. ib. XIV. 20). **Non me carminibus vincet nec Thracius Orpheus nec Linus** (Virg. B. IV. 55). (**Ea nesciebant, nec ubi, nec qvalia essent,** Cic. Tusc. III. 2.)[1] (**Nolebant successum non patribus, non consulibus,** Liv. II. 45.)

---

[1] The comic writers in some few instances use **neqve haud** in place of the simple **neqve.**

§ 461. *a.* The rising to something more important is indicated by **non modo, non tantum** (*not only*), **non solum** (*not alone*) — **sed etiam, verum etiam.**

Obs. **Modo** properly denotes rather the degree, **solum** the extent, but no definite distinction is observed. **Non tantum** is not often used, except when the subject or the predicate is common to both clauses. Instead of **sed etiam** we find also simply **sed**, by which a more comprehensive word, which at the same time comprises the preceding, is substituted in its place: **Pollio, omnibus negotiis non interfuit solum, sed praefuit** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 6); but it is also used without this accessory signification. We rarely meet with **sed — qvoqve**, which denotes merely an addition, not a rising to something more important. The first member may also be negative: **non modo (non solum) non — sed etiam (sed potius, sed)**: **Non modo non oppugnator, sed etiam defensor** (Cic. pro Planc. 31). **Hoc non modo non pro me est, sed contra me est potius** (Id. de Or. III. 20).

b. To rise to a more emphatic negative, and assert that even a thing which was sure to happen does not take place, **non modo** or **non solum** is combined with **sed ne — qvidem, sed vix**: —

Vobis inter vos non modo voluntas conjuncta fuit, sed ne praeda qvidem adhuc divisa est (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 11). In this case, **non modo** or **non solum** has usually another negative, either after it (*a*), so that **non modo, non solum**, qualifies an idea which is already negative (*not only not, not only no one*, &c.), or before it (*b*), and therefore common to both clauses (**nemo non modo, nihil non modo**, &c.: *No one, I will not say*), so that, properly speaking, in the latter case, the negative is repeated in **ne — qvidem**: (*a*) **Ego non modo tibi non irascor, sed ne reprehendo qvidem factum tuum** (Cic. pro Sull. 18). **Non modo nihil acqvisiverunt, sed ne relictum qvidem et traditum et suum conservaverunt** (Id. de Or. III. 32). **Obscoenitas non solum non foro digna, sed vix convivio liberorum** (Id. de Or. II. 62). (*b*) **Nihil iis Verres non modo de fructu, sed ne de bonis qvidem suis reliqvi fecit** (Id. Verr. III. 48). **Nullum non modo illustre, sed ne notum qvidem factum** (Id. in Pis. 1). **Id ne unqvam posthac non modo confici, sed ne cogitari qvidem possit a civibus, hodierno die providendum est** (Id. in Cat. IV. 9). If both clauses have a common predicate, to which the negative belongs, and the predicate stands in the last clause, the negation which lies in **ne — qvidem (vix)** may be applied to the whole, so that instead of **non modo non (non solum non)**, we have, in the first clause, only **non modo (non solum)**: **Assentatio non modo amico, sed ne libero qvidem digna est** (Cic. Læl. 24). **Senatui non solum juvare**

rempublicam, sed ne lugere qvidem licuit (Id. in Pis. 10). **Non modo manus tanti exercitus, sed ne vestigium qvidem cuiqvam privato nocuit** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 13). (In the complete form: **Nemini privato non modo manus t. e., sed ne vestigium qvidem nocuit.**) **Advena non modo civicae, sed ne Italicae qvidem stirpis** (Liv. I. 40) = **qvi non modo — stirpis esset. Haec genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris reperiuntur** (Cic. pro Cæl. 17). But the complete form is also made use of: **Hoc non modo non laudari, sed ne concedi qvidem potest** (Cic. pro Mur. 3). **Sthenius id potuit, qvod non modo Siculus nemo, sed ne Sicilia qvidem tota potuisset** (Id. Verr. II. 46).

Obs. 1. In the same way, it is said: **Hoc non modo recte fieri, sed omnino fieri non potest** (Cic. Acad. II. 19). If each clause has its distinct predicate, **non modo, sed ne — qvidem**, instead of **non modo non**, is a very rare irregularity.

Obs. 2. **Non modo** (not **non solum**) followed by **sed** (**sed etiam, verum, verum etiam**) is used with the meaning of the phrase *I will not say* (**non dico, non dicam**), when it is intended to show that the first clause comprises too much, and that we must abide by the second and more limited one: **Qvae civitas est in Asia, qvae non modo imperatoris aut legati, sed unius tribuni militum animos ac spiritus capere possit?** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 22). **Sine ulla non modo religione, verum etiam dissimulatione** (Id. Verr. V. 1). (**Num exploratum cuiqvam esse potest, qvomodo sese habiturum sit corpus, non dico ad annum, sed ad vesperum?** Cic. Finn. II. 28).

Obs. 3. The leading clause may, for the sake of emphasis, stand before **non modo** (**non solum**) to indicate that of which the assertion is first and chiefly true: **Secundas etiam res nostras, non modo adversas, pertimescebam** (Cic. ad Fam. IV. 14), *and not only*. If the leading assertion be negative (**non, nullus, ne — qvidem**), **non modo** indicates what is still more emphatically denied (*much less, to say nothing of*): **Nullum meum minimum dictum, non modo factum** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 9). **Apollinis oracula nunqvam ne mediocri qvidem cuiqvam, non modo prudenti, probata sunt** (Cic. Div. II. 55). (**Nedum**, *not to mention that* ——. See § **355**; then also without a verb, as an adverb: *not to say = much less*; from the time of Livy, it occurs also without a negative preceding: *not to say = much more.*)

§ 462. *a.* Of other particular negative expressions we may notice the following: **non ita**, *not so very* (**non ita magnus, haud ita magnus**); **non item**, *not in the same way = on the other hand not* (or simply *not*, in antithesis with the foregoing predicate understood: —

Corporum offensiones sine culpa accidere possunt, animorum non item, Cic. Tusc. IV. 14); **nondum**, *not yet* (**neqvedum**, *and not yet*, sometimes for **nondum**; **nullusdum, nihildum, vixdum**; also, **nondum etiam**); **non jam**, *no more, no longer*; **tantum non, modo non**, *almost* (strictly, *only this not, so that this one thing is wanting*: **tantum non ad portas et muros bellum est**, Liv. XXV. 15); **nihil admodum (admodum nihil)**, *as good as nothing*.

b. The words **nemo** (**nihil**) and **ne**, with some verbs which contain a negation in themselves (**nolo, nescio**, and particularly **nego**), are by an inaccuracy of expression sometimes put in such a way, that in an added (antithetical) clause only the affirmative idea contained in the words is understood (and they become equivalent to **omnes, omnia, ut, volo, scio, dico**):

Nemo extulit eum verbis, qvi ita dixisset, ut, qvi adessent, intelligerent, qvid diceret, sed contempsit eum, qvi minus id facere potuisset (Cic. de Or. III. 14). **Appius collegis in castra scribit, ne Virginio commeatum dent atqve etiam in custodia habeant** (Liv. III. 46). **Pleriqve negant Caesarem in custodia mansurum postulataqve haec ab eo interposita esse, qvominus, qvod opus esset ad bellum a nobis pararetur** (Cic. ad Att. VII. 15) = *say that Cæsar will not keep his engagement, but* ——.

PART THIRD.

ORDER AND POSITION OF WORDS AND PROPOSITIONS.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE ORDER OF THE WORDS IN A PROPOSITION.

§ 463. Since in Latin the connection and construction of the words may easily be known from their inflection, their position is not determined by such strict and definite rules as is usually the case in English and other modern languages, but is regulated in a great measure by the emphasis which is laid on the individual words according to the sense of the passage, and sometimes also by a regard to euphony.

Obs. The position of the words is therefore to be distinguished from their grammatical order, which is the order of their mutual relations. The latter is sometimes called the *Construction*, and the giving it is called *construing* the sentence.

§ 464. The most simple arrangement of the words is this: that the subject, with what belongs to it, stands first, and the predicate follows afterwards, in such a way that the verb usually stands last, in order to keep the whole sentence together; while the direct object and the remote object, or the predicate noun, with whatever else qualifies the verb (ablative, prepositions with cases, adverbs) are placed in the middle. Generally speaking, a governed and limiting word (with the exception of the genitive when depending on a substantive) is placed before the word which governs or is limited by it (**gloriae cupidus, hostes perseqvi**). Of those words which are used to limit or qualify the predicate, that part stands first, which, according to the sense and design of the passage, is of the greatest importance, and is first thought of:—

Romani Jovi templum in Capitolio condiderunt. Romani templum in Capitolio Jovi, Junoni, Minervae condiderunt. Numa Pompilius omnium consensu rex creatus est.

But usually the object is put before the other words which limit the verb, so that these stand as near as possible to it (**hostem eqvitatu terrere**). Questions begin with the interrogative word and what belongs to it, subordinate propositions with the conjunction or the relative pronoun.

§ 465. *a.* The simple arrangement of the words is so far departed from for the sake of emphasis, that the word on which a particular stress is laid, as forming an antithesis to some other idea, either expressed or floating in the mind, is put before the less important word, which would otherwise precede it; e.g. the governing word before that which it governs, or the word which helps to define the verb before the object: **Caesar eqvitatu terrere hostem qvam cominus pugnare maluit.** If for the sake of such a contrast, or for some other reason, a writer is giving prominence to a word as the most important with reference to the meaning of a whole proposition (e.g. the verb, when he would suggest that it is remarkable or surprising that a subject should have such a predicate), this word is put at the beginning without reference to its grammatical class or construction: —

Movit me oratio tua. Sua vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem conferunt (Cic. Cat. M. 5). **Honesta magis qvam prudens oratio visa est. A malis mors abducit, non a bonis** (Cic. Tusc. I. 34).

A word, to which the proposition points from the beginning, and which completes the sense as soon as it is uttered; or a word on which the thought dwells, as it were, for a time, may gain emphasis by being placed at the end of the proposition: —

Seqvemur igitur hoc tempore et in hac occasione potissimum Stoicos (Cic. Off. I. 2). **Helvetii dicebant, sibi esse in animo iter per provinciam facere, propterea qvod aliud iter haberent nullum** (Cæs. B. G. I. 7). **Attici vita et oratio consecuta mihi videtur difficillimam illam societatem gravitatis cum humanitate** (Cic. Legg. III. 1).

Obs. 1. When the verb stands before the object, some emphasis, though it may be but slight, usually falls on the notion contained in the verb. In the arrangement, **Liber tuus exspectationem meam vicit,**

the expectation entertained of the book is first thought of, and then the fact that it has been surpassed; in the arrangement, **Liber tuus vicit exspectationem meam**, the effect of the book is put prominently forward. But where there is no motive for giving prominence to either idea, the first arrangement is preferred. It constitutes an exception to this rule when an important object consisting of a union of several words is emphatically placed at the close of the proposition.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the verb is put first only to avoid separating the other connected words, or to give prominence to one of them, and at the same time to form the transition: **Erant ei veteres inimicitiae cum duobus Rosciis Amerinis** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 6).

Obs. 3. The verb **sum** is often put without any emphasis before the predicate noun, particularly in definitions, or when the description consists of several emphatic words: **Virtus est absolutio naturae. Svevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium** (Cæs. B. G. IV. 1).

Obs. 4. The participle of a passive verb formed with **est (sum)** is not unfrequently separated from its auxiliary. Especially it may be observed, that sometimes the participle stands first, then the subject, or something that qualifies the proposition, and last of all **est: Omne argentum ablatum ex Sicilia est** (Cic. Verr. IV. 16). **Tecum mihi instituenda oratio est** (Id. Fin. V. 29). Sometimes **est (sit)** stands without emphasis somewhere in the middle of the proposition, and the participle is put last: **qvi in fortunae periculis sunt ac varietate versati** (Cic. Verr. V. 50. Compare § **472**, *b*).

b. Relative words, referring to an antecedent which really precedes them in the sentence, always stand first in the relative clause (in prose). Relatives, on the contrary, which refer to a demonstrative proposition following, may stand after a very emphatic word; and this is also the case with interrogative pronouns: —

Romam qvae asportata sunt, ad aedem Honoris et Virtutis videmus (Cic. Verr. IV. 54), in contrast with what remained in Syracuse. **Tarentum vero qva vigilantia, qvo consilio (Fabius) recepit?** (Id. Cat. M. 4).

So likewise, when a conjunctional subordinate proposition precedes the leading proposition, the conjunction may stand after one or several words which have a particular emphasis, frequently after pronouns which refer to something preceding: —

Haec tu, Druci, tot et tanta si nactus esses in reo, qvamdiu diceres? (Cic. Rosc. Am. 32). **Qvae qvum ita sint, nihil censeo**

mutandum. Romam ut nuntiatum est, Vejos captos, velut ex insperato immensum gaudium fuit (Liv. V. 32). In prose the verb is never put before the relative or the conjunction.

Obs. **Ut** and **ne**, even where the leading proposition comes first, have sometimes one or more words before them: **tempore et loco constituto, in colloqvium uti de pace veniretur** (Sall. Jug. 113). **Catilina postulabat, patres conscripti ne qvid de se temere crederent** (Id. Cat. 31). In particular a negative word often stands before **ut**, signifying *so that* (**vix ut, nemo ut, nihil ut, nullus ut**; also **prope ut, paene ut**, sometimes **magis ut**).

§ 466. *a.* An adjective which belongs to a substantive as its attribute, or a genitive which is governed by a substantive, usually stands after the substantive, but may stand before it, when, for the sake of contrast, or for any other reason, we wish to emphasize the adjective or genitive as qualifying words:—

Ex rerum copia verba nasci debent. Filiorum laudibus etiam patres cohonestantur. Tuscus ager Romano adjacet (Liv. II. 49).

Obs. 1. In titles and names, and where custom has established the forms of expression for certain things, the adjective or genitive often has a fixed and definite place after the substantive: **Civis Romanus, populus Romanus, res familiaris, aes alienum, jus civile, via Appia, magister eqvitum, tribunus militum.** Some unusual emphasis laid on this part of the expression changes this order in a very few instances.

Obs. 2. Demonstrative pronouns stand before the substantive if no particular emphasis is to be laid on the latter: **Incendium curiae, oppugnationem aedium M. Lepidi, caedem hanc ipsam contra rempublicam senatus factam esse decrevit** (Cic. pro Mil. 5).

b. Between a substantive and its adjective there may stand words which qualify the substantive or the adjective: **Summum eloqventiae studium; in summa bonorum ac fortium virorum copia; nocturnus in urbem adventus; nostra in amicos benevolentia; in summis, qvae nos urgent, difficultatibus ab iis, qvos miserat, difficultatibus.** (But we may also say, **in summa copia bonorum ac fortium virorum**, and, if the emphasis is to be placed on the genitive, **in bonorum ac fortium virorum summa copia**). **Homo omnibus virtutibus ornatus** (**ornatus omnibus virtutibus homo**, but also **omnibus virtutibus ornatus homo**, according to the varying emphasis). (**Homo summo ingenio, summo ingenio homo, summo homo ingenio.**)[1]

---

[1] **Permagnum optimi pondus argenti** (Cic. Phil. II. 27), so placed to give a prominence to both adjectives, and at the same time to bring **argenti**, which forms an antithesis with other words, to the last place.

So likewise a preposition, which with its case qualifies the substantive governing the genitive, may be inserted with its case between the governing substantive and the genitive; and the same may also sometimes be done with a relative clause: **Ex illo caelesti Epicuri de regula et judicio volumine** (Cic. N. D. I. 16). **Cato inimicitias multas gessit propter Hispanorum, apud qvos consul fuerat, injurias** (Id. Div. in Cæc. 20).

§ 467. Sometimes, especially in the oratorical style, words qualifying a substantive are separated from it so as to fix the attention on them more particularly, while the intermediate words are less prominent; but no intermediate words should be allowed to make the construction ambiguous or uncertain. Thus one may separate —

a. An adjective (or pronoun) from its substantive, so that the former is put further forward or back: **Qvatridui sermonem superioribus ad te perscriptum libris misimus** (Cic. Tusc. V. 4). **Sine ulla rerum exspectatione meliorum** (Id. ib. IV. 8). **Magna nobis pueris, Q. frater, si memoria tenes, opinio fuit, L. Crassum**, &c. (Id. de Or. II. 1). Sometimes, only a single unemphatic word (e.g. a pronoun as the subject or object, an adverb, &c.) is inserted between them: **Hic me dolor angit; hoc ego periculo moveor. Marcelli ad Nolam proelio populus se Romanus erexit** (Cic. Brut. 3). **Magna nuper laetitia affectus sum.**

b. A name from a word in apposition: **Gravissimus auctor in originibus dixit Cato, morem apud majores hunc fuisse**, &c. (Cic. Tusc. IV. 2).

c. A genitive and its governing word, so that one or the other stands first in the sentence: **Peto igitur a te, qvoniam id nobis, Antoni, hominibus id aetatis, oneris ab horum adolescentium studiis imponitur, ut exponas**, &c. (Cic. de Or. I. 47). **Stoicorum, non ignoras, qvam sit subtile, vel spinosum potius disserendi genus** (Id. Finn. III. 1).

§ 468. Adverbs, which belong to a verb, usually stand next to it (before it, if it concludes the proposition); but they may either be placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning or end of the sentence, or be inserted without emphasis between the more prominent words; e.g.: —

Magna nuper, M. Tulli, laetitia affectus sum. Bellum civile opinione plerumqve et fama gubernatur (Cic. Phil. V. 10. Compare § **472**, *b*).

Adverbs which belong to an adjective or another adverb **almost** invariably stand before it, and adverbs of degree always, **except admodum**, which can be placed after the adjective, when that **is** itself emphatic: **gravis admodum oratio.** Sometimes the adverb of degree may stand for emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, and the adjective be put further back: —

Hoc si Sulpicius noster faceret, multo ejus oratio esset pressior (Cic. de Or. II. 23).

The negative particles always stand before the word to which they belong, and therefore before the verb (but not always immediately before it), when they apply to the whole proposition.[1]

Obs. The interrogative **qvam** is often separated from its adjective by an unemphatic **sum**: **Earum causarum qvanta qvamqve sit justa unaqvaeqve videamus** (Cic. Cat. M. 5). (**Tam in bona causa** is rarely substituted for **in tam bona causa.**)

§ 469. The prepositions (those of one syllable, especially) are sometimes inserted between an adjective which is emphatic (numeral, adjective of multitude, superlative), or a pronoun, and the substantive: **tribus de rebus; multis de causis; paucos post menses; magna ex parte; summa cum cura; qva de causa; ea de causa; qva in urbe; multos ante annos.** It is less usual in good prose, to put the preposition between a genitive and its substantive: **deorum in mente** (except when the genitive is a relative or demonstrative pronoun: **qvorum de virtutibus**).

Obs. 1. Some prepositions of two syllables (**ante, circa, penes, ultra**, but especially **contra, inter, propter**) are sometimes put after a relative pronoun (without a substantive); e.g. **ii, qvos inter erat; is, qvem contra venerat.** (So, likewise, we find **fundus, negotium, qvo de agitur**; and rarely, **qvos ad, hunc post, hunc juxta, hunc adversus.**) A few later writers (as Tacitus), imitating the freedom of the poets, go still further in the transposing (Anastrophe) of the prepositions).[2]

Obs. 2. A preposition may be separated from its case (*a*) by a genitive belonging to the latter, and that even with a subordinate proposition attached to it: **propter Hispanorum, apud qvos consul fuerat, injurias** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 20); *b.* by an adverb belonging to the word governed by the preposition: **ad bene beateqve vivendum**; *c.* (rarely)

---

[1] **Jam nunc**, *now already*, in contrast with the future; **nunc jam**, *now*, in contrast with the past, with an intimation of some recent change.

[2] **Faesulas inter Arretiumqve** (Liv. XXII. 3).

by an object of the word governed, if this is a participle or adjective: **in bella gerentibus** (Cic. Brut. 12; the ordinary construction would be **in iis, qvi bella gerunt**); **adversus hostilia ausos** (Liv. I. 59); *d.* (rarely) by a copulative adverb, or one used for affirmation: **post enim Chrysippum** (Cic. Fin. II. 13; usually, **post Chrysippum enim**); **contra mehercule meum judicium** (Id. ad Att. XI. 7). The unemphatic particles **qve, ne, ve,** are also sometimes appended to a preposition of one syllable (e.g. **exqve iis, deve coloniis, postve ea, cumqve libellis**); but they are more usually annexed to the substantive governed by the preposition: **de consilio destitit, in patriamqve rediit in reqve eo meliore, qvo major est** (Cic. Fin. I. 1).

§ 470. The prepositions are repeated with substantives that follow each other, when we wish to indicate the difference of the ideas and not to allow them to be blended into one (**a te et a tuis**), consequently always when **et — et** are used (**et in bello et in pace**), and **nec — nec,** usually also with **aut — aut,** and **vel — vel,** and after **nisi** (**in nulla re nisi in virtute**), and after a comparative (**in nulla re melius qvam in virtute**); on the contrary, not with words which are connected by **qve.**

Obs. 1. With **et — et** and **aut — aut,** the preposition may sometimes be put before the conjunction: **cum et nocturno et diurno metu** (Cic. Tusc. V. 23).

Obs. 2. Some prepositions of one syllable are often repeated without any particular reason. **Inter** is frequently repeated after **interest** (**interest inter argumentum conclusionemqve rationis et inter mediocrem animadversionem,** Cic. Finn. I. 9), and occasionally also in other connections, particularly in the poets (**Nestor Componere lites inter Peliden festinat et inter Atriden,** Hor. Ep. I. 2, 12).

Obs. 3. A substantive cannot, in Latin, be governed by two prepositions: we must say, **ante aciem postve eam** (not **ante postve aciem**).

§ 471. The following observations apply to the position of certain particles which connect the discourse. **Enim,** *for,* always stands after one word, seldom after two. (**Nam** always at the beginning, and so, also, **namqve** in the best prose.) **Ergo,** *therefore,* either stands first, or after an important word of the sentence (**Hunc ergo, qvid ergo,** &c.); when it denotes not a conclusion, but only a transition, it is almost always put after a word. It is usual to put **igitur** after one or two words (**Qvid habes igitur, qvod mutatum velis?**), or even last, after several words that are closely

connected (**Ejus bono fruendum est igitur**, Cic. Tusc. V. 23). Yet it is also put first, — in some writers (e.g. Sallust) more frequently than others. (**Itaqve**, *therefore, consequently*, very rarely stands after a word in good prose.) **Tamen** stands at the beginning, except where a single word is to be made emphatic by antithesis. **Etiam**, *also, even*, stands generally before the particular word to which it belongs; but it is also put after it, especially if the word is removed to the beginning of the sentence for the sake of emphasis. **Qvoqve**, *also* (in good writers), always stands after the word to which it belongs, and which contains the new idea that is added: **Me qvoqve haec ars decepit; tuā qvoqve causā.** So likewise **qvidem** is always put after the word, which is thus emphasized and contrasted with others: —

Nostrum qvidem studium vides, qvam tibi sit paratum. Id nos fortasse non perfecimus; conati qvidem saepissime sumus (Cic. Or. 62), at least. **L. qvidem Philippus gloriari solebat**, &c. (Id. Off. II. 17). **Ac Metellum qvidem eximia ejus virtus defendet.** The same holds good of **demum**. (**Nuno demum, sexto demum anno.**)

Obs. 1. If **enim, autem**, or **igitur** and **est** or **sunt** come into juxtaposition, the verb usually stands, without emphasis, in the second place, if the proposition begins with the word on which the emphasis is laid; e.g. **Qvis est enim; nemo est autem. Sapientia est enim una, qvae maestitiam pellat ex animis** (Cic. Finn. I. 43). **Magna est enim vis humanitatis** (Id. Rosc. Am. 22). On the other hand, the verb is put in the third place, if the emphasis falls more on the words which come after it; e.g. **Cupiditates enim sunt insatiabiles** (Id. Finn. I. 13).

Obs. 2. Concerning some other words, which always have a definite place in the proposition, all that is necessary to be said is noticed elsewhere: as on **inqvit**, § **162**, *b*, *Obs.*; on **autem** and **vero**, § **437**, *Obs.*; on **qvisqve**, § **495**.

§ 472. *a.* Words which belong at the same time to several connected words are regularly put either before or after all of them: —

Hostes victoriae non omen modo, sed gratulationem praeceperunt. Amicitiam nec usu nec ratione habent cognitam. Yet the common word is sometimes put with the first of them, while the second follows after, and greater emphasis is given to both: **Ante Laelii aetatem et Scipionis** (Cic. Tusc. IV. 3). **Qvae populari gloria decorari in Lucullo debuerunt, ea fere sunt et Graecis litteris celebrata et Latinis** (Id. Acad. II. 2).

b. In other cases also, particularly in oratory, another word that is less emphatic is inserted between two connected words (e.g. the object, the subject, the verb of the proposition, or some qualifying phrase), by which means the mind is induced to dwell more on each, or the last is added as an afterthought: **Ipse Sulla ab se hominem atqve ab exercitu suo removit** (Cic. Verr. I. 15). **Oppida, in qvibus consistere praetores et conventus agere solent** (Id. ib. V. 11). **Ne opifices qvidem se ab artibus suis removerunt, qvi Ialysi, qvem Rhodi vidimus, non potuerunt aut Coae Veneris pulchritudinem imitari** (Id. Or. 2). **(Dolori suo maluit qvam auctoritati vestrae obtemperare,** Id. pro Leg. Man. 19).

§ 473. *a.* Words which mutually emphasize kindred or contrasted ideas, are put together: **Qvaedam falsa veri speciem habent. Seqvere, qvo tua te virtus ducet.**

b. If two coordinate propositions or two series of connected words form an antithesis, in which the separate words correspond to each other, the order is sometimes inverted in the second proposition or series, instead of being repeated, in order to make the antithesis more striking; so that the word which stands at the beginning of the first member finds its counterpart at the end of the last (Chiasmus):[1] —

Ratio nostra consentit, repugnat oratio (Cic. Finn. III. 3). **Clariorem inter Romanos deditio Postumium qvam Pontium incruenta victoria inter Samnites fecit** (Liv. IX. 12).

§ 474. The poetical arrangement of words is distinguished from that followed in prose by a much greater freedom, and also by the circumstance that it is regulated not only by the sense and emphasis, but often by the necessity of the verse. The freedom is shown in the circumstance, that words which are connected together in meaning, and in prose would stand together, are often separated, and words which in prose have their appointed place are transposed to another part of the sentence. Care, however, is taken, that the construction be not thereby rendered doubtful or ambiguous. The following are the cases most frequently met with: —

a. Adverbs and prepositions with their cases (ablatives without a preposition) are separated from the verbs, or participles, to which they belong: **Ille, datis vadibus qvi rure extractus in urbem est, solos felices viventes clamat in urbe** (Hor. Sat. I. 1, 12).

---

[1] Χιασμὸς from χιάζειν, *to place crosswise.*

b. Adjectives and genitives are arbitrarily separated by other words from the substantive to which they belong: **Saevae memorem Junonis ob iram** (Virg. Æn. I. 4). **Ipse deum tibi me claro demittit Olympo regnator** (Id. ib. IV. 268). In particular, it frequently happens that a substantive and its adjective or participle are put separately in the two divisions of a hexameter or pentameter: **Egressi optata potiuntur Troes arena** (Id. ib. I. 172). **Ponitur ad patrios barbara praeda deos** (Ov. Her. I. 26).

c. Prepositions are not only put arbitrarily between an adjective or a genitive and its substantive (**Trojano ab sangvine; qvibus orbis ab oris**), but also stand after the substantive with the adjective (**puppi deturbat ab alta**), or even with the genitive (**ora sub Augusti**). They are also put (but rarely, and generally only the dissyllables) after all the words whose case depends on them: **maria omnia circum; acres inter numeretur** (Hor. Sat. I. 3, 53).

Obs. Sometimes, another word, unconnected with the substantive, is inserted between the preposition and its case: **Vulneraqve illa gerens, qvae circum plurima muros accepit patrios** (Virg. Æn. II. 278): **Ultor ad ipse suos caelo descendit honores** (Ov. Fast. V. 551); and even where the case precedes the preposition by which it is governed: **Vitiis nemo sine nascitur** (Hor. Sat. I. 3, 69). A preposition which belongs to two substantives is sometimes attached only to the last: **Foedera vel Gabiis vel cum rigidis aeqvata Sabinis** (Hor. Ep. II. 1, 25). **Non legatos neqve prima per artem tentamenta tui pepigi** (Virg. Æn. VIII. 143).

d. The conjunctions **et, nec** (rarely, **aut, vel**) and **sed** (**sed enim**) are sometimes put after a word in the second member of the sentence: **Qvo gemitu conversi animi, compulsus et omnis impetus** (Virg. Æn. II. 73). **Progeniem sed enim Trojano ab sangvine duci audierat** (Id. ib. I. 19). The same is done with the relative pronoun (which sometimes stands after several words): **Arma virumqve cano, Trojae qvi primus ab oris — venit. Tu numina ponti Victa domas, ipsumqve, regit qvi numina ponti** (Ov. Met. V. 370). The same holds of **nam** and **namqve**. Conjunctions which connect subordinate propositions are often removed from the beginning of the proposition.

e. Copulative and disjunctive conjunctions (**et, ac, atqve, neqve, neve — aut, vel**) are not always followed immediately by that which they connect with a foregoing word, but one or more words, which relate in common to both of the connected words, are interposed: **Invidia atqve vigent ubi crimina** (Hor. Sat. I. 3, 61). **Qvum lectulus aut me porticus excepit** (Id. ib. I. 4, 133). **Caestus ipsius et**

Herculis arma (Virg. Æn. V. 410). **Nec dulces amores sperne puer neqve tu choreas** (Hor. Od. I. 9, 15).

f. The particles **qve, ne, ve,** are sometimes removed from the word to which they properly belong to some word common to both members of the sentence, usually the verb: **Hic jacet immiti consumptus morte Tibullus, Messalam terra dum seqviturqve mari** (Tib. I. 3, 55). **Non Pyladem ferro violare aususve sororem** (Hor. Sat. II. 3, 139). (**Pacis eras mediusqve belli,** Id. Od. II. 19, 28. **Semper in adjunctis aevoqve morabimur aptis,** Id. A. P. 178).

Obs. Sometimes **qve** is removed from the first word of a new proposition to the second or third: (**Furor hic**) **semper in obtutu mentem vetat esse malorum, Praesentis casus immemoremqve facit** (Ov. Tr. IV. 1, 39). (**Brachia sustulerat, Diqve o communiter omnes, dixerat, parcite,** Ov. Met. VI. 262, instead of **dixeratqve, Di,** &c.)

g. A substantive common to two connected propositions is sometimes not introduced till the second clause, either without any qualifying word, or having an adjective which stands in the first clause: **Transmittunt cursu campos atqve agmina cervi pulverulentă fugā glomerant** (Virg. Æn. IV. 154). **An sit mihi gratior ulla, qvove magis fessas optem demittere naves, qvam qvae Dardanium tellus mihi servat Acesten** (Id. ib. V. 28). **Qvid pater Ismario, qvid mater profuit Orpheo?** (Ov. Am. III. 9, 21).

h. Words belonging to a short leading proposition, especially its verb, are sometimes inserted in the subordinate proposition belonging to it: **Sedulus hospes paene, macros, arsit, turdos dum versat in igni** (Hor. Sat. I. 5, 72). **Qvicqvid erat medicae, vicerat, artis, amor** (Tib. II. 3, 14).

Obs. The arrangement of the words is not equally free in all poets, and in every species of poetry. Thus, the comic poets avoid bold transpositions, which would be too much at variance with the usual expressions of every-day life.

CHAPTER II.

ARRANGEMENT OF PROPOSITIONS.

§ 475. When the parts of a compound proposition (§ 325) are so arranged, that we cannot break off before the last clause has been enunciated, and yet retain a correct and perfect grammatical form, it has the name of a period (**periodus**). A period is formed, therefore, by putting the subordinate before the leading proposition,

or by inserting in the leading proposition itself one or more subordinate propositions, which qualify it; and this last form (when the leading proposition is broken by intervening propositions) sometimes receives the name of period by way of distinction (period in a narrower sense). It may often happen, that the protasis and apodosis are each divided by intervening propositions, and have consequently the structure of a period. The way in which the individual propositions are arranged and connected together so as to form periods, is called the *Structure of the period.* This gives discourse more connection, since in this way all the parts of a leading conception present themselves in the natural order in which they occur to the mind, and in that order are linked together (the cause before the effect, &c.).

§ 476. The Latin language is particularly well adapted for the formation of a variety of intricate periods, since it admits, more freely than many, of the insertion of one proposition in another, and the placing of the subordinate before the leading proposition. With respect to this liberty the following observations may be made.

a. All subordinate propositions, which it would be possible to place before the leading proposition to which they belong, at the beginning of a period (that is to say, all subordinate propositions, except such as denote a result), may also be inserted in the leading proposition after its first word or words, and that without its being necessary that any particular grammatical element of the proposition in which it is inserted (with the exception of particles and pronouns which serve as connectives), should precede the insertion: —

L. Manlio, qvum dictator fuisset, M. Pomponius, tribunus plebis, diem dixit (Cic. Off. III. 31). **Antea, ubi esses, ignorabam.**

Obs. 1. A period in which the leading proposition is interrupted is often formed by placing first a word which is common to the leading and the subordinate proposition (e.g. as a common subject or object), and putting the subordinate proposition immediately after it: **Stultitia, etsi adepta est, qvod concupivit, nunqvam se tamen satis consecutam putat** (Cic. Tusc. V. 18). **Pompejus Cretensibus, qvum ad eum usqve in Pamphiliam legatos deprecatoresqve misissent, spem deditionis non ademit** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 12).

Obs. 2. A relative proposition (including those introduced by a relative pronominal adverb to express time or manner) may stand before the

demonstrative proposition, not only when the former actually *begins* the period, but also when one or more words of the latter are placed before the relative proposition, the demonstrative word itself and the remainder of the demonstrative proposition being placed after the relative proposition. Such an arrangement serves not only to unite the propositions more closely, but also to add force to comparison and contrast: **Invidi, qvibus ipsi uti neqveunt, eorum tamen fructu alios prohibent. Primum vigilet adolescens necesse est in deligendo (qvem imitetur), deinde, qvem probavit, in eo, qvae maxime excellent, ea diligentissime perseqvatur** (Cic. de Or. II. 22). **Ceteris in rebus, qvum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 6). **Si Verres, qvam audax est ad conandum, tam esset obscurus in agendo, fortasse aliqva in re nos aliqvando fefellisset** (Id. Act. I. in Verr. 2). (The relative clause may also stand first where two nouns or adverbs are compared: **Orationem habuit ut honestam, ita parum utilem. Insignem eam pestilentiam mors qvam matura tam acerba M. Furii fecit**, Liv. VII. 1.)

b. Between a subordinate proposition at the commencement of a period and the leading proposition which it introduces, there may be inserted a second subordinate proposition, which is more intimately connected with the latter, or contains some special observation or definition applying to it:—

Et qvoniam studium meae defensionis ab accusatoribus atqve etiam ipsa susceptio causae reprehensa est, anteqvam pro L. Murena dicere instituo, pro me ipso pauca dicam (Cic. pro Mur. 1). **Qvum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiamsi irruptio nulla facta est, tamen pecua relinqvuntur, agricultura deseritur** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 6). **Fugatis hostibus, qvanqvam flumen transire tuto licebat, tamen reliqvum exercitum opperiri placuit.** (Here the subordinate proposition is inserted between the participial and leading propositions: *though, after the defeat of the enemy, the river might have been crossed with safety.*) **Si qvis istorum dixisset, in qvibus summa auctoritas est, si verbum de republica fecisset, multo plura dixisse, qvam dixisset, putaretur** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 1. Compare § **442**, *a*). **Hujus rei qvae consvetudo sit, qvoniam apud homines peritissimos dico, pluribus verbis docere non debeo** (Id. pro Cluent. 41; where the subordinate proposition is inserted between a dependent question and the governing proposition). **Qvoniam, cujus consilio Sex. Roscius occisus sit, invenio, cujus manu sit percussus, non laboro** (Id. pro Rosc. Am. 34). **Macedonia qvum se consilio et manu Fonteji conservatam dicat, ut illa per hunc a Thracum depopulatione defensa est, sic ab hujus nunc capite Gal-**

mpetus depellet (Cic. pro Font. 16. In this example the rela-
position, after a protasis, precedes the demonstrative leading
on).

subordinate proposition, which belongs to another subordi-
position (usually a conjunctional one), is sometimes placed
he latter (before the conjunction), instead of being inserted
put after it. (In this way a particular prominence is given
atement contained in the proposition so prefixed):—

autem agatur, qvum aperuero, facile erit statuere, qvam
am dicatis (Cic. Phil. V. 2). **Rogavi, qvoniam cetera**
lssent, ne hoc unum negarent. Qvod usu non veniebat,
i qvis legem aut judicium constitueret, non tam pro-
ideretur qvam admonere (Cic. pro Tull. 4). **Caesar, ab**
:oribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedisse, qva-
natura loci, qvi cognoscerent, misit (Cæs. B. G. I. 21).
The different forms given under *a* (*Obs.* 2), *b*, and *c*, may
ned; e.g. **Philosophandi scientiam concedens multis, qvod**
oris proprium, apte, distincte, ornate dicere, qvoniam in
lo aetatem consumpsi, si id mihi assumo, videor id meo
odam modo vindicare (Cic. Off. I. 1). After the participle,
ve proposition **qvod est**, &c., takes the first place; then, in
better to establish the demonstrative proposition, the clause
ing with **qvoniam**, &c., is inserted (*b*), and lastly the demon-
tself is changed to a subordinate proposition with **si**, retaining,
according to *c*, its own subordinate propositions before **it.**
is very frequently, in Livy, that what is expected as an apodo-
receding subordinate proposition or to several such, suddenly
a subordinate proposition itself by the insertion of a conjunc-
um, qvia): **Ibi qvum Herculem, cibo vinoqve gravatum**
ppressisset, pastor, accola ejus loci, nomine Cacus, ferox
captus pulchritudine boum, qvum avertere eam praedam
via, si agendo armentum in speluncam compulisset, ipsa
qvaerentem dominum eo deductura erant, aversos boves
n speluncam traxit (Liv. I. 7).

a dependent proposition (especially an indirect question)
i to the beginning of the period by a pronoun which refers
thing that precedes, or with a view to emphasis and anti-
e may insert either the whole governing proposition (if it
), or some words of it, in the dependent proposition, be-
ie connecting pronoun or the emphatic words which come
the interrogative word or conjunction:—

Qvae, breviter, qvalia sint in Cn. Pompejo, consideremus (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 13). **Stoicorum autem, non ignoras, qvam sit subtile vel spinosum potius disserendi genus** (Id. Finn. III. 1). **Ex qvibus, alienissimis hominibus, ita paratus venis, ut tibi hospes aliqvis recipiendus sit** (Id. Div. in Cæc. 15). **Infima est conditio et fortuna servorum, qvibus, non male praecipiunt, qvi ita jubent uti ut mercenariis** (Id. Off. I. 13. Compare § **445**).

Obs. The accusative with the infinitive is not considered absolutely as a distinct proposition, but as intimately combined with the leading proposition (in which it may be inserted according to *a:* **Omnes Caesarem appropinqvare narrabant**). Not only, therefore, may we insert a short proposition (which again may itself be a subordinate proposition), or one or several words of it, in an accusative with the infinitive, in the manner pointed out under *d* (**Platonem Cicero scribit Tarentum venisse; eam causam qvum ego me suscepturum profiterer, repudiatus sum**), but even where the leading proposition comes first, its verb often stands after the subject of the infinitive (particularly a pronoun), sometimes also after another very emphatic word: **Caesar sese negat eo die proelio decertaturum.**

§ 477. Care should be taken in the structure of periods, that each subordinate proposition be inserted just where there is occasion to think of its contents, or where it is called for by some word of the leading proposition. In the historical style the chronological arrangement of the several parts of the leading proposition, and the circumstances to which it refers, is particularly to be attended to. It is also necessary, where there are several subordinate propositions, to avoid too great a uniformity in their structure, unless it should happen that several circumstances which stand in the same relation to the leading proposition are expressed in coordinate propositions. We must especially avoid inserting one proposition in another in such a way that several terminations of a precisely similar form come together at last, especially a number of verbs, which belong severally to different members of the proposition, although such periods are occasionally found in the old writers (e.g. **Constiterunt, nuntios in castra remissos, qvi, qvid sibi, qvando praeter spem hostis occurrisset, faciendum esset, consulerent, qvieti opperientes,** Liv. XXXIII. 6).[1] In a good period there must be a certain symmetry of the parts, particularly between those

[1] On the other hand, there is no objection to several verbs coming together, one of which is governed by the other in the infinitive; e.g. **Foedus sanciri posse dicebant.**

inserted and the conclusion of the leading proposition, so that this may not be too short and abrupt, unless this very brevity is intended to produce a certain effect. The two following may serve as examples of carefully constructed periods:—

Ut saepe homines aegri morbo gravi, qvum aestu febriqve jactantur, si aqvam gelidam biberunt, primo relevari videntur deinde multo gravius vehementiusqve afflictantur, sic hic morbus, qvi est in republica, relevatus istius poena, vehementius, vivis reliqvis, ingravescet (Cic. in Cat. I. 13). **Numitor, inter primum tumultum, hostes invasisse urbem atqve adortos regiam dictitans, qvum pubem Albanam in arcem praesidio armisqve obtinendam avocasset, postqvam juvenes, perpetrata caede pergere ad se gratulantes vidit, extemplo advocato consilio, scelera in se fratris, originem nepotum, ut geniti, ut educati, ut cogniti essent, caedem deinceps tyranni seqve ejus auctorem ostendit** (Liv. I. 6).

FIRST APPENDIX TO THE SYNTAX.

OF SOME SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES IN THE CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.

§ 478. THE VERB UNDERSTOOD. In coordinate propositions the verb is often omitted in one of the propositions, and supplied in it from the other, in the same or a different person and number, and not only (as in English) in the clause which follows from that which precedes, but also in the reverse order (because in Latin the proposition usually concludes with the verb):—

Beate vivere alii in alio, vos in voluptate ponitis (Cic. Finn. II. 37). **In iis, in qvibus sapientia perfecta non est, ipsum illud perfectum honestum nullo modo** (sc. esse potest), **similitudines honesti esse possunt** (Id. Off. III. 3). **L. Luculli virtutem qvis? at qvam multi villarum magnificentiam sunt imitati?** (Id. ib. I. 39). **Nec Graeci terra nec Romanus mari bellator erat** (Liv. VII. 26). (The referring a verb to two subjects, differing in person, number, or gender, is called Syllepsis.)

OBS. 1. In a subordinate proposition, the verb may be supplied from a preceding subordinate proposition of the same character: **Ea magis percipimus atqve sentimus, qvae nobis ipsis prospera**

aut adversa eveniunt, qvam illa, qvae ceteris (Cic. Off. I. 9); rarely from a subordinate proposition of a different kind: **Certe nihil (intelligit honestum) nisi qvod possit ipsum propter se laudari. Nam si propter voluptatem** (sc. **laudatur**), **qvae est ista laus, qvae possit e macello peti?** (Id. Finn. II. 15). In short subordinate propositions, the verb may be supplied from leading propositions which have the same subject: **Sapienter haec reliqvisti, si consilio, feliciter, si casu** (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 28). In relative expressions of comparison, the verb is omitted, as in coordinate propositions: **Adeptus es, qvod non multi homines novi** (Cic. Fam. V. 18). The verb is rarely supplied in the leading proposition from the subordinate: e.g. **Si te municipiorum non pudebat, ne veterani qvidem exercitus?** (Cic. Phil. II. 25); this occurs most frequently in comparisons: **Ut enim cupiditatibus principum et vitiis infici solet tota civitas, ita emendari et corrigi continentia** (Cic. Legg. III. 13). **Olim, qvum regnare existimabamur, non tam ab ullis, qvam hoc tempore observor a familiarissimis Caesaris** (Cic. ad Fam. VII. 24; in this example the verb is understood in another tense, — **observabar**, — which is the case sometimes when the remaining words indicate the difference of time: **Jugurtha dicit, tum sese, paulo ante Carthaginienses, post, ut qvisqve opulentissimus videatur, ita Romanis hostem fore**, Sall. Jug. 81).

Obs. 2. From a verb in a finite mood, the infinitive is often supplied in a subordinate proposition; e.g. **Rogat Rubrium, ut, qvos commodum ei sit, invitet** (Cic. Verr. I. 26). **Si noles sanus, curres hydropicus** (Hor. Ep. I. 2, 34). With this exception a verb is very rarely supplied from a different mood (as, for example, when the whole sense is expressed by a single word which is antithetical to one going before); as, **Si per alios Roscium hoc fecisse dicis, qvaero, servosne an liberos** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 27) = **per servosne an per liberos hoc eum fecisse dicas?**[1]

Obs. 3. Sometimes (but mostly in writers who are accustomed to a harshness of construction) one verb is used as common to two antithetical propositions (or objects), which is only suitable to the nearest, so that some kindred signification, comprised under the same more general idea, must be supplied with the other: e.g. **Germanicus, qvod arduum, sibi, cetera legatis permisit** (Tac. Ann. II. 20; from **permisit** we must supply with **sibi**, *he reserved for himself, he imposed on himself*). (This is called Zeugma.)

---

[1] **Sed utilitatis specie in republica saepissime peccatur, ut in Corinthi disturbatione nostri** (Cic. Off. III. 11, sc. **peccarunt**).

§ 479. ELLIPSIS OF THE VERB. Sometimes the verb is omitted, though it cannot be supplied from a preceding or subsequent proposition, so that we only see from the other words of the proposition what verb is to be understood. This *Ellipsis* of the verb is met with only in animated discourse, in short and simple propositions, chiefly leading propositions in the indicative. On this point we must make the following remarks: —

a. **Est** and **sunt** are often omitted in short and pithy general judgments and sentences, or in quick and passionate transitions, sometimes also in rapid descriptions, which consist of antithetical clauses, and with the perfect participle in propositions which form single members of a continuous narrative: **Omnia praeclara rara** (Cic. Læl. 21). **Jucundi acti labores** (Id. Finn. II. 32). **Sed haec vetera; illud vero recens, Caesarem meo consilio interfectum** (Id. Phil. II. 11.) **Ecqvis est, qvi illud aut fieri noluerit aut factum improbarit? Omnes ergo in culpa** (Id. ib. II. 12). **Africa fines habet ab occidente fretum nostri maris et Oceani, ab ortu solis declivem latitudinem, qvem locum Catabathmon incolae appellant. Mare saevum, importuosum, ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori, arbore infecundus; caelo terraqve penuria aqvarum** (Sall. Jug. 17). **Nondum dedicata erat in Capitolio Jovis aedes; Valerius Horatiusqve consules sortiti, uter dedicaret; Horatio sorte evenit; Publicola ad Vejentium bellum profectus. Aegrius, qvam dignum erat, tulere Valerii necessarii, dedicationem tam incliti templi Horatio dari** (Liv. II. 8). **Erat** and **fuit** (**erant** and **fuerunt**) are less frequently omitted, and only where the past time is sufficiently indicated by the context: **Polycratem Samium felicem appellabant. Nihil acciderat ei, qvod nollet, nisi qvod anulum, qvo delectabatur, in mari abjecerat. Ergo infelix unā molestiā, felix rursus, qvum is ipse anulus in praecordiis piscis inventus est?** (Cic. Finn. V. 30).

OBS. In the poets **est** is often left out in a rather striking manner; e.g. in relative propositions: **Pol me occidistis amici, cui sic extorta voluptas** (Hor. Ep. II. 2, 138). The subjunctive of **sum** is very rarely omitted, especially in prose: **Potest incidere contentio et comparatio, de duobus honestis utrum honestius** (Cic. Off. I. 43). **Esse** in an accusative with the infinitive is rarely omitted (except with participles, concerning which see § **406**, and with gerundives), e.g. in the expression **volo, (nolo, malo) me physicum, me patris similem, me audacem,** *I wish to be and to pass for* —.

b. **Inqvit** is sometimes omitted in a brief notice of the change of persons in a dialogue: **Tum Crassus cet. Huic ego, Nolo te mirari cet. Praeclare qvidem dicis, Laelius** (sc. **inqvit**); **etenim video**

cet. (Cic. R. P. III. 32). This occurs in the poets, even where **inqvit** should form an apodosis: **Ut vidit socios, "Tempus desistere pugnae (sc. inqvit), solus ego in Pallanta feror"** (Virg. Æn. X. 441).

c. **Dico** and **facio** may be omitted in leading propositions, when an assertion or action is briefly characterized by an adverb of praise or dispraise: **Bene igitur idem Chrysippus, qvi omnia in perfectis et maturis docet esse meliora** (Cic. N. D. II. 14). **Scite enim Chrysippus, ut clipei causa involucrum, vaginam gladii, sic praeter mundum cetera omnia aliorum causa esse generata** (Id. ib. II. 14). **Qvanto haec melius vulgus imperitorum, qvi non membra solum hominis deo tribuant, sed usum etiam membrorum?** (Id. ib. I. 36), *how much better does the common man do this = does he treat this subject?*

Obs. So also occasionally in quoting an example: **Alia subito ex tempore conjecturā explicantur, ut apud Homerum Calchas qvi ex passerum numero belli Trojani annos auguratus est** (Cic. Div. I. 33). **Facio** and **fio** are also sometimes omitted after **ne**: **De evertendis diripiendisqve urbibus valde considerandum est, ne qvid temere, ne qvid crudeliter** (Cic. Off. I. 24). **Cave, turpe qvidqvam** (Id. Tusc. II. 22).

d. The verb may, in general, be omitted, in familiar and every-day discourse, or imitations of it, in those leading propositions in which an accusative or other words (e.g. an adverb) qualifying the verb sufficiently point it out, and in which it is desired to attain the greatest brevity, and to compress, as it were, the whole proposition into an accusative, or some other qualifying form: **Crassus verbum nullum contra gratiam** (Cic. ad Att. I. 18). **Ubi enim aut Xenocratem Antiochus seqvitur aut Aristotelem? A Chrysippo pedem nunqvam** (Id. Acad. II. 46). **Qvas tu mihi, inqvit, intercessiones, qvas religiones?** (Id. Phil. I. 10). **A me Caesar pecuniam?** (sc. **postulat**, Id. Phil. II. 29). **Ille ex me, nihilne audissem navi; ego negare** (Id. ad Att. II. 12). **Sed qvid ego alios** (sc. **commemoro**)**? ad me ipsum jam revertar** (Id. Cat. M. 13). **Sed ad ista alias** (sc. **respondebo**)**; nunc Lucilium audiamus** (Id. N. D. II. 1). **Cicero Attico salutem** (occurs often in the superscriptions of letters). **Di meliora!** (**dent**).

Obs. 1. In certain expressions, such an ellipsis has become a general usage; e.g. in the phrases **nihil ad me, ad te**, &c. (sc. **pertinet**, *it does not concern me*): **qvid mihi** (**nobis**, &c.) **cum hac re?** *what have I to do with it?* **Qvorsum haec?** Especially in certain transitions with **qvid**, *how*; **qvid, qvod** —— (*how is it that* ——*? what shall we say to this, that* ——*?*) **qvid, si** —— (*how, if* ——); **qvid ergo? qvid enim? qvid tum?** (*what, then?*) **qvid postea? Qvid multa?** (sc.

dicam = *in short*; **also, ne multa**). So likewise, in some proverbial expressions; as, **Fortuna fortes** (sc. **adjuvat**). **Minima de malis** (**eligenda sunt**).

Obs. 2. Sometimes, when the writer is hurrying in a rapid style, he omits, after the nominative, a verb of *happening*, *occurring*, &c., in order quickly to give a new point or item of his narrative: **Clamor inde concursusqve mirantium, qvid rei esset** (Liv. I. 41). **Italiae rursus concursatio eadem comite mima; in oppida militum crudelis et misera deductio** (Cic. Phil. II. 25), *after that followed again*, &c. (**Qvid Pompejus de me senserit, sciunt, qvi eum Paphum secuti sunt. Nusqvam ab eo mentio de me nisi honorifica** (Id. ib. II. 15).

Obs. 3. Such omissions are less frequent in the subordinate proposition: **Itaqve exspecto, qvid ad ista** (sc. **dicturus sis**, Cic. Tusc. IV. 20).[1]

Obs. 4. Sometimes, we find the infinitives **dicere, commemorare**, and the like, left out in this manner: **Sed non necesse est nunc omnia** (Cic. Tusc. III. 18).

Obs. 5. We may particularly notice the expression **nihil aliud qvam** (in Livy, and the succeeding writers), in which originally the verb **facio** appears to have been omitted (e.g. **Venter in medio qvietus nihil aliud qvam datis voluptatibus fruitur**, Liv. II. 32 = **nihil aliud facit nisi —— fruitur**, see § **442**, *c*, *Obs.* 2), but which, in these writers, stands simply as an adverb, in the sense of *merely*, *only*, with a verb; e.g. **Hostes, nihil aliud qvam perfusis vano timore Romanis, citato agmine abeunt** (Liv. II. 63), *after they had only* ——. (**Nero philosophum, a qvo convicio laesus erat, nihil amplius qvam urbe Italiaqve summovit**, Svet. Ner. 39). In the same way, **si nihil aliud** (*even if nothing else is attained*) stands with the signification *at least* (*even if from no other motive*): **Vēnit in judicium P. Junius, si nihil aliud, saltem ut eum, cujus opera ipse multos annos esset in sordibus, paullo tandem obsoletius vestitum videret** (Cic. Verr. I. 58).

Obs. 6. Quite distinct from Ellipsis is the sudden breaking off of a proposition which has been commenced, and which we do not choose to complete (Aposiopēsis); e.g. **Qvos ego — sed motos praestat componere fluctus** (Virg. Æn. I. 135).

§ 480. Anacoluthia. Sometimes writers indulge in the same inaccuracy, which occurs in oral discourse; namely, that a proposi-

---

[1] **Qvum ille ferociter ad haec** (sc. **diceret**), **se patris sui tenere sedem — clamor oritur** (Liv. I. 48).

tion which has been commenced is so broken off either by long and complicated subordinate propositions, or by parentheses under the form of independent propositions (e.g. with **nam, enim**), that it cannot easily, if at all, be continued and concluded in agreement with the beginning, the connection being forgotten or no longer obvious. In order to show in this case, that the writer returns to the beginning which had been interrupted, it is usual to employ one of the particles **verum, sed, verum tamen, sed tamen** (*but, as I wished to say;* also, **sed haec omitto**, and similar expressions), or **igitur, ergo, inqvam** (*I say*, with a repetition of the leading idea), or only a pronoun, which refers back to the leading idea, after which the interrupted proposition is repeated and concluded, often in a form somewhat altered, so that the original beginning of the proposition remains without a corresponding conclusion. Sometimes, too, the continuation of the discourse is thus modified, without any indication of this kind. This want of strict grammatical coherence is called *Anacoluthia*, and such a proposition an *Anacoluthon*.[1] Some particular kinds of it are found in rhetorical compositions, others of a freer character in such as imitate the style of oral discourse; e.g. in dialogues: —

Qvi potuerunt ista ipsa lege, qvae de proscriptione est (sive Valeria est sive Cornelia; neqve enim novi nec scio), verum ista ipsa lege bona Sex. Roscii venire qvi potuerunt? (Cic. Rosc. Am. 43). **Saepe ego doctos homines — qvid dico "saepe"? immo, nonnunqvam; saepe enim qvi potui, qvi puer in forum venerim neqve inde unqvam diutius qvam qvaestor abfuerim? — sed tamen audivi, et Athenis qvum essem, doctissimos viros et in Asia Scepsium Metrodorum, qvum de his ipsis rebus disputaret** (Id. de Or. II. 90). **Scripsi etiam — nam me jam ab orationibus disjungo fere referoqve ad mansvetiores Musas, qvae me maxime jam a prima adolescentia delectarunt, — scripsi igitur Aristotelio more tres libros de oratore** (Id. ad Fam. I. 9). **Octavio Mamilio Tusculano (is longe princeps Latini nominis erat, si famae credimus, ab Ulixe deaqve Circe oriundus) ei Mamilio filiam nuptum dat** (Liv. I. 49). **Te alio qvodam modo, non solum natura et moribus, verum etiam studio et doctrina esse sapientem, nec sicut vulgus, sed ut eruditi solent appellare sapientem qvalem in**

---

[1] Ἀνακολουθία is compounded of the negative *a* and ἀκολουθέω, *to follow*. A protasis, which wants the regularly corresponding apodosis, has the special name of Anantapodoton (ἀνανταπόδοτον).

Graecia neminem (nam qvi septem appellantur, eos qvi ista subtilius qvaerunt, in numero sapientium non habent), Athenis unum accepimus, et eum qvidem etiam Apollinis oraculo sapientissimum judicatum, — hanc esse in te sapientiam existimant, ut omnia tua in te posita esse ducas humanosqve casus virtute inferiores putes (Cic. Læl. 2). **Nam nos omnes, qvibus est alicunde aliqvis objectus labos, omne, qvod est interea tempus priusqvam id rescitum est, lucro est** (Ter. Hec. III. 1, 6; the sentence is not continued in the way it should have been after the nominative **nos omnes**).

Obs. 1. A particular kind of anacoluthia consists in leading the reader to expect a combination of two coordinate members (e.g. by **et — et, neqve — neqve; duae causae, altera — altera; primum qvia, deinde qvod**), but then dwelling so long on the first member, that the connection of the sentence is lost, and the second member of the idea is subjoined by itself in another way. **Multos oratores vidimus, qvi neminem imitentur, et suapte natura, qvod velint, sine cujusqvam similitudine conseqvantur, qvod et in vobis animadverti recte potest, Caesar et Cotta, qvorum alter inusitatum nostris qvidem oratoribus lepōrem qvendam et salem, alter acutissimum et subtilissimum dicendi genus est consecutus. Neqve vero vester aeqvalis Curio qvenqvam mihi magno opere videtur imitari** (Cic. de Or. II. 23. He had at first intended to say, **Qvod et in vobis animadverti potest et in aeqvali vestro Curione**).

Obs. 2. If particles which connect subordinate propositions are far removed from the proposition which depends upon them, they are sometimes repeated, especially **ut: Verres Archagatho negotium dedit ut, qvicqvid Haluntii esset argenti coelati aut si qvid etiam vasorum Corinthiorum, ut omne statim ad mare ex oppido deportaretur** (Cic. Verr. IV. 23).

§ 481. *a.* From the *grammatical* irregularities which have been here discussed (in which the construction of words and sentences departs from general rules) we must distinguish those peculiarities of expression which have to do with the method of conceiving and expressing particular thoughts without making any change in the inflections or the grammatical construction of words, and are, therefore, only *rhetorical peculiarities of style.* They are found especially in oratorical language, and still more frequently in the poets, who by these means sometimes give their language more force and animation, and at other times attain greater freedom and facility in the structure of their verse. Among these peculiarities we may

here notice that way of expression, which is called Hendiadys (ἓν διὰ δυοῖν, *one by two*), by which a word, which should be connected with another substantive as a qualifying word (as an adjective or in the genitive), is connected with it by a conjunction as a coordinate; e.g.: —

Pateris libamus et auro (Virg. Georg. II. 192) = **pateris aureis, or Molem et montes insuper altos imposuit** (Id. Æn. I. 61) = **molem altorum montium.**

Obs. 1. We may refer to the same class the custom (even more striking in Latin than in English) of saying that a person does a thing himself which he causes to be done by others (**curat faciendum, fieri jubet**); e.g. **Piso anulum sibi facere volebat** (Cic. Verr. IV. 25). **Virgis qvam multos Verres ceciderit, qvid ego commemorem?** (Id. ib. V. 53).

Obs. 2. Another irregularity, in the poets, consists in this, that in consequence of the freedom with which the imagination can transfer a quality from one object of thought to another (e.g. from a person to an action and its result) the adjective is occasionally referred to a different subject from that, to which, strictly considered, it appears to belong: **Capitolio regina dementes ruinas parabat** (Hor. Od. I. 37, 6). Sometimes, by means of an adjective or participle, a quality is attributed to a person or thing, which it does not yet possess, but only acquires as a result of the action announced in the proposition; e.g. **premit placida aeqvora pontus** (Virg. Æn. X. 103); i.e. **premit ita, ut placida fiant, premendo placida fiant.** This last idiom is called **prolepsis adjectivi,** *the anticipation of an adjective.*

b. Certain discrepancies between the Latin and other languages (as, for example, English) are owing to the fact that in particular cases one of the languages describes an action in a more circumstantial way than the other, either by using a circumlocution in the place of the simple verb, by which the action is, as it were, resolved into two, or by repeating the same idea (by a pleonasm) twice. As an example of such *phraseological* peculiarities of Latin (which are in general to be learned by practice and from the dictionary) we may notice the periphrastic use of **facio**: —

Facite, ut non solum mores ejus et arrogantiam, sed etiam vultum atqve amictum recordemini (Cic. pro Cluent. 40). **Faciendum mihi putavi, ut tuis litteris brevi responderem** (Id. ad Fam. III. 8). **Invitus feci, ut L. Flaminium e senatu ejicerem** (Id. Cat. M. 12). In dependent questions after a verb that denotes judgment and consideration, the idea *to think* is often repeated pleonastically: **Itinera,**

qvae per hosce annos in Italia nostri imperatores fecerunt, recordamini; tum facilius statuetis, qvid apud exteras nationes fieri existimetis (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 13), *what you are to believe happens*, instead of *what happens*. In a similar way, it is said, **permitto, concedo (permittitur), ut liceat**; e.g. **Lex permittit, ut furem noctu liceat occidere** (Cic. pro Tull. 47).

SECOND APPENDIX TO THE SYNTAX.

OF THE SIGNIFICATION AND USE OF THE PRONOUNS.

§ 482. The personal pronoun, as a subject, is usually omitted, when the person is not emphasized (in contrast with others, or with reference to its own character, or because several actions are referred to the same subject):—

Tu nidum servas, ego laudo ruris amoeni rivos (Hor. Ep. I. 10, 6). **Et tu apud patres conscriptos contra me dicere ausus es?** (Cic. Phil. II. 21). **Tu a civitatibus pecunias classis nomine coëgisti, tu pretio remiges dimisisti, tu archipiratam ab oculis omnium removisti** (Id. Verr. V. 52).

§ 483. In Latin, an individual not unfrequently speaks of himself in the first person plural, when he thinks more of the condition and bearings of the subject under discussion, than of himself personally in distinction from others:—

Reliqvum est, ut de felicitate Pompeji plura dicamus (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 16). **Qvaerenti mihi, qvanam re possem prodesse qvam plurimis, nulla major occurrebat, qvam si optimarum artium vias traderem meis civibus, qvod compluribus jam libris me arbitror consecutum. Nam et cohortati sumus, ut maxime potuimus, ad philosophiae studium in eo libro, qvi inscriptus est Hortensius, et, qvod genus philosophandi maxime et constans et elegans arbitraremur, qvattuor Academicis libris ostendimus** (Id. Div. II. 1). **Noster** is used in the same way, instead of **meus**.

Obs. Concerning the redundant personal pronoun with **qvidem**, see below, on the demonstratives, § **489**, *b*.

§ 484. *a*. The pronoun **is** (the indirect demonstrative) is omitted as a nominative, when we continue simply to speak of the same

person as before without emphasis or contrast; but it is used when, after a short notice of the person of whom we are about to speak, we come to the thing which was especially to be said: —

P. Annius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore. Is qvum haberet unicam filiam, eam bonis suis heredem instituit (Cic. Verr. I. 41). So, likewise, the accusative or dative of this pronoun is very often omitted, when the word to which it refers is found in the same grammatical construction in a preceding leading or subordinate proposition, or in a preceding proposition with which the proposition to which the pronoun belongs is connected by a copulative or disjunctive particle. This occurs, however, when the pronoun is not emphatic, and when the proposition in which the pronoun belongs is short and simple: **Fratrem tuum ceteris in rebus laudo, in hac una reprehendere cogor. Non obsistam fratris tui voluntati, qvoad honestas patietur; favere non potero.** Under these circumstances, the accusative is also sometimes omitted, where that which is referred to by the pronoun precedes in the nominative: **Libri, de qvibus scribis, mei non sunt; sumpsi a fratre meo.** (The same case is never repeated with two connected verbs, thus: *I saw him, and asked him;* but **vidi eum rogaviqve.**)

b. **Is** is sometimes followed, not by **qvi**, but by **qvicunqve**; e.g. **Qvid habeo, qvod faciam, nisi ut eam fortunam, qvaecunqve erit tua ducam meam** (Cic. pro Mil. 36 = **qvae erit tua, qvaecunqve erit**) or **si qvis** (**is, si qvis = is, qvi, si qvis**); e.g. **Ipse Allienus ex ea facultate, si qvam habet, aliqvantum detrahet** (Cic. Div. in Cæc. 15).

c. A more precise definition of a word is connected emphatically by **et is** (**atqve is, et is qvidem**), *and that;* **nec is**, *and that not:* **Habet homo primum memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerabilium** (Cic. Tusc. I. 24). **Uno atqve eo facili proelio caesi ad Antium hostes** (Liv. IV. 57). **Epicurus una in domo et ea qvidem angusta qvam magnos qvantaqve amoris conspiratione consentientes tenuit amicorum greges!** (Cic. Finn. I. 20). **Erant in Romana juventute adolescentes aliqvot, nec ii tenui loco orti, qvorum in regno libido solutior fuerat** (Liv. II. 3). (If that which is added belongs to the predicate and to the assertion in general, the neuter is employed, **et id**; e.g. **Apollonium doctum hominem cognovi et studiis optimis deditum, idqve a puero**, Cic. ad Fam. XIII. 16). In the same way, we find **sed is: Severitatem in senectute probo, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam** (Cic. Cat. M. 18).[1]

---

[1] **Hostis et is hostis, qvi —, tribunus et Curio tribunus —, homines ignoti atqve ita ignoti, ut —** (without **qvidem**, when the preceding word is repeated with an addition which gives emphasis).

§ 485. *a.* **Hic**, *this*, is used to denote what is nearest to the speaker in place, time, or thought: —

Tum primum philosophia, non illa de natura, qvae fuerat antiqvior, sed haec, in qva de bonis et malis deqve hominum vita disputatur, inventa dicitur (Cic. Brut. 8). **Opus vel in hac magnificentia urbis conspiciendum** (Liv. VI. 4), *that of the present day, of our time.* **Qvi haec vituperare volunt, Chrysogonum tantum posse qveruntur** (Cic. pro Rosc. Am. 48), *the present state of things.* **Sex. Stola, judex hic noster** (Id. pro Flacco), *who sits here as judge.* **Ille**, *that*, refers to something more distant (**veteres illi, qvi ——**), but often designates what is important or well known: **Ex suo regno sic Mithridates profugit, ut ex eodem Ponto Medea illa qvondam profugisse dicitur** (Cic. pro Leg. Man. 9). (Concerning **hic** and **ille**, in notices of time, see § **276**, *Obs.* 5.) If two persons or things that have been previously named be spoken of, **hic** is generally referred to the *last mentioned*, **ille** to the *more remote*; e.g. **Caesar beneficiis atqve munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitae Cato. Ille mansvetudine et misericordia clarus factus, huic severitas dignitatem addiderat** (Sall. Cat. 54). But **hic**, not unfrequently, refers not to the last named, but to that which is nearer in thought and in its nature: **Melior tutiorqve est certa pax, qvam sperata victoria, haec (pax) in tua, illa in deorum potestate est** (Liv. XXX. 30).

Obs. What is expressed in the **oratio directa** by **hic** is designated in the **oratio obliqva** by **ille**; yet **hic** may sometimes be retained with emphasis from the **oratio directa**. **Tu (vos)** of the **oratio directa** is expressed in repeating the speech of another chiefly by **ille**, but also by **is**: **Caveat, ne illo cunctante Numidae sibi consulant** (Sall. Jug. 62) = **cave, ne te cunctante ——. Tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum** (Cæs. B. G. I. 14) = **tamen, si obsides a vobis dantur ——.**

b. **Hic**, and especially **ille**, also refer to something that is to be mentioned next (**hic** being used for what is present, **ille** for something new or well known): —

Nonne qvum multa alia mirabilia, tum illud imprimis? (Cic. de Div. I. 10, *the following circumstance especially*). (On the addition of a proposition referring to **hic** or **ille** with **enim** or **nam**, see § **439**, *Obs.* 2.)

c. **Hic** is used in relative clauses instead of **is** (**hic, qvi**), when the thing so described is designated as something near (e.g. **haec, qvae a nobis hoc qvatriduo disputata sunt**, Cic. Tusc. IV. 38); otherwise, but seldom.

Obs. We must also notice **hic et hic, hic et ille,** *this and that, this or that;* **ille et ille,** *one or two.*

§ 486. **Iste** is used of that which refers to the person addressed (of a thing which is in his neighborhood, relates to him, proceeds from him, is mentioned by him, &c.); hence **iste tuus (iste vester)** are often found combined, or **iste** has the same signification as **tuus (vester)**:—

Ista oratio, *that speech (which you make).* **Qvaevis mallem causa fuisset qvam ista, qvam dicis** (Cic. de Or. II. 4). **De istis rebus exspecto tuas litteras** (Id. ad Att. II. 5), *concerning what happens where you are.* **Age, nunc isti doceant** (*those philosophers whom you follow*), **qvonam modo efficiatur, ut honeste vivere summum bonum sit** (Id. Finn. IV. 11).

Yet **iste** is also used of a thing which is near or present to the speaker, but which he (contemptuously) motions from him (as, e.g. by the accuser when speaking of the defendant in a court of justice), or of a thing which we have ourselves recently named or mentioned (and think of as more remote); e.g.:—

Fructum istum laudis, qvi ex perpetua oratione percipi potuit, in alia tempora reservemus (Cic. Verr. A. I. 11). **Utinam tibi istam mentem dii immortales duint** (Id. in Cat. I. 9), *Would that the gods would give you such a disposition.* **Si qvid novisti rectius istis, candidus imperti; si non, his utere mecum** (Hor. Ep. I. 6, 67).

Obs. What is said of the distinction, in meaning, between **hic, ille,** and **iste,** applies also to the adverbs derived from them.

§ 487. *a.* **Ipse** stands alone (without the addition of **is**) where the emphasis falls in English on self (selves), because it indicates a contrast with something else which is distinct from or substituted for, to something out of or instead of the person or thing itself:—

Accipio, qvod dant; mihi enim satis est; ipsis non satis (Cic. Finn. II. 26). **Qvaeram ex ipsa** (Id. pro Cæl. 14). **Parvi de eo, qvod ipsis superat, gratificari aliis volunt** (Id. Finn. V. 15). (**Ipsi, qvi scripserunt,** *the authors themselves.* But **is ipse,** *even he, even that, that very.*)

Obs. 1. **Ipse** is to be noticed in the signification of *exactly, precisely:* **Crassus triennio ipso minor erat qvam Antonius** (Cic. Brut. 43). (**Nunc ipsum,** *just now;* **tum ipsum, qvum,** *precisely at the moment when.*)

Obs. 2. **Et ipse** stands in the signification *also, likewise*, when the same is said of a new subject, which had been previously said of others: **Deinde Crassus, ut intelligere posset Brutus, qvem hominem lacessisset, tres et ipse excitavit recitatores** (Cic. pro Cluent. 51), *thereupon Crassus, as his opponent had done, likewise* ——.

b. In reflective assertions (expressing an action of the subject on itself) **ipse** stands in the same case with the subject (in the nominative), when it is intended to express what the subject *itself* does (as distinguished from what others do and what is performed by the aid of others); on the other hand, it stands in the same case with the personal or reflective pronoun, when it is indicated that the action is exerted upon the subject, and not on other persons: —

Non egeo medicina; me ipse consolor (Cic. Læl. 3). **Valvae clausae repagulis subito se ipsae aperuerunt** (Cic. Divin. I. 34). **Cato se ipse interemit** (*was not killed by others*). **Junius necem sibi ipse conscivit** (Id. N. D. II. 3). **Non potest exercitum is continere imperator, qvi se ipse non continet** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 13), *who does not himself keep himself under control.* **Tu qvoniam rempublicam nosqve conservas, fac, ut diligentissime te ipsum, mi Dolabella, custodias** (Id. ad Fam. IX. 14). **Ea gessimus, ut omnibus potius qvam ipsis nobis consuluerimus** (Id. Finn. II. 19). **Sensim tardeve potius nosmetipsos cognoscimus** (Id. Finn. V. 15). **Facile, qvod cujusqve temporis officium sit, poterimus, nisi nosmetipsos valde amabimus, judicare** (Id. Off. I. 9).

Yet the Latins sometimes use the nominative of **ipse**, when the antithesis might lead us to expect another case (in order to mark more emphatically the relation of a person or thing to itself, as at once subject and object): —

Verres sic erat humilis atqve demissus, ut non modo populo Romano, sed etiam sibi ipse condemnatus videretur (Cic. Verr. I. 6). **Ipse sibi inimicus est** (Id. Finn. V. 10). **Se ipsi omnes natura diligunt** (Id. Finn. III. 18). (**Ipse** is often so used before **se** and **sibi**.) **Secum ipsi loqvuntur** (Id. R. P. I. 17). (**Crassus et Antonius ex scriptis cognosci ipsi suis non potuerunt**, Cic. de Or. II. 2, *from their own writings.* **Ipse per se, per se ipse**, *in and of himself.*)

§ 488. **Idem** is often used where something new is said of a person or thing already mentioned, to denote either similarity (*likewise, also, at the same time*) or a contrast (*yet, on the other hand*): —

Thorius utebatur eo cibo, qvi et svavissimus esset et idem facillimus ad concoqvendum (Cic. Finn. II. 20). **Nihil utile, qvod non idem honestum** (Id. Off. III. 7). **P. Africanus eloqventia cumulavit bellicam laudem, qvod idem fecit Timotheus, Cononis filius** (Id. Off. I. 32). **Etiam patriae hoc munus debere videris, ut ea, qvae salva per te est, per te eundem sit ornata** (Id. Legg. I. 2). **Inventi multi sunt, qvi vitam profundere pro patria parati essent, iidem** (*but on the other hand*) **gloriae jacturam ne minimam qvidem facere vellent** (Id. Off. I. 24). **Epicurus, qvum** (*while*) **optimam et praestantissimam naturam dei dicat esse, negat idem esse in deo gratiam** (Id. N. D. I. 43).

§ 489. A demonstrative pronoun is used redundantly in certain combinations: —

a. When a substantive or a pronoun has been separated from its predicate or governing verb by an intervening proposition (especially a relative proposition), it is sometimes emphatically recalled to mind by the pronoun **is** (rarely **hic**, where an antithesis is to be made very prominent): **Plebem et infimam multitudinem, qvae P. Clodio duce fortunis vestris imminebat, eam Milo, qvo tutior esset vestra vita, tribus suis patrimoniis delenivit** (Cic. pro Mil. 35). **Haec ipsa, qvae nunc ad me delegare vis, ea semper in te eximia et praestantia fuerunt** (Id. de Or. II. 28). **Agrum Campanum, qvi qvum de vectigalibus eximebatur, ut militibus daretur, tamen infligi magnum reipublicae vulnus putabamus, hunc tu compransoribus tuis et collusoribus dividebas** (Id. Phil. II. 39). (This idiom involves a kind of anacoluthia. See § **480.**)

Obs. 1. In a similar way, **hic** and **ille** are inserted in comparisons: **Ingeniosi, ut aes Corinthium in aeruginem, sic illi in morbum incidunt tardius** (Cic. Tusc. IV. 14).

Obs. 2. Sometimes a subject, without being separated from its predicate, is emphatically distinguished from others by the addition of **is** (or **is vero**): **Ista animi tranqvillitas ea est ipsa beata vita** (Cic. Finn. V. 8). **Sed urbana plebs ea vero praeceps ierat multis de causis** (Sall. Cat. 37).

b. When the participle **qvidem** stands with a concessive signification (*indeed, to be sure*) with a predicate (verb or adjective), with **sed** following, it is, in the best writers, not connected immediately with the verb or adjective, but a pronoun is inserted before **qvidem**, which corresponds to the word of which the predicate is conceded; namely, **eqvidem** (for **ego qvidem**), **nos qvidem, tu qvidem, vos qvidem, ille** (more rarely, **is**) **qvidem**: **Reliqva non eqvidem contemno, sed plus tamen habent spei qvam timoris** (Cic. ad Q. Fr. II. 16), *the rest I do not, indeed, de-*

spise, but ——. **Oratorias exercitationes non tu qvidem reliqvisti, sed certe philosophiam illis anteposuisti** (Id. de Fat. 2). **P. Scipio non multum ille qvidem nec saepe dicebat, sed omnes sale facetiisqve superabat** (Id. Brut. 34). **Ludo autem et joco uti illo qvidem licet, sed tum, qvum gravibus seriisqve rebus satisfecerimus** (Id. Off. I. 29). **Sapientiae studium vetus id qvidem in nostris, sed tamen ante Laelii aetatem et Scipionis non reperio, qvos appellare possim nominatim** (Id. Tusc. IV. 3). **Libri scripti inconsiderate ab optimis illis qvidem viris, sed non satis eruditis** (Id. ib. I. 3), *by men, who were, to be sure* ——. **Cyri vitam et disciplinam legunt, praeclaram illam qvidem, sed non tam aptam rebus nostris** (Id. Brut. 29). (Less usually: **Proposuit qvidem legem, sed minutissimis litteris et angustissimo loco,** Svet. Cal. 41).

§ 490. *a.* The REFLECTIVE PRONOUN and the possessive **suus** derived from it refer back to the subject, like the word *self*: —

Ipse se qvisqve diligit (Cic. Læl. 21). **Bestiis homines uti possunt ad suam utilitatem** (Id. Finn. III. 20). **Fabius a me diligitur propter summam suam humanitatem et observantiam** (Id. ad Fam. XV. 14). **Cui proposita est conservatio sui** (*the preservation of himself, self-preservation* = **conservare se**) **necesse est huic partes qvoqve sui caras esse** (Id. Finn. V. 13). Concerning the second **sui**, see, under *b*. **Si pater familias, liberis suis a servo interfectis, supplicium de servo non sumpserit crudelissimus videatur** (Id. in Cat. IV. 6). (**Inter se**, *mutually, one another, together*, may refer also to the direct or remote object: **Etiam feras inter se partus et educatio conciliat,** Cic. Rosc. Am. 22. So, likewise, **ipsum per se, ipsi per se.**)

b. **Suus** may also refer to some other substantive in the sentence, especially to the direct or remote object. Sometimes, however, it refers to other cases also, when the mutual relation of the word with which **suus** agrees, and the one to which it refers, is emphasized with respect to the assertion of the proposition, as by *his own, her own*, in English. It is found (even when it cannot be so translated) especially where the word to which it refers denotes the proper logical subject (the person whose fate, course of conduct, &c., are spoken of); also, when a distributive relation is indicated by the help of **qvisqve**, or an activity of the person indicated with respect to that which is represented by the word with which **suus** agrees: —

Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt (Cic. pro Sest. 68). **Suis flammis delete Fidenas** (Liv. IV. 33). **Si ceteris recte facta sua prosunt, mihi mea ne qvando obsint, providete** (Cic. in Cat. III. 12). **Fides sua sociis parum felix in praesentia fuit** (Liv. III. 7). **Desinant insidiari domi suae consuli** (Cic. in Cat. I. 13). **Volscis levatis metu suum rediit ingenium** (Liv. II. 22), *their customary, peculiar character.* **Justitia suum cuiqve distribuit** (Cic. N. D. III. 15). **Sua cujusqve animantis natura est** (Id. Finn. V. 9). **Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae** (Sall. Cat. 21 = **jubebat cogitare de sua ——**, where **suus** refers to the subject of **cogitare**). **Dicaearchum cum Aristoxeno, aeqvali et condiscipulo suo, doctos sane homines, omittamus** (Id. Tusc. I. 18), *with his fellow-pupil, so that he may take his fellow-pupil with him.* But **Omitto Isocratem discipulosqve ejus, Ephorum et Naucratem** (Cic. Or. 51). **Pisonem nostrum merito ejus amo plurimum** (Id. ad Fam. XIV. 2). **Verri de eadem re litterae complures a multis ejus amicis afferuntur** (Id. Verr. II. 39). **Deum agnoscis ex operibus ejus** (Id. Tusc. I. 28).

Obs. **Suus**, *his* (*her*, *their*) *own*, may even be referred to the person or thing generally treated of in the discourse, though it be not expressly named in the same proposition: **Mater qvod svasit sua, adolescens mulier fecit** (Ter. Hec. IV. 4, 38). **Is annus omnem Crassi spem atqve omnia vitae consilia morte pervertit. Fuit hoc luctuosum suis** (*to his friends*), **acerbum patriae, grave bonis omnibus** (Cic. de Or. III. 2).

c. **Se** and **suus** in subordinate propositions refer not only to the subject in the same proposition, but also to the subject of the leading proposition, or of the word (a participle, for instance, on which the subordinate proposition depends), when the dependent proposition is stated as the sentiment of this subject. This is always the case with accusatives with the infinitive, with propositions which denote the object of an exertion and effort (§§ **372** and **375**), with propositions expressing an object and dependent questions, and with such relative and other subordinate propositions as are designated by the subjunctive as the sentiments of another (§§ **368** and **369**):—

Sentit animus se vi sua, non aliena moveri (Cic. Tusc. I. 23). (After a general infinitive: **Haec est una omnis sapientia, non arbitrari sese scire, qvod nesciat,** *not to think that one knows* (Cic. Acad. I. 4). **Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem. Id ea de causa Caesar fecit, ne se hostes occupatum opprimerent. Exposuit, cur ea res**

parum sibi placeret. Solo Pisistrato qvaerenti, qva spe fretus sibi obsisteret, respondit senectute (Cic. Cat. M. 20). **Accusat amicos, qvod se non adjuverint. Ariovistus respondet, si qvid Caesar se velit, illum ad se venire oportere** (Cæs. B. G. I. 34). **Legati Caerĭtes Deos rogaverunt, ut Romanos florentes ea sui** (sc. **Caeritum**) **misericordia caperet, qvae se rebus affectis qvondam populi Romani cepisset** (Liv. VII. 20). **Paetus omnes libros, qvos frater suus reliqvisset, mihi donavit** (Cic. ad Att. II. 1). **Tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut, qvoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur** (Id. Div. I. 27). **Ædui se victis ceteros incolumes fore negant (= si ipsi victi sint, si hostes se vicerint).**

Obs. 1. **Se** and **suus** are also referred to the person in the leading proposition, whose language or sentiments are expressed in the subordinate, even when this person is not the grammatical subject of the former: **Jam inde ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat, regiam stirpem apud se educari** (Liv. I. 5). **A Caesare valde liberaliter invitor, sibi ut sim legatus** (Cic. ad Att. II. 18).

Obs. 2. Sometimes nothing but the connection can show whether **se** (**suus**) refers to the subject of the leading proposition or that of the subordinate; e.g. **Hortensius ex Verre qvaesivit, cur suos** (i.e. **Hortensii**) **familiarissimos rejici passus esset** (Cic. Verr. I. 7). **Se** and **suus** are even found in the same proposition, so used that one refers to the nearest subject, while the other refers to the subject of the leading proposition: **Livius Salinator Q. Fabium Maximum rogavit, ut meminisset, opera sua** (sc. **Livii**) **se** (sc. **Fabium**) **Tarentum recepisse** (Cic. de Or. II. 67). **Romani legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, qvi a Prusia rege peterent ne inimicissimum suum** (sc. **Romanorum**) **apud se haberet** (Corn. Hann. 12).

Obs. 3. We find, however, in the Latin authors, some passsages less carefully written, where the subordinate proposition either necessarily expresses an idea conceived by the leading subject (as, for example, object-clauses), or is shown to be such by the use of the subjunctive, and where, notwithstanding, **is, ejus** is used instead of **se, suus**, of the person which is the subject of the leading proposition. (This never occurs in an accusative with the infinitive which is immediately connected with the leading proposition). On the other hand, there are also found some few passages where **se** and **suus** are employed, though there is no subjunctive to indicate that the sentiments expressed are those of another: **Helvetii persvadent Rauracis et Tulingis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisqve exustis, una cum iis proficiscantur** (Cæs. B. G. I. 5). **Audistis nuper dicere legatos Tyndaritanos, Mercurium, qvi sacris anniversariis apud eos coleretur, Verris**

imperio esse sublatum (Cic. Verr. IV. 39). **Chrysogonus hunc sibi ex animo scrupulum, qvi se diesqve noctesqve stimulat ac pungit, ut evellatis, postulat** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 2). **Metellus in iis urbibus, qvae ad se defecerant, praesidia imponit** (Sall. Jug. 61). **Patres nil rectum, nisi qvod placuit sibi, ducunt** (Hor. Ep. II. 1, 83). Thus, we find both **qvantum in se est, erat** (*so far as it rests, rested, with him*), and (more correctly) **qvantum in ipso est, erat.**

Obs. 4. **Ipse** for **se ipsum, sibi ipsi,** &c. (in a subordinate proposition, referring to the subject of the leading proposition), is found in the best writers in a few passages, where the word *self* is to be made prominent: **Sunt qvi se recusare negent qvominus, ipsis mortuis, terrarum omnium deflagratio conseqvatur** (Cic. Finn. III. 19).[1]

Obs. 5. **Se** and **suus** sometimes stand in universal assertions, without being referred to a definite subject preceding, in the signification *one's self*: **Negligere, qvid de se** (*of one*) **qvisqve sentiat, non solum arrogantis est, sed etiam omnino dissoluti** (Cic. Off. I. 28).

Obs. 6. Instead of **se** (**sibi**) **inter se**, *mutually, one another*, it is usual to say only **inter se**, omitting the object: **Veri amici non solum colent inter se ac diligent, sed etiam verebuntur** (Cic. Læl. 22). (**Inter nos** = **nos** or **nobis inter nos**; **inter vos.**)

§ 491. The possessive pronouns (pronominal adjectives) may be omitted in Latin, when the relation which they would express is easily ascertained from the context (especially, therefore, where they serve to refer a thing to the subject, but sometimes, also, where they would point to the direct or remote object), and when no kind of emphasis rests on the possessive as a qualifying word:—

Patrem amisi, qvum qvartum annum agebam, matrem, qvum sextum (**amisit** — **agebat**). **Roga parentes** (sc. **tuos**). **Manus lava et coena! Frater meus amatur ab omnibus propter summam morum svavitatem. Patris animum mihi reconciliasti** (sc. **mei**). Yet **suus** is also not unfrequently used, where it might have been omitted.

Obs. 1. The possessive pronoun designates, in certain combinations (e.g. with **tempus, locus, deus, numen**), that which is suitable, correct, or favorable, for a person or thing. **Suo loco, suo tempore. Loco aeqvo, tempore tuo pugnasti** (Liv. XXXVIII. 45). **Vadimus non numine nostro** (Virg. Æn. II. 396).

---

[1] In later authors (e.g. L. Seneca and Curtius), **ipsum** is found here and there instead of **se** in the accusative with the infinitive: **Sciunt ipsos omnia habere communia** (Sen. ep. 6). **Macedonum reges credunt ab illo deo ipsos goenus ducere** (Curt. IV. 7).

Obs. 2. Concerning **nulla tua epistola** (*from you*), **mea unius opera**, see § **297**, *a*. **(Iniqvo suo tempore**, Liv. II. 23.)

§ 492. On the Interrogative Pronouns the following observations may be made.

a. The Latins can combine two interrogative pronouns in one proposition in such a way, that a question is asked both concerning the subject and the object: —

Considera, qvis qvem fraudasse dicatur (Cic. pro Rosc. Com. 7), *who is said to have defrauded, and whom he is said to have defrauded.* **Nihil jam aliud qvaerere judices debetis, nisi uter utri insidias fecerit** (Id. pro Mil. 9), *which of these two laid a plot for the other.*

Obs. Concerning the interrogative with a participle, see § **424**, *Obs.* 3, and § **428**, *Obs.* 7.

b. An interrogative exclamation of surprise (at the greatness of a thing, &c.) is expressed affirmatively: —

Qvam multos scriptores rerum suarum magnus ille Alexander secum habuisse dicitur! (Cic. pro Arch. 10). **Hic vero adolescens qvum eqvitaret cum suis delectis eqvitibus, qvos concursus facere solebat! qvam se jactare!** (Id. pro Dej. 10). (If **non** is introduced, the surprise or the question applies to the negative idea: **Qvam id te, di boni, non decebat!** *How ill it became you!* Cic. Phil. II. 8.)

Obs. 1. Concerning the use of dependent questions with a pronoun, it may here also be observed, that in English the object of a communication or question is sometimes expressed by a substantive with a relative proposition attached to it, a construction which is not usual, in Latin, an interrogative proposition being employed instead; e.g. *I told him of the progress which the boy had made*, **narravi ei, qvos progressus puer fecisset.** *Writers are not agreed as to the motives which induced Tiberius to take this step*, **qvae Tiberium causae impulerint, scriptores non consentiunt. (Non poenitet, qvantum profecerim**, *I am not dissatisfied with the progress which I have made.*)

Obs. 2. A direct question respecting the reason or motive of an action is expressed by the pronominal adverb **cur**; **qvare** is used only in dependent propositions, and usually after expressions which indicate a motive (§ **372**, *b*, *Obs.* 6. Compare § **440**, *b*, *Obs.* 1). **Qvidni** is used only with the subjunctive, to signify *why should not?* (§ **353**).

§ 493. *a*. Of the Indefinite Pronouns **aliqvis** denotes in the most general way *some one, some thing*, a single undefined person or thing: —

Fecit hoc aliqvis tui similis. Si mihi esset obtemperatum, si non optimam, at aliqvam rempublicam, qvae nunc nulla est, haberemus (Cic. Off. I. 11). **Ut tarda aliqva et langvida pecus** (Id. Finn. II. 13). **Declamabam saepe cum M. Pisone et cum Q. Pompejo aut cum aliqvo qvotidie** (Id. Brut. 90), *or some other person* (nearly equivalent to **alius aliqvis**, though the word itself does not bear this signification). (**Est aliqvid**, *it is yet something, not so absolutely nothing.*) **Qvis** has the same signification (**dicat qvis, dicat aliqvis**, *one might say*), but is used where an indefinite subject or object is to be designated very slightly, and without emphasis (*one*); e.g. **Fieri potest, ut recte qvis sentiat, et id, qvod sentit, polite eloqvi non possit** (Cic. Tusc. I. 3); especially in relative propositions (*what one*, &c.), after **qvum** (*when one*), and usually after **si, nisi, ne, num**: **Qvo qvis versutior et callidior est, hoc invisior et suspectior** (Cic. Off. II. 9). **Illis promissis standum non est, qvae coactus qvis metu, qvae deceptus dolo promisit** (Id. ib. I. 10). **Si qvam repperero causam, indicabo. Galli legibus sanctum habent, ut si qvis qvid de republica a finitimis rumore ac fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat** (Cæs. B. G. VI. 20). **Vereor, ne qvid subsit doli. (Sicubi accidit, ne qvando fiat,** &c.)

Obs. 1. Yet we find **aliqvis**, and the words derived from it, not unfrequently after **si**, and sometimes after **ne**, especially if some emphasis rests on the pronoun (*somewhat*, a certain measure, in opposition to *much, little, all*): **Si aliqvid de summa gravitate Pompejus, si multum de cupiditate Caesar remisisset, pacem stabilem nobis habere licuisset** (Cic. Phil. XIII. 1). **Timebat Pompejus omnia, ne vos aliqvid timeretis** (Id. pro Mil. 24). **Si aliqvando** (*on a single occasion*) **tacent omnes, tum sortitò coguntur dicere** (Id. Verr. IV. 64).

Obs. 2. The plural of **aliqvis** is **aliqvi**; **aliqvot** is used only when a certain number is thought of.

b. **Qvispiam** is also employed, like **qvis**, to denote a single person or thing which is quite indefinite (**dicat qvispiam**), but not so absolutely without emphasis:—

Forsitan aliqvis aliqvando ejusmodi qvidpiam fecerit (Cic. Verr. II. 32). **Communi consvetudine sermonis abutimur, qvum ita dicimus, velle aliqvid qvempiam aut nolle sine causa** (Id. de Fat. 11).

c. **Qvidam** is *a certain one* (a definite person or thing, of which, however, a more precise notice is unnecessary):—

Qvidam ex advocatis, homo summa virtute praeditus, intelligere se dixit, non id agi, ut verum inveniretur (Cic. pro Cluent. 63). **Habitant hic qvaedam mulierculae** (Ter. Ad. IV. 5, 13). **Hoc non facio, ut fortasse qvibusdam videor, simulatione** (Cic. ad Fam. I. 8). (On its use in combination with **qvasi**, when a name is made use of that is not strictly appropriate, see § **444**, *a*, *Obs.* 2.) (**Certus qvidam**, *a certain definite individual.*)

Obs. By **nonnemo**, *one or two*, some (*few*) definite but unnamed persons are always indicated: **Video de istis, qvi se populares haberi volunt, abesse nonneminem. Is** —— (Cic. in Cat. IV. 5; the discourse is continued with **is**, because **nonnemo**, grammatically considered, is in the singular).. **Nonnihil**, *somewhat* (most frequently as an adverb: **Nonnihil timeo, nonnihil miror**, &c.). **Nonnullus** (adj.), *not exactly none, some, a part.*

§ 494. *a.* The substantive **qvisqvam** and the adjective **ullus** (which sometimes stands as a substantive, see § **90**, *Obs.*, and in the plural is both a substantive and adjective) denote *any one whatever, any at all*, even if it were only a single individual, whoever or whatever it may be, and express an affirmative idea in the most general way, without conveying the notion of a distinct person or thing. **Qvisqvam** and **ullus** are used, therefore (first) in negative propositions and in questions which have the force of a negative, where the negation is universal and relates to the whole proposition, and after the preposition **sine**: —

Sine sociis nemo qvidqvam tale conatur (Cic. Læl. 12). **Justitia nunqvam nocet cuiqvam, qvi eam habet** (Id. Finn. I. 16). **Sine virtute neqve amicitiam neqve ullam rem expetendam conseqvi possumus** (Id. Læl. 22). (The negative word must always precede.) **Sine ullo auxilio** (*without any help whatever, destitute of all aid*).[1] **Tu me existimas ab ullo malle mea legi probariqve qvam a te?** (Cic. ad Att. IV. 5). **Qvid est, qvod qvisqvam dignum Pompejo afferre possit?** (Id. pro Leg. Man. 11). **Qvisqvamne istuc negat?** (Id. N. D. III. 28). So likewise, **Qvasi vero qvisqvam vir excellenti animo in rempublicam ingressus optabilius qvidqvam arbitretur qvam se a suis civibus reipublicae causa diligi** (Cic. in Vat. 3 = **nemo arbitratur**). **Desitum est videri qvidqvam in socios iniqvum, qvum exstitisset in cives tanta crudelitas** (Id. Off. II. 8 = **Nihil jam iniqvum videbatur**).

---

[1] **Sine omni timore** (Ter. Andr. II. 3, 17), is a very unusual form of expression. (**Ne sine omni qvidem sapientia**, Cic. de Or. II. 1, *without the whole compass of philosophy.*

Obs. 1. If, on the other hand, the sense only requires the negation of some one particular affirmative idea, **aliqvis** or **qvispiam** is made use of: **Non ob ipsius aliqvod delictum** (Cic. pro Balb. 28), *not on account of this or that crime committed by himself*. **Vidi, fore, ut aliqvando non Torqvatus neqve Torqvati qvispiam similis, sed aliqvis bonorum hostis aliter indicata haec esse diceret** (Id. pro Sull. 14). In the same way, **ne qvis, ne qvid,** &c., are commonly employed. (**Ne qvis unqvam. Ne qvisqvam,** *that no one, whoever it may be:* **Metellus edixit, ne qvisqvam in castris panem aut qvem alium coctum cibum venderet,** Sall. Jug. 45.) **Qvisqvam (ullus)** is also not used, when the negation applies, not to the whole proposition, but to a single word with which it is combined, so as to form one negative idea: **Qvum aliqvid non habeas,** *when one has not this or that thing* (Cic. Tusc. I. 36); or when two negations cancel each other: **Nemo vir magnus sine aliqvo afflatu divino unqvam fuit** (Cic. N. D. II. 66). **Non sine aliqvo incommodo. Hi philosophi mancam fore putaverunt sine aliqva accessione virtutem** (Cic. Finn. III. 9 = **nisi adjungeretur aliqva accessio**). (**Ne illi qvidem, qvi maleficio et scelere pascuntur, possunt sine ulla particula justitiae vivere,** *without any particle whatever*, Cic. Off. II. 11.)

Obs. 2. In a negative proposition with **qvisqvam**, the predicate may be completed with an unemphatic **aliqvis** or **qvispiam**: **Ne suspicari qvidem possumus, qvenqvam horum ab amico qvidpiam contendisse, qvod contra rempublicam esset** (Cic. Læl. 11).

b. Further, **qvisqvam (ullus)** is used with emphasis in other propositions to signify *any one whatever, any one at all*, as well as after comparatives (in the latter case it is invariably employed; e.g. **taetrior tyrannus qvam qvisqvam superiorum**), in conditional and relative propositions, where the condition and the qualification expressed by the relative clause are to have the broadest possible scope and bearing, and in general expressions of disapprobation: —

Aut enim nemo, qvod qvidem magis credo, aut, si qvisqvam ille sapiens fuit (Cic. Læl. 2). **Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, certe illud est non modo justum, verum etiam necessarium, qvum vi vis illata defenditur** (Id. pro Mil. 4), *if there be any time whatever*.[1] **Qvamdiu qvisqvam erit, qvi te defendere audeat, vives** (Id. in Cat. I. 2), *so long as there is any one, whoever it may be.* **Dum presidia ulla fuerunt, Roscius in Sullae praesidiis fuit** (Id. Rosc. Am. 43). **Cuivis potest accidere, qvod cuiqvam potest** (Sen. de Tranq. An. 11). **Laberis, qvod qvidqvam stabile in regno**

[1] [**Qvae nec potest ulla esse, nec debet** (Cic. Tusc. III. 6).]

c. Phil. VIII. 4). **Nihil est exitiosius civitatibus, qvam** a **agi per vim** (Id. Legg. III. 18). **Indignor, qvidqvam** li, **non qvia crasse compositum illepideve putetur, sed** sr (Hor. Ep. II. 1, 76).

What is true of **qvisqvam** is true also of the corresponding **inqvam, usqvam,** as these adverbs are distinguished from **ali-alicubi, aliqvo, uspiam**): **Bellum maxime memorabile qvae unqvam gesta sunt** (Liv. XXI. 1).

In some cases, it rests with the speaker to make what he says and absolute by using **qvisqvam,** or to use **aliqvis** instead: **e res Romam adduxerit, enitar, si qvo modo potero** (*if* t *in one way or another*), **ut praeter te nemo dolorem meum** si **ullo modo poterit** (*if it is at all possible*), **ne tu qvidem** att. XII. 23). **Portentum atqve monstrum certissimum aliqvem humana figura, qvi eos propter qvos hanc lucem** , **luce privarit** (Cic. Rosc. Am. 22); it might also be ex- **se qvenqvam** ——).

With respect to **nullus** (which corresponds to **ullus**), it is to ed that **nullius** and **nullo** sometimes (but rarely, and never in rose-writers), serve as a substitute for the genitive and ablative **hraeci praeter laudem nullius avari** (Hor. A. P. 324). **Deus gis hominem separavit a ceteris animalibus qvam dicendi** (Qvinct. II. 16, 12). Usually, **nullius rei, nulla re.** For nly used as genitive of price (§ **294**); **nihilo** only as an abla- ce, with comparatives (§ **270**; **nihilo melior,** n. **magis,** n. id with the prepositions **ab, de, ex, pro,** when it means *nothing* ract and absolutely (**ex nihilo, de nihilo nasci**; but **ex nulla intelligitur,** *from no single thing*). In like manner, **nihilum** ith **ad** and **in** (**ad nihilum redigere,** but **ad nullam rem** Non **ullus, non unqvam,** instead of **nullus, nunqvam,** is rare

An indefinite pronoun, which is the antecedent to a relative, es omitted. See § **322.**

In English, a proposition is sometimes made indefinite or r the use of the very indefinite subject, *one*. Much more fre- he similar use of *man* in German, and *on* in French. The uage, having no corresponding pronoun, represents its force by f methods, — (1) by the passive: e.g. **rex hic valde diligitur** *loves*, or, more commonly, *they love the king*); (2) by imper- s: e.g. **non licet** (*one may not*); **invidetur mihi**; **solet dici** B, *a* and *c*, and *Obs.* 2, under *d*); (3) by the use of the third ral (see § **211**, *a*, *Obs.* 2 = **homines solent**); (4) or the first ral, where something indefinite is true of the speaker: e.g.

qvae volumus credimus libenter (Cæs. B. C. II. 27); (5) by the use of **qvis, aliqvid (dicat aliqvis)**; (6) by the second person singular of the subjunctive (see § **370**, and *Obs.* 2); (7) by the third person singular without a definite subject in subordinate propositions depending on an infinitive (see § **388**, *b*, *Obs.* 2); and finally (8) by the use of **se** in an accusative with the infinitive after an indefinite infinitive (§ **490**, *c*). It is to be observed, moreover, that **inqvit** is used without a definite subject (*one says*), when the speaker introduces an objection or reply which is wont to be made to what he says: **Iidem si puer parvus occidit aeqvo animo ferendum putant. Atqvi ab hoc acerbius exegit natura qvod dederat. Nondum gustaverat, inqvit, vitae svavitatem** (Cic. Tusc. I. 39).

§ 495. **Qvisqve** signifies *each in particular, by himself* (distributively):—

Suus cuiqve honos habetur. Suae qvemqve fortunae maxime poenitet (Cic. ad Fam. VI. 1). **Sibi qvisqve maxime consulit.** (**Se** and **suus** stand before **qvisqve**, in prose.)[1]

When a relative and demonstrative proposition are combined, **qvisqve** almost always stands in the relative proposition, commonly (without emphasis) immediately after the relative, so that even **se** and **suus** stand after **qvisqve**: —

Qvam qvisqve norit artem, in hac se exerceat (Cic. Tusc. I. 18). **Qvanti qvisqve se ipse facit, tanti fiat ab amicis** (Id. Læl. 16). (**Ineunte adolescentia id sibi qvisqve genus aetatis degendae constituit, qvod amavit**, Cic. Off. I. 32. Sometimes **qvisqve** is repeated; as, **Qvod cuiqve obtigit, id qvisqve teneat**, Id. ib. I. 7.)

This pronoun is also used in order to denote a general relation and proportion applicable to each individual person or thing (to each case) in particular, where we employ in English the words *any one, a man, a thing*:—

Qvo qvisqve est sollertior et ingeniosior, hoc docet iracundius et laboriosius (Cic. pro Rosc. Com. 11). **Ut qvisqve maxime ad suum commodum refert, qvaecunqve agit, ita minime est vir bonus** (Cic. Legg. I. 18. It very often stands in this way with the superlative with **ut — ita**). **Ut qvisqve me viderat, narrabat** (Cic. Verr. A. I. 7), *as often as any one saw me* ——.[2]

---

[1] Such examples as the following are rare: **Transfugas Hannibal in civitates qvemqve suas dimisit** (Liv. XXI. 48), where instead of **suas** the substantive is put first for the sake of emphasis. **Qvod est cujusqve maxime suum** (Cic. Off. I. 31, *each one's own*).

[2] The later writers also say **ut qvis.**

In this signification (of a universal relation, which manifests itself in each individual) it is frequently combined with a superlative, which always precedes it: —

Maximae cuiqve fortunae minime credendum est (Liv. XXX. 30), *the highest fortune is always the least to be trusted; each fortune is to be least trusted in proportion as it is the highest.* **Optimum qvidqve rarissimum est** (Cic. Finn. II. 25). **Ex philosophis optimus et gravissimus qvisqve confitetur multa se ignorare** (Id. Tusc. III. 28), *all good philosophers.* (In the earlier and good writers, the singular is chiefly used in this way, but the plural also in the neuter.) (**Decimus qvisqve**, § **74**, *Obs.* 2. **Primus qvisqve**, *each successive first one, each as it stands first after the preceding one has been taken*, i.e. *one after the other, successively:* **Primum qvidqve consideremus**, Cic. N. D. I. 27.)

Obs. 1. On the other hand, **qvisqve** never signifies *every one* taken collectively; this is expressed by **omnes** or **nemo non**, or by **qvivis**, signifying *every one, whoever it may be:* **Caeterarum rerum perspicuum est, qvo qvaeqve discedat** (*each for itself*); **abeunt enim omnia illuc unde orta sunt** (Cic. Cat. M. 22). (Yet we find the expression **cujusqvemodi**, *of every kind you please.*) **Unusqvisqve**, *every one*, is used like the corresponding phrase in English. (The older writers have sometimes used **qvidqvid** for **qvidqve**; e.g. **ut qvidqvid objectum est**, Cic. Tusc. V. 34.)

Obs. 2. *Each of two by himself* (herself, itself) may be expressed by **uterqve**; e.g. **Natura hominis dividitur in animum et corpus. Qvum eorum utrumqve per se expetendum sit, virtutes qvoqve utriusqve per se expetendae sunt** (Cic. Finn. IV. 7). **Qvisqve**, however, is used in combination with **suus**: **Duas civitates ex una factas; suos cuiqve parti magistratus, suas leges esse** (Liv. II. 44). Concerning **uterqve nostrum (veniet), uterqve frater**, see § **284**, *Obs.* 3; concerning **uterqve** sometimes used as a collective with the plural, § **215**, *a.* It may here be observed, that the plural **utriqve** (which with these exceptions denotes two pluralities, § **84**, *Obs.*) is sometimes used irregularly of two individual persons or things, **hi utriqve** being then used for **horum uterqve**: **Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, utraeqve in ea fuga perierunt** (Cæs. B. G. I. 53). **Agitabatur animus ferox Catilinae inopia rei familiaris et conscientia scelerum, qvae utraqve** (= **qvorum utrumqve**) **his artibus, qvas supra memoravi, auxerat** (Sall. Cat. 5). **Utraqve cornua** (Liv. XXX. 8). **Utrumqve**, *both* (without reference to the gender of the single words).

§ 496. Of **alius** and **alter** it is to be observed, that the Latins use **alter**, where one more is mentioned besides one that has been

spoken of (in opposition to that *alone* and by itself), where in English we use the word *another;* e.g.:—

Solus, aut cum altero (Cic. ad Att. XI. 15; also, **unus aut summum alter; unus, alter, plures**). **Ne sit te ditior alter** (Hor. Sat. I. 1, 40.) **Nulla vitae pars, neqve si tecum agas qvid, neqve si cum altero contrahas, vacare officio potest** (Cic. Off. I. 2). In this way **alter** is often used as equivalent to neighbor, one's fellow-man. **Fontejus Antonii, non ut magis alter, amicus erat** (Hor. Sat. I. 5, 33). (But we also find: **ut non magis qvisqvam alius**, Id. Sat. II. 8, 49.) **Alter Nero**, *another Nero, a second (the second) Nero.* (On the other hand **alter** can never have the signification of *difference*, which is expressed by **alius**.)

Obs. 1. **Alius** when repeated signifies *one — another* (**aliud ex alio malum; aliud hic homo loqvitur, aliud sentit; alii Romam versus, alii in Campaniam, alii in Etruriam proficiscebantur**); in the same way **alter — alter** is used of two, *the one — the other* (also **unus — alter**). But the repetition of **alius**, or **alius** with an adverb derived from it, denotes also that the predicate is differently defined for the different persons spoken of: **Discedebant alius in aliam partem** (**alius alio**), *they separated, one to one side, the other to another.* **Aliter cum aliis loqveris. Haec aliter ab aliis definiuntur.** (In this sense it is also used of two, because **alter** does not express difference: **Duo deinceps reges alius alia via civitatem auxerunt**, Liv. I. 21.)

Obs. 2. **Ceteri**, *the others, the rest absolutely;* **reliqvi**, *the rest*, which remain after some have been deducted: hence we find **ceteris antecellere, praestare**, and **praeter ceteros**, but **sex reliqvi**; in many other cases they are without a distinction.

PROSODY.

THE MOST IMPORTANT RULES OF LATIN METRE (VERSIFICATION).

§ 497. The structure of Verse is founded in Latin (and Greek) on the different quantity (the length and shortness) of the syllables. In English, on the contrary, and other modern languages, the structure of verse is founded on the accentuation or non-accentuation of the syllable. A verse (*versus*, properly signifying only, *a line*) consists in Latin of a series of long and short syllables, which (in shorter divisions, *feet*) succeed each other according to a fixed rule, which is the *measure of the verse* (*metrum*).

Obs. 1. The word **metrum** (*μέτρον, measure*) is also used of a definite combination of several verses. See § **509**.

Obs. 2. A verse is in general a series of words, which are grouped together without any break while they are uttered, but are somewhat separated from what follows, that the order and alternation of syllables which appear in it may be compared with other series. With this view it is required that the verse should only have a certain length, and that the alternation of the syllables should be easily caught and retained by the ear. Either this alternation of syllables shows in the verse itself an agreement and repetition of the same form, or this agreement and repetition appear in the combination of several verses; and herein consists the poetical rhythm, or the regular movement which is the object of verse, and of which verse is a part.

§ 498. The *feet of the verse* (**pedes**), i.e. the separate combinations of syllables, of which a verse consists, are formed of long and short syllables brought into contrast with one another. The long syllable has twice the duration (**mora**) of the short. Combinations of syllables of the same kind (e.g. — — or ⏑ ⏑ ⏑) are not proper (metrical) feet, from which a kind of verse may be composed, but yet they may often stand in the place of feet of the same length, so that a long syllable is represented by two short ones, or two short ones by a long one (e.g. — — for — ⏑ ⏑); and it may even be a characteristic of a peculiar metre, that such feet are used in certain

places (*Spurious Feet*). The place which the long and consequently more important syllable assumes in genuine feet is called **arsis** (*raising*); that occupied by the short one, **thesis** (*sinking*). (When therefore the spurious foot ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ is put instead of — ⏑, the two first syllables make up the arsis; when — — stands for — ⏑ ⏑, the first syllable is in the arsis, but the last, if it stands for ⏑ ⏑ —.) The arsis may precede the thesis (so that the movement, as it were, goes downwards), or follow it (so that the movement goes upwards).[1]

Obs. The measuring and recitation of a verse, according to its feet, is called *scanning* (**scansio**).

§ 499. The following are the different kinds of feet: —

a. Those whose arsis and thesis are of equal duration (together four **morae**) are —

— ⏑ ⏑, **dactylus**;

⏑ ⏑ —, **anapaestus**.

b. Those whose arsis is twice as long as the thesis (together three **morae**), —

— ⏑, **trochaeus** or **chorēus**;

⏑ —, **iambus**.

c. Those in which one part of the foot is half as long again as the other (together five **morae**), —

— ⏑ —, **creticus** (with a double arsis);

---

[1] In speaking, however, of the Arsis and Thesis in Greek and Latin Verse, we must not think, as is usually done, of an elevation and depression of the *voice*, since the names are borrowed from Music, and taken from the movement of the stick used in beating time, on which account, too, they had with the ancients a signification opposite to that which, by a misunderstanding, they have since acquired: the ancients named the important part Thesis, the other Arsis. We should also guard against the opinion which is generally current; viz., that the ancients accentuated the long syllable (in the arsis) and distinguished in this way the movement of the verse (by a so-called verse-accent, **ictus metricus**), and consequently often accentuated the words in verse quite otherwise than in prose (e.g. **Arma virumqve cano Trojáe qvi primus ab oris Italiám fató profugús Lavinaqve venit Littora**), which is impossible; for the verse depends on a certain prescribed order and form of movement being distinguishable, when the words are *correctly* pronounced. In our own verses we do not accentuate the syllables *for the sake of the verse*, but the syllables which are perceptibly distinguished by the accentuation in prose *form* verse by being arranged to succeed each other in this way. In Latin and Greek (where even in prose pronunciation the accent was quite subordinate, and is never named in speaking of rhetorical euphony, while on the other hand the difference of quantity was distinctly and strongly marked) the verse was *audibly distinguished* by this very alternation of the long and short syllables. But as it is not possible for us, either in prose or verse, to pronounce the words according to the quantity *in such a way* as the ancients did, we cannot recite their poetry correctly, but are forced in the delivery to give a certain stress of voice to the Arsis, and thus make their verses somewhat resemble ours. It should, however, be understood that it was different with the ancients themselves (until the latest centuries of their history, when the pronunciation itself underwent modifications).

— ⏑ ⏑ ⏑, **paeon primus**;

⏑ ⏑ ⏑ —, **paeon qvartus.**

Obs. The pæons may be considered as resolutions of the **creticus**, which is also called **amphimacer.**

d. Spurious feet, —

— —, **spondēus** (instead of the dactyl or anapæst);

⏑ ⏑ ⏑, **tribrachys** (instead of the trochee or iambus; was often also called **trochaeus**).

To these we may add the compound foot **choriambus** (— ⏑ ⏑ —), consisting of a trochee and an iambus.

Obs. 1. In anapæstic, trochaic, and iambic verse, two feet are reckoned together to a **dipodia** (*double foot*).[1]

Obs. 2. The spondee and the tribrach, as combinations of syllables of precisely equal prosodial value, are peculiar to Greek and Latin verse, and in English versification are of no significance, so far as the recognition of them by the ear is concerned. What is called the spondee in our imitations of ancient verse (as, for instance, hexameter verse) is in fact a trochee, — an accented followed by a comparatively unaccented syllable.

§ 500. A verse is formed either by repeating the same foot several times (*simple* verse) or by combining and mixing different feet (*compound* verse). A verse, even if the rule of its composition be departed from in some particulars, and in some of the places different feet substituted, will, in many cases, make on the whole the same impression on the ear, and be easy of recognition. This is the case especially in long and simple verses, which are repeated without the introduction of any different kind of verse. (See below on the different kinds of verse.) The last syllable of Latin verses may always be either long or short (**anceps**), since an accurate comparison is here prevented by the pause (but for this reason, too, it can never be resolved, — into ⏑ ⏑). A verse often concludes in such a way, that the last foot is incomplete, and is then called **versus catalecticus.**

---

[1] The names of the feet are all borrowed from the Greek. Several other kinds are usually enumerated, the Pyrrhichius ⏑ ⏑, Proceleusmaticus ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑, Molossus — — —, Bacchius ⏑ — —, Antibacchius — — ⏑, Amphibrachys ⏑ — ⏑, the second and third Pæon ⏑ — ⏑ ⏑, ⏑ ⏑ — ⏑, four Epitrites ⏑ — — —, &c., together with the Ionicus *a majore* — — ⏑ ⏑, and *a minore* ⏑ ⏑ — —. But these combinations of syllables are not elementary parts of verse, and are only looked upon as feet in consequence of an erroneous way of representing and dividing the verse.

Obs. A distinction is made between **versus catalectici in syllabam**, where a single syllable follows the last complete foot, and **catalectici in dissyllabum**, where two syllables follow a foot of three syllables; but these two syllables may be considered as a distinct dissyllabic foot.

§ 501. **Caesura** (*cutting*) is the name given to the division of certain longer verses into two parts, by causing a word in a certain given position to end in the middle of a foot. This gives rise to a pause, which, however, does not interfere with the continuity of the verse, since the incomplete foot draws the attention to the remainder. In some others of the longer verses such a break is found at the end of a foot, — that is, the foot and the word end with the same syllable (**diaeresis**); but then the close of the verse is apt to have a different (catalectic) form, so that the attention is thus directed to the end.

Obs. 1. The term **Caesura** is sometimes applied to a division of the words at the termination of each foot (so that each of the two parts of the word belongs to a separate foot). In simple verses of some length euphony is improved by this division and the seeming contest between the words and the verse, as in this hexameter: —

Una salus victis nullam sperare salutem;

whereas by a complete or too frequent coincidence of the words with the feet the verse is, as it were, broken up, as in the following hexameter: —

Sparsis hastis longis campus splendet et horret,

which is also in other respects not well constructed (see *Obs.* 2).

Obs. 2. The name of *word-feet* is given to whole words in a verse, when they are considered as prosodial combinations of syllables; e.g. **tempora** as a dactyl, **arma** as a trochee, **pelluntur** as — — ⏑ (spondee and ⏑, or — and trochee). Simple verses of some length lose in variety and euphony, when the word-feet which follow in succession are too uniform; as, e.g. in this hexameter: —

Sole cadente juvencus aratra relinqvit in arvo,

where four words in succession have the form ⏑ — ⏑.

§ 502. *a.* The correctness of the verse, so far as prosody is concerned, depends on all the syllables being used according to their proper pronunciation and quantity. But with respect to this it is to be noticed, that certain freedoms in the pronunciation of individual words and forms were looked upon as allowed in poetry (see on the alteration of **i** and **u** into **j** and **v**, diærēsis and synizēsis, § **5**, *a*, *Obs.* 4; § **6**, *Obs.* 1; on **illĭus, unĭus**, § **37**, *Obs.* 2; on **stetĕrunt,**

§ 114, *a*; on **rēligio, rēliqviae,** for **rĕligio, rĕliqviae,** § 204, *a*, *Obs.* 1), especially in the case of words or proper names, which otherwise could not be used at all in a particular kind of verse (e.g. **alterīus** and **Prĭămĭdes** in the hexameter, on which account they are pronounced **alterĭus, Prīamides**; for **pŭĕrĭtĭa** Horace says **puertia**). In the arsis of dactylic verses (hexameters), the short final syllable of polysyllables, if ending in a consonant, is sometimes used as long; so also **qve** occasionally in the second arsis of the hexameter: —

Desine plura puēr, et qvod nunc instat, agamus (Virg. B. IX. 66).

Pectoribūs inhians spirantia consulit exta (Id. Æn. IV. 64).

Tum sic Mercurium alloquitūr ac talia mandat (Id. Æn. IV. 222).

Sub Jove mundus erat, subiit argentea proles (Ov. Met. I. 114).[1]

Tum Thetis humanos non despexit hymenaeos (Catull. 64, 20).

Sideraqvē ventiqve nocent avidaeqve volucres (Ov. Met. V. 484).

(**Angulus ridēt, ubi non Hymetto,** Hor. Od. II. 6, 14, in a Sapphic verse.)[2]

Obs. 1. The shortening of a syllable that is usually long is called **systŏle** (*contraction*); the lengthening of a short one, **diastŏle** (*extension*).

Obs. 2. The old comic poets (Plautus and Terence) in many cases used syllables as short, which are long by position (§ 22, *Obs.* 5). So likewise they deviated not unfrequently (Plautus especially) by contraction and the rejection of syllables (**syncope**) from the usual pronunciation of the words. Besides this, they treated the metres themselves (with reference to the feet which may be used, &c.) with great freedom, so that the metrical reading and explanation of their verses is often very difficult, the more so, since in many passages, particularly in Plautus, they are incorrectly written. They must consequently be almost entirely passed over here.

---

[1] The last syllable of the perfect of compounds of eo is very often lengthened in this way.

[2] The lengthening in the arsis, not by the arsis, as it is commonly explained on the assumed theory of a verse-accent, rests, as a tolerated license, on the circumstance, that in definite places in certain verses the reader expects and requires a long syllable, and hence is not misled, if the poet, within certain limits, allows himself to use a short one, but varies the pronunciation of the syllable in respect of the quantity, in such a way that the requirements of the verse are in a manner satisfied. This license therefore corresponds to the occasional accentuation of unaccented syllables in modern verse.

b. **A hiatus** should be avoided. This is produced when a final vowel (or **m**) meets an initial vowel (§ **6**) in the same verse, it being at the same time requisite to pronounce the former (in order to make the verse complete), instead of dropping it by elision (**ecthlipsis**). (The concurrence of vowels at the end of one verse and the beginning of another does not offend the ear, since a pause falls between them.) Yet the poets have sometimes allowed themselves a hiatus in longer dactylic verses, in cases where it was less objectionable; namely:—

a. With a long final vowel or diphthong (**ae**) in the arsis: **Orchadēs et radiī et amara pausia bacca** (Virg. G. II. 86). **Qvid struit? aut qva spē inimica in gente moratur?** (Id. Æn. IV. 235). **Tune ille Aeneas, qvem Dardanio Anchisae** (Id. Æn. I. 617), mostly at the **caesura**; *b.* with a long final vowel (diphthong) in the thesis, so that the vowel becomes short in the pronunciation: **Credimus? an, qvī ămant, ipsi sibī somnia fingunt?** (Virg. B. VIII. 108). **Insŭlaĕ Ionio in magno** (Id. Æn. III. 211). **Torva leaena lupum seqvitur, lupus ipse capellam, te Corydōn, ŏ Alexi!** (Id. B. II. 65); *c.* with a short final vowel (in the thesis) where there is at the same time a completion of the sense, a cæsura, or a repetition of the same word: **Et vera incessu patuit dĕă. Ille ubi matrem** (Virg. Æn. I. 405). In a syllable ending in **m** (which is always short) the hiatus is extremely rare.

Obs. Interjections, which consist only of a vowel, cannot be elided. Here therefore the hiatus must be avoided in another way, except so far as it may be tolerated (as in the following example, **O ubi campi**, Virg. Georg. II. 486, according to *a*, and Buc. II. 65 under *b*); **ae** at the end of a word is very seldom elided before a short vowel.

§ 503. Of the SIMPLE DACTYLIC verses the most important, and the only one which is used by itself, without combination with others, is the HEXAMETER, **versus hexameter** (**metrum** here signifying *foot*). It consists of five dactyls and a trochee (or of six dactyls, the last of which is catalectic in dissyllabum). Each of the four first dactyls may be exchanged with a spondee. A spondee is very rarely substituted for the fifth dactyl by such poets as are most careful in the structure of the verse, because in this way the dactylic form of the verse becomes less conspicuous. If a spondee stands as the fifth foot (a spondaic verse), the fourth foot is generally a dactyl.

The hexameter has regularly a cæsura in the third foot, either after the arsis (masculine cæsura),[1] or after the first short syllable of the dactyl (feminine cæsura):[2] —

Arma virumqve cano, | Trojae qvi primus ab oris.
Vi superum, saevae | memorem Junonis ob iram.
Id metuens veterisqve | memor Saturnia belli.

Sometimes the cæsura is not in the third foot, but after the arsis of the fourth:[3] —

Illi se praedae accingunt | dapibusqve futuris (Virg. Æn. I. 210).

Even when a word ends in the third foot, the cæsura in the fourth sometimes makes a more suitable division in the verse: —

Jamqve faces et saxa volant, | furor arma ministrat (Virg. Æn. I. 150).
Posthabita coluisse Samo; | hic illius arma (Id. ib. I. 16; hiatus).

The hexameter is the verse best adapted to a uniformly progressive exhibition of events, and is therefore used in narrative (epic) poems (**versus heroicus**, *verse of heroic poetry*), and in didactic poems, satires, and poetical epistles.

Obs. 1. **Qve**, at the end of a hexameter, is, in some few instances, elided before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse (**versus hypermeter**. The last syllable of **Latinorum**, at the end of the verse in Æn. VII. 160, is elided).

Obs. 2. In carefully constructed hexameters, a proposition which is grammatically quite distinct from the foregoing does not begin with or in the last foot.

§ 504. *a.* The following dactylic verses are used (by Horace) in combination with other verses: —

– ◡ ◡ – ⏑̲ (**versus Adonius**); e.g.

Fusce, pharetra.

– ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ ⏑̲ (**versus Archilochius minor**);

Pulvis et umbra sumus.

– ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ – ⏑̲ (**v. dactylicus tetrameter catalecticus**):

– – – – (– –)

Carmine perpetuo celebrare.
O fortes pejoraqve passi.
Ossibus et capiti inhumato.

---

[1] **Caesura penthemimeres** (πενθημμερής), *after the fifth half foot.*

[2] **Caesura** κατὰ τρίτον τροχαῖον, *after the trochee of the third foot.*

[3] **Caesura hephthemimeres** (ἑφθημμερής), *after the seventh half-foot.*

b. A dactylic verse of a peculiar form is the so-called PENTAMETER, which consists of two parts, always separated by the diæresis (§ **501**), each of which has two dactyls and a syllable of an incomplete foot (in the first division always a long syllable). Spondees may also be used instead of the two first dactyls. The pentameter is never used alone, but a hexameter and pentameter are combined to form a DISTICH, and this combination is continually repeated: —

Tempora cum causis Latium digesta per annum,
Lapsaqve sub terras | ortaqve signa canam.

OBS. This form is applied particularly to elegies (**versus elegiacus**) and epigrams (by Ovid it is employed also in didactic poetry).

§ 505. The ordinary ANAPAESTIC verse is **versus anapaestus dimeter** (here the **metrum** is a dipody, § **499**, *Obs.* 1), which consists of four anapæsts, with a diæresis between the second and third. The anapæsts may be changed for spondees, and these again for dactyls. (Seneca does not use the dactyl in the last foot.) Yet each line is not considered completely as a verse by itself, but a whole series of verses (a system) is so combined, that (in Greek without an exception) the hiatus is excluded, and the last syllable is not **anceps**, and the final and initial consonant make position, till the system ends by the sense being completed, sometimes with a **versus monometer** of two anapæsts (in Greek with a catalectic termination). These anapæsts are used in the choral songs (in Latin only in tragedies, of which Seneca's alone are preserved); e.g.: —

– – – – – – ⏑ ⏑ –
Qvanti casus humana rotant!
⏑ ⏑ – – – – – ⏑ ⏑ –
Minor in parvis Fortuna furit,
⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ –
Leviusqve ferit leviora deus; ⏑ ⏑ ⏑
– – ⏑ ⏑ – – – ⏑ ⏑ –
Servat placidos obscura qvies,
– – ⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – –
Praebetqve senes casa securos.

(Sen. Hippol. 1124 seqq.)

§ 506. TROCHAIC verses are divided into dipodies (§ **499**, *d*, *Obs.* 1), and in longer verses the second foot of the dipody may be changed for a spondee without disturbing the trochaic movement.

The most usual trochaic verse (in lively scenes in tragedies and comedies) is the catalectic tetrameter (**tetrameter trochaicus catalecticus**, also **trochaicus septenarius**, from the number of the perfect feet). It consists of seven trochees and a syllable, and has the diæresis (§ **501**) after the fourth foot. A tribrach may stand everywhere instead of the trochee, and in the even places (2, 4, 6, the last in the dipodies) a spondee.

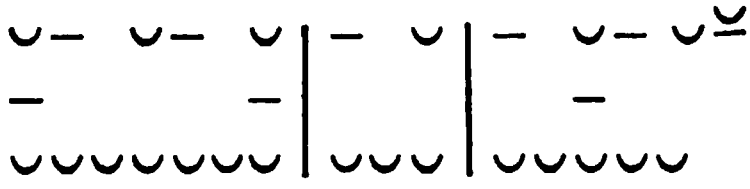
Nulla vox humana constat | absqve septem litteris,
Rite vocavit vocales, | qvas magistra Graecia (Terent. Maur.).

In the comic poets the diæresis is not always observed: they often use spondees in all places except in the seventh foot, and then also substitute a dactyl or anapæst for a spondee, so that the form of the verse is very variable.

Of other trochaic verses the following is found in Horace — ⏑ — ⏑ — ⏑ ⏒ (**trochaicus dimeter catalecticus**): —

Truditur dies die.

§ 507. *a.* IAMBIC verses are measured by dipodies, and in longer verses the first foot of every dipody may be changed for a spondee, without disturbing the iambic movement. The most usual iambic verse is that with six feet, called **iambicus trimeter** (from the three dipodies) or **senarius** (*from the feet*), which is used in some special smaller compositions alone, or with other iambic verses, and is also the usual verse in dramatic dialogue. In the most careful writers (as Horace) a spondee may stand in the uneven places (1, 3, 5) instead of the iambus, and (but more rarely) a tribrach instead of every iambus, except the last. (The spondee in the first and third foot is very rarely changed again for a dactyl, or in the first for an anapæst.) This verse has usually a cæsura after the thesis of the third foot, or if not there, after the thesis of the fourth. The form is therefore as follows (Hor. Ep. 17): —



The comic poets allow themselves greater irregularities, since they also put a spondee in the even places (2, 4), only not in the sixth foot, and use a dactyl and an anapæst here and there in each of the first five feet.

Poëta cum primum animum ad scribendum adpulit,
Id sibi negoti credidit solum dari,
Populo ut placerent, qvas fecisset fabulas.
Verum aliter evenire multo intelligit.
Nam in prologis scribundis operam abutitur.

(Ter. Andr. prol. init.)

Obs. The comic poets also use iambic tetrameters, sometimes complete ones of eight feet (**octonarii**), sometimes catalectics (**septenarii**) of seven feet and a syllable, usually with a diæresis after the fourth foot, and with great freedom in the change of the feet.

b. Of other iambic verses the following are found in Horace:—

⏑– ⏑– ⏑– ⏑⏑ (**iamb. dimeter**).
(–⏑⏑) (⏑⏑⏑)
Imbres nivesqve comparat.

⏑–⏑–⏑–⏑–⏑–⏑ (**iamb. trimeter catalecticus**);
(⏑⏑⏑)
Trahuntqve siccas machinae carinas.

⏑– | ⏑– | ––| ⏑– | – (**Alcaicus enneasyllabus**);
Et scindat haerentem coronam.

Obs. 1. Choliambus (**scazon**, *limping iambus*) is the name given to a verse which is produced by changing the last iambus of an iambic trimeter for a trochee or spondee. The fifth foot is then always a regular iambus: —

O qvid solutis est beatius curis (Catull.).

Obs. 2. Cretic and pæonic verses occur only in the comic poets, and are here passed over. The choriambus is produced when a dactylic movement in the arsis is interrupted by a new arsis. In the verses which are called choriambic, the choriambus occurs once or oftener in the middle of a compound verse. See the next paragraph. In one ode only (III. 12) Horace has imitated a Greek form, which consists of choriambic movement, introduced by an anapæst (⏑⏑––⏑⏑––⏑⏑–), continued unbroken to the conclusion (or properly in divisions, each of which contains the combination of syllables ⏑⏑––, called **Ionicus a minore**, repeated ten times).

§ 508. Compound verses contain a more artificial movement, but even this exhibits a certain rhythmical proportion which may be

distinguished as exercising a controlling influence, either in the verse itself, or, if this be short, in the verses with which it is combined. If a dactylic movement passes into trochees, the form of verse is called logaœdic.[1] Sometimes an introductory foot of two syllables (the *Basis*) is put before a dactylic or logaœdic series. In other verses the choriambic form is seen in the middle, and the conclusion is logaœdic. The compound verses make a more lively impression, and belong to the character of lyric poetry. The most important forms (especially those used by Horace) are the following:—

– ◡ ◡ – ◡ – ⏑̲ **(Aristophanicus);**

Lydia dic, per omnes.

– ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ – ◡ – ⏑̲ **(Alcaicus decasyllabus);**

Nec virides metuunt colubras.

– ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ – ◡ ◡ – ◡ – ◡ – ⏑̲ **(Archilochius major);**

Solvitur acris hyems grata vice veris et Favoni.

– – – ◡ ◡ – ⏑̲ **(Pherecrateus);**

Vis formosa videri.

– – – ◡ ◡ – ◡ ⏑̲ **(Glyconicus);**

Nil mortalibus arduum est.

(– ⏑̲ – ◡ ◡ – ◡ – ◡ – ⏑̲ **(Phalaecius, not in Horace);**

◡ ⏑̲

Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atqve amemus. Catull.).

⏑̲ – | ◡ – | – | – | ◡ ◡ – | ◡ ⏑̲ **(Alcaicus hendecasyllabus)**

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.

– ◡ | – – | – | ◡ ◡ | – ◡ | – ⏑̲ **(Sapphicus);**

Integer vitae scelerisqve purus.

Obs. The cæsura may also sometimes stand after the first short syllable of the dactyl.[2]

(– ◡ | – – | – ◡ ◡ – | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ | – ⏑̲ **(Sapphicus major);**

Cur timet flavum Tiberim tangere? cur olivum?)

– – | – ◡ ◡ – | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ | ⏑̲ **(Asclepiadeus minor);**

Cresoentem seqvitur cura pecuniam.

– – | – ◡ ◡ – | – ◡ ◡ – | – ◡ ◡ | – ◡ | ⏑̲ **(Asclepiadeus major);**

Qvis post vina gravem militiam aut pauperiem crepat?

---

[1] From λόγος, *speech*, and ᾠδή, *song*.

[2] The Alcaic hendecasyllabic verse consists of iambi with an anapæst in the fourth foot, the Sapphic of trochees with a dactyl in the third foot; but, as a rule (in Horace), a spondee is always substituted for the iambi or trochees in the third place of the Alcaic, and in the second place of the Sapphic verse.

Obs. The so-called **versus asynarteti**, which consist of two divisions, so loosely connected that a hiatus may be allowed between them, and the final syllable of the first part is **anceps**, are (at least in Horace) best considered as two verses. As such may be mentioned: —

– ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ | ⏓ – ⏑ – ⏓ – ⏑ ⏓ (**elegiambus**) and
⏓ – ⏑ – ⏓ – ⏑ ⏓ | – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ (**iambelegus**).

§ 509. In lyrical poems it is most customary to employ not a succession of the same verses, but either a combination of two of different kinds (simple or compound), which is repeated (distichs), or a combination of several lines, which is called a strophe.[1] Every such combination is often called a metre. The strophes used by Horace (besides distichs) are the following: —

I. The Sapphic strophe; three Sapphic verses (§ **508**) and a **versus Adonius** (§ **504**). See, for an example, the second ode of the first book.

Obs. In this strophe, we find a few instances of a syllable elided at the end of a line before a vowel in the next line (Od. II. 2, 18), and of a word divided between the third Sapphic verse and the **v. Adonius** (Od. I. 2, 19).

II. The first Asclepiadean strophe; three smaller Asclepiadean verses and a Glyconic (§ **508**). For an example, see the sixth ode of the first book.

III. The second Asclepiadean strophe; two smaller Asclepiadean verses, a Pherecratian (§ **508**), and a Glyconic. See the fourteenth ode of the first book.

IV. The Alcaic strophe; two Alcaic hendecasyllabic verses (**Alcaici hendecasyllabi**, § **508**), an Alcaic enneasyllabic verse (**Alc. enneasyllabus**, § **507**, *b*), and an Alcaic decasyllabic verse (**Alc. decasyllabus**, § **508**). See, for example, the ninth ode of the first book. (An elision occurs at the end of the third line of Od. II. 3, 27.)

Obs. 1. These strophes are named after the Greek poetess Sappho, and the poets Asclepiades and Alcæus.

Obs. 2. Distichs which occur in Horace may here be mentioned, with the names usually assigned to them: —

1. The second Asclepiadean metre; a Glyconic verse, and the smaller Asclepiadean (§ **508**). (Book I. Ode 3.) (An elision occurs at the end of the Glyconic verse, Book IV. 1, 35.)

---

1 *Στροφή, a turn.*

2. The greater Sapphic metre; an Aristophanic and a greater Sapphic verse (§ **508**). (Book I. Ode 8.)

3. The first Archilochian metre; a dactylic hexameter, and a smaller Archilochian verse (§ **504**, *a*). (Book IV. Ode 7.)

4. The second Archilochian metre; a hexameter and a **versus iambelegus** (§ **508**, *Obs.*). If the **iambelegus** is considered as two verses, this metre becomes a strophe of three lines. (Epod. 13.)

5. The third Archilochian metre; an iambic trimeter (§ **507**) and a **versus elegiambus** (§ **508**, *Obs.*); it may also be considered as a strophe of three lines. (Epod. 11.)

6. The fourth Archilochian metre; a greater Archilochian verse (§ **508**) and a catalectic iambic trimeter (§ **507**, *b*). (Book I. Ode 4.)

7. The Alcmanic metre; a hexameter, and a dactylic catalectic tetrameter (§ **504**, *a*). (Book I. Ode 7.)

8. The second Iambic metre; an iambic trimeter and an iambic *di*meter. (Epod. 1.)

9. The first Pythiambic metre; a hexameter and an iambic dimeter. (Epod. 14.)

10. The second Pythiambic metre; a hexameter and an iambic trimeter). (Epod. 16.)

11. The Trochaic metre; a catalectic trochaic dimeter (§ **506**) and a catalectic iambic trimeter. (Book II. Ode 18.)

The smaller Asclepiadean verse (§ **508**), repeated line after line, is called the first Asclepiadean metre (Book I. Ode 1); and the iambic *tri*meter, used in the same way, the first iambic. (Epod. 17.)

SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.

I. Of the Roman Way of expressing the Date.

The division of time into weeks of seven days with distinct names was not used by the ancient Romans (before the introduction of Christianity). The months were distinguished by the names adopted by us from the Romans. These were adjectives, with which **mensis** was understood and might be also expressed (**mense Aprili**). July and August had the names of **Qvinctīlis** and **Sextīlis** down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The days of the month were computed from three leading days in each, which were called **Calendae** (**Kal.**), **Nonae**, and **Idus** (**Iduum**), and to which the name of the month was appended as an adjective: **Calendae Januariae, Nonis Decembribus**, &c. (Less correctly, **Calendae Januarii.**) The Calends (**Calendae**) were the first day of the month, the Nones (**Nonae**) were the fifth, and the Ides (**Idus**) the thirteenth, but in the months of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October* the Nones were the seventh, and the Ides the fifteenth. From these days they counted backwards, so that in the earliest part of the month they stated how many days there were before the Nones, and after that how many before the Ides, and after the Ides how many before the Calends of the month following. The day before the Nones (Ides, Calends) was expressed by the adverb **pridie** with the accusative: **pridie Nonas Januarias, pridie Calendas Februarias** (*the 31st of January*). The day before that was called the *third* day before the Nones (Ides, Calends), since the Nones (Ides, Calends) were themselves included in the computation, and so on with the preceding days, the *fourth*, &c. But this is expressed in a peculiar, and, in a grammatical point of view, striking way, — **diem tertium, diem qvartum**, &c., being inserted in the accusative between the preposition **ante** and **Nonas (Idus, Calendas)**: —

Ante diem tertium Nonas Januarias,[1] **ante diem qvartum Calendas Februarias** (written **a. d. III Non. Jan., a. d. IV. Kal. Febr.**, &c.). This expression is considered as *one* word, before which **in** and **ex** may stand; e.g. **ex ante diem III Nonas Junias usqve ad pridie Calendas Septembres; differre aliqvid in ante diem XV Calendas Novembres.**

(It often happens that nothing more is written than **III Non.** which is usually read **tertio (die) Nonas**, but which ought, perhaps, to be read as **a. d. III Non.**)

We may therefore ascertain the days of the month, when stated in the Roman manner, by subtracting the number given in the case of the Nones from 6 (or 8 for the Nones of March, May, July, or October), and in the case of the Ides from 14 (or from 16), because the Nones and the Ides themselves are included in the reckoning, and in the case of the Calends, by adding 2 to the number of days in the preceding month and subtracting from the amount the number specified (because the computation is made not from the last day of the month itself, but from the first of the following, and this is included): —

A. d. III Non. Jan. = 3*d January*; **a. d. VIII Id. Jan.** = 6*th January*; **a. d. XVII Kal. Febr.** = 16*th January*; **a. d. XIV Kal. Mart.** = 16*th February*; **a. d. V Id. Mart.** = 11*th March*. (In leap-year, the intercalated day was counted between **a. d. VI Kal. Mart.** and **a. d. VII Kal. Mart.**, and denominated **a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.**, so that **a. d. VII K., a. d. VIII**, &c. (computing backwards), answers, as in the ordinary February, to the 23d, the 22d, &c.).

II. Computation of Money, and Mode of expressing Fractions.

A. Sums of money were generally computed amongst the Romans (except in the earliest period and under the later emperors) by the **sestertius** (**nummus sestertius**, sometimes only **nummus**), a silver coin, which at first was equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$, subsequently to 4 asses, about 4 cents. These are counted regularly; e.g. **trecenti sestertii, duo**

---

[1] The expression appears properly to signify *before* (*on the third day*) *the Nones*, &c. We find also the same construction with the names of festivals, **a. d. V. Terminalia.**

millia sestertiorum (or **sestertium, § 37,** *Obs.* 4). But to express several thousand **sestertii** the substantive **sestertia, sestertiorum** (not used in the sing.), is also made use of: hence **duo, septem sestertia,** = **duo, septem millia sestertiorum**; and in the older writers this is the usual way of expressing a round number of thousands under a million.

A million of sesterces (**sestertii**) is regularly expressed by **decies centena** (**centum**) **millia sestertiorum** (**sestertium**), sometimes only **decies centena, millia sestertium** being understood (Hor.). But instead of this we commonly find the abbreviated expression **decies sestertium** (generally reversed **sestertium decies**), and so on for larger numbers: **undecies sestertium**, 1,100,000 sesterces, **duodecies, vicies, ter et vicies** (2,300,000). In such expressions **sestertium** is treated and declined as a neuter substantive in the singular; e.g. (nom.) **sestertium qvadragies relinqvitur**; (acc.) **sestertium qvadragies accepi**; (abl.) **sestertio decies fundum emi, in sestertio vicies egere** (*to be poor in possession of* 2,000,000 *sesterces*). Sometimes, when the connection is obvious, the adverb alone is put without **sestertium.** Greater and smaller numbers are combined in this way: —

Accepi vicies ducenta triginta qvinqve millia qvadringentos decem et septem nummos (Cic. Verr. Lib. I. 14), 2,235,417 sesterces.

Sestertius is often denoted by the sign HS (properly IISemis, $2\frac{1}{2}$, sc. **as**), which sign is also used for **sestertia** and **sestertium.** Hence arises some ambiguity, when the numbers (by which HS **tres** and HS **tria** may be distinguished) are not declined, and when both the numeral adjective and the numeral adverb are expressed by signs (e.g. **decem** and **decies** both of them by $\bar{X}$). This ambiguity can only be removed by considering what sum will be most agreeable to the context.[1]

B. 1. A fraction is expressed in Latin, as in English, by the ordinal number with **pars**, e.g. **pars tertia** (*the third part, a third*), **qvarta, qvinta, vicesima,** &c. $\frac{1}{2}$ is expressed by **pars dimidia. Pars** is often omitted, only **tertia, qvarta,** &c., being used. (**Dimidia,** however, is not used without **pars,** but **dimidium,** *half*; and

[1] In printed books we sometimes find a thousand expressed by a stroke over the number, so that HS$\bar{X}$ stands for **decem millia sestertium** or **decem sestertia.**

dimidia hora, dimidius modius, &c.) For **sexta** we have also **dimidia tertia**; and for **octava, dimidia qvarta.** The numerators are stated as in English; e.g. **duae tertiae**, $\frac{2}{3}$; **tres septimae**, $\frac{3}{7}$; **qvintae partes horae tres**, $\frac{3}{5}$ *of an hour.* But sometimes the fraction was divided into two smaller ones with the numerator 1; e.g.: —

Heres ex parte dimidia et tertia est Capito (Cic. ad Fam. XIII. 29), $\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}=\frac{5}{6}$; **horae qvattuordecim atqve dimidia cum trigesima parte unius horae** (Plin. H. N. VI. s. 39), $14\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{30}=14\frac{16}{30}$: **Europa totius terrae tertia est pars et octava paulo amplius** (Plin. H. N. VI. s. 38), rather more than $\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{8}=\frac{11}{24}$.

Obs. **Duae partes agri, tres partes**, &c., where the denominator is not given, signify $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{3}{4}$.

2. The **as** (a Roman copper coin) and the pound (**libra**) were divided into twelve ounces, **unciae**, and for every number of ounces or twelfths under twelve there was a separate name. These names also served, especially in matters of inheritance, in land-measure, and measures of length, and in the calculation of interest, to denote the twelfths of a whole, twelfths of an inheritance (the whole inheritance being called **as**); or of the unit of measure (**jugerum** or **pes**); and of the unit of interest (one per cent); and were sometimes also used of twelfths of other objects. The names (besides **uncia**) are **sextans**, $\frac{1}{6}$ $(\frac{2}{12})$; **qvadrans**, $\frac{1}{4}$ $(\frac{3}{12})$; **triens**, $\frac{1}{3}$ $(\frac{4}{12})$; **qvincunx**, $\frac{5}{12}$; **semis** (generally **semissis**), $\frac{1}{2}$ $(\frac{6}{12})$; **septunx**, $\frac{7}{12}$; **bes**, $\frac{2}{3}$ $(\frac{8}{12})$; **dodrans**, $\frac{3}{4}$ $(\frac{9}{12})$; **dextans**, $\frac{5}{6}$ $(\frac{10}{12})$; **deunx**, $\frac{11}{12}$.

Librae tres cum semisse ($3\frac{1}{2}$ *pounds*). **Heres ex asse**, *heir of the whole estate;* **ex dodrante**, *of three fourths;* **ex triente, ex parte dimidia et sextante. Triumviri viritim diviserunt terna jugera et septunces** (Liv. V. 24), $3\frac{7}{12}$ *acres to each.* **Fenus ex triente factum erat bessibus** (Cic. ad Att. IV. 15), *had risen from* $\frac{1}{3}$ *p. c. per month to* $\frac{2}{3}$. **Obeliscus centum viginti qvinqve pedum et dodrantis** (Plin. H. N. XXX. s. 14, 5), $125\frac{3}{4}$ *ft.* **Frater aedificii reliqvum dodrantem emit** (Cic. ad Att. I. 14).

Obs. **Semis** is also sometimes subjoined (in second-rate authors) as an indeclinable word; as, **foramina longa pedes tres semis (et semis)**, $3\frac{1}{2}$ *feet long.*

III. Abbreviations which frequently occur in the Editions of the Latin Classics.

a. First Names.

A. . . .	Aulus.
App. . .	Appius.
D. . . .	Decimus.
G. or **C.** .	Gajus (the more correct) or Cajus.
Gn. or **Cn.**	Gnæus or (less correctly) Cnejus.
K. . . .	Kæso.
L. . . .	Lucius.
M. . . .	Marcus.
M.' . . .	Manius.
Mam. . .	Mamercus.
N. or **Num.**	Numerius.
P. . . .	Publius.
Q. . . .	Qvintus.
S. or **Sex.**	Sextus.
Ser. . . .	Servius.
Sp. . . .	Spurius.
T. . . .	Titus.
Ti. . . .	Tiberius.

b. Other Words.

Cal. Kal. .	Calendae.
Cos. . . .	Consul.
Coss. . .	Consules.
D. . . .	D. Divus (D. Caesar).
Des. . . .	Designatus.
F. . . .	Filius.
Id. . . .	Idus.
Imp. . .	Imperator.
N. . . .	Nepos (P. Mucius P. F. Q. N. = Publii filius, Qvinti nepos).
O. M. . .	Optimus Maximus (surname of Jupiter).
P. C. . .	Patres Conscripti.
P. R. . .	Populus Romanus.
Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Q. F. F. Q. S.	Qvod felix faustumqve sit.
Q. B. F. F. Q. S.	Qvod bonum felix faustumqve sit.
Qvir. . .	Qvirites.
Resp. . .	Respublica.
S. P. Q. R. .	Senatus populusqve Romanus.
S. C.	Senatusconsultum.
S. . . .	Salutem (in letters).
S. D. P. .	Salutem dicit plurimam.
S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est; ego valeo (introductory formula in letters).
Tr. Pl. . .	Tribunus plebis.

INDEX.

A is changed into *e*, *i*, or *ĕ*, 5 *e*.

ă for *as* in Greek Proper Names, 35, Obs. 2.

a for *e* in Greek words of the First Declension, 35, Obs. 1.

a and **es** (*ia* and *ies*) used indiscriminately in the Nominative, 56, 3.

a rarely used instead of the Greek Nominative *es*, 35, Obs. 3.

ă as a substantive termination, 177 *a*.

ab (a) *millibus passuum duobus*, 234 *b*, Obs. *Ab* or the abl. alone with Passive Verbs, 254, Obs. 1. Instead of the Abl. Instrum., 254, Obs. 2. *Ab*, on the side of, with respect to, 253, Obs. Has an ambiguous signification with certain Verbs, 222, Obs. 2. With the names of Towns, 275, Obs. 1.

abdere in aliqvem locum and *in aliqvo loco*, 230 (*in*) Obs. 4.

abesse Roma, 275, Obs. 2.

abest (*tantum*), 440 *a*, Obs. 1.

abhinc, 235, Obs. 2.

ABLATIVE in *ābus*, 34, Obs. 4; in *is* for *ibus*, 44, 3; in *ubus* for *ibus*, 46, Obs. 4. Signification, 252 (240, Obs.). Signifying, with regard to, 253. Instrument, 254 (of Personal Names, 254, Obs. 3; where other constructions are made use of in English, 255). Of Measure, 255, Obs. 1. Of Efficient Cause, 256, and Obs. 1. (Does not otherwise signify Cause, 257, Obs. 2; signifying according to; *mea sententia*, 256, Obs. 3.) Abl. *modi*, 258. The ablative of certain words used Adverbially, 258, Obs. 2. Of Military Forces, 258, Obs. 4. Of Price, 259 (294). As a Definition with Verbs, 260, seq. (With verbs of Abundance, 260; of Deficiency, 260; varied by another construction [dat. and accus.], 260, *b*, and Obs.; with verbs which have the signification of Releasing, 262; of Removing, 263; of Shutting up and Comprising, 255, Obs. 2; with *gaudeo*, *doleo*, &c., 264; with *utor*, &c., 265); with other Phrases, 266 267. With Adjectives and Participles, 268, 269. Of Distance, 270. Of Difference, with Comparatives, 270. Ablative of the Second Member of the Comparison, 271, 304 (the ablatives *spe*, *opinione*, &c., 304, Obs. 4). Ablative of Quality, 272, 287, Obs. 2 (*esse* with the ablative instead of *in*, 272, Obs. 2). Ablative of the names of Towns answering to the question *where*, 273 *a*; to the question *whence*, 275 (of a person's Home, 275, Obs. 3); of other words answering to the question *where*, 273 *b*, *c* (in the poets, Obs. 2); to the question *whence*, 275 (in the poets, Obs. 4); to denote the Direction of a Motion, 274. Ablative of Time answering to the questions *when*, and *in how long a time*, 276 (rarely answering to the question *how long*, 285, Obs. 3); to the question *how long ago* (*his centum annis*), 276, Obs. 5. Ablative of Punishment with *damno*, 293, Obs. 3. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, 277; of Participles, 428 (where not to be employed, Obs. 1; with *qvanqvam* and *nisi*, Obs. 2; their relation to the Subject of the leading Proposition, Obs. 4). ABL. ABS. of a Participle without a Substantive, 429, with Obs. 1; with the omission of the Pronominal Subject, 429, Obs. 2; abl. of the Gerund, 416. Several ablatives in a different signification with the same Predicate, 278; the ablative joined immediately to a Substantive, 278 *b*.

abundantia, 56.

abus (termination) for *is*, 34, Obs. 4.

ac, atqve, 433; *ac non*, 458, Obs. 1. As a particle of Comparison, 303 *a*, 444 *b*; **ac si**, ib.

accedit qvod and *ut*, 373, Obs. 3; **accedo** with *ad* and with the Dative, 245 *b*, Obs. 2.

Accent, 14, 23; 496, note.

accusare inertiam adolescentium, 293, Obs. 2.

ACCUSATIVE in *im*, 42, 1; Greek acc. in *a*, 45, 2; in *im* and *in*, 45, 2 *b*; *ym* or *yn*, 45, 2 *c*;

ās, 45, 6; in *en* and *em* in Greek Proper Names, 45, 2 *d*. Signification, 222. With *oleo*, *sapio*, *sono*, 223, Obs. 2. Of a Subst. of the same stem, with intrans. verbs, 223 *c*, Obs. 4. With verbs which acquire a Transitive signification by being compounded with a Preposition, 224, 225. Two Accusatives with verbs signifying *to make into any thing*, *to name*, &c., 227, *a*, *b*, *c*, with *doceo* and other verbs, 228. Accus. of a Pronoun with Verbs which do not govern a Substantive in the Accus., 229, 2. Accus. of the names of Towns answering to the question *whither*, 232 (in the poets, of names of Countries and Common Nouns, Obs. 4). Accus. of Extension and of Distance, 234 *a*, *b*. Of Time, 235. In Exclamations, 236. Poetical usage of the accus. with Passive Verbs, which assume a new Active Signification, 237 *a*; with a Part. Perf., 237 *b*; of the Part affected, 237, *c* (with *ictus*, *saucius*, Obs. 1). Adverbial Accus., 237 *c*, Obs. 3. Accusative of the Second Member of a Comparison instead of a Distinct Proposition, 303 *b*. Accus. of the Gerund, 414. Accus. with an Infinitive (as a Predicate and in Apposition), 388 *b*. Accus. with the Inf., 222, Obs. 1; see Infinitive.

Achillei, genitive, 38, 3.

acqviesco in, 245, Obs. 1.

ad with numerals, 'about,' 172, II., Obs. 2. With names of Towns, 232, and Obs. 1. 'With regard to,' 253, Obs. (*refert ad*, 295, Obs. 1). Distinguished from the Dative (*litteras dare alicui* and *ad aliqvem*), 242, Obs. 3. With the Gerund instead of the Second Supine, 412, Obs. 3. Instead of the Genitive of the Gerund, 417, Obs. 3. Verbs compounded with it which take the Accusative, 224 *b*, 245, Obs. 2; with the repetition of *ad*, 243, Obs. 1, 245 *b*, with Obs. 2. *Aptus ad rem* and *aptus rei*, 247 *b*, Obs. 6. *Ad Vestae*, 280, Obs. 3. *Ad multum diei*, *ad id locorum*, 285 *b*, Obs. 1.

adde, qvod, 373, Obs. 3

adhibeo ad, 243, Obs. 1.

adigo aliqvem jusjurandum, 231, Obs.

ADJECTIVE, its signification, 24, 2. Inflection, 58 seq. Adjectives of One Termination, 60 *b*. Neuter Plural of these adjectives, 60 *c*. *Defective Adjectives*, 61 (58, Obs. 3). Varying between different Terminations, 59, Obs. 3, 60, Obs. 1. Derivation, 185 seq. (from Proper Names of Persons, 189; of Towns, 190). In the Neuter as an Adverb, 198 *c*; in the Poets, 302. Adjectives in the Neuter with a Partitive Genitive, 284, Obs. 5. Adjectives in Apposition, particularly those denoting Order and Succession, 300, *a*, *b*; *solus*, *totus*, &c., ib. *c* (*adversus*, *secundus*, Obs. 1). Adjectives of Time and Place instead of Adverbs in the Poets, 300, Obs. 2. Adjectives in Latin, where Substantives with Prepositions are made use of in English, 300, Obs. 3. Adjectives with Proper Names, 300, Obs. 4. Employed as Substantives in the Masculine and Neuter sing. and plur., 301, 247 *b*, Obs. 1 (*amicus*, &c.). Adjectives in the Neuter with Prepositions (*de integro*), 301 *b*, Obs. 3. Position of Adjectives, 466 *a*, *b*, 467 *a* (in the Poets, 474 *b*). The poets use greater freedom in combining them with Substantives, 481, Obs. 2. *Prolepsis Adjectivi*, ib. Two Adjectives referred to one Substantive, to denote different Persons or Things, 214 *d*, Obs. 2.

admoneo with a Genitive or the Preposition *de*, 291, Obs. 2.

adolescens, adolescentior, 68 *b*.

adventu (*Caesaris*) on (Cæsar's) arrival, 276, Obs. 2.

ADVERB, 24, 4. Pronominal Correlative Adverbs, 201. Comparison of Adverbs, 169 seq. Adverbs used as Prepositions, 172, Obs. 3. Derivation, 198 seq.; forms in *e*, *ter*, *o*, 198. Numeral Adverbs, 199. Adverbs in *o* and *um* with Comparatives, 270, Obs. 1, 2. Adverbs apparently combined with a Substantive, 301 *c*, Obs. 2. Position, 468. Some which are always put after other words, 471. An adverb instead of a judgment expressed in a distinct Proposition, 398 *b*, Obs. 4.

Adversative Conjunctions, 437. Omitted, 437 *d*, Obs. Not attached to the Relative Pronoun, 448, Obs. 2.

adversus, *in adversum collem*, 300 *c*, Obs. 1.

ae diphthong, 5 *b*, Obs. 1. *ae*, *oe*, *e*, 5 *b*, Obs. 3.

aedes (*aedem*), omitted, 280, Obs. 3.

aeqvare *aliqvem alicui*, 243, Obs. 4.

aeqve ac, 444 *b*, and Obs. 1; *aeqve — aeqve*, ib. Obs. 4.

aeqvi bonique facio, 294, Obs. 2.

affinis with a Genitive and Dative, 247 *b*, Obs. 4.

Affirmative idea (*omnes*, *ut dico*), understood from one that is negative, 462 *b*.

age, agite, 132 *b* (*ago*), and Obs.

aï, an old termination of the Genitive, 34, Obs. 1.

alienus, its construction, 268 *b*, Obs. 1, 2; 247 *b*, Obs. 6.

aliqvis and **qvis**, 493 *a*; and **qvisqvam**, 494 *a*, Obs. 1; *aliqvi* and *aliqvot*, 493 *a*, Obs. 2. Adverbs from *aliqvis* and *qvis*, 201, 2, Obs. 1. *Aliqvid pulchri* and *pulchrum memorabile*, 285 *b*.

alius, a Pronoun, its Declension, 37, Obs. 2, 84. *Alius sapiente*, 304, Obs. 3. *Alius ac, nihil aliud qvam, nihil aliud nisi*, 444 *b*, Obs. 1. *Alius — alius, alius aliter, alia via*, 496, Obs. 1.
alter, 84, and Obs.; where the idea of Two is not immediately brought forward, 496. *Alteri*, 84, Obs. *Alterius*, 87, Obs. 2. *Alter — alter* in Apposition, 217, Obs. 1.
alterni, every other, 74, Obs. 2.
amb, 204.
ambo, 71.
amicus *alicui* and *alicujus*, 247 *b*, and Obs. 1. *Amicissimus, inimicissimus alicujus*, ib.
amplius with and without *qvam*, 305.
an in Disjunctive Interrogations, 452; in those of a Supplementary kind, 453; in the poets and later writers in simple Dependent Interrogations, ib. After *nescio, dubito*, ib. Denoting Uncertainty, ib. Obs. 1. *An vero*, 453.
Anacoluthia, 480.
Anapaest, 499. Anapaestic Verses, 505.
Anaphora instead of the Copulative Conjunction, 434, Obs. 2. Number of the Predicate where there is Anaphora of the Subject, 213 *b*, Obs. 2.
Anastrophe of the Preposition, 469, Obs. 1.
Ancipites vocales et syllabae, 15.
Animals, names of, their Gender, 30. Twofold form according to the sex, 30 *c*, Obs.
animans, its Gender, 41 (p. 42).
animi (= *animo*) with Adjectives, 290 *g*; with Verbs, 296 *b*, Obs. 3.
animo without *in*, 273 *b*, Obs. 1.
animum induco, *induco in animum*, 389.
anne, 452.
annon, 452.
Answer, Affirmative and Negative, 454.
ante *paucos dies, paucis ante diebus*, 270, Obs. 4; *ante decem dies qvam*, ib.; *ante diem decimum qvam*, 276, Obs. 6. *Ante diem* in noticing the day of the month, p. 480. Verbs compounded with *ante* with the Accusative, 224 *d*.
anteqvam (*postqvam*) with the Perfect, 338, Obs. 5; with the Present Indic. instead of the Future, 339, Obs. 2, *c*; 360, Obs. 3. With the Indic. or Subj. 360 (and Obs. 4).
apage, 164.
apodosis, 326, Obs. 2.
Aposiopesis, 479, Obs. 6.
applicare se ad aliqvid, 248, Obs. 1.
APPOSITION, 210 *b*. Its Use and Meaning, 220. Of *alius, alter, qvisqve*, without any influence on the Predicate, 217, Obs. 1. Apposition to the whole Proposition, 220, Obs. 3. Apposition of the Adjective, 300. Apposition separated from the word to which it belongs, 467 *b*.
aptus, with the Dative or *ad*, 247 *b*, Obs. 6. *Aptus qui*, 368 *b*.
arbor fici, 286.
ardeo in aliqvi, 230, Obs. 1.
argos and **argi**, 56, 7, Obs.
Arsis and Thesis, 498. Lengthening of a syllable by Arsis, 502 *a*, with the note.
as, an old Termination of the Genitive, 34, Obs. 2.
as and **is**, Greek words with these terminations employed as Adjectives, 60, Obs. 5.
as, (the) and its parts, Supplement II. B. 2.
Aspiration, 9.
assvetus with the Ablative, 267.
Asyndeton with two members, 434.
at, 437 *c* (*at qvi vir*).
atque, see *ac*.
atqvi, 437 *c*, Obs.
attendo *aliqvid* and *ad aliqvid*, 225, Obs.
ATTRACTION, 207, Obs. With the Second Member of a Comparison, 303 *b*. With the Demonstrative Pronoun, 313; with the Relative, 315 *c*, 316; with the case of a Relative, 323 *b*, Obs. 2; with a Relative Subordinate Proposition belonging to an Accus. with the Infinitive, 402 *b*. Attraction of the Subject of a Subordinate Proposition to the Leading Prop., 439, Obs. 1.
Attribute, 210, Obs.
auctor sum with a Pronominal Accusative, 229 *b*, Obs. 2.
audivi *eum dicere, dicentem, ex eo, qvum diceret*, 395, Obs. 5.
ave, 164.
ausim, 115 *f*.
auspicio *alicujus rem gerere*, 258, Obs. 5.
aut, aut — aut, 436. *Aut* continuing a Negation, 458 *c*, Obs. 2; *aut — aut* after a Negation, ib. Number of the Predicate with Subjects which are connected by *aut* or *aut — aut*, 218 *b*, Obs. 1.
autem, 437 *b*.

Barbarous Names, how declined, 54, Obs. 4.
Basis in Verse, 508.
belli, 296 *b*.
bonā veniā alicujus, 253, Obs. 5.
bundus, a Participle Termination, 115 *g*.

c, its pronunciation, 8. Relation to *qv*, ib.
Caesura, 501. Of the Hexameter, 503.
Calendae, Suppl. I.
Calendar (Roman), ib.
canere receptui, 249.
Cardinal Numbers, 70.

CASES, *recti* and *obliqui*. 82, Obs. Their Terminations, 33. Defective Inflection of, 55. Different Cases with the same Governing Word, 219, Obs. 2. Signification of the *casus obliqui* in general, 240.
Catalectic Verse, 500, and Obs.
causa terroris, a cause consisting in terror, 286, Obs. 2. *Causa* (*ratio*) *cur* (*qvamobrem*), 372 *b*, Obs. 6; *causa*, *qvominus*, *nulla causa qvin*, 375 *b* and *c*.
causâ, with the Genitive, 257. Omitted with the Genitive of the Gerund, 417, Obs. 5.
cave facere and **cave facias**, 375 *a*, and Obs. 1.
caveo, its construction, 244 b, Obs. 1.
ce, a Demonstrative Termination, 81, Obs. 82, Obs. 2 (*hicine*, *sicine*).
cedo, **cette**, 164.
cedere, with the Abl., 263.
celare, its construction, 228 *a*, and Obs.
censere *faciendum*, *aliquid fieri*, *facere* (*ut*) **facias**, 396, Obs. 4. *Censeri* with an Accus., 237 *a*, Obs.
certiorem facere *rei* and *de re*, 289 *b*, Obs. 1.
ceteri and **reliqvi**, 496, Obs. 2. *Ceteri* at the end of an enumeration, not *et ceteri*, 434, Obs. 1. *Cetera* employed Adverbially, 237 *c*, Obs. 3.
Chiasmus, 473 *b*.
Choliambus (*scazon*) 507 *b*, Obs. 1.
Choreus, 499.
Choriambus, 499. Choriambic Verses, 507 *b*, Obs. 2.
cingor with an Accus., 237 *a*.
circum. Verbs compounded with it take the Accus., 224 *a*, and Obs. 2, 225.
clam, 172, Obs. 3.
co, **con**, see *cum*.
coepi, and **coeptus sum**, 161.
cogo, with two Accusatives, *cogor aliqvid*, 229, 2.
COLLECTIVES with the Predicate in the Plural, 215 *a*. The Relative referred to them in the Plural, 317 *c*.
Common Nouns, 29. Names of animals as Common Nouns, 30 *b*.
communis, its construction, 290 *f*.
compacto, **ex**, 150 (*paciscor*).
comparare (*componere*, *conjungere*) with *cum* and with the Dative, 243, Obs. 2.
COMPARATIVE, its Formation, 63; formed from Prepositional Stems, 66. Diminutives of it, 63, Obs. With *qvam* (*ac*), 303 *a*; with a whole Proposition, 303 *b*; with the Abl., 304, with Obs. 1 (*spe*, *opinione*, *aeqvo*, &c., Obs. 4). Compar. of Adjectives of Measure, how constructed, 306. Two Comparatives connected by *qvam*, 307. Compar. of a Considerable Degree, 308. Instead of the Superlative when only two are mentioned, 309. Irregular Construction of the Compar., 308, Obs. 2.
Comparative Particles, 444.
Comparison, 62. Irregular, 65. Defective, 66 and 67.
Compertus probri, 293, Obs. 1. *Compertus fecisse*, 400 *c*, Obs.
complures, 65, 2, Obs.
Composita, 203; *Determinativa*, 206 *a*; *Constructa*, *b*; *Possessiva*, *c*.
Composition, 203 seq. (spurious, 53). Form, 203 seq. Signification of the Forms, 206.
Compound Verbs with a Transitive signification, 224; with a Dat. or the Prep. repeated, 243, 245.
Concessive Conjunctions, what Mood they take, 331, with the Obss.; annexing a Remark which limits the preceding statement in an independent form, 443; with Participles and Adjectives, ib. Obs.
conciliare *aliquem alicui*, 242, Obs. 1.
Conclusive Particles not connected with the Relative Pronouns, 448, Obs. 2; nor with the Copulative Conjunction, 434, Obs. 3.
Conditional Conjunctions, 442.
CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS in the Indic., 332; in the Subjunctive, 347. The Condition not expressed in the form of a Proposition, 347 *c*. The Prop. limited by a Condition in the Indic., though that which expresses the condition is in the Subjunctive, 348 (370, Obs. 1). Condit. Prop. in the Subjunctive as belonging to an Infinitive, 348 *e*, Obs. 3. The Condition expressed by an Independent Proposition, 442 *a*, Obs. 2. Two Condit. Propositions annexed to a Leading Proposition, 442 *a*.
confieri, 143 (*facio*).
Conjugation (p. 92, *n*). How the Four Conjugations are related to each other, 101.
Conjunction, 24, 6; classes of, 432; see Adversative, Copulative, &c. Position of the Conjunctions, 465 *b*. Conjunctions transposed in the poets, 474 *d*; the Copulative and Disjunctive sometimes separated from the second member, 474 *e*.
conjunctus with the abl., dat., and *cum*, 268 *a*, Obs. 2.
Connecting vowel, 176 *c*, 205 *a*.
conscius, 289 *b*, Obs. 2.
Consecutio temporum, 382.
consilium *capio facere* and *faciendi*, 417, Obs. 2.
consolari dolorem alicujus, 223 *b*.

Consonants Doubled, 10. Modification of the Consonants when they come together, ib. When dropped, ib. 11, Obs. Combinations of the Consonants at the beginning of words, 13, Obs. 1.
constare, *ex*, *in*, *constare re*, 255, Obs. 2.
contentus with the Infinitive, 389, Obs. 3.
contingit ut, and with the Infinitive, 373, Obs. 2.
contineri aliqva re, 255, Obs. 2.
continuare aliqvid alicui, 243, Obs. 4.
Contraction, 6, Obs. 1. With the rejection of *x*, 182 *f*, Obs. 3.
contrarius ac, 444 *b*.
conventa pax, 110, Obs. 8.
Coordinate Propositions in place of the combination of a Leading and Subordinate prop., 438.
Copula, 209 *b*, Obs. 1.
Copulative Conjunctions, 433. Inserted or omitted where several words are connected, 434, Obs. 1. Not added to Illative Particles, ib., Obs. 3. For Adversative, 433, Obs. 2.
Correlative Pronouns, 93; Adverbs, 201.
cotidie (orthography), 8.
Countries, names of, 192; treated as the names of Towns, 282, Obs. 4; some ending in *us*, fem., 89 *b*.
crassitudine (*digiti*) "of the thickness," 272, Obs. 3.
credor auctor, 227 *c*, Obs. 2; for *creditur mihi*, 244, Obs. 4.
Creticus, 499.
crimine, 293, Obs. 2.
cujus, a, um, and **cujas**, 92, Obs. 2.
cum, conjunction, see *qvum*.
cum, preposition, how modified in Composition, 173. Put after its case (*mecum*), 172, Obs. *Qvid mihi* (*tibi*) *cum aliqvo?* 479 *d*, Obs. 1; *cum magno studio*, and simply *magno studio*, *cum cura*, 258, and Obs. 1, 2; *cum omnibus copiis*, and simply *omnibus copiis*, 258, Obs. 4; *cum magna calamitate civitatis* (*to*), 258, Obs. 5. Subjects connected by *cum* with the Predicate in the Plural, 215 *c*. Verbs compounded with *cum* which take the Accus., 224 *b*; with a repetition of the Preposition, more rarely with the Dative, 243, Obs. 2.
cupio esse, and **me esse**, 389, Obs. 4.
cur: est, nihil est, cur, 372 *b*, Obs. 6; **cur, qvare, qvidni**, 492 *b*, Obs. 2.
curo faciendum often expressed by *facio*, 431 *a*, Obs. 1.
Dactyl, 499; Dactylic Verses, 503, 504.
damnare, Construction, 293, Obs. 2, 3
DATIVE, Irregular forms in the Plural, see Ablative; Greek in *si*, 45, 8. Signification of the Dative, 241 (240 Obs.). *Dativus commodi et incommodi*, 241, Obs. 1. Dative annexed to the Whole Phrase, instead of the Genitive with a Substantive, 241, Obs. 3 and 4 (*legatum esse alicui*), and 242, Obs. 2 (*causa rebus novandis*, 241, Obs. 3). Dative with *facio*, *fit*, 241, Obs. 5; Dative of a Participle signifying "when one," ib., Obs. 6. Dative as object of Reference with Verbs, 242. Dative with Compound Transitive Verbs, or the Preposition repeated, 243 (and Obs. 3). With Intransitive Verbs, 244; with a Verbal Substantive, 244, Obs. 5. With Compound Intransitive Verbs or the Preposition repeated, 245; with *sum*, 246. Double Dative with *nomen est* (*do*), 246, Obs. 2. With Adjectives, 247. With *diversus*, *discrepo*, *disto*, 247 *b*, Obs. 3. Dative or *ad* with *aptus*, &c., 247 *b*, Obs. 6. With some Adverbs (*convenienter*, &c.), 247 *b*, Obs. 7. With *idem*, 247 *b*, Obs. 8. *Dativus ethicus*, 248. Dative denoting the Design and Operation, 249, especially the Dative of the Gerundive, 249, Obs. 415. Dative of the Agent instead of *ab* with passives, 250 *a*. Dative of the Direction *towards*, 251. Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive, 415. Dative with an Infinitive (*licet mihi esse beato*), 393 *c*. Dative of the Agent with the Gerundive, 420, 421 *a*, and Obs. 1.
de Partitive, 284, Obs. 1. **de improviso**, 301 *b*, Obs. 3. *De* with an Accus. with the Infin. following (*de hoc dicitur Verri*, *eum* —), 395, Obs. 7. Verbs compounded with *de* with a remote object, 243.
debebam, debui, of a thing which would be Obligatory in an assumed case, 348 *c*; of a thing which should have been done, 348 *c*, Obs.
decet, decent, 166 *b*, Obs.
Declinatio, p. 20, note.
Declensions, their Number and mutual Relation, 33, Obs. 1.
Decomposita, 206 *a*, Obs. 1.
deest, deeram, pronounced *dēst*, *dēram*, 108, Obs. 2.
Defectiva numero, 50 and 51. *Casibus*, 55.
defendo = defendendi causa dico, 395, Obs. 2.
deniqve, not *et deniqve*, 434, Obs. 1.
DEPONENTS, 110; with irregular Supines, 146 seq.; varying between this and the Active form, 147; Passive of the last named used in a passive signification, 152; other Deponents in a Passive signification, especially the Part. Perf., 153. Deponents of the First Conjug. derived from Substantives 193 *b*.

Derivation, 174. Derivative Terminations how affixed to the Stem, 176.
Derivatives, 175 *a*.
Desideratives, without Perfect and Supine, 145. Their Formation, 197, 4.
desitus sum, 136, 161 (*coepi*).
dexterior, dextimus, 67 *d*, Obs. 2.
Diaeresis, 5 *a*, Obs. 4, in a metrical signification, 501.
Diastole, 502 *a*, Obs. 1.
dico, "I mean," without influence on the Case, 219, Obs. 3. *Dico* to say to a person, that he is to —, 372. *Dico*, omitted, 479; *dicere*, 479 *d*, Obs. 4.
differre alicui, 247 *b*, Obs. 3.
dignus qvi, 353; *dignus legi*, 363, Obs. 1; *dignum dictu*, 412, Obs. 2.
dimidius qvam, 444 *b*.
Diminutives, their Formation, 182; of Adjectives, 188, 15, Obs. 2; from Comparatives, 63, Obs.; Diminutive Verbs, 197, 5.
Dipodia, 499, Obs. 1.
Diphthongs, 5 *b*.
dis, 204 (Obs. 1). Adjectives and Verbs compounded with, which take a Dative (in the poets), 247 *b*, Obs. 3.
discessu (*Caesaris*), at (Caesar's) departure, 276, Obs. 2.
Disjunctive Conjunctions, 436.
Distich, 504. Combinations in this form, 509, Obs. 2.
distinctus, "studded," 260 *a*.
Distributive Numbers, 69, 75; when employed, 76. In the Sing. (in the poets), 76 *d*, Obs. Genitive Plural, 37, Obs. 4. Adjectives derived from them, 187, 10.
diversus alicui (in the poets), 247 *b*, Obs. 3.
dives, dis, 60 *c*, Obs. 1.
do (*ministro*) **bibere**, 422, Obs. 1; *do* (*reddo*) *loqvi*, 390, Obs. 6; *datur mihi cernere*, ib.
docere, doceri, its Construction, 228 *a*; *docere aliqvem Graece* (*scire, oblivisci Graece*), 228 *a*, Obs.
domus, declension, 46. *Domi* (*domui*), 296 *b*. *Domum*, 283. *Domo*, 275. (*Domum suam, Pompeji, domum ad Pomp.*, 283.)
donec, dum, with the Perf. Indic., 338 *b*, Obs. 5; with the Indic. and the Subj., 360, Obs. 2.
dubito, *non dubito, qvin; non dubito*, with an Accus. with the Infin.; *non dubito facere*, 375 *c* (Obs. 1 and 2). *Dubito an*, 453.
duim, 115 *d*.
dum, see *donec*. *Dum*, while, with the Pres., 336, Obs. 2, and (in the poets and later writers), with the Indic., where the Subj. might have been expected, 369, Obs. 3. *Dum, donec*, with the Perf., 338, Obs. 5. *Exspecto, opperior dum*, 339, Obs. 2 *b*, 360, Obs. 1. *Dum, dummodo, dum ne*, 351 *b*, Obs. 2. With Negations (*nondum*, &c.), 462 *a*.

e and i permuted, 5 *c*.
e and a in the Nom. of Greek words, 35, Obs. 1. *E* and *i* in the Abl. of the Third Declension, 42, 3.
ecce, en, 236, Obs. 3.
eccum, eccam, 83, Obs. 2.
ecqvid, as an Interrog. Particle, 451 *b*, Obs.
Ecthlipsis, 8.
edim, 115 *d*.
egeo, indigeo, with the Abl. and Gen., 261 *a*, Obs.; 295, Obs. 3.
egenus, egentior, 65, 1, Obs.
ει expressed in Latin by *ē* and *ī*, 5 *b*, Obs. 2.
Elision, 6.
Ellipsis, 207, Obs.; of the Verb, 479; in every-day, familiar discourse, 479 *d*.
ellum, ellam, 83, Obs. 1.
en, 236, Obs. 3.
enim, for "namely," 435, Obs. 4; referring to *ille, hic*, 439, Obs. 2. In answers, yes (no), for, 454, Obs. 2.
ens, 108, Obs. 1.
eo (*hoc*) — *qvo*, 270, Obs. 1.
eo (*hoc*), on that account, 257, Obs. 3.
eo (*huc*) *dementiae*, 284, Obs. 9; *eo loci*, 284, Obs. 11.
Epicoena, 30 *a*.
Epistolary style, Tenses used in, 345.
eqvidem, 489 *b*.
er, Latin Termination for the Greek ρος, 38, 1, Obs. Adjectives in *er* which follow the Third Decl., 59.
eram, in conditional language instead of *essem*, 348 *c*, Obs. and *d*.
ergo, as a preposition with a Genitive, 172, Obs. 5.
ergo, an Adverb, its position, 471. In resuming a discourse which has been interrupted, 480.
es, Greek nouns in, 35, Obs. 3. Greek Proper Names in *es* declined, 35, Obs. 4; 45, 2, *d*; *ĕs*, Greek Nom. Plu., 45, 5.
es and is used indifferently in the Nom. of some words, 41 (p. 36).
escit, esit, 108, Obs. 4.
esse, to exist, to be, 209 *b*, Obs. 2. With an Adverb instead of the Predicative Noun (*sic sum*), ib. *Esse pro hoste*, ib. With the dative, 246. *Est mihi volenti*, ib., Obs. 3. *Esse odio, curae*, &c., 249; *esse solvendo, oneri ferendo*, 415, Obs. 1. *Esse conservandae libertatis*, 417, Obs. 4. *Esse, manere*, with the Abl.

without *in*, 272, Obs. 2. *Est meum (alicujus) facere*, 282. *Est in eo, ut faciam*, 343, Obs. *Est cur, qvamobrem, qvare*, 372 *b*, Obs. 6. *Est qvi*, 365.

et and qve, 433. *Et* for *etiam*, ib. Obs. 1; for a Comparative Conjunction, 444 *b*, Obs. 3. *Et — et* broken off, 480, Obs. 1. *Et — qve*, 435, Obs. 1. *Et — neqve, neqve — et*, 458 *c*. *Et non, et nemo* (used rarely for *neqve, neque qvisqvam*), 458 *a*, Obs. 1; *et non*, "and not much rather," ib. *Et* harshly made to coalesce with *non*, 458 *a*, Obs. 2. *Et — et non*, 458 *c*, Obs. 1. *Et is*, "and that," 484 *c*. *Et ipse*, "likewise," 487 *a*, Obs. 2.

etiam, "yes," 454; its Position in the sentence, 471.

etiamsi, 361, Obs. 2.

etsi, 361, Obs. 2. *Etsi, tametsi*, used to annex a remark, 443.

Etymology, 175, Obs. 3.

ex facili = facile, 301 *b*, Obs. 3.

ex, Partitive, 284, Obs. 1; *ex eo genere, qvi* (plur.), *ex eo numero, qvi* (plur.), 317 *c*.

eu, Diphthong, 5 *b*.

evado, 221, note.

eus, Greek termination, 38, 3.

excusare morbum, 223 *b*; *aliqvid* and *se de aliqva re*, ib.

exosus, 161, Obs.

exspecto, dum, 339, Obs. 2; 360, Obs. 1; *exspecto ut*, ib.

facere, its Compounds, 148. Accentuation of its Compounds, 23, Obs. 1. *Facere* as the last part of the Compound, 204; 206 *b* 1, Obs 2. *Qvid facies huic? hoc? de hoc?* 241, Obs. 5; 267, and Obs. *Facere* with a Gen. of Price, 294, and Obs. 1. *Facere aliqvid alicujus*, 281; *aliqvid suae dicionis, sui arbitrii*, ib., Obs. *Facio aliqvem loqventem* and *loqvi, facio te videre*, 372 *b*, Obs. 5. *Facere non possum*, 375 *c*. *Facio* omitted, 479 *c*. *Facere ut*, Periphrastic, 481 *b*. *Fac cogites*, 372 *b*, Obs. 4. *Fac*, "suppose," ib., Obs. 5.

facilis ad legendum for **lectu**, 412, Obs. 3 (in the poets *facilis legi*).

familias, old Genitive, 34, Obs. 2.

familiaris, familiarissimus, alicui and **alicujus**, 247 *b*, Obs. 1.

fas, nefas dictu, 412, Obs. 1.

faxo, faxim, 115 *f*.

Feet, see *Verbal, Verse*.

feriatus, 146, 2, Obs. 1.

fidere, confidere, diffidere, their construction, 244, 264, Obs.

fieri. Qvid fiet huic? hoc? de hoc? 241, Obs. 5; 267. *Fieri alicujus*, 281.

Figures of Speech, 207, Obs.

filius, omitted, 280, Obs. 4.

fore, forem, 108, Obs. 3. *Forem*, 377, Obs. 2. *Fore, ut*, 410. *Fore* with the Part. Perf., 410, Obs. 2.

forsitan, with the Subj., 350 *b*, Obs. 3.

Fractions, mode of expressing, Suppl. II. B.

Frequentatives, of two kinds, 195.

fretus, 268 *c*, and note.

frustra esse, 209 *b*, Obs. 2.

fuam, 108, Obs. 4.

fuit aeqvum, utilius, &c., 348 *e*, Obs.

fueram for **eram**, 338, Obs. 6; 342, Obs.; 344, Obs. 1.

Future, old. in *so*, 115 *f*.

FUTURE (simple) in the Indic., 339; in Subord. Prop., ib., Obs. 1 (compare 340, Obs. 1). Future (Simple and Perfect), 340, Obs. 1. *Fut. in praesenti* (*facturus sum*), 341; in *praeterito*, 342; in *futuro*, 343. Fut. Indic. of the Second Person instead of the Imper., 384, Obs. Fut. Subj. often not expressed, 378 *a*; Periphrastically, 378 *b*. *Fut. in praet.* in the Subj., 381.

Futurum exactum, 340 (Obs. 1); in the Leading and Subordinate Proposition at the same time, ib., Obs. 2; approaching in signification to the Simple Future, ib., Obs. 4 (*odero, meminero*, 161). *Fut. Exact.* in the Subj., 379; as a Dubitative and Hypothetical Future, 380 (Obs.); in Prohibitions with *ne*, 383.

futurum esse, ut, 410; *futurum, fuisse, ut*, 409.

Gender, 27; different in the Sing. and Plur., 57. Gender of the Predicate where there are several Subjects, 214.

GENITIVE in *i* in Proper Names of the Third Declension, 42, 2; is wanting in the Plur. of some words of the Third Declension, 44 *c*, Obs. 2, and *e*, Obs.; Gen. Plur. in *um* instead of *arum, orum*, 34, Obs. 3; 37, Obs. 4; in *orum* for *um*, 44, 2; Greek Gen. in *os*, 45, 3; in *ūs* from words in *o*, ib.; in *on* in the Plur., 33 and 45, 7; in *i* in the Fourth Declension, 46, Obs. 2. Signification of the Genitive Case, 279 and Obs. Gen. Possessive and Conjunctive, 280; with the force of an Adjective, 280, Obs. 1; with the omission of the governing Substantive, to be supplied from a preceding clause of the sentence, Obs. 2. Irregularities thence arising, ib.; with the omission of *uxor, filius*, Obs. 4. Ambiguous, *injuria sociorum*, Obs. 5; Genitive Possessive with *sum, fio, facio*, 281; with *sum* in the signification, "to be suitable, proper," 282; Gen. Objective with Substantives, 283; used for the

Adverbs *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, ib., Obs. 2; not merely used instead of the Accus. with Verbs, ib., Obs. 3; connected with the governing Substantive by *sum*, ib., Obs. 4. Partitive, 284 (after Adjectives in the Neuter, Obs. 5; not to be employed in certain cases, Obs. 7; with Pronominal Adverbs of Place, *huc dementiae*, Obs. 9; the Genitives *loci*, *locorum*, *terrarum*, Obs. 10). *Genitivus generis*, 285 *a* (*sestertii bini accessionis*, Obs.); with Adjectives of Quantity and Neuter Pronouns, 285 *b*; with *satis*, *abunde*, &c., 285 c. *Genitivus epexegeticus*, 286 (instead of an Apposition Obss. 1, 2; with *sum* for the Nom. of a Predicate Noun, Obs. 3); of quality, 287 (distinguished from the Ablative of Quality, Obs. 2; with a Proper Name, Obs. 3). Several Genitives dependent on one Substantive, 288. Objective with Adjectives, 289, 290 (signifying "with respect to," 290 *g*). With Verbs, 291—3. Of Price, 294. Genitive with *interest* and *refert*, 295; with *impleo*, *egeo*, ib., Obs. 3. Of the names of Towns of the First and Second Declension in answer to the question *where*, 296 *a*. Genitive in Apposition to a Possessive Pronoun, 297 *a*. Genitive of the Gerund, 417. Gen. according to the Greek Idiom instead of the Abl., 262, Obs. 4. Position of the Genitive, 466; Gen. separated from the governing Noun, 467 *c*.

gentilicia nomina, 190.

gentium, 284, Obs. 10.

Genus, see *Gender*.

GERUND and GERUNDIVE, 99. The Gerund as a case of the Infinitive, 413. Used indifferently in the place of the Gerundive (of Transitive Verbs), ib., and Obs. 1. Gerund retained in the Gen. with a Subst. in the Gen. Plural (*agrorum condonandi*), 413, Obs. 2.—Accusative of the Gerund (or Gerundive), 414 *b* (with *ad* instead of the Second Supine, 412, Obs. 3).—Dative 415 (to signify a Purpose, Obs. 2); Abl., 416 (of the Way and Manner, Obs. 1; with what Prepositions not to be employed, Obs. 2 and 3). Gen., 417 (used indiscriminately with the simple Infinitive, Obs. 2; with the omission of the word *causa*, Obs. 5). Gerund (in the Abl. and Gen.) apparently Passive, 418.

GERUNDIVE for the Gerund, 413. With *sum* and alone to signify a thing that is to be done, 420 (with a Negation to denote what is practicable, Obs.). Ger. of Intransitive Verbs used Inpers. in the Neuter, 421 *a*; in the older writers occasionally that of Trans. Verbs also with the Accus., ib. *b*. Gerundive of *utor*, *fruor*, ib. *a*, Obs. 2. Gerundive with the object of certain Verbs (*do*, *suscipio*, *aliqvid faciendum*), 422; with *habeo*, ib., Obs. 3.

gratiā, 257.

Greek Nouns with Greek forms retained in Latin, 33, Obs. 3, and under the several Declensions.

H, its pronunciation, 9.

habere, with a word in apposition to the Object (mostly in the Passive, *habeor justus*), 227 *c*, Obs. 1; *pro hoste*, *in hostium numero*, *parentis loco*, *in parentis loco*, ib. *Habere*, *non* (*nihil*) *habere*, *qvod* (*ubi*), 363. *Non habere*, *qvid*, 363, Obs. 2. *Habere perspectum*, 427. *Habere aedem tuendam*, 422, Obs. 3. *Habeo dicere*, ib.

Half-Deponents, 110, Obs. 2.

haud, 455. *Haud scio an*, 453.

hei mihi, 236, Obs. 2.

Hendiadys, 481 *a*.

Heteroclita, *heterogenea*, 56, Obs.

Hexameter, 503.

Hiatus, 6; where tolerated, 502 *b*.

hic, 485 (*hic*, *qvi*, ib. *c*; *hic et hic*, *hic et ille* Obs.). In Notices of Time, 276, Obs. 5. *Hoc praemii*, 285 *b*. *Hujus non-facio*, 294, Obs. 1. *Hoc populo*, "with such a people," 277, Obs. 2.

Hispanus, Hispaniensis, 192.

hoc, "on this account," 257, Obs. 3.

hospes, as an Adjective, *hospita*, 60, Obs. 2.

humo, *ab humo*, 275; *humi*, 296 *b*.

Hypothetical Propositions, see *Conditional*.

I, where a Consonant (*j*), 5 *a*, Obs. 2; changed to a Consonant (*abjes*), 5 *a*, Obs. 4. *I* and *e* interchanged, 5 *c*. *I* a Connecting Vowel, 176 *c*, 205 *a*.

Iambus, 499. Iambic Verses, 507.

jamdiu, jamdudum with the present, 334, Obs.

ibam, in the Imperf. for *iebam*, *ibo* in the future for *iam*, 115 *c*.

ictus femur, 237 *c*. Obs. 1.

Ictus metricus an erroneous idea, 498, note.

id aetatis, *temporis*, *id generis* for *ejus generis*, 238. *Id qvod*, 315 *b*.

idem qvi, idem ac, 324 *b*. *Idem* with the Dative, 247 *b*, Obs. 8. *Idem*, likewise (on the other hand), 488.

idoneus qvi, 363; *idoneus dare*, ib., Obs. 1.

idus, Suppl. I. p. 479.

ier, old termination of the Infinitive, 115 *a*.

igitur, its position, 471. On resuming a discourse which has been broken off, 480.

ignoscere *festinationi alicujus*, 244, *a*., a.

ille and hic, 485. In notices of Time, 276, Obs. 5. Referring to what follows, 485 *b*. *Ille et ille*, 485 *c*, Obs.

im, a personal termination of Verbs, 115 *d*.

imo, imo vero, 454.

impedio, its construction, 375 *a* (Obs. 2) and *b*.

IMPERATIVE, old in *mino*, 115 *e*. Pres. and Fut., 384. Expressed by a Subjunctive, 385. How expressed in the *oratio obliqva*, 404.

IMPERFECT, 337. Of a thing which was on the point of happening, 337, Obs. 348 *b*. Imperf. Subj. irregularly employed after a Present in the Leading Proposition, 382, Obs. 2; Perfect to be used in Dependent Questions after a Present, ib., Obs. 4. Imperf. Subj. in Subordinate Propositions, where the Present is made use of in English, 383. Imperf. and Pluperf. Subj. interchanged in Conditional Propositions, 347 *b*, Obs. 2.

impero *hoc fieri, imperor duci in carcerem*, 396, and Obs. 3.

IMPERSONAL VERBS, 165 seq.; compare, 218 *b*. Employed Personally, 218 *a*, Obs. 1. Intransitive Verbs used Impersonally in the Passive, 95, Obs. 218 *c*, 244 *b*. Impersonal Construction, 218.

implere, complere, with the Gen. and Abl., 259 *a*, Obs.; 295, Obs. 3.

in a Negative Particle in compound words, 204, Obs. 2.

in a Preposition with the Accus. and Abl., 230 and Obss. With an Ablative of Time, 276, Obs. 1 and 3 ("within," Obs. 4). *In diebus* (or simply *diebus*) *decem, qvibus*, 276, Obs. 4. *In die*, "a day," (*bis in die*), 276, Obs. 3. *In* Partitive, 284, Obs. 1. Verbs compounded with it with the Accus. or the Prep. repeated, 224 *b*, Obs. 2; with the Dat. or the Prep. (*incidere in aes* and *aeri inesse in, inesse rei*) 243, and Obs. 3; 245 *b*, Obs. 1.

incessit timor, 133 (*incesso*).

Inchoatives, 141, 196.

Indeclinable Substantives, 54.

INDICATIVE, 331. In Hypothetical Propositions for the Subjunctive, 348; of a thing which would be a duty, which ought to have been done, 348 *e*, and Obs. With *si* and *ut* in Protestations, 348 *e*, Obs. 3. With Indefinite Relatives, 362. Used by way of Exception and where the Subjunctive might have been expected, 356, Obs. 3 (in Dependent Interrogative Propositions), 360, Obs. 3 (*antequam*), 368, Obs. 369, Obs. 1, 2, and 3 (in Subordinate Propositions, which express the idea of a third party).

induor, with the Accus., 287 *a*.

INFINITIVE, its signification, 387. As a Subject, 388 *a*, with the Obs. (rarely in Apposition to a Substantive, 388 *b*, Obs. 1). After Verbs and Phrases, 389 (used indifferently with *ut*, Obs. 1; with *paratus* and the like, Obs. 3; employed indiscriminately with the Accus. with the Infin., Obs. 4). After *doceo, jubeo, prohibeo*, &c. (after *jubeor*, &c.), 390; in the Poets after various Verbs, Obs. 4 (after Verbs which govern the Dative, *suadeo*, &c., Obs. 5). With *interest, inter*, 391, Obs. Infinitive Historical, 392. Simple Infin. (Nom. with the Infin.) with *verba declarandi* and *sentiendi* in the Passive, with *jubeor, videor*, &c., 400 (in *suspicionem venio fecisse*, ib. *c*, Obs.); changed to the Accus. with the Infin., 400 *d*. Simple Infin. for the Accus. with the Infin. in the poets, 401, Obs. 3. Infinitive instead of the Supine, or instead of the Gerund in the Genitive or with *ad*, 411, Obs. 2; 412, Obs. 3; 417, Obs. 2; 419; instead of the Gerundive with *do*, &c., 422, Obs. 1. Cases with the Infinitive, 388 *b*, 393. The Infinitive understood from a Verb of another form, 478, Obs. 3.

INFINITIVE, Accusative with the. Its Signification, 394 (222, Obs. 1, 387, Obs.). With *verba declarandi* and *sentiendi*, after Phrases and Substantives, 395 (372, Obs. 5); in apposition to a Pronoun, 395, Obs. 1; after *mitto*, &c., Obs. 2; with *spero, promitto*, Obs. 3; previously pointed to by a Pronoun, or *sic, ita*, 395, Obs. 6. With *verba voluntatis*, 396 (372 *b*, Obs. 2, 389, Obs. 4; with *licet*, 389, Obs. 5; in the later writers with *permitto, oro*, &c., 396, Obs. 1). With *verba affectuum*, 379 (used indifferently with *qvod*). In universal judgments concerning a Relation, 398, *a* (373, Obs. 2). How distinguished from a proposition with *qvod*, 398 *b*, and Obs. 1. In Exclamations, 399. Accus. with the Infin., or Simple Infin. (Nom. with the Infin.) with the Passive of *verba declarandi* and *sentiendi*, 400. Accus. with the Infin. in Relative Propositions, 402 *a, b*; in Propositions with *qvam*, 402 *c*. Accus. with the Infin. after a general intimation of the purport of a speech or argument, 403. In Questions in the *orat. obliq.*, 405. With the omission of the Reflective Pronoun as a Subject, 401 (of a Pronoun that is not Reflective, Obs. 2). Accus. with the Infin. Passive and a Simple Infin. combined, 398 *a*, Obs. 3. Position of the Accus. with the Infin. and Combination with the Leading Proposition, 476 *d*.

Infinitive, its Tenses, 406.

Inflection, 25, with the Obs.

iniqvi mei, 247 *b*, Obs. 1.
inqvam on returning to the subject of the discourse, 490. *Inqvit*, omitted, 479 *b*.
inflt, 162 *c*.
instar with the Genitive, 280, Obs. 6.
inter, Partitive, 284, Obs. 1; repeated, 470, Obs. 2. *Inter* with the Gerund, 414 *b*. *Inter tot annos*, 276, Obs. 5, note. *Inter se* = *se*, *sibi inter se*, 420 *c*, Obs. 6.
interdico, 261 *b*.
interest, 295.
Interjection, 24, 7.
interrogare aliqvem ambitus, 293, Obs. 1. *Interrogare*, with two Accusatives, 228 *b*, Obs. 1.
intervallo (*spatio*) 284 *b*, Obs.
Intransitive Verbs assume a Transitive Signification, 223 *e* (Obs. 3); with an Accus. of the same stem, ib., Obs. 4; become Transitive by being compounded with Prepositions, 224.
invidere *alicui aliqvid* or *aliqva re*, *invidere fortunae alicujus*, 261 *b*, and Obs. 1. *Invideor*, 244, Obs. 4.
io, Verbs in, which follow the Third Conjugation, 100 *c*, Obs. 102, Obs. 2.
ipse, without *is*, 487 *a*; *ipse*, signifying "exactly," ib., Obs. 1. *Et ipse*, ib. *a*, Obs. 2. *Ipse* drawn to the Subject or to some other case, ib. *b*; *suis ipsi scriptis*, ib. *Ipse* for *se ipsum*, 490 *c*, Obs. 4. *Nunc ipsum*, *tum ipsum*, 487 *a*, Obs. 1.
ire ultum, perditum, 411, Obs. 1.
is omitted and inserted, 484 *a*. *Et is* (*atque is*), *et is qvidem*, 484 *c*. *Is*, *qvicunqve*, and *is*, *si qvis*, ib. *b*. *Is*, *ejus*, instead of *se*, *suus*, 490 *c*, Obs. 3.
Islands, the names of larger Islands, sometimes constructed like the names of Towns, 232, Obs. 3, 296 *a*, Obs. 1.
iste, 486.
ita and **sic**, 201, 5; *ita sum*, 209 *b*, Obs. 2. *Ita si*, 442 *a*, *Ita ut*, 444 *a*, Obs. 3 (*ita me di ament*, *ut*). *Ita* "yes," 454.

jubeo te facere, (*ut facias*) 390, and Obs. 2; *jubeo facere* (without a person), ib., Obs. 3; *jubeo hoc fieri*, ib., Obs. 3, and 396 (Obs. 3). *Jubeor creari*, ib., Obs. 3; *jabeo* and *curo* often omitted (*facio* for *jubeo fieri*), 481 *a*, Obs. 1.
judicatus pecuniae, 293, Obs. 1.
junctus, with the Dative, 243, Obs. 4.
ius, a termination of the Genitive, 87, Obs. 2.
juvenis as an Adjective, 60 *c*, Obs. 4.

K, 8.

L and **r** interchanged, 179, 8, Obs. 1 (*clum. crum*; *bulum*, *brum*), 180, 5 (*al*, *ar*), 187, 6 (*alis. aris*).
Leading Proposition, 325; entirely or partially introduced into the Subordinate Proposition, 476 *d*.
Letters, their Division, 4 seq. Gender of their Names, 31; their Names Indeclinable, 54, Obs. 1.
libens, 167, Obs.
libro and *in libro*, 273 *b*, Obs. 1.
Licet *mihi esse civi* (rarely *civem*), 393, and *c*, Obs. 1; *licet esse civem*, ib.; *licet me esse civem*, 389, Obs. 5. *Licet* as a conjunction, 361, and Obs. 1.
licent, *licens*, 218 *a*, Obs. 2.
Liquids, 7.
loci, locorum, with Adverbs of Place, 284, Obs. 10 *Interea*, *postea loci*, *adhuc locorum*, ib. *Eo loci* for *eo loco*, ib., Obs. 11.
loco, 273 *b*, and Obs. 1.
Logaoedic Verses, 508.

M, its pronunciation, 8.
macte, 268 *a*, Obs. 3.
magis omitted or redundant, 308, Obs. 2. *Magis* and *plus*, 305 *b*, Obs. 2. *Non magis* (*non — magis*) *qvam*, ib.
major, minor, natus, how constructed, 306, Obs. (distinct from *major natu*).
malim, mallem, 350 *b*, Obs. 1.
mane, 54.
manere with the Accus. and Dat., 223 *c*, and note.
materia, materies, 56, 3.
materialiter, words so employed, 31; when inflected, 219 *c*, Obs. 4.
medius, medio, in media urbe, 273 *b*, 311. *Medius* with a Partitive Genitive, ib., Obs. *Medius eo*, 300 *b*.
mei, tui, sui, as Objective Genitives, 297 *b*; as Partitive, 297 *c*.
memini with the Gen. and Accus., 291, and Obs. 1. With the Pres. of the Infin. (*memini puer*), 408 *b*, Obs. 2.
mereo, mereor, 148, Obs. and note. *Mereo fieri* and *ut fiam*, 389, Obs. 1.
met, an Affix, 79, Obs. 2; 85, Obs.; 92, Obs. 1.
metrum, 497; *metre*, 509.
militiae, 296 *b*.
mille, millia, 72.
Million, how expressed in Latin, 73.
minari alicui mortem, *alicui baculo*, 242, Obs. 1.
minor natus, 306, Obs.
minus with and without *qvam*, 305.
miseret, misereor, miseror, 166.

mitto *ad aliqvem ut* —, *mitto ad aliqvem opus esse*, 372 *a*; 395, Obs. 2.
Mobilia substantiva, 181.
moderari with the Accus. and the Dat., 244 *b*, Obs. 1.
Modi, 96, 329.
Modi, compounds of (*ejusmodi*, &c.), 287, Obs. 1.
modo (*dummodo*), *modo ut*, *modo ne*, 351 *b*, Obs. 2. *Modo non*, 462 *a*.
Money, Computation of, Suppl. II.
Monoptota, *diptota*, &c., 55.
Months, Names of, 28 *a*; in *er*, 59, Obs. 2 (compare Suppl. I.).
Moods, see *Modi*.
moris est, 282, Obs. 2.
Mountains, Names of, as *plur. tantum*, 51 *g*.
moveri Cyclopa, 237 *a*, Obs.
Multiplication expressed by Distributives, 76 *b*.
multus (*multa tabella*), 65, 2, Obs. *Multi et graves* for *multi graves*, 300, Obs. 5.
multum utor, 305 *c*, Obs. 2. *Multo* with the superlative, 310, Obs. 2.
mutare, *commutare permutare aliqvid aliqvo* (*cum aliquo*), 259, Obs. 2.

"Namely" not expressed, 435, Obs. 4.
Names of Ships and Dramatic Compositions used as Feminines, 31, Obs. Proper Name, one that is common to two or more in the Plural, those which are not common being in the Singular, 214 *d*, Obs. 2. Proper Names not to be combined with all adjectives, 300 *c*, Obs. 4. Plural of Proper Names, 50, Obs. 4.
National Names, 190, 191. Used as Adjectives, 191. For the Names of Countries, 192, Obs. 2.
natu, 55, 4; (*grandis*) *major*, 306, Obs.
natus (*annos*) 284 *c*. Compared, 306, Obs.
ne as a negative in compound words, 204, Obs. 3.
ne, a Negative Particle, 456 (*Ne qvis*, that no one, ib.; *ut ne*, ib.; *ne tamen*, Obs. 4). In Wishes, 351 *b*, Obs. 1; in Prohibitions, 386. *Ne* and *ut ne* in Object-clauses (354), 372 *b*, 375 *a* (omitted, *cave putes*, Obs. 1), 376 (with *verba timendi*). *Ne non*, ib. *Ut* understood from it, 462 *b*. *Ne — qvidem*, 457; after a Negation, 460, Obs. 2.
-ne, Enclitic Interrogative Particle abbreviated (*viden'*), 6, Obs. 2. How used, 451 *a*; in Disjunctive Interrogations, 452.
necesse est with the Subjunctive (with or without *ut*) or the Infin., 373, Obs. 1.
necne, 452.
nedum, 355, 461, Obs. 3.
negare, *dicere* to be understood from it in the second clause, 462 *b* (compare 403 *a*, Obs. 2).
Negation, Particles of, 455 seq. Negation continued by *aut* or *ve*, 458 *c*, Obs. 2. Two Negations constitute an Affirmation, 460; in what cases this does not hold good, Obs. 2. Position of the Negative, 468.
Negative answers, 454.
nemo, without a Gen. in use (abl.), 91. *Nemo scriptor*, *Gallus*, *doctus*, ib., Obs.; 301 *a*, Obs. *Nemo non*, 460. An affirmative subject understood from *nemo*, 462 *b*.
nempe, 435 *a*, Obs. 4.
neqve (*nec*), 458 (*neqve qvisqvam*, &c.), put instead of *et* and *non*, not belonging to the copula, ib. *a*, Obs. 2; with *enim tamen*, *vero*, ib. *b*; where "and" is made use of in English, ib. *c*, Obs. 2; instead of *ne — qvidem*, 457, Obs.; *neu*, 459, Obs. *Neqve — neqve* broken off, 480, Obs. *Neqve — et*, 458 *c*. *Neqve — aut*, ib., Obs. 2. Number of the Predicate with Subjects which are connected by *neqve — neqve*, 213 *b*, Obs. 1. *Nec non*, 460, Obs. 1. (*Neqve haud*, ib., Obs. 2, note.)
nescio an, 453. *Nescio neque — neqve*, 460, Obs. 2. *Nescio qvis*, *nescio qvomodo*, &c., 356, Obs. 3.
neve neu, 459.
Neuter Plural, not formed from all adjectives, 60 *c*. Neuter of the Predicate with a different Gender of the Subject, 211 *b*, Obs. 1; with several Subjects of different Gender, 214 *b*; of the same Gender, ib. *c*.
ni, 442 *c*.
nihil for *non*, 455, Obs. 4. *Nihil aliud qvam*, 479, Obs. 5; *si nihil aliud*, ib. *Nihil ad me*, ib. *d*, Obs. 1. *Nihil non*, 460. *Nihil admodum*, 462 *a*. *Nihili*, *nihilo*, how used, 494 *b*, Obs. 3.
nisi and *si non*, 442 *c*. *Nisi forte*, *nisi vero*, ib., Obs. 1; *nisi* after negatives (*nemo nisi*), Obs. 2; introducing an exception, Obs. 3; *nisi qvod*, ib. *Nihil* (*qvid*) *aliud nisi*, 444 *b*, Obs. 1.
noli, *nolito* in prohibitions, 386, Obs. 2.
nomen *mihi est Mercurio*, *Mercurius*, *Mercurii*, 246, Obs. 2. *Obsidum nomine*, 258, Obs. 5.
Noun forms of the Verb, 99.
Nominative instead of the Vocative, 299, Obs. 1; in Apposition to the Vocative, *b*, Obs. 2. Nom. with the Infin., 400 (401, Obs. 3); a Nom. without a Verb, 479 *d*, Obs. 2.
non instead of *ne*, 456, Obs. 2. *Non possum non*, 455, Obs. 3. *Non modo*, *non tantum*, *non solum*, 461 *a*; *non modo*, *non solum — sed ne — qvidem* (*sed vix*), *non modo non* —

sed ne — qvidem, ib. *b*; *non modo — sed ne — qvidem* for *non modo non*, ib. (*non modo, sed omnino non*, Obs. 1); *non modo = non dico*, ib., Obs. 2: *non modo*, "much less," ib., Obs. 3. *Non ita, non item, nondum necdum*, 462 *a*. *Non qvo* and *non qvin*, 357 *b*, Obs. *Non, si — idcirco*, 442 *a*, Obs. 3.
nonne, 451 *c*.
nonnemo, 493 *c*, Obs.
nonae, Suppl. I.
nos, noster, for *ego, meus*, 483.
nostrum, vestrum, as Partitive Genitives, 297 *c*; as Possessive Genitives with *omnium*, ib. *a*, Obs.; as Objective, ib. *c*, Obs.
nudiustertius, nudiusqvartus, 202, Obs.
nullus in the Gen. and Abl. for *nemo*, 91. *Nullius, nullo* (rarely) for *nullius rei, nulla re*. 494 *b*, Obs. 3. *Nullus* for *non*, 455, Obs. 5; *nulla rheda*, "without a carriage," 258.
num, numne, numqvid, 451 *b*.
Number of the Predicate with several Subjects, 213; Peculiarities of Numbers of Substantives, 50. See *Singular, Plural*.
Numeral Adverbs, 199; in *um* and *o*, ib., Obs. 2. With *sestertium*, Suppl. II.
Numeral Signs, 70, and Obs. 2.
Numerals, 24, 2, Obs. Their Classification, 69.
nuptum dare, 411, Obs. 1.

O and **u** related, 5 *c*; *o* instead of *ŭ* after *v*, 5 *a*, Obs. 3.
O Interjection with the Accus. or Voc., 236, Obs. 1. *O, si —*, 351 *b*, Obs. 1.
obeqvitare with the Accus. or Dat., 224 *a*, Obs. 1.
Object, 210 *a*, 222, and Obs. 1.
Object Clauses, with *ut* and other Particles, 371 seq.
Oceanus, mare Oceanum, 191, Obs. 1.
oe, for the Greek Nom. termination *οι*, 38, 1.
oleo with the Accus., 223, Obs. 2.
ollus, 82, Obs. 1.
on, a Greek termination of the Genitive, 38, 1, 45, 7.
on, Nominative termination of Greek Proper Names, and *o*, 45, 1.
operatus, 146, Obs. 1.
oportet with the Subj. (with or without *ut*) or the Infin., 373, Obs. 1; *oportet hoc fieri*, 393 *a*, Obs. 2. *Oportebat, oportuit, oportuerat*, of a thing which would have been proper in a certain case, or which should have been done, 348 *c*, and Obs. *Oportuit factum*, 407, Obs. 1.
opto, *ut fiam* and *fieri*, 389, Obs. 1.
opus est, 266 (*Hirtium convenire, Hirtium conveniri, Hirtio convento*, Obs.).
ORATIO OBLIQVA, 369, 403; **continuous**, 403 *b*.
Ordinal Numbers, 69, 74; with *qvisqve*, 74, Obs. 2. Adjectives formed from them, 187, 9.
oriundus, 151 (*orior*).
Orthography, Roman, unsettled, 12.
ortus *aliqvo* and *ab aliqvo*, 269, Obs.
orum, termination of the Genitive, for *um*, 44, 2.
os and **or** in the Nom. of some words, 41 (p. 38).
ŏs, a Greek termination of the Genitive, 45, 3.
ōs, Greek Nom. of the Second Declension, 38, Obs. 2.
ovans, 164, Obs.

pace alicujus, 258, Obs. 5.
paene, prope, with the Perf. Indic., 348 *e*, Obs. 1.
Paeon, 499.
par, Ablat., 42 *b*, Obs. *Par alicui* and *alicujus*, 247 *b*, Obs. 1.
paratus with the Infin., 389, Obs. 3.
Parisyllaba in *es* and *is*, 40 *c*, Obs. 1.
pars — pars with the Plur. of the Predicate, 215 *a*. *Partem* (*magnam partem*), 237 *c*, Obs. 3. *Partibus* without *in*, 273 *b*, Obs. 1.
PARTICIPLES, 99. Compared, 62; in *bundus*, 115 *g*. Formed from some Impersonal Verbs, 167, Obs. How used, 423, 424 (to denote a circumstance). Participle governing a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun, 425, Obs. 3; with *nisi, qvanqvam*, &c., instead of a whole Proposition, ib., Obs. 4 (428, Obs. 2). A Participle used as a Substantive, 424 *a*; as an Adjective, 424 *b*. Participles in Ablatives Absolute, 428. Ablatives of a Participle alone, 429. Participles used together with other ways of denoting circumstances, 430. Participles with a Predicate Noun (*judicatus hostis*), 227 *c*, Obs. 4. Relation of the Participle to the Leading Verb in respect of Time, 431 *a*.
Participle Fut. irregularly formed in some Verbs, 106, Obs. 2. Not used as an Adjective, 424 *b*, Obs. Limited employment of it by the older writers, 425, Obs. 5, 424; rare in Ablative Absolute, 428, Obs. 3. With *sum*, 341; *fui, eram*, 342, 348 *a*; *ero*, 343; *fuerim*, 381; *fuisse*, 409.
Participle Perf. of some Intrans. Verbs, 110, Obs. 3; of Deponents with a Passive signification, 153. With an Accus. (in the poets), 237 *b*. With *fui* as a Perfect to express a Condition, 344. In the Neuter as a Substantive (*bonam factum, bene factum*), 424 *c*. With a Substantive (*rex interfectus*) denotes

substantively the Action performed (*caedes regis*), 426. A Neuter Part. put alone in this signification, 426, Obs. 1. With *habeo*, 427. Part. Perf. of Deponents with the signification of a Present, 431 *b*. That of other Verbs rarely so used, ib., Obs. Part. Perf. in Ablatives Absolute of a circumstance that accompanies or follows the action, ib., Obs. 2.

Participle present as an Adjective with the Genitive, 289 *a*.

Particles, 24, 6, Obs.

partim with the Gen., 284, Obs. 4.

pascens, Particle of *pasco* and of *pascor*, 111, Obs.

PASSIVE, not formed from all Verbs which may have an Accus., 223 *c*, Obs. 1; 224 *c*. Obs. Rare from Verbs which govern the Dative, 244, Obs. 4. In some Verbs with a new Active signification, 237 *a*. Used with a Reflective signification, 222, Obs. 3. Passive of some Verbs followed by an Infin. Passive (*qvitus sum*, *neqvitur*), 159, Obs. 2; see *coeptus sum*.

paterfamilias, 34, Obs. 2.

Patronymics, 183.

pensi nihil habere, 285 *b*, Obs. 2.

Pentameter, 504 *b*.

per prefixed to Adjectives with an Intensive signification, 68 *c*, Obs. (Tmesis, 203, Obs.)

per, Preposition to express the duration of Time, 235. *Per vim*, *simulationem*, *per causam remigum exercendorum*, 258, Obs. 2. *Per me licet*, *potes*, 256, Obs. 1.

perdo, in the Passive usually *pereo* (except *perditus*), 133, Do. Obs.

PERFECT, its Formation, 103. Syncope and Contraction, 113 *a*. Irregular with respect to the Present, 117, seq. Historical, 335 *a*; definite, ib. *b*. Of actions which are repeated, with *qvum*, &c., ib. *b*, Obs. 1. Used in the poets of a thing which usually happens, ib., Obs 3. With *postqvam*, &c., 338 *b*; with *anteqvam*, &c., ib., Obs. 5. Perfect of a Condition in the Passive with *fui*, 344. Perf. Subj. sometimes used instead of the Imperf. with *ut*, *qvin*, 382, Obs. 3. In Subordinate Propositions with an Accus. with the Infin., 382. Perf. Subj. in the Passive in Prohibitions with *ne*, 386. Perf. Inf. of a Completed Action (*poteras dixisse*) with *satis est*, *poenitebit*, &c., 407 (with *oportuit*, &c., Obs. 1); as a Pluperf. after a Preterite, 408 *b*; instead of the Present in the poets, 407, Obs. 2; formed with *fuisse* in the Passive, 408 *a*. Present and Perfect Infin. with *memini*, 408 *b*, Obs. 2.

periculo alicujus, at any one's peril, 258, Obs. 5.

perinde and proinde qvasi; *perinde ac* (*si*), 444 *a*, Obs. and *b*.

Period, Structure of Periods, 475—477.

Periphrastic Conjugation, see *Conjugatio*.

* Periphrastic Conjugation, 116. Use of it in the Indic. 341 seq.; in the Subjunct., 381; in the Infin. 409.

perosus, 161, Obs.

Perseus, declension of, 38, 3.

PERSON of the Predicate where there are several Subjects, 212. Person, the Second, of an assumed Subject, 370. The Third Person Singular without a defined Subject in Subordinate Propositions with the Infinitive, 388 *b*, Obs. 2; the Third Person Plural without a defined Subject, 211 *a*, Obs. 2.

Personal Forms, 98.

Phraseological peculiarities of the Latin language, 481 *b*.

Place, Adverbs of, 201, 1.

plenus with the Gen. and Abl., 268 *a*, Obs. 1, 290 *e*.

Pleonasmus, 207, Obs. 481 *b*.

Pluperfect, see *Plusqvamperfectum*.

PLURAL formed from words which commonly want it, 50, and Obs. 1. Plural formed in Latin from the names of General Ideas, ib., Obs. 3. Plural of Adjectives used Substantively, 301; of Pronouns, 312.

Pluralia tantum, of two kinds, 51; with Distributives, 76 *c*.

plus with and without *qvam*, 305. For *magis* ib. *c*, Obs. 2 (*animus plus quam fraternus*). *Uno plus* and *plures*, ib., Obs. 3.

Plusqvamperfectum, 333; with *qvum*, &c., of Repeated Actions, where the Imperf. is used in English, ib. *a*, Obs. Pluperf. Subj. 379; not used in Conditional Propositions which on another account would have had the Subjunctive, 381. Changed with the Imperf. in Condit. Prop., 347 *b*, Obs. 2. Represented in the Infin. by the Part. Fut. with *fuisse*, 409.

poenitet hoc, 218 *a*, Obs. 2. *Poenitendo*, *ad poenitendum*, ib., Obs. 3.

pondo, 54, Obs. 3.

Position, 15, 22; weak, 22.

Position of the Verb *sum*, 465 *a*, Obs. 3; separated from the Participle, Obs. 4. Position of *est*, *sunt*, with **enim**, &c., 471, Obs. 1. *Est* and *sunt* omitted, 479 *a*. *Esse* omitted, 396, Obs. 2 (*volo consultum*), and 406 (401).

posse as a Future, 410, Obs. 1.

postqvam, posteaqvam, with the Perf.

338 *b*; with the Plup., Obs. 1; with the Imperf., Obs. 2. *Post diem decimum qvam*, 276, Obs. 6; *post decem dies qvam*, 270, Obs. 4.
postridie, 230 *b*, Obs. 1. Suppl. I.
potiri rerum, 265, Obs. 1.
potius omitted and redundant, 308, Obs. 2. *Potius* (*citius*) *qvam* (*quam ut*) with the Subjunctive, 350, Obs. 4.
prae lacrimis, 256, Obs. 1.
prae with an Intensive signification prefixed to Adjectives, 68 *c*, Obs.
praestare *alicui* and *aliquem*, 224 *d*.
praeter as an Adverb, 172, III., Obs. 2.
praeverto, praevertor, 182 (*verto*).
PREDICATE, 208 *a*. Simple, resolved, Predicate Noun, 209 *a*. The Predicate Noun represented by a Pronoun, 209 *a*, Obs. 1. Relation of the Predicate where there are several Subjects, as to Person, 212; Number, 213; Gender, 214. Referred to the more remote Subject, ib. *d*, Obs. 3. Defined by the natural character of the Subject, 215. The Verb regulated according to the Predicate Noun, 216. With a Subject which has an Apposition differing from it in Gender or Number, 217. Referred to a Noun appended by *qvam* or *nisi*, 217, Obs. 2.
Prefixes, 204.
PREPOSITIONS, 24, 5. Enumerated, 172. Used as Adverbs, ib., Obs. 2. Modified in Composition, 173. Prepositions with their case immediately attached to a Substantive, 298 (sometimes by means of a Participle, ib., Obs. 1). Position of the Prepositions, 469 with Obss. 1 and 2; the Prep. repeated, 470 Position less restricted in the poets, 474 *c*. The Prep. omitted with the Relative, 328 *b*, Obs. 1. Prepositions Inseparable, 204.
PRESENT of Verbs sometimes has the varied stem, 118. Present of a thing which still continues, 334, Obs. Historical, 383 (in the poets, Obs. 1); treated as a Present and as a Perfect, 382, Obs. 1. With *dum*, "while," 336, Obs. 2. For the Future, 339, Obss. 1 and 2. Present Subj. supplying the place of the Future, 378 *a*; in Conditional Propositions, 347 *b* (Obss. 1 and 3). In Hypothetical Propositions of Comparison, 349, Obs.; of the Subjunctive Potential, 350.
pridie, postridie, 230 *b*, Obs. 1 (p. 208).
Primitives, 174.
primum, primo, 199, Obs. 2.
princeps, 60 *c*, Obs. 4.
priusqvam, see **Anteqvam**.
pro shortened in some compounds, 173, Obs. 2.
pro, Interjection (*pro deum fidem*), 236, Obs. 1.
probare alicui sententiam, 242, Obs. 1.
procul a mari and **procul mari**, 172, Obs. 3.
prohibere *Campaniam populationibus, civa a periculo*, 262. *Prohibeo* with *ne, qvominus*, Infin., Accus. with the Infin., 375 *a* (Obs. 2); *b*, 390, 396; *opera prohibenter fieri*, 396, Obs. 3.
promitto *me facturum*, 395, Obs. 3.
PRONOUN, 24, 2, with the Obs. Classification of the Pronouns, 78. Personal Pronouns inserted and omitted, 482. Gen. Plur 297 *a*, Obs. The Objective Gen. supplied by *mei, tui*, &c., ib. *b*. Partitive Gen., ib. *c*.
PRONOUN (Demonstrative) referring to several Substantives, 312 *a*; in the Neuter Plur., ib. *b*. Agrees with the Substantive in the Predicate, 313; connected with a Substantive instead of being put in the Genitive, 314. Referred less accurately to the preceding Noun, 317. Put after the Relative, 321. Omitted before the Relative, ib., with the Obs. Redundant after a Noun separated by an Intervening Proposition, 489 *a*; with *qvidam*, ib. *b*; see also *hic, is, ille, iste*.
PRONOUN (Relative) referred to several Substantives, 315 *a*; the Substantive repeated with it, ib. *a*, Obs. 2. Referred to the following Substantive, 316. Referred less accurately to the Preceding Noun (in several ways), 317 (to the Person indicated by a Possessive Pronoun, ib. *a*). Draws the Substantive to it, 319, 320. Draws a Superlative to it from the Leading Proposition, 320; precedes the Demonstrative, 321. Omitted in the second member of the sentence or replaced by a Demonstrative, 323. Put by attraction in the case of the Demonstrative, ib., Obs. 2. Relative after *idem*, 324 *b*. The Relative drawn into a Subordinate Proposition belonging to the Relative Proposition, 445; forming a Periphrasis for *pro*, 446; used Copulatively in the place of a Demonstrative, 448; not put with Adversative or Illative Particles, ib., Obs. Relative Correlatives, 324 *a*. Position of Relative Words, 465 *b*; of the Relative Prop. before the Demonstrative, 476 *a*, Obs. 2. Subjunctive in Relative Propositions, see *Subjunctive*.
PRONOUN (Indefinite Relative), 87, sometimes employed as an Indefinite Universal, 87, Obs. 1, 98; Obs. 1; 201, 2, Obs. 2. With the Indicative, 332.
Pronoun (Indefinite), 89, 493 (see *qvis, aliqvis*, &c.). Omitted before the Relative, 322.
Pronoun (Interrogative), 88. Belonging to a

Participle, 325, Obs. 3. Two combined, 492 *a*.

Pronoun (Possessive), 92. Combined with a Genitive, 297 *a*. Used for the Objective Genitive (*mei*, &c.), ib. *b*, Obs. 1. Omitted, 491. Denotes what is Suitable and Advantageous, ib., Obs. 1.

Pronoun (Reflective), 85. *Sui* as an Objective Genitive, 297 *b* (*sui conservandi causa* for the Plural, 417). *Se* omitted as the Subject of an Infinitive Proposition, 401. *Se* and *suus* not referred to the Subject, 490 *b*; in the Subordinate Prop. referred to the Subject of the Leading Prop., ib. *c* (Obs. 1). Confounded with *is*, ib., Obs. 3. *Se*, *suus*, in the signification one (one's), ib., Obs. 5.

Pronominal Adverbs, 201.

Pronunciation according to Quantity and Accent, 14, 498, note.

prope, prope ab, 172, Obs. 4. *Propius*, *proxime*, with the Accus. (rarely with the Dat.), ib. *Propius ab*, 230, Obs. 2 (p. 207).

propior, proximus, with the Dat. and (less frequently) the Accus., 230, Obs. 2 (p. 203), 247 *b*; *proximus ab*, ib.

PROPOSITIONS, their kinds, 325. Compound Propositions, ib. Co-ordinate Propositions, 328. Two Co-ordinate Propositions combined so as to form one Assertion, 438. Sequence of the Propositions, 475, 476. Leading and Subordinate Proposition intimately combined, 476 *d*, in the poets, 474 *h*.

proprius with the Gen., more rarely with the Dat., 290 *f*.

PROSODY, 14.

Protasis, 326, Obs. 2.

pro tua praesentia, 446.

providus, providentior, 65, Obs.

prudens with **in**, and with the Gen., 289 *b*, Obs. 3.

-pte, 92, Obs. 1.

pudet, hoc pudet, 218 *a*, Obs. 2. *Pudendi*, *pudendo*, ib., Obs. 3. *Pudet me alicujus*, 292.

pugno, Compounds of it which govern the Accus., 225 Obs.

Qv, 8.

qva, qvae in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Plur. Neuter, 90.

qva—qva, 435, Obs. 3.

qvaero ex, 223 *b*.

qvaeso, qvaesumus, 137 (*qvaero*).

qualiscunqve, quantuscunqve, 93, and Obs. 1.

quam with the Comparative, 303 *a*; inserted or omitted with *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, 305. *Qvam* and *ac*, 444 *b*). *Qvam pro*, 308, Obs. 1. (*Major*) *qvam*, *ut qvam qvi*, ib., Obs. 1, 364, 440 *a*. *Qvam maximus*, *qvam possum maximus*, 310, Obs. 3. *Qvam* for *postqvam*, 276, Obs. 6, note. *Qvam* with the second member of a Comparison inserted before the Comparative, 303 *a*, Obs. 2. *Qvam* separated from its Adjective, 468 Obs.

qvamobrem, qvare (*est*, *nihil est*, *qv.*), 372 *b*, Obs. 6.

qvamquam, 361, Obs. 2, with the Subjunctive for *qvamvis*, ib., Obs. 3. Introducing an Observation, 443.

qvamvis (*qvantumvis*), 361 (Obs. 1); with the Indic. for *qvamqvam*, Obs. 3; with Adjectives, 443, Obs.

Quantity, 14. Of the final vowel of Verb Stems in Inflection and Derivation, 102, Obs. 1, 176 *d*.

qvantus potest maximus, 310, Obs. 3.

qvaqva, Ablat. of a later period, 87.

qvare (*est*, *qvare*), 372 *b*, Obs. 6; "that by those means," "so that, on that account," 440, Obs. 5.

qvasi, 444 *a*, Obss. 1 and 2; what Tense it takes, 349, Obs.

-qve, its Signification, 433; after Negations for *sed*, ib., Obs. 2; *qve—et*, *qve—qve*, 435 *a*, Obs. 1. *Qve* (*ve*, *ne*) with Prepositions, 469, Obs. 2; transposed in the poets, 474 *f* (Obs.). Lengthened in the Arsis, 502 *a*; elided at the end of an Hexameter, 503, Obs. 1.

qveo occurs mostly in Negative Propositions, 159, Obs. 1. *Qvitus sum*, ib, Obs. 2.

QUESTIONS, Direct and Dependent, 331; Dependent in the Subjunctive, 356 (exception, ib., Obs. 3); in the Subj. when an inquiry is made what is to be done, 353; Elliptical Question with *ut*, ib., Obs. Questions without a Particle, 450. Interrogative Particles, 451; with Disjunctive Questions, 452. Questions connected by *aut* not Disjunctive, 453, Obs. 2. Questions in the *oratio obliqva*, 405, Interrogative Exclamation of Surprise, expressed Affirmatively, 492 *b*.

qvi, Ablative, 86, Obs. 2; Interrogative Adverb, 88, Obs. 2.

qvi qvidem, qvi modo, 364, Obs. 2.

qvi non and **qvin**, 440, Obs. 3; 365, Obs. 3.

qvia, what Mood it takes, 357.

qvicunqve (*qvaliscunqve*, *qvilibet*), divided by Tmesis, 87, Obs. 2. Without a relative signification, ib., Obs. 1. *Qvicunqve* and the Particles derived from it, with the Perf. and Pluperf. Indic., 335 *b*, Obs. 1; 338 *a*, Obs.

With the Indic. or the Subj. of the Pluperf., 359.
qvid hominis es? 285 *b*.
qvid, Elliptical expressions with it, 479 *d*, Obs. 1.
qvid (*Roscium*) *censes monne* —? 395, Obs. 7.
qvidam, 493 *c*.
qvidem, its position, 471, with a Pronoun prefixed, 489 *b*.
qvin, its Signification, 375, Obs. 4. After *verba praetermittendi, dubitandi*, &c., where their negative force is destroyed, ib. *c* (Obs. 1); *qvis ignorat, qvis*, Obs. 3. *Qvin imus? qvin taces?* 351 *b*, Obs. 3. *Qvin*, "but that," 440 *a*, Obs 3. For *qvi non*, 365, Obs. 3. *Non qvin* (= *non qvia non*), 357 *b*, Obs.
qvippe qvi, 336, Obs. 2.
qvis and **qvi,** Interrog. Pronoun, 88, 1; Indefinite, 89, 90, 1. *Qvis,* Indef. Pronoun, how used, 493 *a;* Adverbs derived from it, 201, 2, Obs. 1.
quispiam, 493 *b*.
qvisqvam and **ullus,** 90, 3, 494 (in Negative and other propositions). Used indifferently with *aliqvis*, 494 *b*, Obs. 2.
qvisqve, its Signification (distributive) and Position, 495. With the Superlative, ib. With *qvotus* and Ordinal numbers, 74, Obs. 2. *Optimus qvisqve* with the Verb in the Plur., 215 *a*. *Qvisqve* in apposition to a Subject in the Plural, 217, Obs. 1. Not used for *omnes*, *nemo non*, 495, Obs. 1.
qvisqvis, usual forms, 87. *Qvicqvid*, antiquated for *qvidqve*, 495, Obs. 1.
quo=ad quem, ad quos, 317, Obs. 2. *Qvo mihi* with the Accus. or with an Infin., 289. *Qvo=ut eo*, 440, Obs. 5. *Non qvo*, 357 *b*, Obs. *Qvominus*, 375, *c*, Obs. 1.
quoad ejus, 284, Obs. 9.
qvod a Causal Particle with the Indic. or Subj., 357; *qvod diceret*, ib. *a*, Obs. 2; after the *verba affectuum*, 379. Shows a Fact as the object of a Judgment, 393 *b* (Obs. 1). *Qvod* "as to the fact, that," ib., Obs. 2. Before other Conjunctions (*qvod si*, &c.), 449. (Pronoun *qvod* pointing to an Accus. with the Infin. following, ib.) *Qvod sciam*, 364, Obs. 2. *Nihil est, qvod*, there is no reason why —, 372 *b*, Obs 6.
qvominus, see *Qvo*.
qvoqve, its Position, 471. *Non modo — sed qvoqve* for *sed etiam*, 461, Obs.
qvoqvo modo, 87, Obs. 1.
qvoties with the Perf. Indic., 335 *b*, Obs. 1; with the Pluperf. in the Indic. or Subj., 359.
qvotus qvisqve, 74, Obs. 2.
qvum with the Perf. and Pluperf. Indic., 335 *b*, Obs. 1; 338 *a*, Obs. *Qvum causale* with the Subj., 358. *Qvum temporale* with the Indic. and Subj. of the Imperf. and Pluperf., ib.; *qvum* (*qvum interim*) introducing the notice of an Event, ib., Obs. 1; *qvum*, since, ib; *qvum*, while, with the Indic., Obs. 2; *qvum*, although, with the Subj., Obs. 3. *Qvum* with the Indic. or the Subj. to designate Repeated Actions, 359. *Qvum — tum*, 358, Obs. 3 (distinct from *tum — tum*, 435 *a*, Obs. 3). *Auditum est ex eo, qvum diceret*, 358, Obs. 4. *Qvum* with the Historical Infin., 392.

R put for *s*, 8; *r* and *l* interchanged, see *l*.
Radix, see *Root*.
ratio nulla est with the Infin., 417, Obs. 2.
re and **ris,** Personal termination, 114 *b*.
re a Particle used in Composition, 204; its quantity, ib.
reapse, 82, 4.
reddo not used in the Passive for *fio*, 227 *a*, note.
Reduplication, 103, and Obs. (In *rettuli*, &c., 204, Obs. 1.)
rēfert, 166 *c*, 295.
refertus, 268 *a*, Obs. 1.
Reflective Verbs expressed by the Passive, 222, Obs. 3.
Relative Indefinite Pronouns and Particles employed in designating repeated actions with the Perf. Indic., 335 *b*, Obs. 1; with the Pluperf., 338 *a*, Obs.; with the Subj., 359.
Relative Propositions to denote an Object and Motive, 327; in the Subj., 353, seq. In what cases they are not to be formed, 447. See besides *Pronoun* (relative).
reliqvi nihil facere, 285 *b*, Obs. 2.
reliqvum est, relinqvitur, restat ut, 373.
repetundarum, repetundis, 55, 5.
res used Periphrastically, 301 *b*, Obs. 1; instead of an Impersonal expression, 218 *c*, Obs.
Rhenum flumen for *Rhenus*, 191, Obs. 1.
Rivers (names of), their Gender, 28 *a*.
Root, 26, Obs. 1, 174; enlarged in the Present of Verbs, 118.
ρος (with the consonant preceding), a Greek termination, corresponding to the Latin in *er*, 38, Obs.
rudis rei and **in re,** 289 *b*, Obs. 3.
rus, to the country, 233; *rure, ruri*, in the country, 273 *b; rure*, from the country, 275.

S, at the end of words had anciently a weaker pronunciation, 22, Obs. 4. Between two vowels has been changed to *r*, 8 (40, 2, Obs., 41, p. 35, note 1).
saltare Turnum, 223 *c*.
salve, salvere, 164.
sapere with the Accus., 223 *c*, Obs. 2.
satis with the Genitive, 285 *c*.
sco a Verbal termination, 140—142.
se, sibi, see *Reflective Pronoun*.
se, a Particle in compound words, 204.
secundo, 199, Obs. 2.
secundo flumine, 300, Obs. 1.
secus virile, muliebre, 55, 5.
sed, 437. On resuming a discourse, 480 (*sed tamen*).
semis, Suppl. II. B, 2 Obs.; *semi*, 204, Obs. 4.
senex as an Adjective (in the poets), 60 *c*, Obs. 4.
sententiā meā, 256, Obs. 3.
seqvior, sēcius, 66 *b*, Obs.
seqvitur, ut (less frequently the Accus. with the Infin.), 373, Obs. 2.
sesqui, 204, Obs. 4.
sestertius, sestertia, sestertium decies, Suppl. II. A.
sexcenti, denoting a great number, p. 70, note.
si with the Subj., 347. Omitted, 442 *a*, Obs. 2. *Si forte, si modo, si jam, si maxime, si qvidem*, *si* more accurately defined by another *si*, *ita*, *si*, 442 *a*; *si non*, distinct from *nisi*, 442 *c*; *si* (*sin*) *minus*, ib. *Si nihil aliud*, 479, Obs. 5. *Sin* (*sin autem*), 442 *b*. *Si* as an Interrogative Particle (whether), 451 *d*.
sic sum, 209 *b*, Obs. 2.
Signification of Substantives, different in the Plur. and in the Sing., 52.
similis with the Dat. and the Gen., 247 *b*, Obs. 2; 219, Obs. 2.
simul his for *cum his*, 172, Obs. 3. *Simul—simul*, 435, Obs. 3.
sine ullo auxilio (not *sine omni*), 494 *a* (*non sine aliqvo*, Obs. 1). Never used with the Gerund, 416, Obs. 3.
Singular of certain Substantives used collectively (*eqves, pedes*), 50, Obs. 5.
singuli, 76 *a*; *in singulos terni* or *tres*, ib., Obs.
sinisterior, 67 *d*, Obs. 2.
sino (*ut*) **vivat, sino eum vivere, hoc fieri**, 372 *b*, Obs. 2; 390 (Obs. 1); 396. *Accusare non sum situs*, 390.
sirim, 136, Obs. (*sino*).
sive, seu, 436; = *vel si*, 442 *b*; *sive—sive*, ib.; with the Indic., 332, Obs.
"So called," 431 *b*, Obs. 1.
sociare aliqvid alicui, 243, Obs. 4.
sonare hominem, 223, Obs. 2.
spero facere for *me facturum* is rare, 395, Obs. 3; *spero me posse*, 410, Obs. 1.
Spondee, 499.
sponte, 55, 4.
stare with the Ablative, 267. *Stat per aliqvem, qvominus*, 375 *b*.
Stem, 26, 40. Stem of Verbs varied in the Present, 118.
Strophe, 509.
svadere, its Construction, 242, Obs. 1.
sub with the Accus. and the Abl., 230. Verbs compounded with it, 243, 245 (*subjicio, subjungo sub*, 243, Obs. 1). In some Compounds *sus*, 178; with a Diminutive signification, 206 *a*.
subire montem (in the poets *portae, animo*), 224 *a*, Obs. 1.
SUBJECT, 208 *a*; Omitted, ib. *b*, Obs. 2, 3; in a Subordinate Proposition subjoined to an Infinitive, 388 *b*, Obs. 2; the Reflective Pronoun as a Subject omitted in an Infinitive Proposition, 401; also one that is not Reflective, ib., Obs. 2. Several Subjects varying in their grammatical character, 212, seq.
SUBJUNCTIVE, its Signification, 346. In Hypothetical Propositions, 347. In Hypothetical Propositions of Comparison, 349. *Potentialis*, 350; in a Modest Affirmation, 350 *b* (in Subordinate Propositions, with Conjunctions which otherwise take the Indicative, ib. Obs. 2). As an Optative in Wishes, 351. As an Imperative and in Prohibitions, 385, 386. In the Imperf. and Pluperf. of a thing which ought to have been done, 351 *b*, Obs. 4. In Concessions and Assumptions, 352. In Questions as to what is or may be done, 353. In Object. Clauses after *ut*, &c., 354. In Propositions which express a Design or Result, 355. In Dependent Interrogative Propositions, 356. Subjunctive and Indicative with *qvod, qvia*, 357. With *qvum causale*, and in the Imperf. and Pluperf. with *qvum temporale*, 358. Subjunctive and Indicative of Repeated Actions relating to Past Time, 359. With *antequam, priusqvam, dum, donec, qvoad*, 360 (*citius, potius, qvam*, Obs. 4). With *qvamvis, licet*, 361. In Relative Propositions, 362 *b*, seq.; to express a Design or Destination (*dignus, idoneus*), 363; with *cur, qvamobrem*, 363, Obs. 3. With the signification of *talis ut*, 364 (persons who, Obs. 1). With the force of

a Limitation (*qvi quidem*, *qvod sciam*, *qvod fieri possit*) 364, Obs. 2. After a Universal Affirmation or Negation (Subjunctive and Indicative Proposition belonging to a Negative Idea, 365, Obs. 2); in a Causal signification, 366 (*qvippe qvi*, *ut qvi*, Obs. 2; to express a Contrast, Obs. 3); to designate a Hypothetical Subject, 367; to point out the Thought of Another, 368. Subjunctive in other Subordinate Propositions to designate the idea of Another Party, 369. Subjunctive in the Second Person, of an indefinite, assumed subject, 370. Subjunctive in Questions in a continuous **oratio obliqva**, 405 *a*.

Subordinate Propositions, 325; of different kinds, 326, with Obs. 1; their Position, and insertion in the Leading Proposition, 476.

Substantives, their Derivation, 177, seq. *Substantiva mobilia*, 181. Substantives put as Adjectives, 60, Obs. 2, 3, 4; 301, *c*, Obs. 2.

subter, 230.

svemus, 142 (*svesco*).

svetus with the Infin., 389, Obs. 3.

Suffix, 175.

sui, suus, see Reflective Pronoun.

sum, see **esse**.

sunt, qvi, 365, and Obs. 1.

super with the Accus. and the Abl., 230.

superi (*superus*) 66.

Superlative, wanting, 67, 68 *b*. In a signification which is not absolute, 310. With *unus*, *unus omnium*, ib., Obs. 2; strengthened in other ways, Obs. 3. Differing in Gender from the Partitive Genitive, ib., Obs. 1. Denoting a Part of a thing (*summus mons*), 311. Drawn into the Relative Proposition, 320, Obs.

superstes alicujus, 247 *b*, Obs. 1.

SUPINE, 99. How formed, 105. Supines with ĭ where the Perfect has īvi, 105, Obs. 3. Not in use from all Verbs, 118, Obs. (128 *a*). Usage of the First, 411; of the Second, 412.

suspectus fecisse, 400 *c*, Obs.

Syllables, Division of, 13 (Obs. 2). Measure of, as to Quantity, 14, seq. Freedoms which the poets allow themselves in this respect, 502; the Comic poets, ib., Obs. 2.

syllepsis, 478.

syncaeresis, ***synizesis***, 6, Obs. 1.

synaloephe, 6.

syncope, 11; in the Perfects in *si* (*xi*), 113, Obs. 3.

Synesis in respect of the Gender, 31, Obs. 4 (termination *e*), 46 (termination *us*). *Constructio ad Synesim*, 207, Obs.

Systole, 502 *a*, Obs. 1.

talis, tantus—qvalis, qvantus, 324 *a*.

tam—qvam qvi, 310, Obs. 4. *Tam in bona causa* = *in tam bona causa*, 468, Obs.

tanqvam, 444 *a*, Obs. 1.

tanti est, 294, Obs. 3.

tantum abest, 440 *a*, Obs. 1. **Tantum non**, 462 *a*.

tempero aliqvid and alicui, 244, Obs. 1.

tempus est ire, 417, Obs. 2.

teneri (*furti*), 293, Obs. 2, note.

TENSES of the Indicative, 333, seq. (absolute and relative); in the Epistolary style, 345. Of the Subjunctive, 377, seq. (in Hypothetical and Potential discourse, 347, 349, Obs. 350). Of the Infinitive, 406, seq. Tense of the Subordinate Proposition defined by a remark inserted, 383, Obs. 4.

ter, Pronouns ending in, their signification in the Plural, 84, Obs.

terra mariqve, 273 *b*. *Terrarum* with Adverbs of Place, 284, Obs. 10.

"Than," not expressed with *amplius*, *plus*, and *minus*, 305.

"That," how to be expressed in Latin, 369, Obs.

Thesis, 498.

ti, its pronunciation, 8.

timeo aliqvem and alicui, 244, Obs. 1. **timeo ut, timeo ne**, or *ut non*, 376.

Tmesis, 203, Obs. 87, Obs. 2.

"Too great to," 308, Obs. 1.

tor, Substantives in, used as Adjectives, 60, Obs. 2.

totā urbe, *Asia*, *Tarracina*, 273 *c* (296 *a*, Obs. 2).

Towns, names of, in *us*, 39 *b*; in *o*, 41 (pp. 36, 37); *on*, ib. (pp. 44, 45). In the Accusative answering to the question *whither*, 232 (Obs.) In the Ablative answering to the question *where*, 273 *a*; to the question *whence*, 275, (Obs. 1). Genitive (of those of the First and Second Declension) answering to the question *where*, 296 *a*.

trajicio, its Construction, 231, and note.

trans. Verbs Compounded with it which take a double Accus., 231.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, 94 (Obs.). Transitive signification assumed, 223 *c*; laid aside, 222, Obs. 4.

trix, Substantives in, used as Adjectives, 60 *c*, Obs. 2.

Trochee, 499. Trochaic Verses, 506.

tu. **te** of a Subject which is only assumed, 370, Obs. 2.

tum—tum, 435, Obs. 3; *tum ipsum*, 487 *a*, Obs. 1. *Tum* (*tum vero*, *tum denique*) added

after an Ablative Absolute, 428, Obs. 6; *tum tum vero*) in the Apodosis, 442 *a*, Obs. 1.

U, v, 4, 5 *a*, Obs. 3. *V* pronounced for *u*, 5 *a*, Obs. 4. *U* for *i* (*optumus*), ib., Obs. 5. Its affinity to *l*, 5 *c*. *U* and *o*, ib. Words in *u*, 46, Obs. 1; those used only in the Ablative, 55, 4. *U* as a Substantive Termination, 177, Obs. *V* rejected in the Perfect, 113 *a*; in Derivatives, 176 *c*.

ui Diphthong, 5 *b*.

Ulixei, 38, Obs. 3. *Ulixi*, 42, 2.

ullus, 90, 3, Obs. 494. *Ullius*, *ullo*, and occasionally *ulli* as Substantives, 90, 3, Obs.

ultimum hoc, illud, 199, Obs. 2.

um, Genitive termination for *arum*, 34, Obs. 3; for *orum*, 37, Obs. 4.

uncia and its Compounds, Suppl. II. B. 2.

unde = a qvo, a qvibus, 317, Obs. 2. *Unde mihi* with the Accus., 239.

unus, uni, 71; *uni* with *pluralia tantum*, 76 *c*, Obs.

unus, unus omnium with Superlatives, 310, Obs. 2.

usqve as a Preposition, 172, Obs. 3.

usus est = opus est, 266.

ut, 201, 5; origin and connection of its different significations, 372 *a*, Obs. How employed in Object Clauses, 372, 373, 374 (Obs. 2). After *verba timendi*, 376. Used indifferently with the Infin. or the Accus. with the Infin., 372 *b*, Obss. 2 and 5; 373, Obs. 2; 374, Obs. 2 (*verisimile non est, ut*); 389, Obs. 1. **ut** omitted, 372 *b*, Obss. 2 and 4; 373, Obs. 1. **ut** in questions (*egone ut, tu ut*), 353, Obs. 1. **ut**, "although," 440 *a*, Obs 4. **ut** (*ne*) "which I mention, that," ib. *b*. **ut ne** and **ut non**, 372 *b*, 456, with Obs. 3; *ut ne* (*ne*) signifying "so that," Obs. 4. *Ut non*, "without," 440 *a*, Obs. 3. *U qvi, utpote qvi* with the Subjunctive, 366, Obs. 2. **ut**, "since," 441, Obs. *Ut si*, 444 *b*, Obs. 2. **ut** repeated, 480, Obs. 2. **ut — ita**, "certainly — but," 444 *a*, Obs. 3; *ut qvisqve — ita*, 495. *Ut erat iratus*, 444 *a*, Obs. 4. **ut**, "so for example," ib. *a*, Obs. 5. **ut** put after one or more words, 465 *b*, Obs.

uterqve with the Plur., 215 *a*. *Uterqve frater*, *uterqve eorum*, 284, Obs. 3. *Utriqve hi* for *horum uterqve*, *utraqve cornua* for *utrumqve cornu*, 495, Obs. 2 *Uterqve* and *qvisqve*, ib.

uti aliqvo amico, 265. With the Accus., ib. Obs. 2. *Utendus*, ib.

utinam, utinam ne, utinam — non, 351 *b*, Obs. 1.

utrum, 452 (*utrum — ne*, with a word interposed, Obs. 1; *utrum* as a Pronoun followed by *ne — an*, Obs. 2).

vacare rei, 261 *a*, note.

vae with the Dat., 236, Obs. 2.

ve, 436; after a Negative, 458 *c*, Obs. 2; appended to Prepositions, 469, Obs. 2; Transposed, 474 *f*, and Obs.

ve in Compound words, 204, Obs. 3.

vel vel — vel, 436 ("even," Obs.).

vehens from *veho* and *vehor*, 111, Obs.

velle aliqvem aliqvid, 228 *b*, Obs. 2. *Qvid tibi vis?* 248, Obs. *Volenti mihi est*, 246, Obs. 3. *Velim, vellem*, 350 *b*, Obs. 1. *Volo* (*ut*) *facias, te facere, hoc fieri, hoc factum, me esse clementem*, 372 *b*, Obs. 2; 389, Obs. 4; 393 (Obs. 2). *Velim, nolim*, 442 *b*, Obs.

velum, vexillum, 182, Obs. 3.

vendo, veneo (not *vendor*), 133 (*do*), Obs.

venit mihi in mentem, 291, Obs. 3.

Verb, 24, 3, 94. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, 94, Obs.; 222, 223. *Verba pura* and *impura*, 101 (122, Obs.; 174, Obs. 3). Derivation of the Verbs, 190—196. The Verb defined by the Predicate Noun, 216; Position of the Verb, 465 *a*, with the Obss. The Verb Understood, 478; omitted by Ellipsis, 479. *Verba inchoativa*, &c., see *Inchoativa*, &c.

Verbal Feet, 501, Obs. 2.

verbis alicujus, 258, Obs. 5.

vereor facere, 376, Obs.

vero (*verum*), 437 *d*. In Answers, 454.

versans from *verso* and *versor*, 111, Obs.

Verse, 497, Obs. 2; Simple Compound, 500. Feet in, 498, 499 (genuine, spurious, unnecessary feet assumed). Measure of Verse, 497.

Versus Adonius, 504. *Archilochius major* and *minor*, ib. *Alcaicus enneasyllabus*, 507. Names of the Compound species of Verse, 508. *Versus asynarteti*, 508, Obs.

versus, Prep. (*an, in - versus*), 172, III. Obs. 4.

verum, 437 *d*. *Verum, verum tamen* in resuming the discourse, 480.

veto te facere, veto facere, veto hoc fieri, vetor hoc facere, vetor creari, 390, Obs. 3; 396, Obs. 3.

vicem alicujus, 237 *c*, Obs. 3.

videre ut, 372 *a*. *Videre, ne*, 372 *b*, Obs. 1. *Videro, viderit*, 340, Obs. 4. *Videor* (not *videtur*), 400 *a*, with the Obs., and *b*, with the Obs.

vir, its Compounds, 206 *a*, Obs. 2.
VOCATIVE, 32; of Greek words in *es*, 35, Obs. 3; of words in *ius*, 37, Obs. 3; of Greek words in *s* of the Third Declension, 45, 4. How employed (with or without *o*), 299; in the Predicate instead of the Nom., 299, Obs. 2. Its Position, ib., Obs. 3.
Vowels, Modification of, 5 *c*; in Composition, 205 *b*.

Without, how expressed, 416, Obs. 3.
Words, Position of, very free in Latin, 463; its most simple, 464; modified according to the Emphasis, 465, seq.; 472, 473. In the Poets, 474.
Word-feet, 501, Obs. 2.

X rejected in some words (*tela*, *velum*), 132 *f*, Obs. 3.

Zeugma, 478, Obs. 3.

Cambridge: Electrotyped and Printed by John Wilson and Son.

DUE MAR 12 1925

DUE OCT 25 '35

APR 10 1937